

PC 2109

.L6

1839

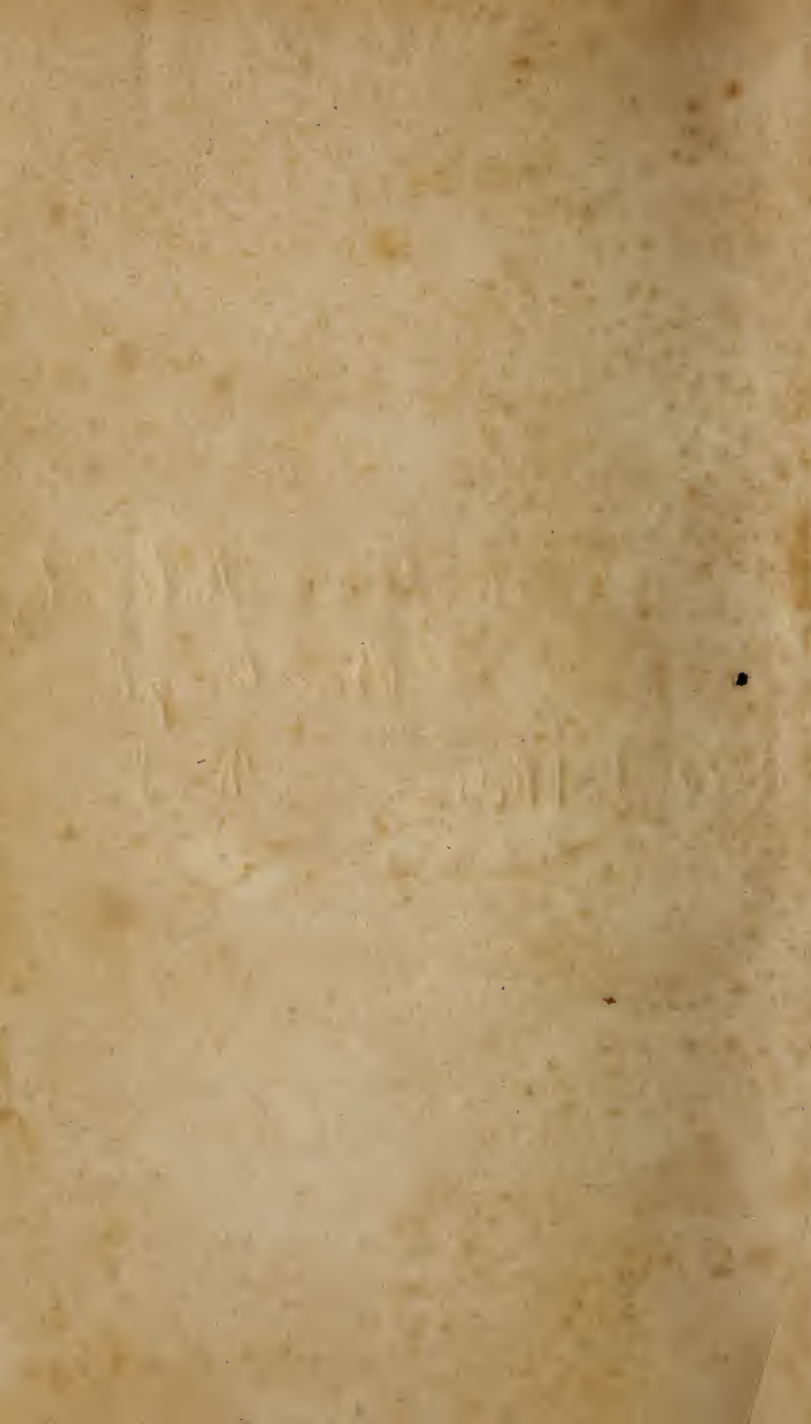
Copy 1

George Washington

President

Nov. 1. 1844.

No. 1.



GUIDE
TO THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE;

ESPECIALLY DEVISED

FOR PERSONS WHO WISH TO STUDY THE
ELEMENTS OF THAT LANGUAGE,

BY
J. J. P. LE BRETHON.

FIRST AMERICAN

FROM THE

SEVENTH LONDON EDITION,

CORRECTED, ENLARGED, AND IMPROVED;

By P. BEKEART.

Adolescentiam alere jucundum est et laudabile.—*Cicero.*

NEW YORK:
W. E. DEAN, PRINTER & PUBLISHER, 2 ANN STREET.
COLLINS, KEESE & CO., 254 PEARL ST.

1839.

PC2109
.L 6
1839

ENTERED according to Act of Congress, in the year 1839, by W. E.
DEAN, in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the Southern Dis-
trict of New York.

TO THE
PRESIDENT, DIRECTORS, AND MEMBERS
OF THE MERCANTILE LIBRARY ASSOCIATION, NEW YORK.

I have prepared for the press an edition of Le Brethon's "Guide to the French Language,"—a work, which, by the general consent of those best qualified to judge, stands at the head of its class.

As a slight acknowledgment, gentlemen, of the encouragement which you have always given to the study of a language which has become to the merchant at least, a necessary part of education, rather than an accomplishment ; and of the generous co-operation and assistance which I have constantly received from those members who have been my pupils, it affords me sincere pleasure to dedicate this work to your noble Institution—an Institution already justly distinguished for its wisdom in divising, and for its perseverance in providing, the means of moral and intellectual improvement.

I am, &c.

P. BEKEART.



TO THE LEARNER.*

I SUPPOSE you to be animated with as great a desire to learn the french language as I am to assist you. Before we begin, permit me to ask you a single painful question. Do you know your own language? Do you know the parts of which it is composed, NOUNS, ARTICLES, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, VERBS, ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, &c.? Are these terms familiar to you? If you answer *no*: then will I say to you, learn them before we go further, for it is ten to one that you and I should not understand each other, or, if we did, it would be with a great deal of difficulty. Besides, you may be excused for not knowing a foreign language; you can hardly be pardoned for being ignorant of your own, especially at a time when so many able persons devote themselves to the teaching of it. Nor do you even want the assistance of a teacher; with a moderate share of understanding and a good grammar, you may learn as much as is necessary for our purpose in the course of a fortnight.

Now I suppose that you have these few requisites, and you wish to make use of this book. Begin at the page 42: compare the French with the English, and endeavour to form some idea of the difference between the two languages: Then translate into French the English exercises, page 44 and the following, the rules correspond with the exercises that you are now reading, the figures under the words point out to you the rule by which you are to apply. It will be proper during this time that you should peruse the verbs, that the variation in their tenses and persons may by degrees become familiar to you.

* The Author is not so vain as to wish to give instructions to teachers, or to persons accustomed to the study of languages, but to such persons only as are at a loss how to begin.

N. B. Persons making use of this book, who have already some general notions of the french language, must begin at the part called the SYNTAX, page 167, and write the exercises.*

But, says an Englishman, how shall I learn the pronunciation ? Your anxiety is commendable, but it is untimely. You do not wish to speak before you know how to arrange the words grammatically together.

The pronunciation of the French language, which to an Englishman seems the most difficult part of it, is in fact the easiest. I have known many persons who, in seven or eight lessons, have acquired as good a pronunciation of that language, as it is possible for a foreigner to acquire, and there are perhaps few people who, with a little attention, would not learn it in twelve or fifteen lessons. If your mind is ambitious of surmounting all the difficulties at once, read the chapter on pronunciation, page 1 and following ; but I should deceive you, if I were to tell you that you would make yourself perfect in that part by the single assistance of the rules which are contained in it ; all that I can say is that from the repeated experiments which have been made of them they cannot lead you to a bad accent. It is even proper that you should cast your eyes now and then over those rules ; they will be of great service to you, when you think fit to apply to pronunciation, whether you have a teacher or not. But let your attention be now chiefly bent upon the Syntax ; it is the most difficult part of the French language ; and when you have made some progress in it, then will be the time for you to apply to the pronunciation. Knowing the meaning and arrangement of the words which you have to pronounce, you will make more proficiency in one lesson, than otherwise you would make in three.

* Then you may read either of the following works, which, I think, you will find both instructive and entertaining : *Histoire de Charles XII., roi de Suède*, by Voltaire ; *Recueil Choisi de Traits Historiques et de Contes Moraux*, by Wanostrucht ; *Tourist's French Companion*, by De Rouillon ; or any other book you may have a mind to read.

THE ALPHABET.

The FRENCH LANGUAGE is composed of *twenty-five* letters,
viz.

A pronounced	ah	like	a	in	art.
B	bay		b		bay.
C	say		s		say.
D	day		d		day.
E	ay		a		ale.
F	f		f		deaf.
G	zhay*		₁		
H	ash		h		ash.
I	ee		i		field.
J	zhee*		₁		
K	kah		c		cart.
L	l		l		ell.
M	m		m		gem.
N	n		n		pen.
O	o		o		old.
P	pay		p		pay.
Q	ku		₂		
R	ayr		r		to err.
S	s		s		bless.
T	tay		t		taylor.
U	u		₂		
V	vay		v		veil.
X	eeks		x		six.
Y	ee-grayc				the same sound as i.
Z	zeyd		z		zed.

* To give this letter its proper sound, the *h* must be pronounced aspirate.

1 The sound of *g* and *j*, in english, is formed of *dj*; so *general*, *judge*, are pronounced *djeneral*, *djudge*; leave out the sound of *d* in french, and you will have the proper sound.

2 There is no word in the english language in which the sounds of the french *q* and *u* are to be found, and no combination of characters can give an idea of the pronunciation of these two letters. The person who has them to pronounce, must shut his lips quite close, leaving only a small opening in the middle, as if he were going to blow a flute.

These are the names by which the letters are called in french ; but in that language, as well as in the english, the sound of several of them varies according to their position with other letters, as will appear by the following observations.*

OF VOWELS.

The French reckon *three* sorts of vowels.

The simple, *a, e, i, o, u.*

The compound, *ai, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eu, eo, oe, ou.*

The nasal, *am, an, em, en, im, in, aim, ain, ein, om, on, um, un.*

OF SIMPLE VOWELS.

a, e, i, o, u.

1. Each of these letters has *two* sounds common to both languages ;

One short, as

a in *patte*,
é *bête*, marked thus '
i *fixe*,
o *hôte*,
u *mur*,

English words in which the same sound is found.

paw, a in *pat*.
beet, e *bet*.
fixed, i *fix*.
dorsed, o *hot*.
wall, u see note 2.

The other long, as

â in *pâte*, }
ê *bête*, }
î *fit*, } marked ' 3
ô *hôte*, }
û *mur*, }

paste, a in *pall*.
beast, e *bear*.
might do, i *field*.
landlord, o *hope*.
ripe, u see note 2 and 3.

N. B. The beauty of french pronunciation depends upon a clear and distinct articulation of these five letters.

2. To the two sorts of *e* abovementioned, must be added *e* mute, as in

cela, that, pronounced *sla*.
demande, requires, *dmand*.
des mesures, measures, *daymsur*.

This *e*, as you see, has no sound, but it generally affects the sound of the *penultima*, by rendering it longer, if it be a vowel, or by giving a sound to the consonant which, without it, would be silent ; for ex.

é in *aimé*, mascul. loved, is pronoun. *aymay*, like é }
i *joli*, pretty, *zhollî*, 4 i } short.
u *vu*, seen, *vu*, u }

* It is perhaps unnecessary to observe, that in a treatise of this kind, the minutest precision must not be expected. There are simple sounds which no combination of characters can exactly express : every person who knows any thing of languages must be sensible of this.

3 A vowel with a circumflex is pronounced as long again as it would be without it.

4 Sound the letter *i* as sharp as you can, sharper, if possible, than *y* in *pretty*.

é in <i>aimée</i> , femin.	loved, is pronoun.	<i>aymaye</i> , like <i>ê</i>	} long.
i <i>jolie</i> ,	pretty,	<i>zholee</i> ,	
u <i>vue</i> ,	seen,	<i>vû</i> ,	
<i>petit</i> , mascul.	little, is pronoun.	<i>pti</i> , see note 4.	
<i>grand</i> ,	great,	<i>gran</i> .	
<i>pris</i> ,	taken,	<i>pree</i> .	
but <i>petite</i> , femin.	little, is pronoun.	<i>plitt</i> .	
<i>grande</i> ,	great,	<i>grand</i> .	
<i>prise</i> ,	taken,	<i>preez</i> .	
In <i>un bon chien</i> ,	a good dog, the <i>n</i> has only a <i>half</i> sound.		
In <i>une bonne chienne</i> ,	a good bitch, the <i>n</i> has a <i>full</i> sound. 5		

N. B. *e* mute is distinguished from the two others, by its not being accented; it is never pronounced at the end of words, but when *e* begins a word, it is always sounded whether it be accented or not.

3. In the monosyllables, *je*, *me*, *te*, *le*, *se*, *ce*, *de*, *ne*, *que*, this *e* has sometimes a *weak guttural* sound, similar to that of *e* in *daughter*, *sister*, because the consonant can not be pronounced without a feeble articulation of a vowel; but it is always *dropt* in conversation and in familiar reading, when it can be done without embarrassing the pronunciation. The manner in which this is effected is easy. With the *last syllable* of the preceding word, *pronounce* the *consonant* to which *e* mute belongs, and the *e*, thus *unsupported*, will remain *silent*; ex.

Quand me ferez-vous le plaisir de me prêter ce livre que je vous ai demandé!

pronounce, kam fraye vool playzeer daym pray tays livr kayzh voozayd manday!

But there must not be any pause between the words, and the junction must be as smooth as possible.

Observe only, that a *syllable* ending in *e* mute, can not attract the *consonant* of another *e* mute, without giving to the first *e* a gentle guttural sound, like that of *e* in *daughter*, so as to render the pronunciation easy; ex.

Je ne puis pas vous le dire, puis que je ne le sais pas.

pronounced, zhen puę paw vool deer, pueesk zhen lay say paw.

But carefully avoid pronouncing it like an accented *é*, for there is not any pronunciation more ridiculous.*

5 To give *n* its full articulation, you first press the tip of the tongue against the root of the lower teeth, then raise it up quickly to the roof of the mouth. In the pronunciation of the above nasal vowels, the articulation of *n* must end, when the tip of the tongue is at the root of the lower teeth, without any motion towards the roof of the mouth; this is what is here meant by a *half* sound.

* In the pronouncing of this *e* consists much of the neatness and elegance of a true french accent. In the southern provinces of France, especially in *Guienne* and *Gascogne*, they pronounce it like the acute or short *é*, which gives them that affected pronunciation, so much ridiculed by the rest of the inhabitants of France, under the name of *accent gascon*. For this reason a foreigner will sooner understand a native of *Bordeaux*, than a native of *Paris*, and may often understand the former, without being able to understand the latter, though if he understands the latter, he will un-

4. Among the simple vowels is also reckoned *y*, which however does not increase their number, since its sound is the same as that of *i*. The peculiar use of this letter is to divide the syllable in which it is found, into two distinct syllables; it is equivalent to *ii*; as,

<i>pays,</i>	country,	pron. <i>pay-ee.</i>
<i>citoyen,</i>	citizen,	<i>silwoy-eeyen.</i>
<i>soyons,</i>	let us be,	<i>swoy-eeon.</i>
<i>joyeux,</i>	joyful,	<i>zhwoy-ee-ugh.</i>

Except in the words derived from the greek and latin, where *y* is kept to show the etymology of the word, and is pronounced like one *i* only; as,

<i>Egypte,</i>	Egypt,	<i>ayzheept.</i>
<i>tyrannie,</i>	tyranny,	<i>teerannee.</i>
<i>étymologie,</i>	etymology,	<i>ayleemolozhee.</i>
<i>mythologie,</i>	mythology,	<i>meetolozhee.</i>

OF COMPOUND VOWELS.

ai, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eo, eu, oe, ou.

This sort of vowel is formed by the association of several simple vowels, which produce together, a sound different from that which they produce separately.

5. *ai, eai,* } sounded like *é* short, i. e. *ay*; as,

<i>j'ai</i>	I have,	pronounce	<i>zhay.</i>
<i>je mangeai,</i>	I ate,		<i>zhmanzhay.</i>

6. *ais, aie, aient, eais, eaient,* } sounded like *ê* long, i. e. *aye*; as,

<i>j'avais,</i>	I had,	<i>zhavaye.</i>
<i>j'aie,</i>	I may have,	<i>zhaey.</i>
<i>ils aient,</i>	they may have,	<i>eel-z-aye.</i>
<i>je mangeais,</i>	I was eating,	<i>zhmanzhaye.</i>
<i>ils nageaient,</i>	they were swimming,	<i>eel-nazhaye.</i>

ao, found only in *août*, august; *taon*, oxfly; *faon*, fawn; *paon*, peacock.
pronounced, *oow,* *ton,* *fan,* *pan.*
(see nasal vowels.)

7. *au, eau,* } final, sound like *o* short, or *au*, in *laurel*; as,

<i>eau,</i>	water,	<i>o.</i>
<i>peau,</i>	skin,	<i>po.</i>

doubtedly understand the former. It is the frequent dropping of this *e* which makes the foreigner believe that the French speak fast, for, in reality, the French, taken in general, do not pronounce their words faster than other people do; but by dropping this letter, they link two, three, or four words together, and so go quicker through a sentence than a foreigner does, who gives a full sound to every *e* he meets with. Foreigners should pay particular attention to this, as nothing is more difficult to get rid of than a bad accent.

8. *au*, } followed by a consonant in the same word, sound-
eau, } ed like *ô* long, or *au* in *hautboy*; as,

<i>eaux</i> ,	waters,	<i>ô</i> .
<i>autant</i> ,	as much,	<i>ôtan</i> .

9. *ea*, the *e* has no sound, but gives *g* the soft sound of *j*, or *zh*; as,

<i>jean</i> ,	john,	<i>zhan</i> .
<i>mangea</i> ,	ate,	<i>manzha</i> .

10. *ei*, pronounced like *ei* in *reign*; or *ai* in *rain*; as,

<i>reine</i> ,	queen,	<i>rain</i> .
<i>peine</i> ,	pain,	<i>pain</i> .

11. *eo*, in *geo*, the *e* has no sound, but softens that of *g* into *zh*; as,

<i>george</i> ,	george,	<i>zhorzh</i> .
<i>geôlier</i> ,	jailer,	<i>zhôleeay</i> .

12. *eu*, the nearest idea which I can give of *eu*, is that of *e*, in *her*, agreeably to Walker's pronunciation of that word, viz. *hur*.

<i>feu</i> ,	fire,	<i>feu</i> .
<i>peu</i> ,	little,	<i>peu</i> .

N. B. *e* has no sound in the monosyllables.

eu, *eus*, *eut*, *eûmes*, *eûtes*, *eurent*, *eusse*, had; pronounce *u*, *û*, *u*, *ûm*, *ût*, *ur*, *uss*.

13. *oe*, pronounced *e*; the *o* having no sound; and the words in which it was found formerly being now generally spelled without it; as,

<i>cœur</i> ,	heart,	<i>keur</i> .
<i>œuvres</i> ,	works,	<i>œuvr</i> .

14. *ou*, pronounced like *oo* in *cook*, *book*, *look*; as,

<i>coup</i> ,	blow,	<i>koo</i> .
<i>bout</i> ,	end,	<i>boo</i> .

15. N. B. If one of the vowels is *accented*, or marked over with two dots (*¨*), the vowels form distinct syllables, and are pronounced separately; as,

<i>fleau</i> ,	scourge,	<i>floy-o</i> .
<i>naïveté</i> ,	ingenuousness,	<i>na-ivtay</i> .

OF NASAL VOWELS.

am, *an*, *em*, *en*, *im*, *in*, *aim*, *ain*, *ein*, *om*, *on*, *um*, *un*.

16. *am*, } have all the same sound, that of *en* in *encore*, or
an, } *an* in *want*, observing to give the *n* only a half
em, } sound. See note 5.

<i>en</i> ,	<i>ambition</i> ,	<i>ambition</i> ,	<i>anbiseoɹ</i> .
<i>ent</i> ,	<i>empire</i> ,	<i>empire</i> ,	<i>anpeer</i> .
	<i>enfant</i> ,	<i>child</i> ,	<i>anfan</i> .
	<i>anglais</i> ,	<i>english</i> ,	<i>anglaye</i> .
	<i>vengeance</i> ,	<i>revenge</i> ,	<i>vanzhance</i> .
	<i>ornement</i> ,	<i>ornament</i> ,	<i>ornayman</i> .

17. *en* has the sound of *en* in *when*, giving *n* only a half sound. See note 5.

1. In foreign names ; as,

<i>mentor,</i>	<i>mentor,</i>	<i>mentor.</i>
----------------	----------------	----------------

2. At the end of words ; as,

<i>examen,</i>	<i>examination,</i>	<i>egzamen.</i>
<i>bien,</i>	<i>well,</i>	<i>beeyen.</i>
<i>entretien,</i>	<i>conversation,</i>	<i>antrayt-yen.</i>

18. N. B. *ent* has no sound at the end of the third person plural of verbs ; as,

<i>ils eurent,</i>	<i>they had,</i>	<i>eel-z-ur.</i>
<i>ils furent,</i>	<i>they were,</i>	<i>eel-fur.</i>
<i>ils aimèrent,</i>	<i>they loved,</i>	<i>eel-z-aymayr.</i>

19. *im,*
in,
aim,
ain,
ein, } have all the same sound, a sound similar to that of *in* in *fine*, giving *n* only a half sound. See note 5.

<i>imparfait,</i>	<i>imperfect,</i>	<i>ineparfay.</i>
<i>infini,</i>	<i>infinite,</i>	<i>inefini.</i>
<i>cousin,</i>	<i>cousin, masc.</i>	<i>coozine.</i>
<i>fin,</i>	<i>end,</i>	<i>fine.</i>
<i>faim,</i>	<i>hunger,</i>	<i>fine.</i>
<i>pain,</i>	<i>bread,</i>	<i>pine.</i>
<i>sein,</i>	<i>bosom,</i>	<i>sine.</i>

20. But if *in*, either in the first or last syllable of a word, is followed by a vowel, it is sounded like the english preposition *in* ; as,

<i>inaccessible,</i>	<i>inaccessible,</i>	<i>inaksessible.</i>
<i>inutile,</i>	<i>useless,</i>	<i>inutil.</i>
<i>fine,</i>	<i>fine,</i>	<i>fin.</i>
<i>cousine,</i>	<i>cousin, femin.</i>	<i>coozin.</i>
<i>badine,</i>	<i>playful,</i>	<i>bad-in.</i>

21. *om,*
on,
con, } are sounded like *on* in *wont*, observing always to give *n* only a half sound. See note 5.

<i>compter,</i>	<i>to count,</i>	<i>contay.</i>
<i>donjon,</i>	<i>dungeon,</i>	<i>don-zhon.</i>
<i>pigeon,</i>	<i>pigeon,</i>	<i>peezhon.</i>
<i>mangeons,</i>	<i>let us eat,</i>	<i>man-zhon.</i>

N. B. The English are apt to open their mouths too much in pronouncing *on*, by which means, instead of sounding it like *on* in *wont*, they sound it like *an* in *want*. They should guard against this.

22. *um,*
un,
eun, } have all the same sound ; but no exact idea can be given of it, unless it be that of *un* in *fungus* ; observing not to give *n* its full sound. See note 5.

<i>parfum,</i>	<i>perfume,</i>	<i>parfun.</i>
<i>chacun,</i>	<i>each,</i>	<i>shak-un.</i>
<i>à jeun,</i>	<i>fasting,</i>	<i>azhun.</i>

OF DIPHTHONGS.

23. Diphthongs are a union of several vowels, which, though they produce different sounds, are pronounced at the same breath;

<i>ia</i> , sounded like	<i>ya</i> in yard. ex.	<i>fiacre</i> ,	hackney-coach,	<i>feeyacr</i> .
<i>ie</i>	<i>ye</i> ye.	<i>pied</i> ,	foot,	<i>pce-ay</i> .
<i>io</i> ,	<i>yo</i> york.	<i>fiote</i> ,	vial,	<i>feool</i> .
<i>iau</i> ,	<i>yo</i> yoke.	<i>miauler</i> ,	to mew,	<i>meeolay</i> .
<i>ieu</i> ,		<i>dieu</i> ,	god,	<i>dee-ugh</i> .
<i>iou</i> ,	<i>you</i> you.	<i>chiourme</i> ,	a galley crew,	<i>sheeoom</i> .
<i>iant</i> , }		<i>priant</i> ,	praying,	<i>preeyan</i> .
<i>ient</i> , }	<i>yan</i> ,	<i>patient</i> ,	patient,	<i>pawceeyan</i> .
<i>ien</i> ,	<i>yen</i> ,	<i>bien</i> ,	well,	<i>beeyen</i> .
<i>ion</i> ,	<i>yon</i> ,	<i>action</i> ,	action,	<i>akseeeyon</i> .
<i>oe</i> , }		<i>boête</i> ,	box,	<i>bwheyt</i> .
<i>oue</i> , }	<i>why</i> why.	<i>fouet</i> ,	whip,	<i>fwhey</i> .
<i>oi</i> , }		<i>moi, toi</i> ,	I, thou,	<i>mwoa, twoa</i> .
<i>oi</i> , }	<i>woa</i> ,	<i>bourgeois</i> ,	burgess,	<i>boorzhuoa</i> .
<i>oin</i> ,	<i>woin</i> ,	<i>soin</i> ,	care,	<i>swoin</i> .
<i>ouan</i> , }		<i>louange</i> ,	praise,	<i>lwanzh</i> .
<i>ouen</i> , }	<i>wan</i> want.	<i>rouen</i> ,	rouen,	<i>rwan</i> .
<i>oua</i> ,	<i>wa</i> water.	<i>louage</i> ,	hiring,	<i>lwazh</i> .
<i>oui</i> ,	<i>wi</i> without.	<i>oui, réjoui</i> ,	yes, rejoiced,	<i>we, rayzhwee</i> .
<i>ua</i> , }	In pronouncing this <i>u</i> shut your lips as directed in note 2.	<i>nuage</i> ,	cloud,	<i>muazh</i> .
<i>ue</i> , }		<i>écuelle</i> ,	porringer,	<i>aykuayl</i> .
<i>ui</i> , }		<i>lui, fruit</i> ,	him, fruit,	<i>lui, frui, no. 4</i> .
<i>uin</i> , }		<i>juin</i> ,	june,	<i>zhuine</i> .

6 To remove the embarrassment which learners find in the pronunciation of *oi*, which is sometimes pronounced like the diphthong *oi*, and sometimes like the compound vowel *ai*, in words which are entirely similar, I have through all this work spelled with *oi* the words which are pronounced *woa*, and with *ai*, those which are pronounced *ay*. It will perhaps be argued that this is contrary to the opinion of the french academy. I respect the opinion of the french academy, as much as any man can do, when it is consonant to reason; but the opinion of no man, let his rank and talents be ever so eminent, nor of any corporation of men, however pompous their appellation may be, can be put in competition with reason. Now is it reasonable that two sounds so very different should be expressed by one sign; exposing the learner to innumerable mistakes, when by the mere change of a single letter, another sign can so easily be formed, which removes every difficulty? The following words, for instance, are given to a foreigner to pronounce, or even to a native of France, who never heard them pronounced before:

François, danois, suédois, chinois, bourgeois, chamois, foi, paroisse, perçoit, &c.
François, anglois, hollandois, japonais, bougeois, charmois, foible, paroisse, perçoit, &c.

The stranger is told how to pronounce the words in the first line; he pronounces them well; he goes on confidently to the second line, naturally thinking that the same letters ought to produce the same sound: what must his astonishment be, when he is told that *oi* in the words contained in the second line is pronounced quite differently from what it is in the words contained in the first, the first being pronounced *woa*, and the second *ay*; and how much greater will his surprise be still, when he finds that even in the same word, such as *voyois, croyois, &c.* (see rule 4) *oi* has two different sounds, the first syllable being pronounced *woa* and the second *ay*. And have you no means, the stranger will say, of removing this insuperable difficulty? Yes, we have, and a very easy one too; you have only to change *o* into *a* in the words which are to be pronounced *ay*, and the whole difficulty will vanish; but the french academy do not approve of it. Oh! never mind the french academy, the stranger will say. Nor do the French, it seems, mind it much, for these great censors of the language have the mortification to see that, in almost every book now printed in France, this diphthong is now spelled contrary to their arrogant and unreasonable decision. In vain they will say that *ai* does not express the exact sound that we wish to express; if it removes a great difficulty, if nothing better is offered, if it is the best representative of this sound that we can find, and is a sign which nobody can mistake, we must be satisfied with it, till the french academy deign to favour us with a better.—(See *Dictionnaire Philosophique*, art. A.)

OF CONSONANTS.

General Rules.

The french language admits of *two* modes of pronunciation ; one for *poetry* and *oratory*, the other for *conversation*.

24. In repeating *verses*, and in *oratorical* discourses, the *final consonant* of a word is generally *sounded*, when the word which follows it begins with a *vowel*, or *h* *mute* ; as,

*D'un pinceau délicat, l'artifice agréable,
Du plus affreux object, fait un objet aimable.
Des dons extérieurs l'uniformité lasse,
Mais l'esprit a toujours une nouvelle grâce.*

The above lines must be read in the following manner ;

*Dun paineso daylika lartifsee agrayable,
Dupluz-affreu-z-obzhay fay-t-un-obzhay-t-aymable.
Day don-z-extayrieur luniformitay lass,
May layspri-t-a toozhoor-z-un-noovayl grass.*

25. In *conversation*, the ear alone being consulted, opinions greatly differ. Some are for sounding the final consonant of every word, when the word which follows it begins with a vowel ; others, and this seems to be the opinion of the best informed persons, maintain that the final consonant of a word should be sounded on the initial vowel of the next, only when the two words are so connected that the second word is necessary to complete the sense ; such as,

Article and noun ;

<i>un enfant,</i>	a child,	<i>u-n-anfan.</i>
<i>cet hiver,</i>	this winter,	<i>s-t-eevayr.</i>
<i>à son âge,</i>	at his age,	<i>à so n-âzh.</i>
<i>les artifices,</i>	the artifices,	<i>lay-z-artifiss.</i>
<i>des hommes,</i>	of men,	<i>day-z-om.</i>

Adjective before the noun ;

<i>bon ouvrage,</i>	good work,	<i>bo-n-ovvrazh.</i>
<i>grand espace,</i>	great space,	<i>gran-t-ayspass.</i>
<i>petit homme,</i>	little man,	<i>pti-t-om. (7)</i>
<i>gros oiseau,</i>	large bird,	<i>grô-z-owyzo.</i>
<i>beaux habits,</i>	fine clothes,	<i>bô-z-abee.</i>

Pronoun with the verb, and verb with the pronoun :

<i>il est,</i>	he is,	<i>i-ll-aye.</i>
<i>est-il ?</i>	is he ?	<i>aye-t-il ?</i>
<i>sont-elles ?</i>	are they ?	<i>son-t-ell ?</i>
<i>nous avons,</i>	we have,	<i>noo-z-avon.</i>
<i>vous en avez,</i>	you have some,	<i>voo-z-an-avaye.</i>
<i>les ont-ils ?</i>	have they got them ?	<i>lay-z-on-t-eel ?</i>

7 We sound the final consonant of an adjective upon a noun, but not the final consonant of a noun upon an adjective ; so, though *petit enfant*, is pronounced *pti-t-anfan*. *enfant aimable* could not be pronounced *anfan-t-aymable*, but *anfan aymable*.

Preposition with the noun, pronoun, or verb that follows it ;

<i>sans amis,</i>	without friends,	<i>san-z-amee.</i>
<i>avec elle,</i>	with her,	<i>avayk-ell.</i>
<i>en allant,</i>	in going,	<i>an-allan.</i>
<i>chez eux,</i>	to their house,	<i>shay-z-ugh.</i>
<i>après avoir,</i>	after having,	<i>apray-z-avoai.</i>

Adverb before the adjective or participle ;

<i>bien honnête,</i>	very honest,	<i>beeyen-onayt.</i>
<i>plus habile,</i>	more clever,	<i>plu-z-ah-bill.</i>
<i>très aimable,</i>	very lovely,	<i>tray-z-aymable.</i>
<i>fort utile,</i>	very useful,	<i>for-t-util.</i>
<i>trop ignorant,</i>	too ignorant,	<i>trou-p inyoran.</i>

N. B. There are a few other instances in which a final consonant may be sounded on the following vowel, but they can hardly be reduced to rules, as it chiefly depends on the number of letters of the same sound that follow one another. The surest way for a foreigner is to confine himself to the general rules which apply to nine-tenths of the words the final consonant of which is to be sounded on the following vowel. The rest must be learned from the conversation of well informed persons.*

* As in music, it is the diversity of sounds that produces melody ; so it is with languages. The union of the final consonant of some words, to the initial vowel of the word which follows them, being done to disencumber the language of too great a number of monosyllables, and to render it more melodious by a greater variety of sounds ; the rule given by some persons, that every word ending with a consonant should be joined to the following word, when it begins with a vowel, is totally erroneous, and produces the very effect which this union is intended to remove. It is true, that in reading verses, the final consonant is generally joined to the following vowel, to preserve the measure of the verse ; and, in public speeches, the consonants are also often sounded at the end of words, to give a stronger impulsion to the air, and to be heard at a greater distance ; but in familiar reading, and in conversation, this is carefully avoided by all unaffected people.

If any authority be necessary to support what I advance here, I trust that of *l'abbé d'Olivet*, one of the most distinguished members of the french academy, will be sufficient to convince every man of candour, since it implies the opinion of the most enlightened part of that body. This philosophical grammarian, in his treatise on french prosody, (a work which has been, and ever will be the admiration of the learned.) before he speaks of the effect which certain nasal terminations have in repeating verses, remarks, *art. 3. parag. 5.*

Je commence par dire que cette observation ne regarde point ceux qui écrivent en prose, car la prose souffre les hiatus pourvu qu'ils ne soient, ni trop rudes, ni trop fréquents. Ils contribuent même à donner au discours un certain air naturel, et nous voyons en effet que la conversation des honnêtes gens est pleine d'hiatus volontaires qui sont tellement autorisés par l'usage, que si l'on parloit autrement, cela seroit d'un pédant, ou d'un provincial. Par exemple, lorsqu'un acteur récite ces vers de la première scène d'Athalie, Je viens — célébrer avec vous la fameuse journée, &c. Pensez-vous être saint ! il prononce comme s'il y avoit ; célébré-r-avec vous — pensez-vous-z-être. Mais dans la simple conversation, l'usage veut qu'on prononce comme s'il y avoit, célébré avec vous — pensez-vous être, &c. And art. 2, he says — On le croira si l'on veut ; au moins est-il certain qu'au théâtre ce n'est pas chose rare qu'un acteur, et surtout une actrice dont les talents sont admirés fasse adopter un mauvais accent, une prononciation irrégulière, d'où naissent insensiblement des traditions locales qui se perpétuent, si personne n'est attentif à les combattre. These are the words of a man, for whose opinions the french academy had the greatest deference ; a man who, at their request, had made this subject one of his particular studies, and who had consulted upon it, as he himself declares, all the men of taste and learning with whom he was acquainted ; and they never were contradicted,

† By *hiatus* is meant a broken sound.

26. The foregoing instances excepted, the *final consonant* of words, in general, *has no sound* in french. See the *particular rules* for consonants under their respective heads.

Particular Rules.

B

b is sounded at the end of proper names ; as,

<i>job,</i>	job, pronounce	<i>zhob.</i>
<i>jacob,</i>	jacob,	<i>zhakob.</i>

At the end of common names *b* is found only in

<i>plomb,</i>	lead, pron.	<i>plon.</i>
<i>radoub,</i>	refuting,	<i>radoob.</i>

C

This letter has two sounds common to both languages.

1. That of *k* as in *case*, pronounced *kase.*
2. That of *s* as in *cease*, *sease.*

c before *a, o, u*, has the sound of *k*.

<i>ca, ka,</i>	<i>car,</i>	for,	<i>kar.</i>
<i>co, ko,</i>	<i>cour,</i>	yard,	<i>koor.</i>
<i>cu, ku,</i>	<i>culotte,</i>	breeches,	<i>kulot. (u, see note 2.)</i>

c before *e, i*, or before *a, o, u*, with a cedilla, this mark (¸) under it, has the sound of *s* ; as,

<i>ça, sa,</i>	<i>façade,</i>	front,	<i>fasad.</i>
<i>ce, se,</i>	<i>ceder,</i>	to yield,	<i>sayday.</i>
<i>ci, si,</i>	<i>ceci,</i>	this,	<i>scee. (i, see note 4.)</i>
<i>ça, so,</i>	<i>garçon,</i>	boy,	<i>garson,</i>
<i>çu, su,</i>	<i>reçu,</i>	received,	<i>rsu. (u, see note 2.)</i>

c final is generally sound, and has the sound of *k* ; as,

<i>avec,</i>	with,	<i>avayk.</i>
<i>public,</i>	public,	<i>publeek. (u, see note 2.)</i>

except the following words, in which *c* final has no sound ;

broc, porc, clerc, un marc, blanc, franc, jonc, trone, almanac, estomac, tabac.
a jug, pork, clerk, 8 ounces, white, frank, rush, trunk, almanack, stomach, tobacco.
 pron. *bro, por, clayr, mar, blan, fran,* zhon, tron, almana, aystoma, taba.*

cc, before *e, i*, the first *c* has the sound of *k*, the second that of *s* ; as,

<i>succès,</i>	success,	<i>suksaye.</i>
<i>accident,</i>	accident,	<i>akseedan.</i>

but by persons, who, being fond of appearing singular, affect in conversation the emphatic tone of the stage, without considering whether they are speaking prose or verse, (most of the french plays are in verse,) or by those who, looking upon singularity as an accomplishment, mimic their ridiculous affectation.

Dans une nation qui est une par rapport au gouvernement, il ne peut y avoir dans sa manière de parler qu'un usage légitime, celui de la cour et des gens de lettres, à qui elle doit des encouragements ; tout autre usage qui s'en écarte dans la prononciation, dans les terminaisons, ou de quelqu'autre façon que ce puisse être, ne fait ni une langue, ou un idiôme à part, ni un dialecte de la langue nationale ; c'est un patois abandonné à la populace des provinces, et chaque province a le sien. Girard synonym. franç. art. *Langue, Language, &c.*

* *c*, in the adjectives *blanc* and *franc*, followed by a noun beginning with a vowel, has the sound of *k* ; as, *lu blanc au noir*, pronounce *du blan-k-o-noir*. *Franc étourdi*, pron. *fran-k-aytoordee. (i, see note 4.)*

Before *a, o, u* ; *cc* have only one sound, that of *k* ; as,
accabler, to crush, *akablāy.*
accomplir, to accomplish, *akonpleer.*
accuser, to accuse, *akusay.* (*u*, see note 2.)

ch, generally pronounced *sh* ; as,
chirurgien, surgeon, *sheeruzheyen.*
architecte, architect, *arsheetayel.*

ch has the sound of *k* in the following words ;

	<i>christ,</i>	<i>chrétien,</i>	<i>choriste,</i>	<i>archange,</i>	<i>orchestre,</i>	<i>chronique,</i>	<i>chronologie.</i>
	<i>christ,</i>	<i>christian,</i>	<i>chorister,</i>	<i>archangel,</i>	<i>or hestre,</i>	<i>chronicle,</i>	<i>chronology.</i>
pron.	<i>kree,</i>	<i>krayteeyen,</i>	<i>koreest,</i>	<i>arkanzh,</i>	<i>orkaystr,</i>	<i>kroneek,</i>	<i>kronolozhee.</i>

D

d final has no sound ; as,
froid, cold, *frvoy.*
chaud, hot, *show.*

except at the end of a word which is pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel*, then *d* has the sound of *t* ; as,

<i>apprend-il ?</i>	does he learn ?	<i>apran-t-eel ?</i>
<i>quand il vient,</i>	when he comes,	<i>kun-t-eel veeyen.</i>

d, or even *dd*, in the body of a word, is sounded ; as,

<i>adjectif,</i>	adjective,	<i>adjecteef.</i>
<i>addition,</i>	addition,	<i>addeeseeon.</i>

F

f final is generally sounded ; as,

<i>chef,</i>	chief,	<i>shayf.</i>
<i>nerf,</i>	sinew,	<i>nayrf.</i>
<i>bœuf,</i>	ox,	<i>bugf.</i>
<i>œuf,</i>	egg,	<i>ugf.</i>

except in *clef,* key, *clay.*
bœufs, oxen, *bûgh.*
œufs, eggs, *ûgh.*

and if pronounced at *one breath* with a word beginning with a *consonant* ;

<i>chef d'œuvre,</i>	master-piece,	<i>shaydeugvre.</i>
<i>nerf de bœuf,</i>	cow-skin, a rod,	<i>nayr d bugf.</i>
<i>bœuf salé,</i>	salt beef,	<i>bugh salay.</i>
<i>œuf frais,</i>	new egg,	<i>ugh fraye.</i>

f is sounded in *neuf* at the end of a sentence ; as,

<i>j'en ai neuf,</i>	I have got nine.	<i>zhan-ay nugf.</i> (<i>eu</i> , see
<i>un habit neuf,</i>	a new suit,	<i>un-abee nugf.</i> [r. 12.]

joined to a noun beginning with a consonant, *f* has no sound ; as,

<i>neuf livres,</i>	nine livres,	<i>nugh leevr. eu,</i> see r. 12.
<i>dix neuf sous,</i>	nineteen pence,	<i>dees nugh soo.</i>

joined to a noun beginning with a vowel, *f* has the sound of *v* ; as,

<i>neuf écus.</i>	nine crowns,	<i>nugh-v-aykû.</i> (<i>u</i> , see n. 2.)
<i>vingt neuf hommes,</i>	twenty-nine men,	<i>vyngt nugf-v-om.</i>

G

g final has no sound ; as,

	<i>long,</i>	<i>long,</i>	<i>lon.</i> (<i>on</i> , see rule 21.)
	<i>sang,</i>	<i>blood,</i>	<i>san,</i> { (<i>an</i> , see rule 16.)
	<i>rang,</i>	<i>rank,</i>	<i>ran,</i>
except in	<i>long accés,</i>	<i>long fit,</i>	<i>long-aksey.</i>
	<i>sang et eau,</i>	<i>blood and water,</i>	<i>sank-ay o.</i>
	<i>de rang en rang,</i>	<i>from rank to rank,</i>	<i>drank-an ran.</i>

g before *e*, *i*, has the soft sound of *zh*, or *s* in *pleasure*, or *z* in *azure*.

<i>ge, zhay, général,</i>	<i>general,</i>	<i>zhaynayral.</i>
<i>gi, zhee, gigot,</i>	<i>leg of mutton.</i>	<i>zheego.</i>

g before *a*, *o*, *u*, has the hard sound of *g* in *god* ; a sound nearly similar to that of *k* ; as,

<i>ga, ka, garçon,</i>	<i>boy,</i>	<i>karson.</i> (<i>on</i> , see r. 21.)
<i>go, ko, gorge,</i>	<i>throat,</i>	<i>korzh.</i>
<i>gu, k, guérir,</i>	<i>to cure,</i>	<i>kayreer.</i>

N. B. *gu* form only *one sound*, that of *g* hard, or *k* ; as,

<i>guérir,</i>	<i>to cure,</i>	<i>kayreer.</i>
<i>guerre,</i>	<i>war,</i>	<i>kayrr.</i>
<i>guide,</i>	<i>guide,</i>	<i>keed.</i>

except the following words, in which *gu* have each a *distinct sound* ;

<i>aiguille,</i>	<i>aiguillon,</i>	<i>ayguiser,</i>	<i>arguer,</i>	<i>ciguë,</i>	<i>aiguë,</i>	<i>ambiguë,</i>	<i>ambiguïté</i>
<i>needle,</i>	<i>sting,</i>	<i>to whet,</i>	<i>to argue,</i>	<i>hemlock,</i>	<i>sharp,</i>	<i>ambiguous,</i>	<i>ambiguity.</i>
pronounced.							
<i>aygueell,</i>	<i>aygueellon,</i>	<i>aygueesay,</i>	<i>arguay,</i>	<i>seegû,</i>	<i>aygû,</i>	<i>anbeegû,</i>	<i>ambeegueetay.</i>

gna, sound *gnya*,

gné, *gnyé,* } observing to sound the *n* as much as
gni, *gnyi,* } possible through the nose ; as,
gno, *gnyo,* }

<i>campagnard,</i>	<i>countryman,</i>	<i>kanpagnyar.</i>
<i>accompagné,</i>	<i>accompanied,</i>	<i>akonpagnay.</i>
<i>compagnie,</i>	<i>company,</i>	<i>kompagnee.</i>
<i>ignorant,</i>	<i>ignorant,</i>	<i>eegnuyoran.</i>

H

There are *two* sorts of *h* both in french and in english ; the one *aspirate*, which requires an effort of the breath ; as,

<i>héros,</i>	<i>hero,</i>	<i>hayrow.</i>
<i>hasard,</i>	<i>hazard,</i>	<i>hazar.</i>

the other *mute*, which has no sound, and serves only to shew the etymology of the words ; as,

<i>honneur,</i>	<i>honour,</i>	<i>onhur.</i> (<i>eu</i> , see r. 12.)
<i>histoire,</i>	<i>history,</i>	<i>eestwoyr.</i>

N. B. These two sorts of *h* are often embarrassing to the learner ; they are marked in dictionaries, but one should always bear some characteristic mark in writing. The *h* mute that occurs through the subjoined exercises will be preceded by an apostrophe.

ch, pronounced ; *sh* as,

<i>chat</i> ,	cat,	<i>sha</i> . (see c.)
<i>chose</i> ,	thing,	<i>shoz</i> .

ph, pronounced *f* ; as,

<i>phrase</i> ,	sentence,	<i>fraz</i> .
<i>philosophe</i> ,	philosopher,	<i>feelosof</i> .

rh, sounded, *r* ; as,

<i>rhétorique</i> ,	rhetoric,	<i>raytoreeck</i> .
<i>rhume</i> ,	cold,	<i>rhugm</i> . (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)

th, sounded *t* ; as,

<i>thomas</i> ,	thomas,	<i>tomaw</i> .
<i>méthode</i> ,	method,	<i>maytod</i> .

J

j, pronounced *zh*, or like *s* in *pleasure*, *leisure*, or *z* in *azure* ; as,

<i>jardin</i> ,	garden,	<i>zhardine</i> . (<i>in</i> , r. 19.)
<i>jour</i> ,	day,	<i>zhoor</i> .

K

k, the same sound in french as in english ; as,

<i>kan</i> ,	kan,	<i>kan</i> . (<i>an</i> , see rule 16.)
<i>stockholm</i> ,	stockholm,	<i>stokolm</i> .

L

l final is generally sounded ; as,

<i>sel</i> ,	salt,	<i>sayl</i> .
<i>fil</i> ,	thread,	<i>feel</i> . (<i>i</i> , see note 4.)
<i>cheval</i> ,	horse,	<i>shval</i> .

except

baril, *chenil*, *coutil*, *fusil*, *fenil*, *fil*, *gril*, *outil*, *percil*, *sourcil*, *soûl*.
barrel, kennel, ticking, gun, hayloft, son, gridiron, tool, parsley, eyebrow, drunk.
pronounced.

baree, *shnee*, *kootee*, *fusee*, *fnee*, *fee*, *gree*, *ootee*, *persee*, *soorsee*, *soo*.

l. In the pronouns *il*, *ils*, some sound the *l* in all instances ; others sound it only when it is followed by a *vowel* ; opinions being divided, *l* in *il*, *ils*, followed by a *consonant*, may either be pronounced or dropt ; as,

<i>il a</i> ,	he has,	<i>eel-a</i> . [n. 4.]
<i>il dit</i> ,	he says,	<i>eel dee</i> , or <i>ee dee</i> . (<i>i</i> , s.
<i>ils ont</i> ,	they have,	<i>eel-z-on</i> , or <i>ee-z-on</i> .
<i>ils disent</i> ,	they say,	<i>eel deez</i> , or <i>ee deez</i> .

In conversation *l* is not sounded in

<i>quelque</i> ,	some,	<i>kayk</i> .
<i>quelqu'un</i> ,	somebody,	<i>kaykun</i> .

ll, in general are both sounded the same as in english ; as,

<i>allégorie</i> ,	allegory,	<i>al-laygoree</i> .
<i>illustre</i> ,	illustrious,	<i>il-lustr</i> . (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)

But *ll* preceded by *i* in the middle, and at the end of words, must be sounded like *ill* in the word *million* ; as,

	<i>meilleur,</i>	better,	<i>meylhur.</i>
	<i>bouteille,</i>	bottle,	<i>booteyll.</i>
	<i>famille,</i>	family,	<i>fameell.</i>
	<i>bataille,</i>	battle,	<i>batauill.</i>
also <i>il</i> in	<i>avril,</i>	.. april,	<i>avreell.</i>
	<i>péril,</i>	peril,	<i>payreell.</i>
	<i>babil,</i>	prattling,	<i>babeel.</i>
	<i>travail,</i>	labour,	<i>travauill.</i>
	<i>soleil,</i>	sun,	<i>soleyll.</i>
	<i>gentil homme,</i>	nobleman,	<i>zhanteellom.</i>

except the following words, in which one *l* only is sounded ;

	<i>argille,</i>	<i>camomille,</i>	<i>distille,</i>	<i>imbécille,</i>	<i>mille,</i>	<i>ville,</i>	<i>pupille,</i>	<i>tranquille.</i>
	clay,	camomile,	distil,	imbecile,	thousand,	town,	pupil,	quiet.
pron.	<i>arzheel,</i>	<i>kamomeel,</i>	<i>deesteel,</i>	<i>inebayceel,</i>	<i>meel,</i>	<i>veel,</i>	<i>pupeel,</i>	<i>trankeel.</i>

M

m, at the end of a word, and in the first syllable of words beginning with *com*, has only the half sound of *n*. See note 5.

<i>faim,</i>	hunger,	<i>fine.</i> (in, see rule 19.)
<i>nom,</i>	name,	<i>non.</i> (on, see rule 21.)
<i>compliment,</i>	compliment,	<i>compleeman.</i> (an, r. 16.)

m has no sound in

<i>damner,</i>	to damn,	<i>dawnay</i> ; and deriva-
<i>solemnel,</i>	solemn,	<i>solanel.</i>
<i>automne,</i>	autumn,	<i>ôton.</i>

but *m* has a full sound in

<i>automnal,</i>	autumnal,	<i>ôtomnal.</i>
<i>amnistie,</i>	amnesty,	<i>amneestee.</i>
<i>calomnie,</i>	slander,	<i>calomnee.</i>
<i>hymne,</i>	hymn,	<i>heemn.</i>
<i>indemniser,</i>	to indemnity,	<i>inedamneesay.</i>
<i>indemnité,</i>	indemnification,	<i>inedamneetay.</i>
<i>agamemnon,</i>	agamemnon,	<i>agamemnon.</i>
<i>somnambule,</i>	sleep-walker,	<i>somnanbul.</i> (s. n. 2.)

mm, only one sound ; as,

<i>homme,</i>	man,	<i>om.</i>
<i>femme,</i>	woman,	<i>fam.</i>

except in the first syllable of the words beginning with *imm* ; as,

<i>immortel,</i>	immortal,	<i>im-mortayl.</i>
<i>immense,</i>	immense,	<i>im-manss.</i>

N

What has been said of *m* may be applied to *n*.

n, at the end of a word, or in the first syllable of words beginning with *con*, has only a half sound. See note 5.

<i>pain,</i>	bread,	<i>pine.</i>
<i>vin,</i>	wine,	<i>rine.</i>
<i>condition,</i>	condition,	<i>condeeeseon.</i> (on, r. 21.)

nn, only one sounded.

<i>année,</i>	year,	<i>anaye.</i>
<i>connaître,</i>	to know,	<i>conaytr.</i>

except the following words, in which *nn* are both sounded ;

<i>annotation,</i>	annotation,	<i>an-notasseon.</i> [tives.
<i>annuel,</i>	annual,	<i>an-nuel</i> ; and deriva-
<i>annuler,</i>	to annul,	<i>an-nulay.</i>
<i>inné,</i>	innate,	<i>in-nay.</i> [tives.
<i>innover,</i>	to innovate,	<i>in-novay</i> ; and deriva-

P

p final is not sounded, even when it is followed by a vowel ;
as,

<i>un loup,</i>	a wolf,	<i>un loo.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>ce drop est bon,</i>	this cloth is good,	<i>sdra aye bon.</i>
except in <i>cap,</i>	cap,	<i>cap.</i>
<i>cep,</i>	stock of a vine,	<i>sayp.</i>

p in *trop* and *beaucoup*, joined to a word beginning with a vowel, is sounded ; as,

<i>trop entêté,</i>	too obstinate,	<i>tro-p-antaytay.</i>
<i>beaucoup étudié,</i>	much studied,	<i>bokoo-p-ayludceay.</i>

followed by a word beginning with a consonant, *p* has no sound ; as,

<i>trop stupide,</i>	too stupid,	<i>tro stupeed.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>beaucoup d'affaires,</i>	much business,	<i>bokoo daffayr.</i>

p is sounded in

<i>baptismal,</i>	<i>sceptique,</i>	<i>septembre,</i>	<i>septentrion,</i>	<i>accepter,</i>	<i>excepter,</i>	<i>dompter.</i>
<i>baptismal,</i>	<i>sceptick,</i>	<i>september,</i>	<i>north,</i>	<i>to accept,</i>	<i>to except,</i>	<i>to subdue.</i>
<i>pron.bapteesmal,</i>	<i>saypteck,</i>	<i>sayptanbr,</i>	<i>sayptantreeon,</i>	<i>aksayptay,</i>	<i>eksayptay,</i>	<i>domptay.</i>

but *p* is not sounded in

<i>baptême,</i>	<i>compte,</i>	<i>exempt,</i>	<i>prompt,</i>	<i>manuscript,</i>	<i>symptôme,</i>	<i>sept,</i>	<i>sculpteur,</i>	<i>temp.</i>
<i>baptism,</i>	<i>account,</i>	<i>exeimpt,</i>	<i>quick,</i>	<i>manuscript,</i>	<i>symptom,</i>	<i>seven,</i>	<i>sculptor,</i>	<i>time.</i>
pronounced.								
<i>bataym,</i>	<i>cont,</i>	<i>egzan,</i>	<i>pron,</i>	<i>manuscree,</i>	<i>sinetôm,</i>	<i>sayt,</i>	<i>skulter,</i>	<i>tan.</i>

pp, one only sounded ;

<i>apparence,</i>	appearance,	<i>aparanss.</i>
<i>appartenir,</i>	to belong,	<i>apartneer.</i>

ph, sounded *f* ; as,

<i>sphère,</i>	sphere,	<i>sfayr.</i>
<i>philosophie,</i>	philosophy,	<i>feelosofee.</i>

Q

q final is found only in *coq* and *cing* ;

q is sounded, and has the sound of *k* in

<i>coq,</i>	cock,	<i>cok.</i>
<i>coq à l'âne,</i>	idle tale,	<i>cok a lawn.</i>

but it is not sounded in

<i>coq d'inde,</i>	turkey-cock,	<i>co dynd.</i> (in, s. r. 19.)
--------------------	--------------	---------------------------------

q in *cing* substantive, is sounded *k* ; as,

<i>un cing de pique,</i>	a five of spades,	<i>un synk dpeeck.</i>
<i>à cing pour cent,</i>	at five per cent,	<i>a synk poor san.</i>
<i>trois et deux font cing,</i>	three and two are five,	<i>troa-z-ay dugh fon synk.</i>

in *cing*, prefixed to a noun, and pronounced at the *same breath* with it, *q* is sounded if the noun begins with a *vowel* or *h* *mute* ; as,

<i>cing hommes,</i>	five men,	<i>synk om. (in, s. rule 19.)</i>
<i>vingt cing écus,</i>	twenty-five crowns,	<i>vyngt synk aykû.</i>

if the noun to which *cing* is prefixed, begins with a *consonant*, *q* is not sounded ; as,

<i>cing garçons,</i>	five boys,	<i>sine karson. } (in, s. rule</i>
<i>cing filles,</i>	five girls,	<i>sine feell. } 19.)</i>

qu has only one sound, that of *k* ; as,

<i>qui,</i>	who,	<i>kee. (i, see note 4.)</i>
<i>quatre,</i>	four,	<i>katr.</i>
<i>qualité,</i>	quality,	<i>kaleetay.</i>
<i>marquis,</i>	marquis,	<i>markee.</i>

except the following words, in which *qu* are pronounced *kw* : as in english :

<i>aquatique, équateur,</i>	<i>quadrature, quadruple, quadrupède</i>	<i>quadranaire, quarto.</i>
<i>aquatic, equator,</i>	<i>quadrature, quadruple, quadruped,</i>	<i>forty years old, quarto.</i>
pronounced.		
<i>akwateek, aykwater,</i>	<i>kwadratur, kwadruple, kwadrupayd,</i>	<i>kwadrashaynayr, kwarto.</i>

R

r is sounded at the end of *all words* ; as,

<i>car,</i>	for, because,	<i>kar.</i>
<i>pour,</i>	for,	<i>poor.</i>
<i>parvenir,</i>	to arrive,	<i>parvneer.</i>

except the words ending in *er* or *ier*, for more than one syllable, in which the *r* has no sound, but it gives to *e* the sound of *é* *short*, i. e. *ay* ; as,

<i>aimer,</i>	to love,	<i>aymay.</i>
<i>écolier,</i>	scholar,	<i>aykoleeay.</i>
and in		
<i>monsieur,</i>	sir,	<i>moseeugh.</i>

r is not sounded in *notre, votre, quatre*, joined to a noun beginning with a consonant ; as,

<i>notre maison,</i>	our house,	<i>not mayzon. (on, r. 21.)</i>
<i>votre chapeau,</i>	your hat,	<i>vot shapo.</i>
<i>quatre livres,</i>	four livres,	<i>kat leevr.</i>

but *r* is sounded when *notre, votre, quatre*, are joined to a noun beginning with a vowel ; as,

<i>notre ami,</i>	our friend,	<i>notr-amee.</i>
<i>votre honneur,</i>	your honour,	<i>votr-onhur. (eu, see r. 12.)</i>
<i>quatre écus,</i>	four crowns,	<i>katr-aykû.</i>
and in		
<i>notre père,</i>	our father,	<i>notr-payr, lord's prayer.</i>
<i>notre dame,</i>	our lady,	<i>notr-dam, virgin mary.</i>

r is always sounded in

<i>le nôtre,</i>	ours,	<i>lnowtr.</i>
<i>le vôtre,</i>	yours,	<i>lvowtr.</i>

rr, only one is sounded ; as,

<i>arriver,</i>	to arrive,	<i>areevay.</i>
<i>arroser,</i>	to water,	<i>arozay.</i>

except in the first syllable of the words beginning with *irr* ;

as,

<i>irrégulier,</i>	irregular,	<i>ir-rayguleeay.</i>
<i>irréprochable,</i>	irreproachable,	<i>ir-rayproshabl.</i>

S

This letter has *two* sounds common to both languages, the first *hard* or *aspirate*, like *c* *soft* ; as,

<i>somme,</i>	sum,	<i>sum.</i>
---------------	------	-------------

the other *soft* or *liquid* ; like, *z* ; as,

<i>rose,</i>	rose,	<i>roze.</i>
--------------	-------	--------------

s, at the beginning of a word, or in the body of a word, when it is preceded or followed by a *consonant*, is always pronounced *hard* or *aspirate* ; as,

<i>salut,</i>	safety,	<i>salu. (u, see note 2.)</i>
<i>souper,</i>	supper,	<i>soopay.</i>
<i>personne,</i>	nobody,	<i>payrson.</i>

s, between *two* vowels in the *body* of a word, or at the *end* of a word, which is to be pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel*, has the sound of *z* ; as,

<i>raison,</i>	reason,	<i>rayzon. (u, see rule 21.)</i>
<i>plaisir,</i>	pleasure,	<i>playzeer.</i>
<i>trois heures,</i>	three hours,	<i>troa-z-kur. 16.)</i>
<i>mes enfants,</i>	my children,	<i>may-z-anfan. (an, rule</i>

in other instances, *s* *final* has no sound ; but renders the syllable *long* ;

<i>trouvass tu ?</i>	didst thou find ?	<i>troovaw tu? (u, see n. 2.)</i>
<i>tes amis,</i>	thy friends,	<i>taye-z-amee.</i>
<i>revenus,</i>	returned,	<i>rayvnu. (see note 2.)</i>

except at the end of *greek* and *latin* names which have been adopted in the *french* language ; as,

<i>pâris,</i>	paris, <i>the trojan,</i>	<i>pawreess.</i>
<i>vénus,</i>	venus,	<i>vaynus.</i>
<i>mars,</i>	mars,	<i>mars.</i>

also in

<i>as,</i>	ace,	<i>ass.</i>
<i>vis,</i>	screw,	<i>veess.</i>
<i>lis,</i>	lily,	<i>leess.</i>
<i>aloës,</i>	aloes,	<i>aloays.</i>

but not in

<i>mars,</i>	march,	<i>mar.</i>
<i>fleur de lis,</i>	flower de luce,	<i>fluhr dloe.</i>

ss have only one sound, but always *aspirate* ; as,

<i>assurer,</i>	to assure,	<i>asuray.</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)
<i>ressentir,</i>	to resent,	<i>rsanteer.</i>

sc before *e, i*, have only one sound, that of *s aspirate* ; as,

<i>sceptique,</i>	sceptick,	<i>saypteeck.</i>
<i>science,</i>	science,	<i>seeanss.</i>

sc before *a, o, u, l, r*, have the sound of *sk* ; as,

<i>scandale,</i>	scandal,	<i>skandal.</i>
<i>gascon,</i>	gascon,	<i>kaskon.</i>
<i>scorbut,</i>	scurvy,	<i>skorbu.</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)
<i>sculpteur,</i>	sculptor,	<i>skultur.</i>
<i>esclave,</i>	slave,	<i>aysklav.</i>
<i>scrupule,</i>	scruple,	<i>skrupul.</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)

T

t has two sounds, both found in *satiety*, pronounced *society*.

t at the beginning of words has the same sound in french as in english.

<i>table,</i>	table,	<i>tabl.</i>
<i>timidité,</i>	timidity,	<i>teemeedectay.</i>

in the body of a word *t* followed by *i*, has generally the sound of *c* ;

<i>patience,</i>	patience,	<i>pawceeanss.</i>
<i>action,</i>	action,	<i>akceeon.</i>

except the following words, in which *t* retains its own sound ;

<i>bastion, question, partie,</i>	<i>matière, étions, étiez,</i>	<i>sortions, sortiez, entier.</i>
<i>bastion, question, part,</i>	<i>matter, were, were,</i>	<i>went out, went out, entire.</i>

pronounce,
basteon, kaysteon, partee, mateeayr, ayteeon, ayteeaye, sorteeon, sorteeaye, anteeay.

<i>entièrement, chrétien,</i>	<i>chrétienté, soutien, entretien,</i>	<i>il retient.</i>
<i>entirely, christian,</i>	<i>christendom, support, maintenance,</i>	<i>he retains.</i>

pronounce,
anteeyrman, crayteeyen, krayteeantay, sooteeyen, antrayteeyen, il rayteeyen.

and the words *ending* in *tié*, and *tier* ; as,

<i>amitié,</i>	friendship,	<i>ameeteey.</i>
<i>châtier,</i>	to chastise,	<i>shawteeay.</i>

t final is not sounded ; as,

<i>tout,</i>	all,	<i>too.</i>
<i>il est,</i>	it is,	<i>eel aye.</i>
<i>fait,</i>	done,	<i>fay.</i>

except in

<i>est, ouest,</i>	east, west,	<i>ayst, west.</i>
<i>lest, dot,</i>	ballast, dower,	<i>layst, dot.</i>
<i>brut, correct,</i>	rough, correct,	<i>brut, corrayct.</i>
<i>un fat, un sot,</i>	a fop, a fool,	<i>un fat, un sot.</i>
<i>pact, exact,</i>	pact, exact,	<i>pact, egzact.</i>

and when it ends a word which must be pronounced at

the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel* ; as,

<i>est-elle ?</i>	is she ?	<i>aye-t-ell ?</i>	rule.)
<i>tout à fait,</i>	quite,	<i>too-t-afay.</i>	(see general

but never in

<i>et,</i>	and, (<i>conjunction</i> .)	<i>ay.</i>
------------	------------------------------	------------

t is sounded in *sept, huit*, substantives : as,

<i>un sept,</i>	a seven,	<i>un sayt,</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)
<i>un huit,</i>	an eight,	<i>un hueet.</i>

in *sept, huit, vingt, cent*, joined to a noun, *t* is sounded when the noun which follows it begins with a *vowel* ; as,

<i>sept enfants,</i>	seven children,	<i>sayt-enfan.</i>
<i>huit amis,</i>	eight friends,	<i>hueet-amee.</i> (s. gen. rul.)

if the noun begins with a *consonant*, *t* has no sound ; as,

<i>sept navires,</i>	seven ships,	<i>say nawveer.</i>
<i>cent chevaux,</i>	a hundred horses,	<i>san shvô.</i>

tt, only one sounded ; as,

<i>attirer,</i>	to attract,	<i>ateeray.</i>
<i>frotter,</i>	to rub,	<i>frotay.</i>

V

v has the same sound in french as in english ; as,

<i>vanité,</i>	vanity,	<i>vaneetay.</i>
<i>vivacité,</i>	vivacity,	<i>veevaceetay.</i>

X

This letter has *three* sounds, viz. *gz, ks, and z.*

In the first syllable of a word, *x* followed by a *vowel*, is sounded *gz* ; as,

<i>exemple,</i>	example,	<i>egzanple.</i>
<i>exister,</i>	to exist,	<i>egzèestay.</i>

followed by a *consonant*, it is sounded *ks* ; as,

<i>excès,</i>	excess,	<i>ayksaye.</i>
<i>exposer,</i>	to expose,	<i>ayksposay.</i>

x is also sounded *ks* in

<i>sex, axe,</i>	sex, axle,	<i>sayks, aks.</i>
<i>fluxion,</i>	fluxion,	<i>flukseon.</i> (<i>u</i> , s. note 2.)
<i>axiome,</i>	axiom,	<i>akseeom.</i>
<i>stix, phœnix,</i>	stix, phoenix,	<i>steeks, fayneeks.</i>
<i>index, pollux,</i>	index, pollux,	<i>inedeks, polluks.</i>
<i>alexandre,</i>	alexander,	<i>alayksundr.</i>

x has the sound of *s* *aspirate* in

<i>six, dix,</i>	six, ten,	<i>sees, dees.</i>
<i>dix sept,</i>	seventeen,	<i>deessayt.</i>
<i>soixante,</i>	sixty,	<i>soassant.</i>

x final generally has no sound ; it only renders the syllable *long* ; as,

<i>beaux,</i>	<i>fine,</i>	<i>bô.</i>
<i>lieux,</i>	<i>places,</i>	<i>leeugh.</i>

except when it ends a word which is pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel*, then it is sounded *z* ; as,

<i>six amis,</i>	<i>six friends,</i>	<i>see-z-amee.</i>
<i>beaux yeux,</i>	<i>fine eyes,</i>	<i>bô-z-yeugh. (gen. rule.)</i>

and when it is followed by *ième*, or *ièment* ; as,

<i>deuxième,</i>	<i>second,</i>	<i>dughziem.</i>
<i>sixièment,</i>	<i>sixthly,</i>	<i>seezeemman.</i>

Z

z has the same sound in french as in english ; as,

<i>zèle,</i>	<i>zeal,</i>	<i>zayl.</i>
--------------	--------------	--------------

z final has no sound ; but renders the syllable *long*,

<i>vous avez,</i>	<i>you have,</i>	<i>voo-z-avaye.</i>
<i>vous parlez,</i>	<i>you speak,</i>	<i>voo parlaye.</i>

except in *chez*, at one's house, followed by a *vowel* ; as,

<i>chez elle,</i>	<i>at her house,</i>	<i>shay-z-ell.</i>
-------------------	----------------------	--------------------

PROSODY, OR PRONUNCIATION OF SYLLABLES.

By *PROSODY* is meant the manner of pronouncing each syllable regularly, *i. e.* according to what each syllable taken separately, requires.

It is certain that some *diversity* must be observed in the pronounciation of syllables, otherwise the language would be perfect monotony ; there are then divers inflexions of the voice, some which raise the tone, some which lower it, and this is what grammarians call *prosodical accent*.*

GENERAL RULES.

I. The penultima vowel of all words ending with *e* mute, is long ; as, *pensée*, thought ; *armée*, army ; *je lie*, I tie ; *je me fie*, I trust myself ; *joie*, joy ; *j'envoie*, I send ; *je loue*, I praise ; *il joue*, he plays ; *je nûe*, I shadow ; *la rue*, the street ; *de la morûe*, cod-fish, &c.

But if, in these words, the *e* mute were changed into a masculine *é*, then the penultima would become short ; as, *liér*, to tie ; *louér*, to praise ; *nûer*, to shadow.

II. When a vowel ends a syllable, and is followed by another vowel, which is not *e* mute, that syllable is short ; as, *créé*, created ; *féal*, trusty ; *action*, action ; *hâir*, to hate ; *doué*, endowed ; *tûer*, to kill.

III. Every syllable ending with any consonant but *s*, *x*, or *z*, is short ; as, *sâc*, sack ; *lâc*, lake ; *sêl*, salt ; *éventâil*, fan ; *fâim*, hunger ; *parfûm*, perfume ; *sêin*, bosom ; *soin*, care ; *garçon*, boy ; *câp*, cape ; *nectâr*, nectar ; *pôt*, pot ; *sört*, fate, &c.

* This mark (˘) is intended to show that the syllable is *long* ; this other (˙) that it is *short* ; and the doubtful syllables are marked with a *grave accent*, thus (̀).

IV. Every syllable ending with *s*, *x*, or *z*, is long ; *des sacs*, sacks ; *des sêls*, salts ; *des pôts*, pots ; *mon fils*, my son ; *la paix*, peace ; *la voix*, the voice ; *le nêz*, the nose.

V. Between two vowels, the last of which is mute, the letter *s* or *x* lengthens the penultima ; as, *extâse*, extasy ; *diocèse*, diocese ; *il pèse*, he weighs ; *betise*, foolishness ; *franchise*, candour ; *rose*, rose ; *épouse*, spouse ; *ruse*, cunning ; *recluse*, recluse ; *aise*, glad ; *thèse*, thesis ; *vase*, vessel.

And it then generally happens, that the antepenultima becomes short ; as, *il s'extâsie*, he falls into extasy ; *pesée*, weighing ; *épousée*, married, &c. for the french prosody requires that the penultima be strong, if the final is mute, and that the penultima be weak, if the voice rests upon the final.

VI. An *s* or an *x* sounded, preceded by a vowel, and followed by a consonant, always renders the syllable short ; as, *jâspe*, jasper ; *mâsque*, mask ; *âstre*, star ; *burlesque*, burlesque ; *funeste*, fatal ; *piste*, track ; *risque*, risk ; *pôte*, post ; *brusque*, abrupt ; *juste*, just ; *barbe*, beard ; *barque*, bark ; *berceau*, cradle ; *infirme*, infirm.

But when there are two *rr*, if the two together form only an indivisible sound, the syllable is always long ; as, *arrêt*, arrest ; *barre*, bar ; *bisarre*, whimsical ; *tonnerre*, thunder ; *éclorre*, to be hatching, &c.

VII. When the nasal vowels *am*, *an*, *em*, *en*, *im*, *in*, *aim*, *ain*, *ein*, *om*, *on*, *um*, *un*, are followed by a consonant, which is neither *m* nor *n*, and which begins another syllable, they are long ; as, *ainsi*, thus ; *jâmbé*, leg ; *jâmbon*, ham ; *crâinte*, fear ; *tremble*, to tremble ; *peindre*, to paint ; *joindre*, to join ; *tômbé*, to fall ; *humble*, humble, &c.

If *m* or *n* be doubled, it renders the syllable short to which the first of the doubled consonant belongs ; as, *hômme*, man ; *femme*, woman ; *épigramme*, epigram ; *qu'il prenne*, let him take ; *consônne*, consonant ; *persônne*, person, nobody.

PARTICULAR RULES.

A

A, the first letter of the alphabet, is long ; as, *un petit â*, a little *a* ; *il ne sait ni â ni b*, he knows neither *a* nor *b*.

A, the preposition, is short ; as, *je suis à Paris*, I am at Paris ; *j'écris à Rome*, I write to Rome ; as is also *a* in the third person singular of the verb *avoir*, to have ; *il â de beaux livres*, he has fine books ; *il â été*, he has been ; *il â parlé*, he has spoken.

At the beginning of a word *a* is long, in *âcre*, sour ; *âge*, age ; *âme*, soul ; *âne*, ass ; *âpre*, harsh ; *ârrhes*, earnest money ; *âs*, ace, &c.

These instances excepted, *a* is short, whether it makes a syllable of itself ; as in *âpôté*, apostle ; or is followed by a double consonant, as in *âpprendre*, to learn ; or by two consonants which are different, as in *âltéré*, altered ; *ârgument*, argument.

At the end of a word *a* is very short in the preterite and future tenses of verbs ; as, *il aimâ*, he loved ; *il chantâ*, he sung ; *il aimerâ*, he will love ; *il chanterâ*, he will sing. In the articles *lâ*, the ; *mâ*, my ; *tâ*, thy ; *sâ*, his. In the adverbs *câ*, here ; *lâ*, there ; *déjà*, already. A little more stress is laid upon the *a*, in substantives borrowed from foreign languages ; as, *sofâ*, sofa ; *duplicatâ*, duplicate, &c.

ABE, always short ; as, *arâbe*, arabian ; except *astrolâbe*, astrolabe ; *crâbe*, crab.

ABLE, short in all adjectives ; as, *aimâble*, amiable ; *capâble*, capable, &c. long in most substantives ; as, *câble*, cable ; *fâble*, fable ; *sâble*, sand ; and in these verbs, *on m'accâble*, I am overwhelmed ; *je m'ensâble*, I stick in the sand ; *il hâble*, he brags.

ABRE, always long ; as, *sâbre*, sabre ; *il se câbre*, he rears ; also in the masculine termination ; *se câbrer*, to rear ; *délâbré*, in tatters.

AC, always short ; as, *sâc*, sack ; *lâc*, lake ; *trictâc*, back-gammon. See III. Gen. Rule.

ACE, long, in *grâce*, favor ; *espâce*, space ; *lâcer*, to lace ; *délâcer*, to unlace.

These words excepted ; *ace* is short ; as, *glâce*, ice, looking-glass ; *prêfâce*, preface.

ACHE, long, in *lâche*, coward ; *tâche*, task ; *relâche*, relaxation ; *je mâche* I chew.* As also in the masculine terminations *mâcher*, to chew ; *relâcher*, to relax, &c.

In all other instances *ACHE* is short ; as, *tâche*, a spot ; *moustâche*, whisker ; *vâche*, cow ; *il se câche*, he conceals himself ; *il arrâche*, he pulls out, &c.

ACLE, long, in *il râcle*, he scrapes ; *il débâcle*, the ice is breaking ; these two words excepted, *ACLE*, is doubtful ; as, *orâcle*, oracle ; *mirâcle*, miracle ; *obstâcle*, obstacle.

* Formerly written *lasche*, *tasche*, with a mute *s*, to show that they are long. This is now supplied by a circumflex accent, and it should not be omitted over these words, as the pronunciation of a word sometimes alters its meaning.

ACRE, long, in *âcre*, tart; but short in all other words; as, *diûcre*, deacon; *fiûcre*, hackney-coach; *âcre*, an acre; *sâcre du roi*, the king's coronation.

ADE, always short, as, *sérénâde*, serenade; *cascâde*, cascade; *fâde*, tasteless; *il persuâde*, he persuades; *il s'évâde*, he makes his escape.

ADRE, short in *lâdre*, leprous; but long in *côdre*, frame; *escâdre*, squadron; even when the word ends with *e* mascul. as, *mâdré*, speckled; *encâdrer*, to frame.

AFFRE, always short; as, *carâfe*, decanter; *épitâphe*, epitaph; *egrâffe*, clasp.

AFRE, AFFRE, long, in *âffre*, fright; *bâfre*, gluttony; short in all other instances; as, *balâfre*, gash; *sâfre*, ravenous.

AFLE, long; as, *râfle*, a royal pair at dice; *j'érâfle*, I scratch; and the same quantity is preserved when *e* final is short; as, *râfler*, to sweep away; *érâfler*, to scratch slightly.

AGE, long in the word *âge*, age; but so short in all the rest that we dwell a little upon the penultima; *partâge*, division; *avantâge*, advantage, &c.

AGNE, always short, except in the verb *gâgner*, to gain; *je gâgne*, I gain.

AGUE, always short, *bâgue*, ring; *dâgue*, dagger; *vâgue*, wave, vague,

AI, a false diphthong, which produces only a simple sound. When it has the sound of *è* long, it is doubtful; as, *vrâi*, true; *essâi*, essay; but it is short when the sound approaches to that of *é* short; as, *j'ai*, I have; *je chantâi*, I sang.

AIE, always long; as, *hâie*, hedge; *plâie*, wound; *vrâie*, true. See I. Gen. Rule.

AYE, short; as, *vous âyez*, you may have; *vous pâyez*, you pay; *vous bégâyez*, you stammer. See II. General Rule.

The reason of this difference between AIE and AYE is, that AIE makes only one syllable, and that Y, which is equivalent to *ii*, dividing the word into two syllables. these words are pronounced as if they were spelt *ai-iez*, *pai-iez*, *bégai-iez*, the first syllable of which is pronounced like *é* short. (See *ai*, compound vowel.)

AIGNE, always short; as, *chatâigne*, chestnut; *je dàigne*, I deign; *il se bâigne*, he is bathing; *on le saigne*, they are bleeding him.

AIGRE, always short; as, *âigre*, tart; *maigre*, lean; *vinâigre*, vinegar, &c.

AIL. General Rule. When a word ends with *l* liquid, the syllable is short; as, *éventâil*, fan; *gouvernâil*, rudder; the *a* being the only vowel which is heard in the penultima, and the *i* serving only to soften the sound of the following consonant. This is also the case in the three following paragraphs.

AILLE, short in *medâille*, medal; and in the following verbs; *je détaîlle*, I retail; *j'émâille*, I enamel; *je travaîlle*, I work; but it is long in all other words; as, *je raîlle*, I jeer; *il bâille*, he yawns; *il brâille*, he brawls; *il rimâille*, he makes poor verses.

AILLET, AILLIR, short; as, *mâillet*, mallet; *pâillet*, pale coloured; *jâillir*, to spout; *assâillir*, to assault.

AILLON, short in *médâillon*, medallion; *batâillon*, battalion; *nous émâillons*, we enamel; *détaillons*, let us detail; *travâillons*, let us work. These words excepted, AILLON is long; as, *haillon*, tattered clothes; *bâillon*, gag; *nous taillons*, we cut, &c.

AIM, AIN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

AIME. This termination is found only in the verb *âimer*, to love; which is short; as, *j'aime*, I love; *tu âimes*, thou lovest, &c.

AINE, long, in *hâine*, hatred; *châine*, chain; *gâine*, sheath; *je traîne*, I draw, and their derivatives. These instances excepted, AINE is short; as, *capitâine*, captain; *fontâine*, fountain; *semâine*, week; *lâine*, wool.

AIR, AIRE. The first is doubtful in the singular; as, *l'air*, the air; *chair*, flesh; *éclair*, lightning, &c. The second is long; as, *une pâire*, a pair; *la châire*, the pulpit.

AIS, AIX, AISE, AISSE, all long; as, *palâis*, palace; *j'avâis*, I had; *j'étais*, I was; *un françaîs*, a frenchman; *pâix*, peace; *fournâise*, furnace; *câisse*, chest.

AIT, AITE, both short; as, *lâit*, milk; *attrâit*, charm; *retrâite*, retreat, &c. except *il plâit*, he pleases; *il nâit*, it springs; *il repâit*, he feeds; *le fâitc*, the summit.

AITRE, always long; *trâitre*, traitor; *mâitre*, master; and other terminations of the same sound, though spelt differently; as, *parâitre*, or *parâître*, to appear, &c.

ALE, ALLE, always short; as, *cigâlle*, cicada; *scandâle*, scandal; *une mâlle*, a trunk; *une bûlle*, a ball; except *hâle*, sunburning; *pâle*, pale; *un mâle*, a male; *un râle*, a rail; and the derivatives of these words, though the final syllable be masculine; as, *hâlê*, parched by the sun; *râler*, to rattle; *pâlr*, to grow pale; *pâler*, paleness.

AM, AN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

AME, always short; as, *dâme*, lady; *râme*, oar, ream, &c. except in the following words; *âme*, soul; *infâme*, infamous; *blâme*, blame; *il se pâme*, he swoons; *un brâme*, a bramin; and in all the preterite tenses of verbs; as, *nous aimâmes*, we loved; *nous chantâmes*, we sang; *nous parlâmes*, we spoke; *nous jouâmes*, we played, &c.

ANE, ANNE, always short ; as, *cabâne*, cottage ; *orgâne*, organ, &c. except *âne*, ass ; *crâne*, skull ; *les mânes*, the manes ; *de la mianne*, manna ; *une mianne*, a basket.

ANT. See III. General Rule. N. B. In the word *comptant* there is a difference ; when a participle, it is long ; as, *je me suis trompé en comptant l'argent*, I made a mistake in counting the money ; and it is short when used as a substantive or adverb ; as, *il a du comptant*, he has ready money ; *payer comptant*, to pay in ready money.

AP, always short ; as, *câp*, cape. See III. General Rule.

APE, APPE, always short ; *pâpe*, pope ; *trâpe*, trap ; *grâpe*, a bunch ; *on frappe*, somebody knocks ; except *ràpe*, a rasp ; and *râper*, to rasp, in which it is long.

APRE ; *câpre*, caper ; *âpre*, tart ; the only two words of this termination, are long.

AQUE, always short, except *pâques*, easter ; and *Jâques*, James.

AR, always short, as *câr*, for ; *nectâr*, nectar. See III. General Rule.

ARBE. General Rule. Every syllable which finishes with *r*, and is followed by another syllable beginning with a consonant ; is short ; as, *bârbe*, beard ; *bârque*, bark ; *bërceau*, cradle ; *infirme*, infirm ; *ordre*, order, &c.

ARE, long ; as *barbâre*, barbarous ; *je prépâre*, I prepare ; but when the last syllable is not mute, ARE is short ; as, *égâré*, strayed ; *prépârant*, preparing ; *barbârie*, barbary.

ARRE. General Rule. Whatever vowel precedes two *rr*, if the two together form only one sound, the syllable is long ; as *ârrêt*, arrest ; *barre*, bar ; *tonnërre*, thunder, &c.

ARI, ARIE, always short ; as, *mâri*, husband ; *pâri*, wager ; *Mârie*, Mary ; *barbârie*, barbary ; except *hourvâri*, uproar ; *mârri*, sorry ; *équarri*, squared

AS, commonly long, as there are few words terminated in this manner in which the *a* is not sounded very open, whether the *s* be pronounced ; as in *Pallâs*, Pallas ; *âs*, ace ; or whether it be mute, as in *tâs*, heap ; *tu âs*, thou hast ; *tu aimâs*, thou lovedst ;

ASE, always long ; as *bâse*, basis ; *Pagâse*, Pagasus ; *emphâse*, emphasis ; *extâse*, ecstasy ; *râser*, to shave ; *jâser*, to chatter. See V. General Rule.

ESPE, General Rule. An *s* sounded, preceded by a vowel, and followed by a consonant, always renders the syllable short ; as, *mâsque*, mask. See VI. General Rule.

ASSE, short ; except in the substantives *bâsse*, base ; *câsse*, cassia ; *clâsse*, class ; *échâsse*, stilt ; *pâsse*, pass ; *nâsse*, bow-net ; *tâsse*, cup ; *châsse*, shrine ; *mâsse*, mass ; in the feminine adjectives *bâsse*, low, base ; *grâsse*, fat ; *lâsse*, weary ; and in the following verbs ; *il amâsse*, he collects ; *il enchâsse*, he incases ; *il câsse*, he breaks ; *il pâsse*, he passes ; *il compâsse*, he measures ; with their compounds.

All these words retain their quantity, even when the termination, instead of being mute, is masculine ; as *châssis*, sash ; *câsser*, to break ; *pâsser*, to pass.

Add to these the first and second persons singular, and the third person plural of verbs, terminated in *âsse*, *âsses*, *âssent*, in the subjunctive ; as, *j'aimâsse*, I might love ; *tu aimâsses*, thou mightest love ; *ils aimâssent*, they might love.

AT, long in the substantives *bât*, a pack-saddle ; *mât*, mast ; *appât*, bait ; *degât*, havock ; and in the third person singular of the perfect of the subjunctive *il aimât*, he might love ; *il chantât*, he might sing ; *il parlât*, he might speak, &c.*

In all other substantives, in adjectives, and in the present of the indicative, AT is short ; as, *avocât*, counsellor ; *éclât*, splendour ; *plât*, flat, a dish ; *on se bât*, people fight.

ATE, always short, except in *hâte*, haste ; *pâte*, dough ; *il gâte*, he spoils ; *il mâte*, he masts ; *il démâte*, he dismasts ; and in the second person plural of the preterite tenses of verbs, terminated in *âtes* ; as *vous aimâtes*, you loved ; *vous parlâtes*, you spoke.

ATRE, short in *quâtre*, four ; and in *bâtre*, to beat, with its derivatives *abâtre*, to pull down ; *combâtre*, to fight, &c.

These instances excepted, ATRE is always long ; as, *idolâtre*, idolatrous ; *théâtre*, theatre ; *opiniâtre*, obstinate ; *emplâtre*, plaster, &c.

AU, compound vowel. When this vowel forms a syllable which is followed by a mute termination, it is long ; as, *âuge*, through ; *âutre*, other ; *âune*, ell ; *pâume*, tennis.

It is also long when in the last syllable of a word it is followed by a consonant ; as, *haut*, high ; *chaud*, hot ; *châux*, lime ; *faux*, false ; except *Paul*, Paul.

But AU is doubtful when it precedes a masculine syllable ; as, *aubade*, serenade ; *audace*, audacity ; *automne*, autumn ; *augmenter*, to increase ; *auteur*, author ; and when it is final ; as, *joyâu*, jewel ; *coteau*, hillock ; *couteau*, knife.

AVE, short in *ràve*, radish ; *câve*, cellar ; *on pàve*, they are paving ; but oftener long ; as, *entràve*, shackles ; *grave*, grave, serious.

But when *v* instead of being followed by *e* mute, is followed by a masculine syllable, the preceding syllable is short ; as, *grâvier*, gravel ; *aggrâver*, to aggravate.

* Formerly spelt with an *s* mute, to show that they are long ; as, *bast*, *mast*, *il aimast*, *vous aimastes*, &c. This is now supplied by a circumflex accent, *bât*, *mât*, &c.

BRAVE preceding its substantive is short ; as, *un brave homme*, a well-behaved man ; but long when it comes after it ; as, *un homme brave*, a brave or courageous man.

AVRE, always long ; as *havre*, harbour ; *cadavre*, corpse.

AX, AXE, always short ; as, *Ajâx*, Ajax ; *thorâx*, thorax ; *borâx*, borax ; *âxe* axle ; *tâxe*, tax ; *parallâxe*, parallax.

E

The French distinguish three sorts of *e*, which express different sounds ; the difference of which is perceived in *fermeté*, firmness ; *honnêteté*, honesty.

The first *e* in each of these words, is long, the second mute, and the third short.

E mute is also called feminine ; the others are called masculine.

There is no accent over *e* mute, the short requires an accute accent, and the long a grave, or a circumflex, but it is found sometimes without any of these signs, as appears in the first syllable of the word *fermeté*.

With respect to *e* mute, it is sufficient to know that it never begins a word, and that it is seldom found in several consecutive syllables ; for if it is found in some compound words, such as *revenir*, to return ; *redevenir*, to become again ; *entretenir*, to entertain ; at least this never happens at the end of a word ; thus the *e* which is mute or feminine in the penultima of the infinitive of verbs ; as, *appeler*, to call ; *pêser*, to weigh ; *mener*, to lead ; *devoir*, to owe ; *concevoir*, to conceive, becomes masculine, or is changed into the diphthong *oi*, in the tenses which end with *e* mute ; *j'appèle*, I call ; *il pèse*, he weighs ; *il mène*, he leads ; *ils doivent*, they owe ; *ils conçoivent*, &c.

For the same reason, though we make *e* mute in *chapelain*, chaplain ; *chandelier*, candlestick : *celui-ci*, this ; *j'aime*, I love ; *je chante*, I sing ; we sound it in *chapelle*, chapel ; *chandelle*, candle : *celle*, that ; *aimé-je*, do I love ? *chanté-je*, do I sing ?

For such is the genius of the french language, that the penultima be strong, if the final is mute, and that the penultima be weak, if the voice rests upon the final.

EBLE, EBRE, EC, ECE, always short ; as, *hiëble*, wallwort ; *funëbre*, mournful ; *béc*, bill ; *nièce*, niece.

ECHE, long and very open in *bêche*, spade ; *lèche*, thin slice ; *grièche*, noisy ; *pêche*, fishing ; *pêche*, peach ; *il empêche*, he prevents ; *il dépêche*, he dispatches ; *il prêche*, he preaches. Short in *calèche*, calash ; *flèche*, arrow ; *mèche*, match ; *crèche*, crib ; *sèche*, dry, the cuttle-fish ; *brèche*, breach ; *on prêche*, people sin.

ECLE, ECT, ECTE, DRE, EDE, EDER, all short ; as *siècle*, age ; *respect*, respect ; *insecte*, insect ; *cèdre*, cedar ; *remède*, remedy ; *céder*, to yield ; *posséder*, to possess, &c.

E'E. General Rule. The penultima vowel of all words ending with *e* mute, is long ; as, *pensée*, thought ; *armée*, army ; *je lie*, I tie. See I. General Rule.

E'E'. General Rule. When a vowel ends a syllable, and is followed by another vowel which is not *e* mute, that syllable is short ; as, *créé*, created ; *féal*, trusty ; *action*, action ; *hâir*, to hate ; *tuer*, to kill, &c. See II. General Rule.

EF, EFFE, the first is short ; as, *chêf*, chief ; *brêf*, brief, short. The second long ; as, *grêffe*, graft, the rolls ; *je grêffe*, I graft.

EFFLE, long, in *nêfle*, medlar ; short in *trêfle*, trefoil, club.

EGE, EGLE. The first long ; as, *sacrilège*, sacrilegious ; *collège*, college ; *siège*, seat, siege. The other short ; as, *règle*, rule ; *sêgle*, rye, &c.

EGNE, EIGNE. The first is doubtful ; as, *règne*, reign ; *duègne*, duenna. The other is short ; as *pèigne*, comb ; *ensèigne*, sing ; *qu'il fèigne*, let him pretend.

EGRE, EGUE, short ; as, *negre*, negro ; *intègre*, upright ; *bègue*, a stammerer ; *collègue*, colleague ; *il allègue*, he alleges, &c.

EIL, EILLE, short ; as *solèil*, sun ; *sommèil*, sleep ; *abèille*, bee ; *boutèille*, bottle ; the only exceptions are, *vièlle*, old woman ; *vièillard*, old man ; *vièillesse*, old age.

EIN, ERNT. See III. and VII. General Rules.

EINE, short ; as, *vèine*, vein ; *pèine*, pain ; the only exception is *rèine*, queen.

EINTE, always long ; as, *attèinte*, stroke ; *fèinte*, feint.

EL, always short ; as, *sêl*, salt ; *cruêl*, cruel, &c. See III. General Rule.

ELE, ELLE, long in *zèle*, zeal ; *poêle*, frying pan ; *frêle*, frail ; *pêle mêle*, confusedly ; *grêle*, hail ; *il se fêle*, it cracks ; *la brébis tèle*, the sheep bleats.

These instances excepted, **ELE ELLE**, is always short ; as, *modèle*, model ; *fidèle*, faithful ; *rebêlle*, rebellious ; *mortêlle*, mortal, &c.

EM, EN. See III. and VII. General Rules ; and sound the final consonant in *itêm*, item ; *Béthlèêm*, Bethlehem ; *amèn*, amen ; *himen*, hymen ; *examèn*, examination.

EME, doubtful in *crème*, cream ; short in *je sème*, I sow ; *il sème*, he sows ; and long in all other words ; as, *baptême*, baptism ; *diadème*, diadem ; *même*, even, &c.

ENE, long in *chêne*, oak ; *cène*, the lord's supper ; *scène*, scene ; *gène*, rack ; *alène*, awl ; *rène*, rein ; *frêne*, ash-tree ; *arène*, area ; *pène*, the bolt of a lock ; and in the proper names, *Athènes*, Athens ; *Diogènes*, Diogenes ; *Mécène*, Mæcenus, &c. but short in

phénomène, phenomenon ; *ébène*, ebony ; *étrème*, new year's gift ; *qu'il prënnë*, let him take ; *qu'il viënnë*, let him come ; and in all words in which the consonant is doubled.

EPE, EPRE, always long ; as, *guêpe*, wasp ; *crêpe*, crape ; *vêpres*, vespers ; except *lèpre*, leprosy.

EPTE, EPTRE ; ECTRE, always short ; as *précëpte*, precept ; *il accëpte*, he accepts ; *scëptre*, sceptre ; *spëctre*, spectre.

EQUE, ECQUE, always short ; as, *grëcque*, greek ; *bibliothëque*, library ; *obsëques*, funeral, &c. except *ëvêque*, bishop ; *archevêque*, archbishop.

ER is short in *Jupitër*, Jupiter ; *Lucifër*, Lucifer ; *éthër*, æther ; *chër*, dear ; *cancër*, cancer ; *patër*, the lord's prayer ; *magistër*, a country schoolmaster ; *fratër*, a surgeon's apprentice ; and long in *fër*, iron ; *enfër*, hell ; *lëgër*, light ; *mer*, sea ; *amër*, bitter ; *hivër*, winter ; but it is doubtful in the infinitive of verbs when the *r* is sounded with the following vowel, as is always the case in repeating verses.

ERBE, ERCE, ERSE, ERCHE, ERCLE, ERDE, ERDRE, all short. See the General Rule under ARBE.

ERD, ERT, doubtful ; as, *concërt*, concert ; *ouvèrt*, open ; *dësèrt*, desert, wilderness ; *il pèrd*, he loses ; *le vèrd*, green, &c.

ERE, doubtful ; as, *chimère*, chimera ; *père*, father ; *sincère*, sincere ; *il espère*, he hopes, &c. but long in the third person plural of the perfect tense of verbs ; as, *ils allèrent*, they went ; *ils parlèrent*, they spoke ; *ils chantèrent*, they sang, &c.

ERGE, ERGUE, ERLE, ERME, ERNE, ERPE, all short. See ARBE, General Rule.

ERR, always long when agreeably to the general rule, the two *rr* form only one indivisible sound ; as in *guërre*, war ; *tonnërre*, thunder ; *nous vèrrons*, we shall see ; short when the two *rr* are pronounced separately ; as, *ërreur*, error ; *tërreur*, terror, &c.

ERTE, ERTRE, ERVE all short. See ARBE. General Rule.

ESSE, long in *confësse*, confession ; *prësse*, press ; *comprësse*, compress ; *exprësse*, express ; *cësse*, ceasing ; *on s'emprësse*, they are eager ; *il profësse*, he professes.

These instances excepted, ESSE is short ; as, *tendrësse*, tenderness ; *parësse*, laziness ; *carësse*, caress ; *jeunësse*, youth, &c.

ESQUE, ESTE, ESTRE. See VI. General Rule.

ET, long in *arrèt*, a decree ; *benèt*, a simpleton ; *forèt*, forest ; *genèt*, broom ; *prèt*, ready ; *aprèt*, preparation ; *acquët*, acquisition ; *intërèt*, interest ; *il èst*, he is.*

These instances excepted, ET is short ; as, *cadèt*, younger, junior ; *bidèt*, pony ; *èt*, and ; *sujèt*, subject ; *brochèt*, pike, &c.

ETE, long in *bête*, beast ; *fête*, feast ; *arbalète*, a cross-bow ; *boête*, box ; *tempête*, tempest ; *quête*, quest ; *conquête*, conquest ; *enquête*, inquest ; *requête*, request, petition ; *arrête*, fish-bone ; *crête*, crest, a coxcomb ; *tête*, head ; in all other instances, ETE is short ; and the *t* is doubled ; as, *tablëtte*, shelf, memorandum-book ; *houlëtte*, crook ; unless the etymology forbids doubling it, as, *prophète*, prophet ; *poëte*, poet.

Honnête is short when placed before a noun ; as, *un honnête homme*, an honest man ; it is long when placed after ; as, *un homme honnête*, a civil man.

Vous êtes, the second person plural of the present tense of *être*, is either long or short, as the poet chooses.

ETRE, long in *être*, a being, to be ; *salpêtre*, saltpetre ; *ancêtre*, ancestor ; *fenêtre*, window ; *prêtre*, priest ; *champêtre*, rural ; *hêtre*, beech ; *guêtres*, spatterdashes.

In all other instances ETRE is short, and *t* is doubled, unless the etymology prevents it ; as, *diamètre*, diameter ; *il penètre*, he penetrates ; *lëttre*, letter ; *mëttre*, to put.

EU, compound vowel, short in the singular, *fëu*, fire ; *blëu*, blue ; *jëu*, game, sport ; *vëu*, vow ; *nevëu*, nephew, &c.

EVE, long in *trëve*, truce ; *la grëve*, the sea-shore ; *il rêve*, he dreams ; and the penultima of the verb *rêver*, remains long in all its tenses ; as, *rêver*, to dream ; *je rêvai*, I dreamt ; but EVE is doubtful in *fëve*, bean ; *brëve*, brief, short ; *il achëve*, he finishes ; *il crëve*, it bursts ; *il se lève*, he rises ; and the penultima of these verbs is mute, if it be followed by a masculine syllable ; as, *achever*, to finish ; *il se levait*, he was rising.

EUF, short ; as, *veuf*, widower ; *neuf*, new ; *un œuf*, an egg ; *un bœuf*, an ox.

N. B. The *f* is pronounced in all these words, in the singular, but not in the plural, except in *veufs*, widowers.

EUIL, short ; as, *seuil*, threshold ; *fautëuil*, arm-chair, &c. See III. General Rule.

EULE, long in *meüle*, grinding stone, mill-stone. This excepted, EULE is short ; as, *sëule*, single, alone ; *guëule*, the name given to the mouth of beasts and fishes.

* All these words, as well as those in the two following paragraphs, were formerly spelt with a mute *s*, which is now suppressed, and supplied by a circumflex, except in *est*, the third person singular of the present tense of *être*, in which *s* is still retained.

EUNE, long in *jeûne*, fasting ; and short in *jeûne*, young.

EUR, EURE. The first is short in the singular ; *odœur*, odour ; *pœur*, fear ; *majœur*, of age ; and long in the plural *odœurs*, odours : but the second is doubtful, *i. e.*

If **EURE** ends a word pronounced at the same breath with another word, it is short ; as, *la majeure partie*, the major part ; *une heure entière*, a whole hour. If there is no word after it, to be pronounced at the same breath with it, it is long ; as, *cette fille est majeure*, that girl is of age ; *j'attends depuis une heure*, I have been waiting for an hour.

EVRE, doubtful ; *lèvre*, lip ; *chèvre*, goat ; *lièvre*, hare ; *orfèvre*, gold or silver-smith.

EUX, EUSE, long ; *doux*, two ; *précieux*, *précieuse*, precious ; *creuser*, to dig, &c.

EX, always short ; as, *exemple*, example ; *extirper*, to extirpate ; *sexe*, sex, &c.

I

An observation which may have already been made, but which will appear more obvious by reading the rules on the three remaining vowels, is, that the number of short syllables is much greater than of long ; therefore, in order to abbreviate this treatise, those terminations will be omitted which are short without exception.

IDRE, long in *hidre*, written *hydre*, for the sake of the etymology, hydra ; *cidre*, cider.

IE, diphthong, doubtful ; as, *miel*, honey ; *fiel*, gall ; *fier*, proud ; *amitié*, friendship ; *arrière*, quarry ; *poussière*, dust ; *mièn*, mine ; *tièn*, thine ; *dieu*, god.

IE, dissyllable, long ; as, *vie*, life ; *saisie*, seizure ; *il prie*, he begs. See I. General Rule.

IEN, when a dissyllable, the two syllables are short ; as, *lien*, tie ; *Parisien*, Parisian ; when a diphthong, the syllable is doubtful ; as, *le mièn* mine ; *rien*, nothing, &c.

IGE, doubtful ; *tige*, stalk ; *prodige*, prodigy ; *litige*, litigation ; *vestige*, footstep ; *je m'oblige*, I bind myself ; *il s'afflige*, he afflicts himself.

But **IGE** is short in the tenses of these verbs which do not end with *e* mute, as *s'obliger*, to bind one's self ; *affligé*, afflicted.

ILE, long in *île*, island ; *huile*, oil ; *stîle* stile ; *tuile*, tile ; *presqu'île*, peninsula.

IM, IN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

IME, long in *abîme*, abyss ; *dîme*, tythe ; and in the first person plural of the preterite tense of verbs ; as, *nous vîmes*, we saw ; *nous répondîmes*, we answered.

ION, short ; as, *action*, action ; *passion*, passion. See II. General Rule.

IRE, doubtful, *empire*, empire ; *écrire*, to write ; *il soupire*, he sighs ; long in the third person plural of the perfect tense of verbs ; *ils punirent*, they punished ; *ils firent*, short before a masculine termination ; as, *soupirer*, to sigh ; *desirer*, to wish, &c.

ISE, long ; as, *remise*, coach-house ; *surprise*, surprise ; *j'épuise*, I exhaust ; *ils disent*, they say ; *qu'ils lisent*, let them read.

ISSE, always short ; as, *saucisse*, sausago ; *régisse*, liquorice ; except in the perfect of the subjunctive ; as, *je fisse*, I might do ; *ils punissent*, they might punish, &c.

IT, long only in the third person singular of the perfect of the subjunctive ; as, *il dit*, he might say ; *il fit*, he might do ; *il punit*, he might punish, &c.*

ITE, long in *benîte*, blessed ; *gîte*, the seat of a hare ; *vîte*, quick ; and in the second person of the perfect of verbs ; as ; *vous fîtes*, you did ; *vous vîtes*, you saw, &c.

ITRE, long in *épître*, epistle ; *huître*, oyster ; *regître*, register ; but if *regisrte* is spelt with *s*, the *i* is short.

IVE, long in the adjective feminine, formed from the masculine in *if* ; as, *tardive*, late ; *captive*, captive ; *juive*, jewess, &c.

IVRE, long in *vivres*, victuals ; short in *vivre*, to live ; *un livre*, a book, &c.

O

O, always short when it begins a word ; as, *occasion*, occasion ; *odour*, odour, &c. except *os*, bone ; *oser*, to dare ; *osier*, osier ; *ôter*, to take away ; *otage*, hostage ; as, likewise in *hôte*, host, landlord ; though we say *hôtel*, hotel, and *hôtellerie*, an inn.

OBE, long in *globe*, globe ; and *lobe*, lobe ; in every other instance **OBE** is short ; as, *robe*, robe, gown ; *il dérobe*, he robs.

OLE, long in the verb *rôder*, to ramble ; *je rôde*, I ramble ; short in all other instances ; as, *môde*, mode, fashion ; *antipode*, antipodes ; *période*, period, &c.

* Formerly written *fist*, *dist*, *punist*, with a mute *s*, now supplied by a circumflex.

OGE, always short ; as, *éloge*, praise ; *horloge*, clock ; *on déroge*, they derogate.

OI, diphthong, doubtful at the end of a word ; as, *moi*, me ; *roi*, king ; *foi*, faith ; *emploi*, employment ; short at the beginning ; as, *môisson*, harvest ; *môitie*, half.

OIE, long ; as, *jôie*, joy ; *sôie*, silk ; *qu'il vôle*, let him see, &c.

ORIENT, termination of the third person plural of the imperfect of verbs, is long ; as, *ils avoient*, they had ; *ils chantoient*, they sang, &c. whilst the third person singular of the same tense spelt OIT, is short ; as, *il avoit*, he had ; *il chantoit*, he sang, &c.

OIN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

OIR, OIRE, the first is doubtful ; as, *espérer*, hope ; *devoir*, duty, &c. the second long ; as, *boire*, to drink ; *gloire*, glory ; *mémoire*, memory, &c.

OIS, always long ; whether it be a diphthong, as in *fois*, time ; *bourgeois*, burgess ; *Danois*, Dane ; *Suèdois*, Swede, &c. or whether it be used instead of the compound vowel AI, as *j'étois*, or *j'étais*, I was ; *un François*, or *un Français*, a Frenchman, &c.

OISE, OISSE, OITRE, OIVRE, all long ; as, *framboise*, raspberry ; *paroisse*, parish ; *cloître*, cloister ; *poivre*, pepper, &c.

OIT, short ; as, *il boit*, he drinks ; except *il croît*, he grows ; and when it is used instead of the compound vowel AI ; as, *il parait*, or *il paraît*, it appears.

OLE, always short ; as, *obole*, obole ; *idole*, idol ; *boussôle*, sea compass ; except *drôle*, facetious ; *pôle*, pole ; *gôle*, jail ; *môle*, mole, pier ; *rôle*, a list, the part of an actor ; *contrôle*, control ; *enjôler*, to wheedle, to decoy ; *enrôler*, to enlist, and the tenses derived from these verbs ; *il contrôle*, he controls ; *ils enrôlent*, they enlist, &c.

OM, ON. See III. and VII. General Rules.

OME, ONE, long ; as, *atôme*, atom ; *axiôme*, axiom ; *phantôme*, phantom ; *trône*, throne, &c. except *Rôme*, Rome ; and the words in which the consonant is doubled, which follow the general rule ; as, *somme*, sum ; *pomme*, apple ; *consomme*, consonant.

ONS, always long ; as, *nous aimons*, we love ; *fonds*, land, funds ; *maisons*, houses ; *ponts*, bridges, &c. See IV. General Rule.

OR, always short ; as, *castor*, beaver ; *butor*, bittern, a blockhead ; *encor*, yet, still ; *effort*, effort ; but when OR is followed by *s*, it is long ; as, *hors*, out ; *alors*, then ; *le corps*, the body ; *les trésors*, the treasures. See IV. General Rule.

ORE, long ; as, *aurôre*, aurora ; *je déplore*, I lament ; but observe that the penultima of the verbs which have only one *r*, and which is long in present of the indicative ; as, *je décôre*, I decorate ; *il s'évapore*, it evaporates ; becomes short if the termination is masculine ; as, *décôrer*, to decorate ; *évaporé*, evaporated, and that it remains long in tenses in which the *r* is doubled ; as, *il s'évaporrâit*, it would evaporate, &c.

OS, OSE, long ; as, *ôse*, bone ; *prôpos*, discourse ; *à prôpos*, timely ; *dose*, dose ; *chôse*, thing ; *il ôse*, he dares. See IV. and V. General Rules.

OSSE, long ; as, *grösse*, big ; *fosse*, pit ; *il endosse*, he endorses ; even when the final is masculine ; as, *grösseur*, bigness ; *grössesse*, pregnancy ; *fossé*, ditch.

OT, long in *impôt*, tax ; *tôt*, soon ; *dépôt*, deposit ; *entrepôt*, store-house ; *supôt*, a subservient agent ; *rôt*, roast meat ; *prévôt*, provost, sheriff.*

OTE, long in *hôte*, host, landlord ; *côte*, coast, rib ; *maltôte*, exaction of taxes ; *j'ôte*, I take away ; likewise when the final is masculine ; as, *côté*, side ; *ôté*, taken away.†

OTRE. There are only three words of this termination, viz. *apôtre*, apostle ; *notre*, our, ours ; *votre*, your, yours.

As to the first, it is always long ; but the two others are doubtful ; not that their measure is arbitrary, for it depends upon the place which they keep in a sentence.

Notre and *Votre* are short, when like an article they are prefixed to a substantive, i. e. when used for *our*, *your* ; and long when they themselves are preceded by an article, and used as pronouns, i. e. when used for *ours*, *yours* ; so we say, *je suis votre serviteur*, I am your servant ; *et moi le vôtre*, I am yours. *C'est-là votre opinion*, *mais la nôtre est que*, &c. that is your opinion, but ours is that, &c. *Les nôtres sont excellents*, *mais les vôtres ne valent rien*, ours are excellent, but yours are good for nothing.

If the final be mute, as in this sentence, *je suis le vôtre*, after which my ear expects nothing more, then the voice wants a support, and not finding it in the final *re*, it takes it in the penultima *vo* ; but in this other, *je suis votre serviteur*, where after *votre* I

* Formerly spelt with an *s* mute, *impost*, *rost*, *suppost*, to show that the syllable is long, that is now supplied by a circumflex.

† Formerly spelt *hoste*, *coste*, and when a syllable was to be pronounced short, the consonant was doubled ; as, *hotte*, dorser ; *cotte*, petticoat, &c.

necessarily expect a substantive, between which and *votre* there can be no intermission, this substantive is destined to support my voice, and I pass quickly over *votre*.

Perhaps there is not in the french prosody a principle more extensive than this. A doubtful syllable which is made short in the body of the sentence, is made long if it comes at the end.

Sometimes even in conversation as well as in oratory, a long syllable becomes short, by the transposition of the word ; for we say, *un homme honnête*, a civil man ; *un homme brave*, a brave or courageous man ; but we say, *un honnête homme*, an honest man ; *un brave homme*, a well-behaved man ; these instances have already been mentioned, (see E,) but can so important rules be recalled too often ?

OUORE, OUE, long ; as, *poudre*, powder ; *moudre*, to grind ; *résoudre*, to resolve, &c. *boue*, dirt ; *joue*, cheek ; *il loue*, he praises, &c. but when ou is followed by a masculine, instead of a feminine termination, it is short ; as, *poué*, powdered ; *moulu*, ground ; *roué*, broken on the wheel ; *loué*, praised, &c.

OUILLE, long in *rouille*, rust ; *il dérouille*, he gets off the rust ; *il embrouille*, he embroils ; *il débrouille*, he unravels ; but OUIL is short when it is followed by a masculine syllable ; as, *broûillon*, bad paper or writing ; *broûillé*, daubed ; *rouillé*, rusty, &c.

OULE, long in *moule*, mould, muscle ; *la foule*, the crowd ; *il foule*, he presses, he tramples ; *il roule*, he rolls ; *il s'écroûle*, it falls down ; *il se soule*, he gets drunk.

OURE, OURRE, the first is doubtful ; as, *bravoûre*, bravery ; the second is long ; as, *de la bourre*, cow hair ; *qu'il couûre*, let him run ; but if ou, instead of being followed by a mute, is followed by a masculine syllable, then ou is short, notwithstanding the general rule under ARRE ; as, *couûrier*, messenger ; *boûrrade*, thrust, &c. as likewise in the future and in the conditional tenses of verbs spelt with rr, in which the two rr are sounded separately ; as, *je mourrai*, I shall die ; *je courrai*, I shall run ; *je mourrais*, &c.

OUSE, long ; as, *épouse*, bride ; *qu'elle couse*, let her sew. See V. General Rule.

OUSSE, long in *je pousse*, I push ; short in all other instances ; as, *je tousse*, I cough ; *coussin*, cushion ; *poussin*, young chick, &c.

OUT, long in *août*, august ; *coût*, cost ; *goût*, taste ; *mout*, must, new wine.

OUTE, long in *absoute*, absolution ; *joute*, tilt : *croûte*, crust ; *voûte*, vault ; *il coûte*, it costs ; *il broute*, it grazes ; *je goûte*, I taste ; *j'ajoute*, I add ; but ou is generally short, when the syllable which follows it is masculine ; as, *ajouter*, to add ; *coûté*, cost, &c.

OUTRE, long in *poutre*, beam ; and in *couître*, coulter, ploughshare ; short in all other instances ; as, *loutre*, otter ; *ouître*, *en ouître*, besides, &c.

U

UCHE, long ; as, *bûche*, a log of wood ; *rûche*, hive ; *on débûche*, they dislodge, &c. but u is short, if the final is masculine ; as, *bûcher*, pile ; *débûché*, dislodged, &c.

UE', diphthong, found only in the word *écûelle* porringer, is short.

UE, dissyllable, always long ; as, *vûe*, sight ; *tortûe*, tortoise, &c. See I. Gen. Rule.

UGE, doubtful when the final is mute ; as, *déluge*, deluge ; *refuge*, refuge ; short, when the final is masculine ; as, *jûger*, to judge ; *refûgier*, to take refuge, &c.

UI, diphthong, short before a masculine syllable ; as, *bûisson*, bush ; *cûisine*, kitchen ; *rûisseau*, rivulet, &c.

UIE, long ; as, *pluie*, rain ; *truie*, sow ; *il s'ennuie*, he grows tired. See I. Gen. Rule.

ULE, long in the verb *brûler*, to burn ; *je brûle*, I burn ; *tu brûles*, thou burnest, &c.

UM, UN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

UMES, long ; as, *nous fûmes*, we were ; *nous pûmes*, we could ; *nous reçûmes*, we received ; *nous aperçûmes*, we perceived, &c.

URE, always long ; as, *augûre*, omen ; *verdûre*, grass ; *parjûre*, perjurer, perjury ; *on assure*, they assure ; *ils fûrent*, they were ; but u is short, if the final is masculine ; as, *augûrer*, to conjecture ; *parjûrer*, to perjure ; *assûré*, assured.

USE, always long ; as, *mûse*, muse ; *excûse*, excuse ; *rûse*, cunning ; see V. General Rule ; we also say, *rûse*, cunning ; but in the other words in which the final is masculine, u is short ; as, *excûser*, to excuse ; *refûsé*, refused, &c.

UCE, USSE, the first of these two terminations is confined to nouns, and always short ; as, *pûce*, flea ; *astûce*, craft, &c. the second is confined to verbs, and is always long ; as, *je fûsse*, I were ; *je pusse*, I might ; *ils fûssent*, they might be ; except *Prûsse*, Prussia ; and *Rûsse*, a Russian ; substantives in which usse is short.

UT, short in all substantives ; as, *le bût*, the end ; *un débût*, a beginning ; except in *fût*, a cask ; *un affût*, a gun carriage ; short in the third person of the perfect tense of

the indicative of verbs ; as, *il fût*, he was ; *il vécut*, he lived ; long in the same person and tense in the subjunctive ; as, *il fût*, he might be ; *il vécut*, he might live, &c.

UTE, UTES, short in all substantives ; *brûte*, brute, rough, &c. except *flûte*, flute ; always long in verbs ; *vous fûtes*, you were ; *vous lûtes*, you read, *vous reçûtes*, you received ; *vous aperçûtes*, you perceived, &c.

It is not perhaps unnecessary to inform such readers as might be discouraged by the multiplicity, or by the prolixity of these rules, that it is not requisite, in order to speak french with propriety, that they should be observed with a scrupulous nicety, which few persons, if any, do, but he certainly speaks best who deviates the least from them.

HOMONYMOUS, OR EQUIVOCAL WORDS.

THE MEANING OF WHICH IS DETERMINED BY THE ACCENT.

<i>Acre</i> , tart.	<i>Acre</i> , acre.
<i>Alêne</i> , awl.	<i>Halêne</i> , breath.
<i>Bâiller</i> , to gape.	<i>Bâiller</i> , to give.
<i>Bât</i> , pack-saddle.	<i>Il bât</i> , he beats.
<i>Bâteleur</i> , mountebank.	<i>Bâtelier</i> waterman.
<i>Beauté</i> , beauty.	<i>Bötté</i> , booted.
<i>Bête</i> , beast.	<i>Bêtte</i> , beet.
<i>Boîte</i> , box.	<i>Il boîte</i> , he goes lame.
<i>Bônd</i> , rebound.	<i>Bôn</i> , good.
<i>Châir</i> , flesh.	<i>Chêr</i> , dear.
<i>Châsse</i> , shrine.	<i>Châsse</i> , hunting.
<i>Clâir</i> , clear.	<i>Clêrc</i> , clerk.
<i>Côrps</i> , body.	{ <i>Côr</i> , hunting-horn.
<i>Côte</i> , rib.	{ <i>Côr</i> , corn.
<i>Côte</i> , coast.	{ <i>Côtte</i> , petticoat.
<i>Cuire</i> , to boil or roast.	<i>Cûir</i> , leather.
<i>Faîte</i> , summit.	{ <i>Faîte</i> , done.
<i>Fête</i> , feast.	<i>Fâit</i> , done, fact.
<i>Faix</i> , burthen.	<i>La fôî</i> , faith.
<i>Le foie</i> , the liver.	<i>Un fouët</i> , a rod, a whip.
<i>Une fois</i> , once.	<i>Forêt</i> , gimblet.
<i>Forêt</i> , forest.	<i>Une goutte</i> , a drop.
<i>Je goûte</i> , I taste.	<i>Je grâve</i> , I engrave.
<i>Grâve</i> , grave.	<i>Hâlle</i> , market.
<i>Hâle</i> , scorching of the sun.	<i>Hôtte</i> , scuttle.
<i>Hôte</i> , host, landlord.	<i>Jeûne</i> , young.
<i>Jeûne</i> , fast.	<i>Lâc</i> , lake.
<i>Lâcs</i> , noose.	<i>Lâme</i> , blade.
<i>L'âme</i> , the soul.	{ <i>Laïd</i> , ugly.
<i>Lêgs</i> , legacy.	{ <i>Laît</i> , milk.
<i>Lîs</i> , lily.	<i>Lît</i> , bed.
<i>Maître</i> , master.	<i>Mêttre</i> , to put.
<i>Mâle</i> , male.	<i>Mâlle</i> , mail, trunk.
<i>Mâsse</i> , stock.	<i>Mâsse</i> , mass, mace.
<i>Mât</i> , mast.	<i>Mâ</i> , my.
<i>Mâtin</i> , mastiff.	<i>Mâtin</i> , morning.
<i>Moîs</i> , month.	<i>Moî</i> , me.
<i>Mûr</i> , ripe.	<i>Mûr</i> , wall.
<i>Il n'est</i> , it is not.	{ <i>Nêt</i> , clean.
<i>Il naît</i> , it springs.	<i>Pâtte</i> , paw.
<i>Pâte</i> , paste.	<i>Pomme</i> , apple.
<i>Paume</i> , palm.	

Pêcheur, fisherman.

Pêcher, to fish.

Pêcher, peach-tree.

Pêne, bolt.

Rôt, roast meat.

Sās, sieve.

Scène, scene.

La Scène, the communion.

Sûr, *sûre*, sure, certain.

Tâche, task.

Tâcher, to endeavour.

Tête, head.

Vers, verse.

Vers, towards.

Vërre, glass.

Pêcheur, sinner.

Pêcher, to sin.

Pêché, sin.

Peine, punishment.

Rôt, belch.

Să, her.

Săine, wholesome.

La Seine, the Seine.

Sûr, sour.

Tâche, stain.

Tâcher, to stain.

Tête, teat.

{ *Vër*, worm.

{ *Vërd*, green.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES
OF
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE

WITH PARTICULAR RULES AND EXCEPTIONS.*

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, like most of the living languages, is composed of NINE different sorts of words, commonly known by the names of

NOUN,	PRONOUN,	PREPOSITION,
ARTICLE,	VERB,	CONJUNCTION,
ADJECTIVE,	ADVERB,	INTERJECTION.†

CHAPTER. I.

NOUN.

EVERY WORD is called a NOUN which names a *substance* or *being*, either real, as *man, house, tree, &c.*; or ideal, as *god, heaven, glory, &c.*

Nouns are distinguished into *proper* and *common*.

* Some of the general rules contained in the introduction are repeated in the syntax, because they are necessary to connect the different rules together. But each part must be considered as a distinct work, designed for different persons. The introduction is intended for children, and for persons who, not being accustomed to the study of languages, could not at once comprehend such a multiplicity of rules. The syntax, which includes all the rules which are necessary to a perfect knowledge of the language, is intended for the same persons, after they are sufficiently grounded in the introductory rules, and for persons of a comprehensive mind, who have no need of an introduction.

† Ever since the art of speaking has been reduced into a system, grammarians, and the philosophers who have written on the subject, have differed upon the parts, or different species of words of which it is composed. Some argue that there are but two, the NOUN and the VERB, and assert that the rest are only corruptions or abbreviations of these; others add the ARTICLE and the CONJUNCTION; others the PRONOUN, and so on to the INTERJECTION. It does not belong to a production of this kind to inquire into these different opinions; and I have adopted the most prevalent, because it has appeared to me, that whether they be *words*, or only *abbreviations of words*, there are NINE sorts, which are subject to *different* rules.

Those who are desirous to see ingenious dissertations on this subject, may read HARRIS's *Hermes*, and TOOKE's *Diversions of Purley*.

A noun *proper*, or *proper name*, is that which belongs only to one being ; as, *John, the Thames, London, Paris, England, France, &c.**

A noun *common*, or *common name*, is that which belongs to all beings of the same kind ; as, *man, woman, river, city, country, &c.*

N. B. In this class are comprised the abstract names of *virtue, vice, pleasure, pain, love, desire, fear, hatred, glory, honor*, and such like.

Two things are to be considered in nouns ; the *gender* and the *number*.

The *gender* is the distinction between the *sexes*.

The french language admits of *two genders* only, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

* Though proper names should remain invariably the same in all languages, yet the French have given to the names of countries, and of some capital cities, names or terminations adopted to their own language ; so, Asia is called *Asie* ; Africa, *Afrique* ; America, *Amérique* ; England, *Angleterre* ; Scotland, *Ecosse* ; London, *Londres* ; Spain, *Espagne* ; Mexico, *Méxique* ; Jamaica, *Jamaïque* ; Italy, *Italie* ; Tuscany, *Toscagne* ; Sardinia, *Sardaigne* ; Sicily, *Sicile* ; Leghorn, *Livourne* ; Mantua, *Mantoue* ; Geneva, *Genève* ; Genoa, *Gènes* ; Switzerland, *Suisse* ; Germany, *Allemagne* ; Hungary, *Hongrie* ; Bohemia, *Bohème* ; Vienna, *Vienne* ; Poland, *Pologne* ; Warsaw, *Varsovie* ; Cracow, *Cracovie* ; Russia, *Russie* ; Prussia, *Prusse* ; Sweden, *Suède*, &c. for which no rule can be given ; but as they are single words, and are generally found in the dictionaries, when they have been seen once or twice, they are easily retained.

The names of persons, derived from the living languages, do not vary ; so, *Fox, Pitt, White, Brown*, are in french, *Fox, Pitt, White, Brown*, as in english ; but the names of persons, derived from the greek and latin languages, generally change their terminations, agreeably to the following rules.

Names ending in *al, ar, or, is, os, on*, do not vary ; as, *Annibal, Adherbal, Cæsar, Hamilcar, Mentor, Nestor, Adonis, Sésostris, Minos, Atropos, Damon, Solon, &c.* nor the names of men ending in *a* ; as, *Numa, Nerva, Sylla, Agrippa, Dolabella* ; except *Seneca*, which is *Sénéque*.

The finals *as* and *es*, are changed into *e* : as, *Pythagoras, Pythagore* ; *Mecenas, Mécène* ; *Eneas, Enée* ; *Socrates, Socrate* ; *Demosthenes, Demosthène* ; &c. ; except *Agésilas, Léonidas, Pélopidas, Phidias, Pythias, Pausanias, Epaminondas, Eudamidas, Calchas, Olympias, Cérès, Xerxes, Périclès*, and a few others not often met with.

The finals *us* and *ius*, are also generally changed into *e* ; as, *Augustus, Auguste* ; *Titus, Tite* ; *Tiberius, Tibère* ; *Julius Cæsar, Jule César* ; *Tacitus, Tacite* ; *Virgilius, Virgile* ; *Horatius, Horace* ; *Eolus, Eole* ; *Ædipus, Oedipe* ; except *Appius, Baccus, Brutus, Cincinnatus, Claudius, Cræsus, Cyrus, Darius, Decius, Dentatus, Gallus, Germanicus, Janus, Junius, Manlius, Marius, Ménénis, Métellus, Mutius, Papirius, Plautius, Pompeilius, Porus, Pyrrhus, Remus, Romulus, Silvius, Valerius, Venus, Tullus*, and a few others not frequently met with ; and *Coriolanus, Tarquinius*, which lose the finals *us, ius* ; thus, *Coriolan, Tarquin*.

Nouns in *chus*, change *chus* into *que* ; as, *Telemachus, Télémaque* ; *Lysimachus, Lysimaque* ; *Gracchus, Graque* ; except *Antiochus*.

Nouns ending in *o* take the addition of *n* ; as, *Cato, Caton* ; *Cicero, Ciceron* ; *Scipio, Scipion* ; *Plato, Platon* ; *Apollo, Apollon* ; *Pluto, Pluton* ; *Juno, Junon* ; *Dido, Didon* ; except *Calipso Clio, Clotho, Sappho, Echo*.

The final *der* is changed into *dre* ; as, *Alexander, Aléxandre* ; *Lysander, Lysandre*.

Names of women ending in *a*, change *a* into *e* mute ; as, *Julia, Julie* ; *Amelia, Amélie* ; *Agrippina, Agrippine* ; *Cleopatra, Cléopatre* ; *Minerva, Minerve*, &c.

Those ending in *e, é*, retain their termination ; as, *Cybèle, Melpomène, Circé, Clôé, Daphné, Hébé, Thisbé* ; except the following, in which the French do not sound the final *e* ; *Ariadne, Euridice, Pénélope*.

By *masculine* is meant the *male being* ; by *feminine*, the *female*.

The names of beings whose sex is unknown, and of those *inanimate* beings, commonly called *things*, which are of the *neuter gender* in english, are either *masculine*, or *feminine*, in french, according to custom.

The *difference of gender* is generally known by the *termination of the noun*.

Nouns of following Terminations
are MASCULINE.

- A. un Opéra, *an opera* ; un Sopha, *a sopha* ;
du Quinquina, *peruvian bark*.
- AT. sounded A ; as,
un Plat, *a dish* ; un Combat, *a battle*.
- B. du Plomb, *lead* ; le Radoub, *refitting* ;
un Rumb, *a point of the compass*.
- C. le Bec, *the beak* ; du Suc, *gravy* ;
du Porc, *pork* ; du Tabac, *tobacco*.
- D. du Lard, *bacon* ; du Fard, *paint* ;
un Regard, *a look* ; le Hasard,
chance.
- E. preceded by any letter but T ;
du Blé, *corn* ; un Pré, *a meadow* ;
un Congé, *a holiday* ; du Caffé, *coffee*.
Except l'Amitié, *friendship* ;
la Moitié, *the half* ; la Pitié, *pity*.
- ER sounded e ; as,
un Baiser, *a kiss* ; le Danger, *danger* ;
un Métier, *a trade* ; un Panier, *a basket*.
- AI. sounded é ; as,
un Geai, *a jay* ; un Balai, *a broom* ;
un Essai, *an essay* ; un Délai, *a delay*.
- AIT, ET sounded é ; as,
un Fait, *a fact* ; un Portrait, *a picture* ;
un Sujet, *a subject* ; un Object, *an object*.
- F. un Nerf, *a sinew* ; un Œuf, *an egg* ;
du Bœuf, *beef* ; du Suif, *tallow*.
Except une Clef, *a key* ; la Soif,
thirst ;
la Nef, *the body of a church*.
- G. le Rang, *rank* ; le Sang, *the blood* ;
un Etang, *a pond* ; un harenç, *a her-
ring*.
- I. un Etui, *a case* ; un Défi, *a challenge* ;
un Lit, *a bed* ; un Habit, *a coat*.
Except une Fourmi, *an ant* ; la
Nuit, *night*.
- OI. un Envoi, *an invoice* ; un Convoi,
a convoy ;
un Emploi, *an employ* ; le Doigt, *the
finger*.
Except la Foi, *faith* ; la Loi, *law*.
- L. un Mal, *an evil* ; le Travail, *labour* ;
un Hôtel, *an hotel* ; le Sommeil,
sleep.
- M. le Nom, *the name* ; le Parfum, *per-
fume* ;

Nouns of the following Terminations are
FEMININE.

TE, la Liberté, *liberty* ; la Santé, *health* ;
la Beauté, *beauty* ; la Bonté, *goodness* ;
la Majesté, *majesty* ; la Divinité, *divi-
nity*.
Except l'Eté, *summer* ; un Comté, *a county*,
le Côté, *the side* ; un Pâté, *a pie* ; un Co-
mite, *a committee* ; un Traité, *a treaty*, *a
treatise* ; du Thé, *some tea*.

Masculine Terminations.

- M. du Thim, *thyme*.
Except la Faim, hunger.
- N. *All the terminations in N which are not ION or SON soft, i. e. sounded ZON, viz.*
- AN. du Bran, *bran*; du Safran, *saffron*.
- ANT, ENT sounded AN; as,
 un Diamant, *a diamond*; un Présent, *a present*;
 le Vent, *the wind*. *Except une Dent, a tooth.*
- AIN. du Pain, *bread*; un Bain, *a bath*.
Except la Main, the hand.
- IN, EIN sounded AIN; as,
 du Vin, *same wine*; le Matin, *morn-
 ing*;
 le Sein, *the bosom*; le Teint, *the
 complexion*.
Except la Fin, the end.
- OIN. le Soin, *care*; un Coin, *a corner*.
- IEN. un Lien, *a tie*; du Bien, *wealth*.
- CON. un Balcon, *a balcony*; un Flacon, *a
 decanter*.
- LON. un Violon, *a violin*; un Papillon, *a
 butterfly*.
- SSON. un Buisson, *a bush*; du Poisson, *fish*.
Except la Moisson, the harvest;
 la Boisson, *drink*; une Chanson,
a song.
- CON. un Hameçon, *a fish-hook*; un Lima-
 çon, *a snail*.
Except une Leçon, a lesson; une
 Rançon, *a ransom*; la Façon, *the
 making*.
- TON. un Bâton, *a stick*; un Bouton, *a
 button*.
- O. un Echo, *an echo*; un Duo, *a duet*.
- OT sounded O; as,
 un Mot, *a word*; un Complot, *a plot*;
 on Pot, *a pot*; un Gigot, *a leg of
 mutton*.
- EAU sounded O; as,
 un Couteau, *a knife*; un Chapeau,
a hat.
Except l'Eau, water; la Peau, *the
 skin*.
- P. un Cap, *a cape*; un Cep, *a stock of
 a vine*;
 un Champ, *a field*; le Galop, *the
 gallop*.
- Q. un Cinq, *a five*; un Coq, *a cock*.
- R. *All the terminations in R, which are
 not EUR.*
- AIR. l'Air, *the air*; un Éclair, *a flash of
 lightning*.
Except la Chair, the flesh.
- ER. le Fer, *iron*; l'Enfer, *hell*. *Except
 la Mer, the sea*; une Cuiller, *a
 spoon*.
- IR. le Désir, *desire*; le Plaisir, *pleasure*.
- OIR. le Soir, *evening*; un Mouchoir, *a
 handkerchief*.
- OR. l'Or, *gold*; un Trésor, *a treasure*.

Feminine Terminations.

- ION. une Action, *an action*; une Caution,
a bail; une Portion, *a portion*.
Except un Bastion, a bastion; un Crayon,
a pencil; un Rayon, *a ray*; un Pion, *a
 man at drafts*; le Tallion, *retaliation*; un
 Scorpion, *a scorpion*; le Septentrion, *the
 north*; le Croupion, *the rump of fowls and
 birds*; un Million, *a million*.
- SON, une Maison, *a house*; la Raison,
 ZON. *reason*; la Saison, *the season*.
Except le Gazon, turf; du Poison, *poi-
 son*; un Tison, *a firebrand*; un Oison, *a
 gosling* l'Horizon, *the horizon*; le Blason,
heraldry.
- EUR. la Peur, *fear*; la Chaleur, *heat*;
 une Fleur, *a flower*; la Couleur,
colour.
Except le Bonheur, luck, happiness; le
 Malheur, *misfortune*; l'Honneur, *honour*;
 le Déshonneur, *dishonour*; le Cœur, *the
 heart*; l'Equateur, *the equator*; l'Intérieur,
the interior; l'Extérieur, *the exterior*.
*Except also the nouns in EUR, which be-
 long only to persons*; as, un Auteur, *an
 author*; un Docteur, *a doctor*; &c.

Masculine Terminations.

- ORD. ORT, *sounded or* ; as, le Bord, *the border* ;
 un Fort, *a fort* ; le Sort, *fate*.
Except la Mort, *death*.
- OUR. le Jour, *the day* ; un Tour, *a trick*.
Except la Cour, *the court*, the
 yard ; une Tour, *a tower*.
- S. le Bras, *the arm* ; le Repos, *repose* ;
 du Bois, *wood* ; le Succès, *success* ;
Except une Brebis, *a sheep* ; une
 Souris, *a mouse* ; une Vis, *a*
screw ; Foix, *time*.
- T. un Plat, *a dish* ; un Lit, *a bed* ;
 le Vent, *the wind* ; un Accident, *an*
accident.
Except une Part, *a share* ; une
 Forêt, *a forest* ; la Nuit, *night* ;
 une Dot, *a dowery* ; une Dent,
a tooth ; la Mort, *death*.
- U. un Ecu, *a crown* ; un Fétu, *a straw*.
Except la Vertu, *virtue* ; une Tribu,
a tribe ; de la Glu, *bird-lime*.
- UT. *sounded u* ; as,
 le But, *the aim* ; le Scorbut, *the*
scurvy.
- EU. le Feu, *fire* ; un Lieu, *a place*.
- OU. un Trou, *a hole* ; un Chou, *a cabbage*.
- X. un Faix, *a burthen* ; le Choise, *choice*.
Except la Paix, *peace* ; la Voix,
the voice ; une Noix, *nut* ; de la
 Poix, *pitch* ; une Croix, *a cross* ;
 la Toux, *cough* ; une Perdrix, *a*
partridge ; une Faux, *a scythe*.

Feminine Terminations.

See also page 40, how some nouns feminine are formed from the masculine, in the same manner, as adjectives, by changing the termination.

From the above rules it appears that nouns ending with a consonant, or any vowel but *e* mute, are generally masculine ; but there is a great number of nouns ending in *e* mute, part of which are masculine, and part feminine, which can not be reduced to such certain rules.*

GENERAL RULES.

All NAMES of COUNTRIES ending with *e* mute are feminine ; as, la France, *France* ; la Hollande, *Holland* ; l'Angleterre, *England* ; la Suisse, *Switzerland*, &c. *except* le Mexique, *Mexico*. Those ending with any other vowel, as, Canada, Chili, Pérou, &c. or with a consonant, as, Denmark, Portugal, Japon, &c. are masculine.

Ee All COMMON NAMES ending in *e* mute, preceded by another vowel, are feminine,
 le as, une Epée, *a sword* ; une Armée, *an army* ; une Guinée, *a guinea* ; la Vie,
 Ue life ; la Rue, *the street* ; la Vue, *the sight* ; la Joie, *joy* ; la Joue, *the cheek* ;
 la Pluie, *rain*, &c.

Except le Foie, *the liver* ; un Incendie, *a conflagration* ; le Génie, *genius* ; le Messie, *the messiah* ; un Parapluie, *an umbrella* ; un Trophée, *a trophy* ; un Pigmée, *a pigmy* ; le Caducée, *caduceus* ; l'Hyménée, *hymen* ; un Mausolée, *a mausoleum* ; and nouns ending in GUE and QUE, which are subject to a particular rule. See GUE, QUE.

* The discrimination between the genders of nouns is a difficulty which the learner finds hard to overcome. In order to attain it, he must consider the greatest number of words of each termination which are either masculine or feminine, as a general rule, and retain as many words of the exception as he can. Besides this, when he reads a french author, he must pay particular attention to the article which precedes each noun, and consider it as its necessary appendage. By these means the difficulty will insensibly lessen, and his mistakes will be but few. Not to overload his memory with a multiplicity of words, I have omitted in the list of nouns given as exceptions, those which are either obsolete or little used.

PARTICULAR RULES.

*Masculine Terminations.**Feminine Terminations.*

BE. There are *Thirty-four* nouns ending in **BE**, *Eleven* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are

un Adverb, <i>an adverb</i> ;	un Proverbe, <i>a proverb</i> ;
un Cube, <i>a cube</i> ;	un Tube, <i>a tube</i> ;
un Globe, <i>a globe</i> ;	un Téorbe, <i>a theorb</i> ;
un Orb, <i>an orb</i> ;	un Verbe, <i>a verb</i> ;

Twenty-three other nouns ending in **BE** are *feminine*.

CE. There are *Three hundred* nouns ending in **CE**, *Thirty-four* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Appendice, <i>an appendix</i> ;	un Indice, <i>an indication</i> ;
un Armistice, <i>an armistice</i> ;	le Négoce, <i>traffic</i> ;
un Artifice, <i>an artifice</i> ;	un Office, <i>an office</i> ;
un Auspice, <i>an auspice</i> ;	un Orifice, <i>an orifice</i> ;
un Bénéfice, <i>a benefit</i> ;	le Pouce, <i>the thumb</i> ;
un Calice, <i>a chalice</i> ;	un Précipice, <i>a precipice</i> ;
le Caprice, <i>caprice</i> ;	le Préjudice, <i>injury</i> ;
un Cilice, <i>a hair-cloth</i> ;	un Sacrifice, <i>a sacrifice</i> ;
le Commerce, <i>commerce</i> ;	un Service, <i>a service</i> ;
le Délice, <i>delight</i> ;	le Silence, <i>silence</i> ;
un Edifice, <i>an edifice</i> ;	le Solstice, <i>the solstice</i> ;
un Exercice, <i>an exercise</i> ;	le Supplice, <i>punishment</i> ;
le Frontispice, <i>frontispiece</i> ;	le Vice, <i>vice</i> .

Two hundred and sixty-six other nouns ending in **CE** are *feminine*.

DE. There are *Two hundred* nouns ending in **DE**, *Twenty-seven* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Camarade, <i>a companion</i> ;	le Monde, <i>the world</i> ;
un Code, <i>a code</i> ;	un Période, <i>a period of time</i> ;
le Coude, <i>the elbow</i> ;	un Remède, <i>a remedy</i> ;
un Fluide, <i>a fluid</i> ;	un Sphéroïde, <i>a spheroid</i> ;
un Grade, <i>a degree</i> ;	un Subside, <i>a subsidy</i> ;
un Guide, <i>a guide</i> ;	le Suicide, <i>suicide</i> ;
un Mode, <i>a mode</i> ;	le Vide, <i>Vacuum</i> .

One hundred and seventy-three other nouns ending in **DE** are *feminine*.

FE. There are *Twenty* nouns ending in **FE**, **PHE**, *Eight* of which are *masculine*; they are,

un Golfe, <i>a gulf</i> ;	un Parafe, <i>a paraph</i> ;
un Greffe, <i>a court register</i> ;	un Paragraphe, <i>a paragraph</i> ;
un Hiéroglyphe, <i>a hieroglyph</i> ;	un Triomphe, <i>a triumph</i> ;
un Logogriphe, <i>a riddle</i> ;	un Télégraphe, <i>a telegraph</i> .

Twelve other nouns ending in **FE**, **PHE** are *feminine*.

GE. There are *Eighty* nouns ending in **GE**, *Thirty-two* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un ange, <i>an angel</i> ;	un Mensonge, <i>a lie</i> ;
un archange, <i>an archangel</i> ;	un Prestige, <i>a prestige</i> ;
le Change, <i>the 'change</i> ;	un Privilège, <i>a privilege</i> ;
un Cierge, <i>a taper</i> ;	un Prodige, <i>a prodigy</i> ;
un Collège, <i>a college</i> ;	un Rechange, <i>a change</i> ;
un Cortège, <i>a retinue</i> ;	un Refuge, <i>a refuge</i> ;
un Déluge, <i>the deluge</i> ;	un Sacrilège, <i>a sacrilege</i> ;
un Echange, <i>an exchange</i> ;	un Siège, <i>a seat, a siege</i> ;
un Eloge, <i>an encomium</i> ;	un Singe, <i>an ape</i> ;
du Liège, <i>cork</i> ;	un Songe, <i>a dream</i> ;
du Linge, <i>linen</i> ;	un Subterfuge, <i>a subterfuge</i> ;
le Manège, <i>riding school</i> ,	un Vertige, <i>a giddiness</i> ;
un Mélange, <i>a mixture</i> ;	un Vestige, <i>a track</i> .

Forty-eight other nouns ending in **GE** are *feminine*.

AGE. All nouns ending in **AGE** are *masculine*; as,

un Avantage, <i>an advantage</i> ;	le Mariage, <i>marriage</i> ;
un Badinage, <i>a joke</i> ;	le Ménage, <i>housekeeping</i> ;
un Bocage, <i>a grove</i> ;	un Orage, <i>a storm</i> ;
le Courage, <i>courage</i> ;	un Ouvrage, <i>a work</i> ;
du Fromage, <i>some cheese</i> ;	le Rivage, <i>the shore</i> ;
le Jardinage, <i>gardening</i> ;	le Veuvage, <i>widowhood</i> ;
un Hermitage, <i>an hermitage</i> ;	le Visage, <i>the face, &c.</i>

Except une Cage, *a cage* ; une Image, *an image* ; la Nage, *swimming* ; une Page, *a page* ; la Plage, *a poetical word for sea* ; la Rage, *rage*.

Masculine Terminations.

Feminine Terminations.

GUE. There are *Thirty-five* nouns ending in **GUE**, *Twelve* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Catalogue, *a catalogue*; un Dogue, *a bull-dog*;
le D  calogue, *the decalogue*; un Orgue, *an organ*;
un Dialogue, *a dialogue*; le Prologue, *the prologue*.

Twenty-three other nouns ending in **GUE** are *feminine*.

CHE. There are *One hundred* nouns ending in **CHE**, *Twelve* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Acrostiche, *an acrostic*; un Panache, *a plume*;
le Coche, *the stage coach*; du Ponche, *punch*;
un Dimanche, *a sunday*; un Pr  che, *a dissenting sermon*;
un H  mistiche, *an hemistich*; un Reproche, *a reproach*;
un Manche, *a handle*; * un Tournebroche, *a jack*.

Eighty-eight other nouns ending in **CHE** are *feminine*.

*une Manche, *a sleeve*.

LE. There are *Four hundred* nouns ending in **LE**, *One hundred* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Aigle, *an eagle*; un Obstacle, *an obstacle*;
un Angle, *an angle*; un Ongle, *a nail*;
un Article, *an article*; un Oracle, *an oracle*;
un Asile, *an asylum*; le Parall  le, *the parallel*;
un Buffle, *a buffalo*; un P  cule, *spare money*;
un C  ble, *a cable*; un Pendule, *a pendulum*;
le Capitole, *the capitol*; le Peuple, *the people*;
le Centuple, *the centuple*; un Po  le, *a stove*;
un Cercle, *a circle*; le P  le, *the pole*;
du Ch  vre-feuille, *woodbine*; un Portefeuille, *a portfolio*;
le Ch  le, *the chyle*; le Pr  ambule, *the preamble*;
le Comble, *the top*; un Quadrangle, *a quadrangle*;
un Concile, *a council*; le Quadrille, *quadril*;
le Contr  le, *the control*; le Quadruple, *quadruple*;
un Couvercle, *a lid*; un R  ceptacle, *a receptacle*;
le Cr  puscule, *the twilight*; un R  le, *a roll, the part of an*
un Crible, *a sieve*; le Sable, *the sand*; [actor;
un Crocodile, *a crocodile*; un Saule, *a willow*;
le Diable, *the devil*; le Scandale, *scandal*;
un Disciple, *a disciple*; le Scrupule, *the scruple*;
un Domicile, *a domicile*; du Seigle, *rye*;
le Double, *the double*; un Si  cle, *an age*;
un Dr  le, *a fellow*; le Symbole, *the symbol*;
l'  vangile, *the gospel*; le Souffle, *the breath*;
un Exemple, *an example*; un Spectacle, *a spectacle*;
du Girofle, *clove-spice*; le Stile, *the style*;
le H  le, *the burning sun*; le Tabernacle, *the tabernacle*;
un Intervalle, *an interval*; un Temple, *a temple*;
un Libelle, *a libel*; le Tr  fle, *trefoil*;
un Maroufle, *a scoundrel*; le Tremble, *the asp tree*;
un Merle, *a blackbird*; le Triple, *the treble*;
le Meuble, *the furniture*; le Trouble, *disturbance*;
un Mille, *a mile*; un Vaudeville, *a ballad*;
un Miracle, *a miracle*; un Vestibule, *a vestibule*;
un Mod  le, *a model*; un Vignoble, *a vineyard*;
un Monopole, *a monopoly*; un Violoncelle, *a violoncello*;
un Moule, *a mould*; un Voile, *a veil*;
le Mufle, *the muzzle*; le Z  le, *the zeal*.

une Pendule, *a clock*.

une Po  le, *a fryingpan*.

Three hundred other nouns ending in **LE** are *feminine*.

une Voile, *a sail*.

ME. There are *One hundred and seventy-two* nouns ending in **ME**, *Forty-three* of which are *feminine*; the most commonly used are,

l'Ame, *the soul*; une Enclume, *an anvil*;
une Arme, *an arm*; une Enigme, *an enigma*;
la Brume, *the fog*; une Epigramme, *an epigram*;
la Cime, *the top*; l'  scrime, *fencing*;
la Coutume, *the custom*; l'  stime, *esteem*;
la Cr  me, *cream*; une Ferme, *a farm*;
la D  me, *the tithe*; la Flamme, *the flame*;
l'  cume, *the foam*; la Forme, *the form*;

Masculine Terminations.

Feminine Terminations.

One hundred and twenty-nine other nouns ending in ME are masculine.	la Gamme, the gamut ;	une Plate-forme, a platform ;
	la Gomme, gum ;	une Plume, a pen ;
	la Gourme, the strangles ;	une Pomme, an apple ;
	un Idiotisme, an idiom ;	la Prime, the prime ;
	la Lame, the blade ;	une Rame, an oar, a ream ;
	une Larme, a tear ;	la Réforme, the reform ;
	la Légitime, a child's portion ;	la Rime, the rhyme ;
	une Lime, a file ;	une Somme, a sum ;
	une Maxime, a maxim ;	la Trame, the thread ;
	la Paume, the palm, tennis ;	une Victime, a victim.

NE. There are *Two hundred and forty-six* nouns in NE, *Thirty* of which are *masculine* ; the most commonly used are,

de l'Antimoine, antimony ;	le Jeûne, fasting ;
un Aune, an elder ;	un Organe, an organ ;
l'Autonne, autumn ;	le Patrimoine, patrimony ;
le Capricorne, the capricorn ;	un Peigne, a comb ;
un Cerne, a magical ring ;	le Pêne, the bolt of a lock ;
un Chêne, an oak ;	un Pentagone, a pentagon ;
un Cygne, a swan ;	un Phénomène, a phenomenon ;
un Cône, a cone ;	un Polygone, a polygon ;
le Crâne, the skull ;	un Prône, a sermon ;
un Décagone, a decagon ;	le Règne, the reign ;
un Domaine, a domain ;	un Renne, a rein deer ;
un Faune, a faun ;	un Signe, a sign ;
du Filigrane, filligram ;	un Trône, a throne.
un Frêne, an ash-tree ;	

Two hundred and sixteen other nouns ending in NE are *feminine*.

PE. There are *Sixty-eight* nouns ending in PE, *Twelve* of which are *masculine* ; the most commonly used are,

un Groupe, a group ;	un Participe, a participle ;
un Horoscope, a horoscope ;	un Polype, a polypus ;
du Jaspe, jasper ;	un Principe, a principle ;
un Microscope, a microscope ;	un Télescope, a telescope.

Fifty-six other nouns ending in PE are *feminine*.

QUE. There are *One hundred* nouns ending in QUE, *Thirty-four* of which are *masculine* ; the most commonly used are,

un Asterisque, an asterisk ;	le Panégyrique, panegyric ;
un Cantique, a canticle ;	le Pentateuque, the pentateuch ;
un Casque, a cask ;	un Portique, a portico ;
un Caustique, a caustic ;	le Risque, the risk ;
un Cirque, a circus ;	un Soliloque, a soliloquy ;
un Disque, a disk ;	un Spécifique, a specific ;
un Émetique, an emetic ;	le Tropicque, the tropick ;
un Obélisque, an obelisk ;	le Viatique, viaticum ;
un Marque, a want ;	le Zodiaque, the zodiac.
un Masque, a mask ;	

Sixty-six other nouns ending in QUE are *feminine*.

RE. There are *Six hundred and thirty-two* nouns ending in RE, *Two hundred and twenty-three* of which are *masculine* ; the most commonly used are,

un Adultère, an adultery ;	le Bien-être, happy state ;
l'Albâtre, alabaster ;	un Cadavre, a corpse ;
l'Ambré, amber ;	un Cadre, a frame ;
un Amphithéâtre, an amphitheatre ;	le Calibre, the bore ;
un Anniversaire, an anniversary ;	du Camphre, camphire ;
un Antre, a den ;	un Cancre, a crab ;
un Arbre, a tree ;	un Candélabre, a chandelier ;
un Artère, an artery ;	le Caractère, the character ;
un Astre, a star ;	un Cédre, a cedar ;
l'Atmosphère, the atmosphere ;	le Certre, the centre ;
un Atré, an hearth ;	un Chancré, a shanker ;
un Auditoire, an auditory ;	du Chanvre, hemp ;
un Augure, an omen ;	un Chapitre, a chapter ;
du Babeurre, buttermilk ;	un Chef-d'œuvre, a masterpiece ;
du Beurre, butter ;	un Chiffre, a figure ;
un Baromètre, a barometer ;	du Cidre, cider ;

RE.	Masculine Terminations.	Feminine Terminations.
un Cilindre, <i>a cylinder</i> ;	un Monstre, <i>a monster</i> ;	
un Cimetière, <i>a cimeter</i> ;	un Murmure, <i>a murmur</i> ;	
un Cinetière, <i>a church yard</i> ;	du Nacre, <i>mother of pearl</i> ;	
un Cintre, <i>an arch</i> ;	un Navire, <i>a ship</i> ;	
un Clysène, <i>a glister</i> ;	le Nécessaire, <i>the necessities</i> ;	
un Coffre, <i>a chest</i> ;	[ry ; du Nitre, <i>nitre</i> ;	
un Commentaire, <i>a commenta-</i>	un Nombre, <i>a number</i> ;	
un Concombre, <i>a cucumber</i> ;	un Observatoire, <i>an observato-</i>	
un Congre, <i>a conger</i> ;	ry ;	
un Corollaire, <i>a corollary</i> ;	un Opprobre, <i>a reproach</i> ;	
le Contraire, <i>the contrary</i> ;	un Orchestre, <i>an orchestre</i> ;	
un Corsaire, <i>a corsair</i> ;	un Ordinaire, <i>an ordinary</i> ;	
du Cuivre, <i>copper</i> ;	un Ordre, <i>an order</i> ;	
le Décombre, <i>the rubbish</i> ;	le Parterre, <i>the pit of a play-</i>	
le Délire, <i>delirium</i> ;	un Pâtre, <i>a herdsman</i> ; [house ;	
un Dépositaire, <i>a depositary</i> ;	un Phare, <i>a lighthouse</i> ;	
le Derrière, <i>the back part</i> ;	du Phosphore, <i>phosphorus</i> ;	
un Désastre, <i>a disaster</i> ;	du Plâtre, <i>plaster</i> ;	
le Désordre, <i>the disorder</i> ;	du Poivre, <i>pepper</i> ;	
le Diamètre, <i>the diameter</i> ;	un Pôre, <i>a pore</i> ;	[ries ;
un Dictionnaire, <i>a dictionary</i> ;	les Préliminaires, <i>prelimina-</i>	
le Directoire, <i>the directory</i> ;	un Presbiter, <i>a parsonage</i>	
un Douaire, <i>a dower</i> ;	house ;	
un Empire, <i>an empire</i> ;	un Promontoire, <i>a promontory</i> ;	
un Emplâtre, <i>a plaster</i> ;	un Pupitre, <i>a desk</i> ;	
l' Equilibre, <i>the equilibrium</i> ;	le Purgatoire, <i>purgatory</i> ;	
un Etre, <i>a being</i> ;	[book ; un Réfectoire, <i>an eating room</i> ;	
un Exemple, <i>a copy of a</i>	un Registre, <i>a register</i> ;	
un Fiacre, <i>a hackney coach</i> ;	un Repaire, <i>a den</i> ;	
un Fife, <i>a fife</i> ;	un Réverbère, <i>a reflector</i> ;	
un Formulaire, <i>a formulary</i> ;	un Sabre, <i>a sabre</i> ;	
du Genièvre, <i>juniper</i> ;	le Sacre, <i>the coronation</i> ;	
le Genre, <i>the gender</i> ;	du Salpêtre, <i>saltpetre</i> ;	
du Gingembre, <i>ginger</i> ;	un Sanctuaire, <i>a sanctuary</i> ;	
un Gouffre, <i>a gulf</i> ;	un Sceptre, <i>a sceptre</i> ;	
un Havre, <i>a harbour</i> ;	un Secrétaire, <i>a secretary</i> ;	
l' Hémisphère, <i>the hemisphere</i> ;	un Séminaire, <i>a seminary</i> ;	
un Hêtre, <i>a beech tree</i> ;	un Sépulcre, <i>a sepulchre</i> ;	
un Inventaire, <i>an inventory</i> ;	un Séquestre, <i>a sequestration</i> ;	
un Interrogatoire, <i>an interrog-</i>	le Sommaire, <i>the compendium</i> ;	
atory ;	du Soufre, <i>brimstone</i> ;	
de l'Ivoire, <i>ivory</i> ;	du Sucre, <i>sugar</i> ;	
un Laboratoire, <i>a laboratory</i> ;	un Tertre, <i>a hillock</i> ;	
du Lierre, <i>ivy</i> ;	un Territoire, <i>a territory</i> ;	
un Lievre, <i>a hare</i> ;	un Théâtre, <i>a theatre</i> ;	
un Livre, <i>a book</i> ;*	un Thermomètre, <i>a thermome-</i>	
le Lustre, <i>the lustre</i> ;	un Timbre, <i>a clock bell</i> ; [ter ;	
un Luminaire, <i>a luminary</i> ;	un Tire-bourre, <i>screw of a ram-</i>	
le Maigre, <i>the lean</i> ;	un Titre, <i>a title</i> ;	[rod ;
du Marbre, <i>marble</i> ;	le Tonnerre, <i>thunder</i> ;	
le Martyre, <i>martyrdom</i> ;	un Ulcère, <i>an ulcer</i> ;	
un Massacre, <i>a massacre</i> ;	le Ventre, <i>the belly</i> ;	
un Membre, <i>a limb</i> ;	un Vertèbre, <i>a vertebra</i> ;	
un Mémoire, <i>a memorial</i> ;†	un Verre, <i>a glass</i> ;	
du Mercure, <i>mercury</i> ;	un Vésicatoire, <i>a blister</i> ;	
un Météore, <i>a meteor</i> ;	du Vinaigre, <i>vinegar</i> ;	
un Meurtre, <i>a murder</i> ;	un Vocabulaire, <i>a vocabulary</i> ;	
le Ministère, <i>the ministry</i> ;	un Vomitoire, <i>a vomit</i> ;	
un Mystère, <i>a mystery</i> ;	le Vulgaire, <i>the vulgar</i> ;	
un Monastère, <i>a monastery</i> ;	un Vulnérable, <i>a vulnerable</i> .	

Four hundred and
nine other nouns end-
ing in RE are feminine.

*un Livre, *a pound*.

†la Mémoire, *memory*.

SE. There are Two hundred and fifty nouns ending in
SE, Fourteen of which are masculine ; the most com-
monly used are,

l' Aise, <i>ease</i> ;	un Narcisse, <i>a narcissus</i> ;
un Carosse, <i>a coach</i> ;	le Parnasse, <i>parnassus</i> ;
un Colosse, <i>a colossus</i> ;	un Thyrses, <i>a thyrsis</i> ;
un Diocèse, <i>a diocess</i> ;	un Trapèze, <i>a trapezium</i> ;
le Malaise, <i>uneasiness</i> ;	un Vase, <i>a vessel</i> .

Two hundred and
thirty-six other nouns
ending in SE are fe-
minine.

Masculine Terminations.

Feminine Terminations.

TE. There are *Three hundred and seventy-five* nouns in TE, *Thirty-nine* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Acte, <i>an act</i> ;	un Geste, <i>a gesture</i> ;
un Antidote, <i>an antidote</i> ;	un Gîte, <i>the seat of a hare</i> ;
un Arbuste, <i>a shrub</i> ;	un Inceste, <i>an incest</i> ;
un Aromate, <i>an aromatic</i> ;	un Insecte, <i>an insect</i> ;
un Automate, <i>an automaton</i> ;	un Labyrinthe, <i>a labyrinth</i> ;
un Buste, <i>a bust</i> ;	un Manifeste, <i>a manifesto</i> ;
un Cassetête, <i>a puzzlebrain</i> ;	un Mécompte, <i>a misreckoning</i> ;
un Ceste, <i>a cestus</i> ;	le Mérite, <i>merit</i> ;
un Compte, <i>an account</i> ;	un Myrte, <i>a myrtle</i> ;
un Conte, <i>a tale</i> ;	l' Omoplate, <i>the omoplate</i> ;
un Contraste, <i>a contrast</i> ;	un Pacte, <i>a pact</i> ;
le Culte, <i>the worship</i> ;	un Poste, <i>a station</i> ;
un Décompte, <i>a discount</i> ;	un Précepte, <i>a precept</i> ;
le Démentie, <i>demerit</i> ;	un Prétexte, <i>a pretext</i> ;
le Doute, <i>the doubt</i> ;	le Reste, <i>the rest</i> ;
un Entracte, <i>an interlude</i> ;	un Squelette, <i>a skeleton</i> ;
l' Escompte, <i>the discount</i> ;	le Texte, <i>the text</i> ;
le Faîte, <i>the top</i> ;	un Tirebotte, <i>a bootjack</i> ;
le Faste, <i>pomp</i> ;	le Tumulte, <i>tumult</i> .

Three hundred and thirty-six other nouns ending in TE are *feminine*.

la Poste, *post office*.

VE. There are *Forty-two* nouns ending in VE, *Four* of which are *masculine*.

un Conclave, <i>a conclave</i> ;	un Glaive, <i>a sword</i> ;
un Fleuve, <i>a river</i> ;	un Rêve, <i>a dream</i> .

Thirty-eight other nouns ending in VE are *feminine*.

XE. There are *Ten* nouns ending in XE, *Five* of which are *masculine*.

un Axe, <i>an axis</i> ;	un Paradoxe, <i>a paradox</i> ;
l' Equinoxe, <i>the equinox</i> ;	le Sexe, <i>the Sex</i> ;
le Luxe, <i>luxury</i> ;	

The other *Five* nouns ending in XE are *feminine*.

ZE. There are *Two* nouns ending in ZE, *One* of which is *masculine*, viz. du Bronze, *bronze*. *One fem. viz.* de la Gâze, *gauze*.

Some nouns *feminine* are formed in the same manner as the *feminine* of *adjectives*, by adding *e mute* to the *masculine*, or by changing the *termination*; these are;

1st. The nouns denoting *trade, profession, business, &c. as,*

un Acteur,	<i>an actor</i> ;	une Actrice,	<i>an actress</i> ;
un Berger,	<i>a shepherd</i> ;	une Bergère,	<i>a shepherdess</i> .
un Boucher,	<i>a butcher</i> ;	une Bouchère,	<i>a female butcher</i> .
un Boulanger,	<i>a baker</i> ;	une Boulangère,	<i>a female baker</i> .
un Comédien,	<i>a player</i> ;	une Comédienne,	<i>a female player</i> .
un Cuisinier,	<i>a cook</i> ;	une Cuisinière,	<i>a female cook</i> .
un Epicier,	<i>a grocer</i> ;	une Epicière,	<i>a female grocer</i> .
un Fermier,	<i>a farmer</i> ;	une Fermière,	<i>a female farmer</i> .
un Marchand,	<i>a dealer</i> ;	une Marchande,	<i>a female dealer</i> .
un Ouvrier, &c.	<i>a workman</i> ;	une Ouvrière,	<i>a workwoman</i> .

2d. The following, as being the most frequently used;

un Amant,	<i>a lover</i> ;	une Amante,	<i>she who loves</i> .
un Ami,	<i>a male friend</i> ;	une Amie,	<i>a female friend</i> .
un Chat,	<i>a male cat</i> ;	une Chatte,	<i>a female cat</i> .
un Chien,	<i>a dog</i> ;	une Chienne,	<i>a bitch</i> .
un Chanteur,	<i>a male singer</i> ;	une Chanteuse,	<i>a female singer</i> .
un Citoyen	<i>a citizen</i> ;	une Citoyenne,	<i>a citizeness</i> .
un Compagnon,	<i>a male companion</i> ;	une Compagne,	<i>a female companion</i> .
un Cousin,	<i>a male cousin</i> ;	une Cousine,	<i>a female cousin</i> .
un Danseur,	<i>a male dancer</i> ;	une Danseuse,	<i>a female dancer</i> .
un Diable,	<i>a male devil</i> ;	une Diablesse,	<i>a female devil</i> .
un Ecolier,	<i>a male scholar</i> ;	une Ecolière,	<i>a female scholar</i> .
un Epoux,	<i>a husband</i> ;	une Epouse,	<i>a wife</i> .
un Héritier,	<i>an heir</i> ;	une Héritière,	<i>an heiress</i> .
un Héros,	<i>a hero</i> ;	une Héroïne,	<i>a heroine</i> .
un Hôte,	<i>a landlord</i> ;	une Hôtesse,	<i>a landlady</i> .
un Ivrogne,	<i>a drunken man</i> ;	une Ivrognesse,	<i>a drunken woman</i> .
un Juif,	<i>a jew</i> ;	une Juive,	<i>a jewess</i> .
un Lapin,	<i>a buck rabbit</i> ;	une Lapine,	<i>a doe rabbit</i> .
un Lévrier,	<i>a greyhound</i> ;	une Lévyette,	<i>a greyhound bitch</i> .
un Lion,	<i>a lion</i> ;	une Lionne,	<i>a lioness</i> .

un Loup,	<i>a male wolf ;</i>	une Louve,	<i>a female wolf.</i>
le Maître,	<i>the master ;</i>	la Maitresse,	<i>the mistress.</i>
le Marié,	<i>the bridegroom ;</i>	la Mariée,	<i>the bride.</i>
un Menteur,	<i>a man who lies ;</i>	une Menteuse,	<i>a woman who lies.</i>
un Orphelin,	<i>a male orphan ;</i>	une Orpheline,	<i>a female orphan.</i>
un Parent,	<i>a male relation ;</i>	une Parente,	<i>a female relation.</i>
un Paysan,	<i>a countryman ;</i>	une Paysanne,	<i>a countrywoman.</i>
un Prisonnier,	<i>a male prisoner ;</i>	une Prisonnière,	<i>a female prisoner.</i>
un Sultan,	<i>a sultan ;</i>	une Sultane,	<i>a sultana.</i>
un Tigre,	<i>a tyger ;</i>	une Tigresse,	<i>a tygress.</i>
un Tuteur,	<i>a male guardian ;</i>	une Tutrice,	<i>a female guardian.</i>
un Veuf,	<i>a widower ;</i>	une Veuve,	<i>a widow.</i>
un Voisin,	<i>a male neighbour ;</i>	une Voisine,	<i>a female neighbour.</i>

There are *two* numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*.

A noun is *singular*, when we speak of *one being only* ; as, a book, *un livre* ; a house, *une maison* ; a tree, *un arbre* ; a ship, *un navire*, &c.

A noun is *plural* when we speak of *more than one*.

General Rule. The plural is generally formed in french, as in english, by adding *s* to the singular ; as, *des livres*, books ; *des maisons*, houses, &c.

1st Exception. Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, are the same in the plural ; as, *mon fils*, my son ; *mes fils*, my sons ; *une brebis*, a sheep ; *des brebis*, sheep ; *une voix*, a voice ; *des voix*, voices ; *une noix*, a nut ; *des noix*, nuts ; *le nez*, the nose ; *les nez*, the noses.

2d Exception. Nouns ending in *eau* and *au*, take *x* instead of *s*, for the sign of the plural number ; as, *chapeau*, hat ; *chapeaux*, hats.

3d Exception. Nouns ending in *eu* and *ou*, take *x* instead of *s* for the sign of the plural number ; as, *lieu*, place ; *lieux*, places ; *feu*, fire ; - *feux*, fires ; *chou*, cabbage ; *choux*, cabbages.

Except *clou*, nail ; *bijou*, jewel ; *fou*, mad ; *filou*, sharper ; *trou*, hole ; *sou*, penny ; *matou*, ramcat ; which require *s* for their plural, as *clous*, nails, &c.

4th Exception. Nouns ending in *al*, *ail*, change *l* or *il* into *ux* for the plural ; as, *mal*, evil ; *maux*, evils ; *cheval*, horse ; *chevaux*, horses ; *canal*, canal ; *canaux*, canals ; *travail*,* labour ; *travaux*, labours.

Except *bal*, ball ; *détail*, detail ; *épouvantail*, bugbear : *éventail*, fan ; *gouvernail*, rudder ; *portail*, portal ; *sérail*, seraglio ; the plural of which is formed by adding *s* to the singular ; *bals*, balls ; *détails*, details ; *épouvantails*, bugbears ; *éventails*,

* The word *travail* is also spelled with an *s* in the plural, when it means *traves* or *written summaries in administrations*.

fans ; *gouvernails*, rudders ; *portails*, portals ; *sérails*, seraglios ; and *bétail*, cattle, the plural of which is *bestiaux*.

Aïeul, grandfather, used in the plural, and signifying *ancestors*, becomes *aïeux* ; but if it means *grandfathers*, it is regular, and is spelled *aïeuls*.

Aiguail, or *aigail*, *morning dew*, has no plural.

The plural of *ail*, garlick, is *aulx* ; but it is seldom used. *Gousses d'ail*, cloves of garlic, is preferred. In botany, it is formed regularly *aïls*.

Bercail, *sheepfold*, has no plural.

Ciel, when it signifies *sky* or *heaven*, changes into *cieux* ; but, when used to express the *sky in painting*, the *top of a bedstead*, or when it is metaphorically used for *climate*, it remains regular.

Œil, *eye*, changes into *yeux*, when it means the eyes of animated or personified beings. In any other instance it is regular ; as,

Œils-de-bœuf, *ovals*, (in architecture,) *bull's eyes*.

Œils-de-chat, *cat's eyes*, (precious stone,) &c.

Yet we say, *yeux du pain*, *du fromage*, &c. for the holes of bread, of cheese ; and *yeux de la soupe*, *du bouillon* ; for the dross of fat in soup or broth.

Universel, *universal*, (a logic term,) makes *universaux*.

CHAPTER II.

ARTICLE.

The *same noun* admitting *different meanings*, as for example ; **THE** bread, **THE** wine ; **SOME** bread, **SOME** wine ; **THIS** bread, **THAT** wine ; **MY** bread, **THY**, bread, **HIS** bread ; **MY** wine, &c. it was necessary to adopt some *signs* which would fix its proper meaning.

These *signs*, called **ARTICLE**, are various, and generally receive their appellation from the office which they perform in the sentence. They are called in this treatise,

DEFINITE, that which *defines* the object ; as, **THE** bread, **THE** wine.

PARTITIVE, that which denotes *a portion* of the object ; as, *SOME bread, SOME wine.*

NUMERAL, that which *numbers* the objects ; as, *A OR ONE shilling.**

DEMONSTRATIVE, that which *points out* the object ; as, *THIS OR THAT bread, THESE OR THOSE clothes.*

POSSESSIVE, that which expresses the *possession* of the object ; as, *MY bread, THY bread, HIS bread, HER bread, OUR bread, YOUR bread, THEIR bread ; MY wine, THY wine, HIS wine, &c.**

The signs called ARTICLE, are declined in french as follows :

		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
		2	2	3
		<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>
DEFINIT.	<i>THE ;</i>	LE,	LA,	LES.
<i>Of, from</i>	<i>THE ;</i>	DU,	<i>de</i> LA,	DES.
<i>To, at</i>	<i>THE ;</i>	AU,	<i>à</i> LA,	AUX.
PARTIT.	<i>SOME ;</i>	DU,	<i>de</i> LA,	DES.
NUMERAL	<i>A, AN ;</i>	UN,	UNE,	
DEMONS.	<i>THIS, THAT ;</i>	CE,	CETTE,*	
	<i>THESE, THOSE ; ...</i>		CES.
POSSESS.	<i>MY ;</i>	MON,	MA,*	MES.
	<i>THY ;</i>	TON.	TA	TES.
	<i>HIS, HER, ITS ;</i>	SON.	SA,,	SES.
	<i>OUR ;</i>	NOTRE,	NOTRE,	NOS.
	<i>YOUR ;</i>	VOTRE,	VOTRE,	VOS.
	<i>THEIR ;</i>	LEUR,	LEUR,	LEURS.

* To these might be added all the NUMBERS, and the words *CHAQUE, each ; TOUT, every ; PLUSIEURS, several ;* which exclude the article from the noun, and have the same property as the words generally known by the name of ARTICLE.

CHAP. III.

ARTICLE AND NOUN.

GENERAL RULES.

1. *The signs called ARTICLE are never used without a NOUN after them, and they must be of the same GENDER and NUMBER as that noun ; this, in grammar, is called argeement of the article with the noun ; ex.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1			2		3
Masculine.			Feminine.		Masculine and Feminine.
The <i>le</i> Père.			the <i>la</i> Mère.		the <i>les</i> Enfants.
of The <i>du</i> Père.			of the <i>de la</i> Mère.		of the <i>des</i> Enfants.
to The <i>au</i> Père.			to the <i>à la</i> Mère.		to the <i>aux</i> Enfants.
A <i>un</i> Père.			a <i>une</i> Mère.		
Some <i>du</i> Pain.			some <i>de la</i> Viande.		some <i>des</i> Habits.
This } <i>ce</i> Pain.			this } <i>cette</i> Viande.		these } <i>ces</i> Habits.
Tht }			that }		those }
My <i>mon</i> Père.			my <i>ma</i> Mère.		my <i>mes</i> Enfants.
of My <i>de mon</i> Père.			of my <i>de ma</i> Mère.		of my <i>de mes</i> Enfants.
to My <i>à mon</i> Père.			to my <i>à ma</i> Mère.		to my <i>à mes</i> Enfants.
Thy <i>ton</i> Pain.			thy <i>ta</i> Viande.		thy <i>tes</i> Habits.
His <i>son</i> Pain.			his <i>sa</i> Viande.		his <i>ses</i> Habits.
Her <i>son</i> Pain.			her <i>sa</i> Viande.		her <i>ses</i> Habits.
Our <i>notre</i> Pain.			our <i>notre</i> Viande.		our <i>nos</i> Habits.
Your <i>votre</i> Pain.			your <i>votre</i> Viande.		your <i>vos</i> Habits.
Their <i>leur</i> Pain.			their <i>leur</i> Viande.		their <i>leurs</i> Habits.

EXERCISE.

The father, *the* mother, *the* children. *The* good nature of the father,
 * père, † mère, enfants. † * bon naturel m.
the tenderness of *the* mother, *the* civility of *the* children. Speak to *the*
 * tendresse f. * civilité f. Parlez
 father, tell it to *the* mother, give it to *the* children. *The* brother, *the*
 dites-le donnez-le frère,
 sister, *the* cousins. *The* complaisance of *the* brother, *the* modesty
 sœur, cousins. * complaisance f. * modestie f.
of the sister, *the* kindness of *the* cousins. *The* horse, *the* cow, *the*
 * bonté f. cheval, vache,
 dogs. *The* bridle of *the* horse, *the* horns of *the* cow, *the* ears of *the*
 chiens. * bride f. cornes oreilles

* Before you prefix an article to a noun, never omit to consider,

1 Whether the noun which follows the article is masculine or feminine ;

2 Whether it is singular or plural.

If the noun which follows the article is masc. sing. use the signs contained in the 1 column.

If the noun which follows the article is fem. sing. use the signs contained in the 2 column.

If the noun which follows the article is plural, whether masculine or feminine, use the signs contained in the 3 column.

† Observe also, that if the noun is singular in english, it must be singular in french, and if it is plural in english, it must be made plural in french, agreeably to the rules, page 41.

dogs. Bring it to the horse, give it to the cow, leave it to the dogs.
Apportez-le donnez-le laissez-le

The nose, the mouth, the eyes. The tip of the nose, the size of
* nez, m. bouche, f. yeux. * bout m. grandeur f.

the mouth, the beauty of the eyes. A glass, a spoon, a knife, a
beauté f. * verre, m. cuiller, f. couteau, m.

fork. Some wine, some beer, some glasses. This dinner, this
fourchette, f. * vin, m. bière, f. * dîner, m.

table, these dishes. That cheese, that bottle, those apples. My arm,
table, f. plats. fromage, m. bouteille, f. pommes. † bras, m.

my hand, my feet. His hat, his shirt, his stockings. Her apron,
* main, f. * pieds. † † chapeau, m. * † chemise, f. * † bas. * † tablier, m.

her † gown, her † scissors. Our garden, our house, our fields. Your
* robe, f. * ciseaux. jardin, m. maison, f. champs.

umbrella, your watch, your gloves. Their coach, their servants.
parapluie, m. montre, f. gants. carrosse, m. domestiques.

2. If the noun which follows the article is *singular*, and begins with a *vowel*, or *h* mute, † whether it is *masculine* or *feminine*, use

l'	le,	la ; as	The	l'	Enfant. m. l'	Histoire. f.
de l'	du, de la ;	of The	de l'	Enfant. de l'	Histoire.	
à l'	au, à la ;	to The	à l'	Enfant. à l'	Histoire.	
cet	ce ;	This or That	cet	Enfant. cette	Histoire.	
mon	ma ;	My	mon	Enfant. mon	Histoire.	
ton	ta ;	Thy	ton	Enfant. ton	Histoire.	
son	sa ;	His or Her	son	Enfant. son	Histoire.	

EXERCISE.

The air. The water. My slate. Her writing. His school. Her
2 air. eau. 2 ardoise. 2 écriture. 2 † école. 2 †

* See note * page 44.

† Observe that *two* of the signs called *ARTICLE* cannot be used before the same noun ; so we say *LE bras*, the arm ; *LA main*, the hand, *LA dame*, the lady, *UNE dame*, a lady ; *MADAME*, my lady, madam, Mrs. ; *DES dames*, some ladies ; *MESdames*, ladies ; *UNE demoiselle*, a young lady ; *DES demoiselles*, some young ladies ; *MESdemoiselles*, ladies ; but we do not say, *LE mon bras* ; *LA ma main* ; *LA madame* ; *UNE madame* ; *DES mesdames* ; *LA mademoiselle* ; *UNE mademoiselle* ; *DES mesdemoiselles* ; because each of these signs fixing the proper meaning of the noun, renders another sign superfluous.

N. B. From this rule must be excepted the words *MONSIEUR* and *MESSIEURS*, which, though they are compounded of the noun *SIEUR*, and of the article *MON*, *MES*, will in some instances admit of the other articles ; for we say ; *LE monsieur*, the gentleman ; *UN monsieur*, a gentleman ; *CE monsieur*, this gentleman, &c. *LES messieurs*, the gentlemen ; *CES messieurs*, these gentlemen ; *NOS messieurs*, our gentlemen. These few singularities will be learnt by custom.

‡ The *h* must be marked in these exercises with an apostrophe, this mark ' , before it.

¶ I have frequently been asked if, having only one word to express both *HIS* and *HER*, we do not often commit mistakes in the use of that word. No, we never do ; because this sign always refers to a noun mentioned before, the gender of which we know ; So, when I say, *Mon frère a perdu son couteau*, My brother has lost his knife ; I know by *Son* that it is the knife belonging to my brother. *Ma sœur a perdu son couteau*, My sister has lost her knife ; I know by this *Son* that it is the knife belonging to my sister. But suppose a gentleman and a lady sat at table, and both let their knives fall ; and a person said to a servant, *Ramassez son couteau*, meaning the knife of the lady, which knife would the servant pick up ? Indeed he would not know, but a Frenchman would not express himself thus ; He would say ; *Ramassez le couteau de monsieur*, Pick up the gentleman's knife ; or *Ramassez le couteau de madame*, Pick up the lady's knife, by which all ambiguity would be avoided.

school. *This* man. *That* child. *This* tree. *That* bird. *The* ornament
 2 'homme, enfant. arbre. oiseau. ornement
of the mind. *The* history *of the* year. *The* wing *of the* bird. He
 esprit. 2 'histoire année. aile II
 sacrificed *his* honour *to the* interest *of the* state. *She* has lost *the*
 sacrificia 'honneur intérêt état. Elle a perdu
 affection *of her* friend. *Her* obstinacy *is the* cause *of his* inconstancy.
 affection 2 ami. opiniâtreté est 1 cause f. inconstance.

3. The signs called *article* must be *repeated* before every noun in french agreeably to the gender and number of each noun, though the nouns are in the same sentence, and though the article is not repeated in english ; as,

The father, mother and children are (gone out,)

Le père, *la* mère et *les* enfants sont sortis, i. e. the farther, the &c.

Some bread, meat, money and clothes.

Du pain, *de la* viande, *de l'argent* et *des* habits, i. e. some bread, &c.

EXERCISE.

Bring *the* bread and butter³; *the* tea and coffee³; *some* milk or
 Apportez 1 pain m. et beurre ; m. thé m. café ; m. 1 lait m. ou
 cream³; *a* cup and saucer³; *a* knife and fork³; *some* bread and
 crème ; f. tasse f. soucoupe ; f. couteau m. fourchette ; f.
 cheese³; *the* dishes and plates³; *the* beans and bacon³; *the* pepper
 fromage ; m. 1 plat † assiette† ; fève † lard ; m. poivre m.
 and salt³. *My* brother and sister³ are (gone out.) *His* father and
 sel. m. 1 frère sœur sont sortis. —*
 mother³ are dead. *She* has lost *her* friends and relations³.
 sont morts. Elle a perdu ami † parent. †

PARTICULAR RULES.

PROPER NAMES.

4. The names of *persons* and *places*, i. e. of *cities*, *towns*, *villages*, &c. are used in french as in english, *without* any of the signs called *article* ; as,

I like Voltaire,
 London.

J'aime Voltaire,(A)
 Londres.

I speak *of* Voltaire,
of London.

Je parle *de* Voltaire,
de Londres.

I prefer it *to* Voltaire,
to London.

Je le préfère *à* Voltaire,
à Londres.(B)

Observe that *de* and *à* which are prefixed to *Voltaire*, *Lon-*

* A dash, this mark (—), under a word shews that the word is not expressed in french agreeably to rules which will be seen in the last part of this work.

† See note † page 44.

(A) Some names of *persons*, derived from *common* names, such as, *le Brun*, *Le Blanc*, *Le Noir*, *La Porte*, *La Grange*, *La Fontaine*, &c. are always preceded by an article, but that article is considered as a syllable of the name, and never varies.

(B) Except *le Caire*, *Cairo* ; *le Catelet*, *la Chapelle*, *la Charité*, *la Ferté*, *la Flèche*, *le Havre*, *la Havanne*, *Havannah* ; *la Haye*, the Hague ; *la Hogue*, *le Mars*, *la Mecque*, *Mecca* ; *le Plessis*, *le Pui*, *le Quenoi*, *la Rochelle*, which require the definite article, for we say, *Je viens du Havre*. I come from Havre. *Je vais à la Rochelle*. I am going to Rochelle.

dres, are not *articles* ; they are *prepositions* used to unite the noun to the verb.

EXERCISE.

I have read almost all *the*l works of Voltaire and 4Rousseau.
 J' ai lu presque toutes œuvres &
 I am reading now *the*l adventures of Telemachus the son *of* Ulysses
 Je — lis à présent aventures Télémaque — fils & Ulysse
 and Penelope. Have you ever been *in* London? Yes, I have, *i. e.*, been.
 & Pénélope. Avez-vous jamais été à Oui, j'y ai été
 Is it as large as Paris? London is much larger than Paris.
 Est-il aussi grand que est beaucoup plus grand que
 London is *the*l largest city in Europe. Have you seen Naples? No;
 plus grande ville f. de l' vu Non;
 I have been *at* Florence and Rome, but I have not⁵⁵ been *at* Naples.
 ai été à & mais je n'ai pas été

5. But the names of *countries* and *provinces*, which are used without an article in english, require in french one of the signs *le, la, les* ; *du, de la, des, au, à la, aux*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

I like	Portugal, France, England.	J'aime	<i>le</i> Portugal, <i>la</i> France, <i>l'</i> Angleterre.
I speak	<i>of</i> Portugal, <i>of</i> France, &c.	Je parle	<i>du</i> Portugal, <i>de la</i> France, &c.
I prefer it	<i>to</i> Portugal, <i>to</i> France, &c.	Je le préfère	<i>au</i> Portugal, <i>à la</i> France, &c. (c)

EXERCISE.

Italy⁵ is *the* garden of Europe⁵. France⁵ is also *a* fine country ;
 2Italie^e est jardin m. 2Europe.[†] France f. est aussi beau pays ; m
 it lies between Spain,⁵ Italy, Switzerland, Germany,⁵ Holland,⁵
 elle (est située) entre Espagne, 5 Suisse, f, 5 Allemagne, Hollande, f.
 and England.⁵ Spain, with all *the* gold of Mexico⁵ and Peru,⁵ is
 et Angleterre, 5 avec tout 2 or Mexique m. & Pérou, m. n'est
 not⁵⁵ so rich as France. Brazil⁵ belongs *to* Portugal, Mexico *to*
 pas si riche que 5 Brésil m. appartient 5 m. 5
 Spain, Canada⁵ to England, Martinique⁵ and Guadeloupe⁵ *to* France.
 6 Canada m. 5 Martinique f. Guadeloupe f. 5

§ The *preposition* must be *repeated* before every noun in french, in the same way as the article.

‡ When the monosyllables *le, de, ne, se, je, me, te, la, que*, are followed by a *vowel* or a *h mute*, the vowel, *e, a*, is left out, and an apostrophe, this mark ('), put in its place.

(c) Some names of *countries*, which take their names from their capital *city*, such as, *Alger*, *Algiers* ; *Avignon*, *Gènes*, *Genoa* ; *Genève* *Geneva* ; *Florence*, *Maroc*, *Morocco* ; *Naples*, *Orange*, *Tunis*, *Tripoli*, *Venise* ; or from the name of *some person* ; as *St. Domingue*, *St. Domingo* ; *St. Vincent*, &c. do not require the article.

* The figures at the top of the words or under the words, indicate the number of the paragraph where the rule concerning that word is to be found; if you do not perfectly recollect the rule, never omit to look for it, and read it every time with the example.

+ The *parts* of the *world* follow the same rules as the names of countries.

6. Observe however that the names of *countries* are used *without* the article in french, when they come after verbs denoting *dwelling* or *movement*, such as *to be in*, *to live in*, *to go to*, *to come from*. In these instances, *in*, *to* are expressed by *en*, and *from* by *de* ; as,

He is	<i>in</i>	France.	Il est	<i>en</i>	France.
	<i>in</i>	England.		<i>en</i>	Angleterre.
He is going	<i>to</i>	France.	Il va	<i>en</i>	France.
	<i>to</i>	England.		<i>en</i>	Angleterre.
He comes	<i>from</i>	France.	Il vient	<i>de</i>	France.
	<i>from</i>	England.		<i>d'</i>	Angleterre. (D)

EXERCISE.

My brother lives *in* Switzerland and my sister *in* France. I intend
demeure 6 6 J' (ai dessein)
to go *to* France and Italy, (as soon) as *the* war is over. I come
d' aller 6 6 ϕ aussitôt que l guerref. sera finie. Je viens
from Portugal, and I (am going) *to* Holland and England. Have you
6 Je vais 6 6 ϕ Avez-vous
ever been to Spain ? No ; I (am going) *to* Turkey and *to* Greece,
jamais été 6 Non ; Je vais 6 Turquie 6 Grèce,
whence I (will pass) *into* Spain. I would rather go *to* Italy.
(d' où) Je passerai en 6 J' aimerais mieux aller 6

THE ; *LE*, *LA*, *LES*, *DU*, *de LA*, *DES* ; *AU*, *à LA*, *AUX*.

7. All common names used in a *general* sense ; as, *bread is good* ; or in a *particular* sense ; as, *the bread which I eat is good* ; must have before them one of the definite signs *le*, *la*, *les* ; *du*, *de la*, *des* ; *au*, *à la*, *aux*, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun ; ex.

(D) From this rule must be excepted the *countries* discovered by the navigators, and some countries in *Asia* and *Africa*, which are never used without the article. The most essential to be known, on account of their being frequented by the Europeans, are

l' Archipel,	Archipelago.	la Floride,	Florida.	le Mississipi	Mississippi.
les Barbades,	Barbadoes.	la Grénade,	Grenada.	le Mogol,	Mogul Emp.
le Bengal,	Bengal.	la Guadeloupe,	Guadeloupe.	les Moluques,	Moluccaisles,
la Bermude,	Bermuda.	la Guienne,	Guiana.	la Nigritie, [terre,	Nigritia,
le Brésil,	Brasil.	l' Inde,	India.	la Nouvelle Angle-	New England.
la Californie,	California.	l' Indostan,	Indostan.	le Paraguay,	Paraguay.
le Canada,	Canada.	la Jamaïque,	Jamaica.	le Péloponèse,	Peloponesus.
la Caroline,	Carolina.	le Japon,	Japan.	la Pensylvania,	Pensylvania.
le Chili,	Chili.	le Levant,	The Levant.	le Pérou,	Peru.
la Chine,	China.	la Louisiane,	Louisiana.	les Philippines,	The Phil. Isles.
la Cochinchine,	Cochinchina.	la Martinique,	Martinique.	la Sonde	Sunda.
le Congo,	Congo.	le Mexique,	Mexico.	la Virginie,	Virginia.

For we say ; J' ai été au Canada. I have been in Canada. Je vais à la Jamaïque, au Mexique, au Pérou, &c. I am going to Jamaica, to Mexico, to Peru, &c. Je viens du Japon, de la Chine, des Indes, &c. I come from Japan, China, the Indies, &c.

ϕ See note ϕ page 47.

General sense, no article in english before the noun.

I like bread,	J'aime le pain,*
meat,	la viande,
money,	l' argent,
clothes.	les habits.

I speak of bread, Je parle du pain,
of meat, of clothes. de la viande, des habits.

I prefer it to bread, to meat, &c. Je le préfère au pain, à la viande, &c.

Particular sense, in english THE before the noun.

I like the bread	} I have.	J'aime le pain	} que j'ai.*
the meat		la viande	
the money		l' argent	
the clothes		les habits	

I speak of the bread and meat I have. Je parle du pain et de la viande que j'ai.
I prefer it to the bread and meat he has. Je le préfère au pain et à la viande qu'il a.

EXERCISE.

Gold⁷ and silver⁷ are precious, but iron⁷ and steel⁷ are more useful.
2or 2argent sont précieux, mais fer m. 2acier sont plus utiles.
The gold and silver of Peru are purer¹⁸ than that of Europe.⁵
3 5 Pérou m. sont (plus purs) que celui 2
Modesty⁷ and virtue are preferable to beauty and riches. I prefer
modestie f. 3vertu f. sont préférables 7beauté f. 7richesse. Je préfère
the modesty and virtue of your sister, to the beauty and riches of your
1 3 de 1 7
cousin. Peace⁷ and plenty⁷ make men⁷ happy. (Let us preserve) the
cousine. paix f. 2abondance rendent hommes heureux. conservons 1
peace and plenty which we enjoy. Patience and perseverance are
3 dont nous jouissons. 7patience f. 7persévérance f. sont
necessary to happiness. I admire the patience and perseverance of
nécessaire 2bonheur. m. J'admire 1 f. 3 f.
your brother. Pride⁷ and vanity are generally the cause of the mis-
2orgueil 7vanité f. ordinairement 1 cause f. 1 mal-
fortunes of men. (Let us go) into the garden, to see if the fruit is
heur 7homme. allons dans 1 jardin m.— voir si 1 fruit m. est.
ripe. Which fruit do you⁵¹ like best? Gooseberries or strawber-
mûr Quel — aimez-vous le mieux? 7groseille ou 7fraise?
ries? I do not⁵⁵ like gooseberries; I like cherries and peaches.
Je— n' aime pas 7 J' aime 7cerise 7pêche.
Children generally like fruit. I prefer milk⁷ and cheese to fruit.
enfant 7 en général aiment 7 Je préfère lait m. 7fromage m. 7

OF expressed by DE; not by du, de la, des.

8. Observe that the preposition *of* before a noun used in a

* When you speak of a substance, you either mean it *Whole*, or in *Parts*.

If you mean the *Whole* of the substance of which you are speaking, the noun that names it, is said to be used in a *General sense*; as, *Wine cheers the heart of man*, i. e. that substance in general known by the name of *Wine*, cheers the heart of man.

If you mean some *Particular sort* of the substance of which you are speaking, the noun is said to be used in a *Particular sense*; as, *The wine which we drank was good*; in speaking thus, I do not mean to say, that all the substance called wine is good, for there is bad wine, but that *particular sort* which we drank was good.

If you neither mean the whole, nor any particular sort of the substance spoken of, but a certain *Portion*, or *Quantity* of it; as when you say, *Give me some wine*, *A glass of wine*; i. e. a *portion* of the substance called wine, the noun is said to be used in a *Partitive sense*.

general sense,* preceded by another noun, used in a *partitive sense*, cannot be expressed by *du*, *de la*, *des*, which would render the expression *particular*,* and mean *of the*, it must be expressed by *de* only, without any regard to gender or number; as,

He gave me a pound <i>of</i> bread,	Il me donna une livre <i>de</i> pain,
a piece <i>of</i> meat,	un morceau <i>de</i> viande,
a bag <i>of</i> money,	un sac <i>d'</i> argent,
a heap <i>of</i> clothes.	un tas <i>d'</i> habits.

Not, Une livre *du* pain; Un morceau *de la* viande, &c. which would mean *a pound of the bread; a piece of the meat, &c.*

N. B. In this rule must be included the following words, which, though they have no sign after them in english, require the connective particle *de* to unite them to the noun which follows them :

assez, <i>enough</i> ;	as,	assez	<i>de</i> pain.
beaucoup, <i>much, many</i> ;		beaucoup	<i>de</i> viande.
combien, <i>how much, how many</i> ;		combien	<i>d'</i> argent.
tant, <i>so much, so many</i> ;		tant	<i>d'</i> habits.
autant, <i>as much, as many</i> ;		autant	<i>de</i> pain.
plus, <i>more</i> ;		plus	<i>de</i> viande.
moins, <i>less</i> ;		moins	<i>d'</i> argent.
trop, <i>too much, too many</i> ;		trop	<i>d'</i> habits.
peu,		peu	<i>de</i> pain.
guère, ‡ } <i>little, few</i> ;		guère	<i>de</i> viande.
pas, point, <i>no, not</i> ;		pas, or point,	<i>d'</i> argent.
jamais, <i>never</i> ;		jamais,	<i>d'</i> habits.

Not, *assez du* pain, § &c. which would mean *enough of the bread, &c.*

EXERCISE.

I have bought a pair *of* boots, and two pairs *of* shoes. Drink a
 J'ai acheté 1 paire f. 8 botte, deux 8 soulier. Buvez 1
 glass *of* wine. Have a *little* patience. 8 This is (a day) *of* rest.
 verre m. vin. Ayez un peu N.E. C' est (aujourd'hui jour) 8 repos.
 I have *many* things 8 to do. I have *no* money 8, and I have very
 beaucoup chose N.B. à faire. Jen'ai pas argent N.B. j' ai très
 few friends. 8 You have *more* property 8 than I have. I have not 55
 peu ami. N.B. avez plus bien N.B. que moi — Je n'ai pas
 (so many) friends 8 as you. Your friends have (*as much*) interes 8 as
 tant N.B. que ont autant 7 crédit N.B. que

* See note * page 49.

† See note ‡ page 47.

‡ Observe that *guère* is used only in *negative* sentences.

§ It appears from the foregoing examples that, when two nouns come together in french, they must be connected by some sign, and this sign is determined by the sense in which the nouns are used.

If, as in the first instance (rule 7.), the nouns are used in an *unlimited* signification, they must be connected by the sign which denotes that idea, viz. *du*, *de la*, *des*.

But if, as in the second instance (rule 8), the *extent* of the *second* noun is *determined* by the *first*, then a simple preposition is sufficient to connect them.

mine. Give me *little* wine⁸ and *much* water.⁸ You give me²⁴
 les miens. Donnez-moi peu N.B. eau.N.B. Vous me²⁴ donnez
 (*too much*) wine⁸; you do not⁵⁵ give me²⁴ water enough⁸. I never
 trop, N.B. vous — ne me²⁴ donnez pas assez. N.B. Je ne⁵⁵
 drink wine⁸ without putting a (*good deal*) of water⁸ (into it²⁴).
 bois jamais N.B. sans y²⁴ mettre — beaucoup N.B. —.

SOME, ANY; DU, de LA, DES.

9. If you want to express only a *part* of the substance of which you are speaking; as, *some bread, some meat, &c.* use before the noun one of the partitive signs *du, de la, des*, agreeably to gender and number. The signs are the same as those of the definite article *of the*; as,

He gave me <i>some</i> bread,	Il me donna <i>du</i> pain,
<i>some</i> meat,	<i>de la</i> viande,
<i>some</i> money,	<i>de l'</i> argent,
<i>some</i> clothes,	<i>des</i> habits.

i. e. a portion *of the* bread, *of the* meat, *of the* money, *of the* clothes.

N. B. The sign *some* is often understood in english, before such nouns as *bread, meat, money, &c.*, but the sign which represents it in french, cannot be omitted; and it must be *repeated* before every noun; as,

He gave me bread, meat, money, clothes; i. e. *some* bread, *some* meat.
 Il me donna *du* pain, *de la* viande, *de l'* argent, *des* habits.

EXERCISE.

The dinner is on the table. Will you have meat⁹N.B. or fish⁹N.B.?
 dîner m. est sur f. Voulez-vous — viande f. ou poisson m.?
 Will you have *some* beef and cabbage; *some* mutton and turnips? I
 — beuf m. 3 choux; plur. mouton m. 3navet? Je
 (shall eat) *some* fish and potatoes. Bring me *some* salt and pepper.
 mangerai 3(pommes de terre.) Apportez-moi sel m. 3poivre. m.
 What will you drink? Will you have beer⁹, or cider⁹? I (will drink)
 Que voulez-vous boire? — bière, f. ou cidre m.? Je boirai
some wine and water.⁴ Put *some* bread and cheese, on *the* table.
 vin m. 2 eau. Mettez pain m. 3fromage, m. sur f.

Except *some, any*, expressed by *de*; not by *du, de la, des*.

10. The partitive signs *du, de la, des*, require the noun immediately after them; therefore if a noun used in a partitive sense is *preceded* by an *adjective*, use *de* before that adjective, for both genders and numbers, instead of *du, de la, des*, before the noun; as,

He gave me very <i>good</i> bread,	Il me donna <i>de</i> très bon pain,
<i>excellent</i> meat,	<i>d'</i> excellente viande,
<i>fine</i> clothes,	<i>de beaux</i> habits.

N. B. But if the adjective comes after the noun, then the

noun resumes its proper sign, as in Rule 9th, viz. *du, de la, des*; as,

Nous avons <i>du</i> vin excellent,	We have excellent wine.
<i>de la</i> gloire bien acquise,	well acquired glory.
<i>de l'</i> argent comptant,	ready money.
<i>des</i> plaisirs champêtres,	rural pleasures.

EXERCISE.

(This is) 10 excellent wine, but (that is) 10 very bad beer. Have you any
Voici excellent vin, mais voilà très mauvaise bière. Avez-vous 10
good beer in France? No; but we have 10 good wine and good brandy.
bonne bière en Non; nous avons bon 10 bonne (eau de vie.)
Good small beer is better than bad wine. You must have fine.
10 bonne petite bière est meilleure que 10 mauvais devez avoir 10 beau
fruit in France. Yes; we have very fine fruit. (Are there) any large trees
en Oui; avons 10 très beau Y a-t-il 10 grands arbre
in your garden? No: (There are only) young trees. Have you not
dans 1 jardin? Non; (il n'y a que) 10 jeunes N'avez-vous pas
better pens to lend me? I have good pens, but bad 10 ink.
10 meilleures plume à me 24 prêter 24? J'ai 10 bonnes mais mauvaise encre.

How to place two Nouns together.

11. When *two nouns* come together, the French always place first the noun which is the subject of discourse, which *du, de la, des, de* or *à*, before the second noun, agreeably to the sense in which it is used; as,

<i>Peter's</i> book,	<i>Le livre</i> DE <i>Pierre</i> .	} DE, 4th rule, proper names.
<i>i. e.</i> the book of <i>Peter</i> .		
<i>Some</i> London beer,	<i>De la</i> bière DE <i>Londres</i> .	} DU, DE LA, 7th rule, particular sense.
<i>i. e.</i> <i>Some</i> beer of <i>London</i> .		
<i>The</i> master's pen,	<i>La</i> plume DU maître.	} DU, DE LA, 7th rule, particular sense.
<i>i. e.</i> the pen of <i>the</i> master.		
<i>The</i> street door,	<i>La</i> porte DE LA rue.	} DU, DE LA, 7th rule, particular sense.
<i>i. e.</i> the door of <i>the</i> street.		
<i>A</i> gold watch,	<i>Une</i> montre D' or.	} DE, OF, 8th rule, general sense.
<i>i. e.</i> a watch of <i>gold</i> .		
<i>Some</i> silk stockings,	<i>Des</i> bas DE soie.	
<i>i. e.</i> <i>Some</i> stockings of <i>silk</i> .		

EXERCISE.

Where is William's⁴ hat⁷? Have you seen Mary's⁴ apron⁷?
Où est Guillaume chapeau m.? Avez-vous vu Marie tablier m.?
Will you drink a glass of Port⁴ wine⁸? Nature's⁷ voice⁷ proclaims
Voulez-vous boire verre m. vin? Nature f. voix f. proclame
god's⁴ power⁷. Ignorance⁷ is the mother of error⁷. Have you seen my
dieu pouvoir. m. 2 Ignorance mère 2 erreur. vu
father's horse⁷? I (will wait for you²⁴) at the garden gate⁷, or (at the)
cheval? Je (vous²⁴ attendrai) à jardin m. porte, f. ou au
corner of my sister's house⁷. Shut the kitchen door⁷, and open the
coin m. maison. f. Fermez 7 cuisine f. porte, f. ouvrez
parlour⁷ window. Bring my gold⁸ watch, and clean my silver⁸
salle f. 7 fenêtre. f. Apportez 1 or montre, f. nettoyez 1 argent
buckles.
boucle.

12. Sometimes however the order of the words could not be changed in english in the above manner, without changing also their meaning ; for ex. *a wine glass, an ink bottle, a tea spoon*, could not be changed into *a glass of wine, a bottle of ink, a spoon of tea* ; yet the nouns require this order in french ; but instead of *de* between the two nouns, we use *à*.

N. B. This is done when the first noun denotes the use of the other ; as,

A *wine glass*, i. e. a glass used for wine. *Un verre à vin.*
A *tea spoon*, i. e. a spoon used for tea. *Une cuiller à thé.*

EXERCISE.

Give me the wine¹² bottle, and the water¹² pot. Put some wine¹²
Donnez-moi vin bouteille, f. eau pot. m. Mettez
glasses on the table. Bring the tea¹² board and the coffee¹² cups.
verre sur table. f. Apportez thé cabaret m. café tasse.
There is no powder⁸ in my powder¹² bag. (Let us go) and sit
Il n'y a pas poudren. B. dans sac. m. Allons — (nous asseoir)
in the dining¹² room. Have you any fire¹² arms in your house ?
dans dîner chambre. f. Avez 9 feu arme maison f. ?

CHAP. IV.

ADJECTIVE.

An *adjective* is a word joined to a noun, to denote some quality or circumstance belonging to that noun ; as, good *bread*, bad *meat*, &c.

13. The *adjective* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the noun which it qualifies.

An adjective is made feminine by adding *e* mute to the masculine ; as,

(That is) a pretty boy.	Voilà un <i>joli</i> garçon.
(This is) a pretty girl.	Voici une <i>jolie</i> fille.
He is well dressed.	Il est bien <i>Habillé</i> .
She is very well dressed.	Elle est très bien <i>habillée</i> .

Except the adjectives ending in *e* mute, which are of both genders ; as,

Un <i>jeune</i> homme <i>aimable</i> .	An amiable young man.
Une <i>jeune</i> femme <i>aimable</i> .	An amiable young woman.

And the adjectives in *x*, which change *x* into *se* for the feminine ; as,

Mon frère est *paresseux*.
Ma sœur est *paresseuse*.

My brother is lazy.
My sister is lazy.

The *plural* number of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding *s* or *x* to the singular ; see nouns, page 41. ex.

Une *jolie* fille. A pretty girl. Un *beau* chapeau. A fine hat.
De *jolies* filles. Pretty girls. De *beaux* chapeaux. Fine hats.

N. B. A past *participle* used to qualify a *noun*, or coming after the verb to *be* to express an action or the state of the *noun*, follows the same rules as an adjective ; ex.

My brother is gone out.
My sister is gone out.

Mon frère est *sorti*.
Ma sœur est *sortie*.

EXERCISE.

Your brother is *diligent* ; your sister is *diligent*¹³ ; your brothers are *diligent*¹³ ; your sisters are *diligent*¹³. Your father is *esteemed* ; your mother is *esteemed*¹³ ; your sons are *esteemed* ; your daughters are *esteemed*. That boy is very *civil* ; that girl is very *civil* ; these gentlemen are very *civil* ; these ladies are very *civil*¹³. Our man servant is *lazy* ; our maid servant is *lazy*¹³ ; our men servants are *lazy*¹³ ; our maid servants are *lazy*¹³. My son is very *young* ; my daughter is very *young* ; my sons are very *young* ; my daughters are very *young*. Your cousin is very *amiable* ; she is *officious*¹³ and *complaisant*¹³.

14. If an adjective qualifies *several* nouns *singular* of the *same* gender, that adjective must be of the *same* gender as those nouns, and *plural*, as

Her father and her uncle are *angry*.
Her mother and her aunt are *angry*.

Son père et son oncle sont *fâchés*.
Sa mère et sa tante sont *fâchées*.

15. But if the nouns are of *different* genders, the adjective must be of the *masculine* gender, and in the *plural* number ; as,

Her father and mother are *angry*. Son père et sa mère sont *fâchés*.

EXERCISE.

My mother and sister are *ready*. His daughter and his niece are *civil* and *obliging*. Her son and daughter are *dead*¹⁵. The horse and civill¹⁴ obligeant.¹⁴ 1 fils 3 mort.* cheval

* The *masculine singular* only of adjectives is here given ; the learner must make the adjective of the *gender* and *number* which the noun requires, agreeably to the above rules.

the cow have escaped¹⁵. The gate and the door were open¹⁴. The
 vache (se sont) échappé.* 1 barrière f. porte f. étaient ouvert.*
 man and the woman were gone. I found a glass and a bottle broken.
 étaient parti*. Je trouvai verre m. bouteille f. cassé.*

16. Adjectives are generally placed in english *before* the noun; in french they are placed *after* the noun; as,

A red coat.	A round table.	A new house.
Un habit rouge.	Une table ronde.	Une maison neuve.

17. Except these adjectives, which are generally placed *before* the noun; *premier*, 1st; *second*, 2d; and all the adjectives of *number*.

beau, bel, m. } fine.	mauvais, bad.	
belle, fem. } handsome.	méchant, wicked.	
bon, m. bonne, f. good.	meilleur, better.	
grand, great, large.	moindre, less.	
gros, m. grosse, f. big.	petit, little, small.	
jeune, young.	tout, all, whole.	
joli, pretty.	vieux, m. vieille, f. old; †	
A good husband.	A handsome woman.	A pretty little bird.
Un bon mari.	Une belle femme.	Un joli petit oiseau.

EXERCISE.

England is a fruitful country. The english¹⁶ nation has made several
 5 Angleterre est 1 fertile¹⁶ pays. m. 1 anglais¹³ nation f. a fait plusieurs
 useful¹⁶ discoveries. Your sister is a charming¹⁶ woman. She has the
 utile¹³ découverte. est 1 charmant¹³ femme. Elle a 1
 most engaging¹⁶ manners⁷. Does she⁵¹ know the french¹⁶ language?
 plus engageant¹³ manières. f. -- sait elle⁵¹ 1 français¹³ langue f. ?
 I have met her near the white¹⁶ house. She lives in a small¹⁷
 Je 1 25 ai rencontrée²⁵ (près de) 1 blanche maison. f. demeure dans 13
 house in a large garden. It is an old¹⁷ house, and (there is) a bad¹⁷ road
 maison f. 1 17 jardin. m. C'est 1 vieille il y a chemin m.
 to go (to it) but it is the best¹⁶ situation in this neighbourhood.
 pour y 24 aller 24 mais c'est 1 meilleur¹³ f. dans 1 voisinage. m.

Comparison of Adjectives.

The same words which serve to qualify nouns, serve also by the means of certain *adverbs* to *compare* their qualities.

18. The comparative of *superiority*, *more* before the adjective, or *r* or *er* added to it, is formed in french by *plus*† before the adjective; as,

I am more strong, or stronger than you. Je suis *plus* fort que vous.

19. The comparative of *inferiority*, *less*, or *not so* before the adjective, is formed by *moins*,§ or *pas si* before the adjective; as,

* A *participle* used to qualify a noun, follows the same rule as an *adjective*; 13r. N.B.
 † Add to them MEME, *same*, and PLUSIEURS, *several*, which also come before the noun.

‡ Except MEILLEUR, *better*; PIRE, *worse*; adjectives, } which are comparative
 MIEUX, *better*; PIS, *worse*; adverbs, } of themselves.
 § Except MOINDRE, *les*; adjective, }

I am *less* strong than you.
I am *not so* strong as you.

Je suis *moins* fort que vous.
Je ne suis *pas si* fort que vous.

20. The comparative of *equality*, formed by *as* before the adjective is formed in french by *aussi* before the adjective ; as,
I am *as* strong as you. Je suis *aussi* fort que vous.

21. The superlative *most* or *least* before the adjective, or *st* or *est* added to it, is formed by adding *le, la, les*, to the comparative words *plus, moins*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

My brother is the *strongest*.
My sister is the *least* strong.

Mon frère es *le plus*, fort.
Ma sœur est *la moins* forte.

EXERCISE.

The country is *more* pleasant than the town. My horse is *younger*
1 campagne f. est 18 agréable que 1 ville. f. 1 cheval jeune 18
and runs *faster* than yours. That house is *larger* and *more*
court vite 18 le vôtre. maison-là f. grand 13 13
convenient than this⁴⁴, but this⁴⁴ is *better* built. You write *better*
commode celle-ci, ceile-ci (E) bâti. 13 écrivez (E)
than I do, because you have 10 *better* pens. Vice⁷ is *less* dangerous
moi —, parceque (E) plume. f. Vice m. 19 dangereux
than hypocrisy⁷. She is not *so* handsome as her sister, but she is *more*
2 hypocrisie. Elle n'est pas 19 belle 19 sœur, elle est
amiable. She is *as* rich as you. She is the *handsomest* woman in
aimable. 20 riche 20 1 belle 21 (F)
the town. Her father is the *proudest*²¹ man that I have ever known.
ville. f. orgueilleux 16 que aie (g) jamais connu.

CHAPTER V.

PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is a word used to represent a *noun* ; as, when I say, *I*, instead of naming my own name ; *thou, you, he, she, it, they*, instead of naming that of another being.

(E) Beginners are apt to mistake the words MEILLEUR & MIEUX, which are both expressed by *BETTER*.

MEILLEUR, *better*, is the comparative of BON, *good*, an adjective, and is added to nouns ; as,

My pen is *good*, yours is *better*. Ma plume est BONNE, la vôtre est MEILLEURE.
MIEUX, *better*, is the comparative of BIEN, *well*, an adverb, and is added to verbs ; as,
I write *well*, but you write *better*. J'écris BIEN, mais vous écrivez MIEUX.

(F) IN, after a superlative, is expressed in french in the same manner as OF ; ex.
She is the finest woman in the town. C'est la plus belle femme de LA ville.

(G) QUI, QUE, DONT, after a superlative require the verb in the subjunctive ; as,
She is the finest woman I have ever seen. C'est la plus belle femme que j'AIE jamais vue.

There are various sorts of pronouns, generally known by the names of *personal*, *relative*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *indefinite*.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal pronouns are either *agents* or *nominatives* of verbs, or they are *objects*.

The *nominat.* are, I, thou, he, she, it, we, ye, you, they.
The *objects* are, me, thee, him, her, it, us, you, them.

OF AGENTS OR NOMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

22. When *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they*, are the *nominative* of a verb, i. e. when there is before or after them, a verb of the same *number* and *person* that agrees with them, they are,

<i>I.</i>	<i>Je.</i>	<i>He, it.</i>	<i>Il.</i>
<i>Thou.</i>	<i>Tu.</i>	<i>They, mas.</i>	<i>Ils.</i>
<i>We.</i>	<i>Nous.</i>	<i>She, it.</i>	<i>Elle.</i>
<i>You.</i>	<i>Vous.</i>	<i>They, fem.</i>	<i>Elles.</i>

N. B. The *nominative* pronouns keep the same place in the sentence in french as in english ; ex.

I have. *Thou* hast. *He* has, &c. Have *I*? Hast *thou*? Has *he*? &c.
J'ai. *Tu* as. *Il* a, &c. Ai *je*? As *tu*? A-t-il? &c.

EXERCISE.

I speak. *Thou* writest. *He* plays. *She* sings. *We* walk. *You* dance.
parle. écris. joue. chante. marchons. dansez.
They study. Have *you* done? Is *he* come? Are *they* gone?
étudient. Avez fini? Est venu? Sont partis?

23. If *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they*, have not a verb to agree with them, or if they are joined to another substantive,* they are,

<i>I.</i>	<i>Moi.</i>	<i>He.</i>	<i>Lui.</i>
<i>Thou.</i>	<i>Toi.</i>	<i>They, mas.</i>	<i>Eux.</i>
<i>We.</i>	<i>Nous.</i>	<i>She, it.</i>	<i>Elle.</i>
<i>You.</i>	<i>Vous.</i>	<i>They, fem.</i>	<i>Elles, ex.</i>

It is *I* who have done that. C'est *moi* qui ai fait cela.
He and *I* have done that. *Lui* et *moi* nous avons fait cela.
You and *they* have done that. *Vous* et *eux* vous avez fait cela.

EXERCISE.

Who has done that? It is not *I*; it is *he*. It was neither
Qui a fait cela? Ce n'est pas 23 c' est 23 Ce n'était ni
he nor *I*, it was either *you* or *they*. *He* and *I* were together.
23 ni 23 c' était ou ou 23 23 23 (nous étions) ensemble.
I can do that better than *he*. You can not do it 24 better than *I*.
22 puis faire cela (E) que 23 ne pouvez pas le 24 faire (E) 23

* By *substantive* is meant here every word which either *names* or *represents* a *substance*.

OF OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

A Table showing how the Objective Pronouns are expressed, according to the place which they keep with the Verb.

		Before the verb. 24, 25, 27, rules.	After the verb. 26 rule.	After a preposition. 28 rule.	
<i>Me,</i>	}	<i>Me.</i>	<i>Moi.</i>	<i>Moi.</i>	
<i>to Me.</i>					
<i>Thee,</i>	}	<i>Te.</i>	<i>Toi.</i>	<i>Toi.</i>	
<i>to Thee,</i>					
<i>Himself,</i>	}	<i>Se.</i>		<i>Soi.</i>	
<i>Herself,</i>					
<i>Itself,</i>					
<i>Themselves.</i>					
Whether before or after the verb, 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.					
<i>Us,</i>	}	<i>Nous.</i>		<i>Nous.</i>	
<i>to Us.</i>					
<i>You,</i>	}	<i>Vous.</i>		<i>Vous.</i>	
<i>to You.</i>					
<i>Him,</i>	}	<i>Le.</i>		<i>Lui.</i>	
<i>It ; mas.</i>					
<i>Her,</i>	}	<i>La.</i>		<i>Elle.</i>	
<i>It ; fem.</i>					
<i>Them.</i>		<i>Les.</i>		{ <i>Eux, m.</i> <i>Elles, f.</i>	
<i>to Him,</i>	}	<i>Lui.</i>			
<i>to Her.</i>					
<i>to Them.</i>		<i>Leur.</i>			
<i>of, from,</i>	{ <i>It,</i>				
<i>for, with,</i>					
	{ <i>Them,</i>	{	{ <i>En.</i>		
<i>to, at,</i>	{ <i>It,</i>				
<i>in, by</i>					
	{ <i>Them.</i>	{	{ <i>Y. (H)</i>		

This table shows in one point of view all the rules concerning the *objective* pronouns.

These pronouns, as you see in the table above, are sometimes governed by verbs, and sometimes by prepositions.

When the objective pronouns are governed by a verb, they are placed invariably before that verb. See rules 24, 25, and 27.

Except when the verb *commands*, for then the pronouns must be placed *after* the verb, and *moi, toi* must be used, instead of *me, te*. See rule 26.

If the pronouns are governed by a preposition, they are then independent of the verb, and must be placed *after* the preposition. See rule 28.

(H) *En, y*, are also adverbs of *place*, used, *en* for *thence*; *y* for *there, thither*, and they follow the same rules as the pronouns.

The order which the Objective Pronouns keep with the Verb.

GENERAL RULE.

24. When the Pronouns *me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them*, are governed by a verb, the pronouns *me, te, nous, vous, le, la, les, lui, leur, en, y*, which represent them, must be placed immediately before that verb; ex.

He sees <i>me</i> .	Il <i>me</i> voit.	literally	he <i>me</i>	} sees.
<i>thee</i> .	Il <i>te</i> voit.		he <i>thee</i>	
<i>us</i> .	Il <i>nous</i> voit.		he <i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> .	Il <i>vous</i> voit.		he <i>you</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> .	Il <i>le</i> voit.		he <i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> .	Il <i>la</i> voit.		he <i>her, or it</i>	
<i>them</i> .	Il <i>les</i> voit		he <i>them</i>	} sees he?
Does he see <i>me</i> ?	<i>me</i> voit-il?		<i>me</i>	
<i>thee</i> ?	<i>te</i> voit-il?		<i>thee</i>	
<i>us</i> ?	<i>nous</i> voit-il?		<i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> ?	<i>vous</i> voit-il?		<i>you</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> ?	<i>le</i> voit-il?		<i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> ?	<i>la</i> voit-il?		<i>her, or it</i>	
<i>them</i> ?	<i>les</i> voit-il?		<i>them</i>	

He does not see *me*; &c. Il ne *me* voit pas. he *me* sees not.
 Does he not see *me*? &c. Ne *me* voit-il pas? *me* sees he not?
 Does he not see *thee*? &c. Ne *te* voit-il pas? *thee* sees he not?

EXERCISE.

I see you. I see *him*. I see *her*. I see *them*. Do you⁵¹ see *me*?
 vois 24 24 24 24 *— voyez-vous 24
 Do you see *us*? Do you see *him*? Do you see *her*? Do you see
 — 51 24 — 51 24 — 51 24 — 51
them? I do not⁵⁵ know *you*. I do not know *him*. I do not know
 24 — ne connais pas 24 — 55 24 — 55
her. I do not know *them*. Do you⁵¹ not know *me*? Do you
 24 — 55 24 — ne connaissez-vous pas 24? — 51
 not know *us*? Do you not know *him*? Do you not know *her*?
 55 24? — 55 24? — 55 24
 Do you not know *them*? I meet *them* sometimes, but I do not⁵
 — 55 24? rencontre 24 quelquefois, — ne
 speak (to *them*.) Have you seen your mother lately? I saw *her*
 parle pas — leur²⁴. Avez vu depuis peu? vis 24
 yesterday. Did she⁵¹ bring *you* any thing? She brought *me* a
 hier. —* appor-ta-t-elle 24 quelque chose? appor-ta 24
 new book. Did you⁵¹ tell *her* that I wished to see *her*?
 nouveau livre. m. — dites-vous lui²⁴ que souhaitais — voir la³⁴?
 I told *her* that we (should go) to see *her* on sunday. What did
 dis lui²⁴ que irions — voir la²⁴ — dimanche. Que
 she⁵¹ say to *you*? She told *me* that she (would be) glad to see *us*.
 dit-elle — 24 dit 24 qu' serait (bien aise) de voir 24

* When the English ask a question, they are obliged to have recourse to the signs *do, does, did*; as, *Do I learn well? Dost thou learn well? Does he learn well? Does your brother learn well? Does your sister learn well? Do we learn well? Do you learn well? Do they learn well? Do your brothers learn well? Do your sisters learn well? Did I learn well?* &c.; the French, as you see, do not require any signs, and when these signs occur in english, they must be left out in french.

25. If the objective pronouns *me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them*, are governed by a verb compounded of the auxiliary verbs *have*, or *be*, and of a participle past, the pronouns *me, te, nous, vous, le, la, les, lui, leur, en, y*, which represent them, must be placed *before* the auxiliary verb; not between the auxiliary and the participle; as,

He has seen <i>me</i> .	Il m' [*] a vu.	literally he <i>me</i>	} has seen.
<i>thee</i> .	Il t' a vu.	he <i>thee</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> .	Il l' a vu.	he <i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> .	Il l' a vue.	he <i>her, or it</i>	
<i>us</i> .	Il nous a vus.	he <i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> .	Il vous a vus.	he <i>you</i>	
<i>them</i> .	Il les a vus.	he <i>them</i>	
Has he seen <i>me</i> ?	m' ta-t-il vu?	<i>me</i>	} has he seen?
<i>thee</i> ?	t' a-t-il vu?	<i>thee</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> ?	l' a-t-il vu?	<i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> ?	l' a-t-il vue?	<i>her, or it</i>	
<i>us</i> ?	nous a-t-il vus?	<i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> ?	vous a-t-il vus?	<i>you</i>	
<i>them</i> ?	les a-t-il vus?	<i>them</i>	
He has not seen <i>me</i> ; &c.	Il ne m'a pas vu.	he <i>me</i> has not seen.	
Has he not seen <i>me</i> ? &c.	Ne m'a-t-il pas vu?	<i>me</i> has he not seen?	

EXERCISE.

I have seen *you*. I have seen *him*. I have seen *her*. I have
 ai vu 25 vu 25^{*} vue 25^{*}
 seen *them*. Have you seen *me*? Have you seen *us*? Have you seen
 vus 25 Avez-vous vu 25^{*}? vus 25? vu
him? Have you seen *her*? Have you seen *them*? Where have you
 25^{*}? vue 25^{*}? vus 25? Où
 seen *him*? I have met *him* at the door. He had seen *me*
 vu 25^{*}? rencontré 25^{*} à porte. f. avait vue 25^{*}
 (coming out) of the house. He has kept *me* all this while. I would
 sortir 1 maison. f. retenue 25 tout 1 tems. m. —
 have told *him*²⁵ that I wanted to go. I have told *him*²⁵ that you
 aurais dit lui † que voulais, — (m'en aller.) dit lui † que
 had forbid *me* to stop. I have heard *you*. Had you never⁵⁵
 aviez défendu 25 de m'arrêter. entendus 25 Ne aviez - vous jamais
 seen *him* before? I had met *him* once or twice, but I had
 vu le^{25*} auparavant? avais recontré le^{25*} une ou deux fois; mais ne avais
 never⁵⁵ spoken (to *him*), and he had never⁵⁵ spoken (to *me*). I have
 jamais parlé — lui^{25*} ne avait jamais — 25
 written (to *him*) this morning, but he has not⁵⁵ yet answered *me*.
 écrit — lui²⁵ 1 matin, m. ne a pas encore (fait réponse) 25.

EXCEPTIONS.

26. 1st Exception. When the objective pronouns *me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them* are governed by the *imperative* of a

* See note † page 47

† The letter (*t*) has not any meaning here, it is added only to soften the pronunciation.

‡ See note (1) page 63.

verb used in a *commanding* sense, i. e. without a negation, the pronouns which represent them, are placed immediately *after* the verb ;

In these instances *me* is expressed by *moi*, and *thee* by *toi*.

27. But if the *imperative* is used in a *forbidding* sense, i. e. if it is attended by a negation, the pronouns must be placed immediately *before* the verb, agreeably to the general rule ;

Then *me* is expressed by *me*, and *thee* by *te* ; ex.

Imperative commanding, 26 rule.		Imperative forbidding, 27 rule.		Do not look at me.
Look at <i>me</i> .	Regarde-moi.	Ne <i>me</i>	} regarde pas.	
<i>thyself</i> ,	<i>toi</i> .	Ne <i>te</i>		
Look at <i>us</i> .	Regardez-nous.	Ne <i>nous</i>	} regardez pas.	
<i>yourself</i> .	<i>vous</i> .	Ne <i>vous</i>		
Let us look at <i>him</i> , or <i>it</i> .	Regardons-le.	Ne <i>le</i>	} regardons pas.	
<i>her</i> , or <i>it</i> .	<i>la</i> .	Ne <i>la</i>		
<i>them</i> .	<i>les</i> .	Ne <i>les</i>		

EXERCISE.

Speak to <i>me</i> .	Do not	55 speak to <i>me</i> .	Do not interrupt <i>me</i> .	Warm
Parlez — 26	— ne	pas — 27	— 55 interrompez 27	Chauffe
<i>thyself</i> a little.	Do not warm <i>thyself</i> (so much.)	Write to <i>her</i> .	Do	
26 un peu.	— 55	27 tant.	Ecrivez — lui 26.	—
not write to <i>her</i> .	Send <i>it</i> (to <i>him</i> .)	Do not send <i>it</i> to <i>him</i> .		
55 — 27	Envoyez-le 26 — lui 26	— 55	le 27 — lui 27.	

28. 2d Exception. The objective pronouns are not always governed by verbs, they are sometimes governed by a preposition which some verbs require to be united to the substantive* that follows them ; then the pronoun being the object of the preposition, and not the object of the verb, it is placed *after* the preposition, and we express

<i>Me</i> ,	by	Moi.	<i>Us</i> ,	by	Nous.
<i>Thee</i> ,	by	Toi.	<i>You</i> , [†]	by	Vous.
<i>Him</i> ,	by	Lui.	<i>Them</i> , m.	by	Eux.
<i>Her</i> ,	by	Elle.	<i>Them</i> , fem.	by	Elles, ex.

Was he speaking <i>of me</i> ?	Parlait-il <i>de moi</i> ?
I will not go <i>with him</i> .	Je n'irai pas <i>avec lui</i> .
He is come <i>without her</i> .	Il est venu <i>sans elle</i> .
He applied <i>to them</i> .	Il s'adressa <i>à eux</i> , m. <i>à elles</i> , f.†

EXERCISE.

Come to <i>me</i> .	I do not	55 care	for <i>thee</i> .	I went to <i>her</i> , and she
Viens à 28	— ne me soucie pas de	28	allai 28	et
sent me to <i>him</i> .	I will not go	with <i>them</i> .	I am tired	of <i>them</i> .
envoya 24	28	— 55 irai avec	28	ennuyé d' 28
Have you thought <i>of me</i> ?	I always	54 think	of <i>you</i> .	
Avez	pensé à 28	toujours	pense à 28	

* See note * page 57.

† This is more fully explained in the third part of this work.

The order which *several objective pronouns* keep together.

29. When *several objective pronouns* are governed by the same verb they must be placed *together* in the following order :

Before the verb 24, 25 rules.

Me, }
Nous, } bef. *le, la, les, y, en.*
Te, }
Vous, }
Se, }

After the verb,
26 rule.

Le, }
La, } bef. *moi, toi.*
Les, }
Y, }

*Whether bef. or
after the verb,*
24, 25, 26, 27 r.
Me, } bef. *en.*
Te, }

Whether before or after the verb, 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.

Le, }
La, } bef. *lui, leur, y, en.*
Les, }
Lui, } bef. *y, en.*
Leur, }
Y, bef. *en. ?*

Having uniformly observed that the arrangement of *several pronouns* together is one of those rules which learners find the greatest difficulty to attain, I have given examples showing how *several pronouns* are placed together in all possible instances, by the means of which errors may always be rectified.

BEFORE the verb, 24, 25 rules. AFTER the verb, 26 rule.

FIRST PERSON.

IMPERATIVE COMMANDING.

He gave *him* or *it* to *me*.
He gave *her* or *it* to *me*.
He gave *them* to *me*.
He gave *me* some.
He gave *him* or *it* to *us*.
He gave *her* or *it* to *us*.
He gave *them* to *us*.
He gave *us* some.
He sent *me* there.
He sent *him, her, or it* to *me* there.
He sent *them* to *me* there.
He sent *me* some there.
He sent *us* there.
He sent *him, her, or it* to *us* there.
He sent *them* to *us* there.
He sent *some* to *us* there.

Il *me* *le* donna.
Il *me* *la* donna.
Il *me* *les* donna.
Il *m'* *en* donna.
Il *nous* *le* donna.
Il *nous* *la* donna.
Il *nous* *les* donna.
Il *nous* *en* donna.
Il *m'* *y* envoya.
Il *me* *l'* *y* envoya.
Il *me* *les* *y* envoya.
Il *m'* *y en* envoya.
Il *nous* *y* envoya.
Il *nous* *l'* *y* envoya.
Il *nous* *les* *y* envoya.
Il *nous* *y en* envoya.

Donnez-*le-moi*.
Donnez-*la-moi*.
Donnez-*les-moi*.
Donnez-*m'* *en*.
Donnez-*nous-le*.
Donnez-*nous-la*.
Donnez-*nous-les*.
Donnez-*nous-en*.
Envoyez-*y-moi*.
Envoyez-*l'* *y-moi*.
Envoyez-*les-y-moi*.
Envoyez-*y-en-moi*.
Envoyez-*nous-y*.
Envoyez-*nous-l'* *y*.
Envoyez-*nous-les-y*.
Envoyez-*nous-y-en*.

Give *it* *me*, &c. Send *me* *there*, &c.

SECOND PERSON.

He gave *him* or *it* to *thee*.
He gave *her* or *it* to *thee*.
He gave *them* to *thee*.
He gave *thee* some.
He gave *him* or *it* to *you*.
He gave *her* or *it* to *you*.
He gave *them* to *you*.
He gave *you* some.
He sent *thee* there.
He sent *him, her, or it* to *thee* there.
He sent *them* to *thee* there.
He sent *some* to *thee* there.
He sent *you* there.
He sent *him, her, or it* to *you* there.
He sent *them* to *you* there.
He sent *some* to *you* there.

Il *te* *le* donna.
Il *te* *la* donna.
Il *te* *les* donna.
Il *t'* *en* donna.
Il *vous* *le* donna.
Il *vous* *la* donna.
Il *vous* *les* donna.
Il *vous* *en* donna.
Il *t'* *y* envoya.
Il *te* *l'* *y* envoya.
Il *te* *les* *y* envoya.
Il *t'* *y en* envoya.
Il *vous* *y* envoya.
Il *vous* *l'* *y* envoya.
Il *vous* *les* *y* envoya.
Il *vous* *y en* envoya.

Représente-*le-toi*.
Représente-*la-toi*.
Représente-*les-toi*.
Représente-*t'* *en*.
Représentez-*vous-le*.
Représentez-*vous-la*.
Représentez-*vous-les*.
Représentez-*vous-en*.

Transportez-*vous-y*.

Informez-*vous-y-en*.

Represent *it* to *thee*, &c.

BEFORE the verb, 24, 25 rules. AFTER the verb, 26 rule.

THIRD PERSON.

He recalls <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>himself</i> .	Il se le rappelle.	
He recalls <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>himself</i> .	Il se la rappelle.	
He recalls <i>them</i> to <i>himself</i> .	Il se les rappelle.	
He repents of <i>it</i> , of <i>them</i> .	Il s' en repent.	
He applies <i>himself</i> to <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> .	Il s' y applique.	
He has given <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> .	Il le lui a donné.	Donnez-le-lui.
He has given <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> .	Il la lui a donnée.	Donnez-la-lui.
He has given <i>them</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> .	Il les lui a donnés.	Donnez-les-lui.
He has given <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> .	Il le leur a donné.	Donnez-le-leur.
He has given <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> .	Il la leur a donnée.	Donnez-la-leur.
He has given <i>them</i> to <i>them</i> .	Il les leur a donnés.	Donnez-les-leur.
He warned <i>him</i> , or <i>her</i> of <i>it</i> .	Il l' en avertit.	Avertissez-l' en.
He warned <i>them</i> of <i>it</i> .	Il les en avertit.	Avertissez-les-en.
He sent <i>him</i> , <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> <i>there</i> .	Il l' y envoya.	Envoyez-l' y.
He sent <i>them</i> <i>there</i> .	Il les y envoya.	Envoyez-les-y.
He sent <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> <i>there</i> .	Il le lui y envoya.	Envoyez-le-lui-y.*
He sent <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> <i>there</i> .	Il la lui y envoya.	Envoyez-la-lui-y.
He sent <i>them</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> <i>there</i> .	Il les lui y envoya.	Envoyez-les-lui-y.
He sent <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> <i>there</i> .	Il le leur y envoya.	Envoyez-le-leur-y.
He sent <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> <i>there</i> .	Il la leur y envoya.	Envoyez-la-leur-y.
He sent <i>them</i> to <i>them</i> <i>there</i> .	Il les leur y envoya.	Envoyez-les-leur-y.
He sent <i>some</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> .	Il lui en envoya.	Envoyez-lui-en.
He sent <i>some</i> to <i>them</i> , or <i>them</i> <i>some</i> .	Il leur en envoya.	Envoyez-leur-en.
He sent <i>some</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> <i>there</i> .	Il lui y en envoya.	Envoyez-lui-y-en.
He sent <i>some</i> to <i>them</i> <i>there</i> .	Il leur y en envoya.	Envoyez-leur-y-en.
He sent <i>some</i> (J) <i>there</i> .	Il y en envoya.	Envoyez-y-en.

Give it him, &c. Send it to him there, &c.

EXERCISE.

I have brought *you* the book which I had promised *you*. Where
 ai apporté 25 livre m. que avais promis 25 Où
 is it? Shew *it*²⁹ *me*. I (will shew) *it*²⁴ *you* (by and by.) Will you give
 est-il? Montrez-le 25 montrerai le 29 tantôt. Voulez donner
*it*²⁴ *me*? Give *it*²⁶ *me*. I can not give *it*²⁴ *you*. It does not belong
 le 29? Donnez-le 29 ne puis pas donner le²⁹ Il — n' est pas
 to *me*. I (will lend) *it*²⁴ *you*. When will you⁵¹ lend *it*²⁴ *me*?
 à 23 prêterai le 29 Quand — prêterez-vous le 29?
 Lend *it*²⁹ *me* now. I (will return) *it*²⁴ to *you* (to-morrow.) I (will lend)
 Prêtez-le 26 à présent. rendrai le — 29 demain. prêterai
*it*²⁴ *you* next¹⁶ week⁷. I (shall be) in the country then. I (will send)
 le 29 prochaine semaine. f. serai à campagne f. alors. enverrai
them to *you* *there*. You will not find (any body) to bring *them*
 24 — 29 y 29 — ne trouverez personne pour apporter 24
 to *me* *there*. I (will take) *them* to *you* *there* myself. Has she given
 — 29 y 29 porterai 24 — 29 29 moi-même. A-t-elle donné
*him*²⁵ any money? No; she has lent *him*²⁵ a guinea. Tell *her*²⁶
 (1) 9 argent? Non; prêté (1) 1 guinée, f. Dites (1)
 not to lend *him*²⁴ any more, for he will never return *it*²⁴ *her*.
 de ne pas prêter (1) (J)²⁹ davantage, car — ne⁵⁵ rendra jamais le (1)²⁹

* LUI y is grammatical, but *i*, *i*, at the end of a sentence do not sound well, therefore, instead of y for *there*, use *là*, and say LUI *là* instead of LUI y.

(1) When a verb governs two substantives, either nouns or pronouns, one of them has a preposition expressed or understood, but the preposition is generally understood before the pronoun which represents the person. In these instances *him*, *her*, must be expressed by LUI, and *them* by LEUR, the same as when *to* is prefixed to them; ex.

I will send *him* money, *i. e.* money to *him*. Je LUI enverrai de l'argent; not L'enverrai.
 I have offered *them* some, *i. e.* some to *them*; Je LEUR EN ai offert; not je LES EN ai offert.

(J) *Some*, *any*, implying, of *it*, of *them*, understood after *them*, are expressed by EN.

† The pronouns *le*, *la*, *les*, and the objective pronouns are placed immediately before the verb they govern,

30. As there are only *two* genders in french, the masculine and the feminine, the neuter pronouns *it, they, them* must be expressed by *il, elle, ils, elles* ; *le la, les*, the same as *he, she, they* ; *him, her, them*, masculine or feminine, agreeably to the gender of the noun which they represent ; so we say :

Of a man or a tree ;

Il est grand ; je *le* vois. *He* or *it* is tall ; I see *him*, or *it*.

Of a woman or a flower ;

Elle est belle ; regardez-*la*. *She* or *it* is fine ; look at *her*, or *it*. (κ)

Of men or trees ;

Ils sont ici ; je *les* ai vus. *They* are here ; I have seen *them*.

Of women or flowers ;

Elles sont belles ; je *les* admire. *They* are fine ; I admire *them*.

EXERCISE.

You have a fine hat. *It* is new. I can not wear *it*. *It* is
Avez 1 beau chapeau. m. 30 est neuf. ne saurais porter 30 (κ) 30
too small. (Here is) another ; try. *it*.26 This watch has cost me
trop petit. En voici un autre ; essayez 30 (κ) 1 montre f. a coûté 25
a (good deal) of money,8 but *it* is not55 good ; *it* does not go well.
— beaucoup argent, n.b. 30 n'est pas bonne ; 30 — ne va pas bien.
Get *it*.26 mended. Give *it*.30 me. (That is) a good house ; *it*
Faites 30(κ) raccommoder. Donnez (κ) 26 Voilà 1 bonne maison ; f. 30
is well built, but *it* is not well situated. *It* is too near the road. If
bien bâti, 13 30 bien situé 13. 30 trop près de route. f. Si
it was mine,42 I (would sell) *it*.24 Eat some of these grapes ;
30 était (à moi) vendrais 30(κ) Mangez (quelques-uns) 1 raisins ; m.
they are good. I (would rather have) apples, if *they* were ripe.
30 bon. 13 J' aimerais mieux — 9pommes, f. 30 étaient mûr.13
It is not the time for apples. Is *it* astonishing that *they* are
(L) n'est pas tems m. des (L) étonnant qu' 30ne soient
not55 ripe ? *It* (would be) an astonishing thing if *they* were.
pas 13 (L) serait étonnante 16 chose f. qu' 30 le fussent.

31. *He, she, they, him, her, them*, are sometimes used without

(κ) Learners are sometimes embarrassed how to discriminate *it* the object from *it* the agent or nominative, i. e. when to express *it* by *IL, ELLE*, and when by *LE, LA*.

It is the agent, and expressed by *IL, ELLE*, agreeably to the gender of the noun to which it relates, when, if you were speaking of a person, you would use *he* or *she* ; as, *He* or *it* is come. *IL est venu*. *She* or *it* will fall. *ELLE tombera*.

It is the object, and expressed by *LE, LA*, agreeably to the gender of the noun, when, if you were speaking of a person, you would use *him* or *her* ; as, I see *him* or *it*. *Je LE vois*. I know *her* or *it*. *Je LA connais*.

(L) *It* is often used in an impersonal sense, i. e. without reference to any substantive mentioned in the sentence ; as, *it* is glorious, shameful, necessary, &c.

In these instances, *it* is always expressed by *IL*, or by *CE*.

It is expressed by *IL*, if the verb is followed by an adjective without a substantive ; as,

It is glorious, shameful, necessary. *IL est glorieux, honteux, nécessaire, &c.*

It is expressed by *CE*, when the verb is followed by a substantive, either with or without an adjective ; as,

It is I. *It* is he. *It* is she. *It* is you. *It* is your brother. *It* is a shameful thing. *C'est moi. C'est lui. C'est elle. C'est vous. C'est votre frère. C'est une chose honteuse*

relation to any noun expressed before them, but imply the words *man*, *woman*, or *people* understood; as,

He who is honest is esteemed; i. e. *the man* who is honest is, &c.
Do you know *her* whom I love? i. e. *the woman* whom I love?

In this sense they are expressed;

He, } by *Celui*. *She*, } by *Celle*. *They*, } by *Ceux*; as,
Him, } *Her*, } *Them*, }

He who is honest is esteemed. *Celui* qui est honnête est estimé.
Do you know *her* whom I love? Connaissez-vous *celle* que j'aime?

N. B. *Celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, and the relative *qui*, *que*, *dont* which attends them, must not be separated, as the corresponding words sometimes are in english; they must be placed together; as,

He knows men but little *who* relies on their promises.

Celui qui compte sur les promesses des hommes ne les connaît guère; i. e. *He who* relies on the promises of men knows them but little. (M)

EXERCISE.

He who can live dishonoured does not deserve to live. *He* who
31 qui peut vivre déshonoré — 55 mérite de 31
betrays a friend is unworthy of friendship. *He* can not be happy
trahit ami m. indigne amitié. 31 ne saurait — être heureux
whose 31 happiness depends on others. Do not 55 trust *him* who
dont N. B. 7 bonheur m. dépend des autres. — Ne vous fiez pas à 31
has deceived you. *She* (of whom) you speak (will come) (by and by.)
trompé 25 31 dont parlez viendra tantôt.
She is not come (of *whom* 31) you (were speaking.) Do you 51 know *her*
31 est 55 venue N. B. parliez. — Connaissez-vous 31
(of whom) we (are speaking?) *They* who prefer 7 riches to 7 honour
parlons? 31 préfèrent richesses 2'honneur
are contemptible. *They* are mistaken *who* 31 think that riches make
méprisable 13. 31 — se trompent N. B. pensent que 7 rendent
men 7 happy. Do you 51 know that gentleman? *He* is a physician.
homme heureux. — Connaissez-vous 1 monsieur? (N) médecin.
(That is) his wife. *She* is a fine woman. *They* are 10 very honest people.
Voilà 1 femme. (N) belle femme (N) très honnêtes gens.

(M) We may also say without changing the order of the words;

CELUI-LA ne connaît guère les hommes QUI compte sur leurs promesses;

or c' EST ne connaître guère les hommes QUE DE compter sur leurs promesses;

but these two modes of expression are more adapted to oratory than to conversation.

(N) HE, SHE, THEY, coming with the verb BE followed by a substantive, are generally expressed by CE, though the noun to which they refer has been mentioned before; as,

He is a merchant.

C'est un négociant.

She is a milliner.

C'est une marchande de modes.

They are great rogues.

Ce sont de grands fripons.

N. B. If the substantive which follows the verb denotes trade or profession, HE, SHE, THEY, may be expressed by IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, but the article must be left out; as,

IL est négociant.

ELLE est marchande de modes.

But the learner will do well, in these instances, to use CE until he has seen the second part of this book, in which this is more fully explained.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

<i>Who,</i>	<i>Whom,</i>	<i>Whose,</i>	<i>That,</i>	<i>Which,</i>	<i>What.</i>
<i>Qui,</i>	<i>Que,</i>	<i>Dont,</i>	<i>Qui,</i>	<i>Quel,</i>	<i>Lequel.</i>

32. When *who, whom, whose, that, which*, come after one or several substantives which they particularize, they are expressed,

Nomin. Object. Possess.	<i>Who,</i> <i>T hh</i> <i>Which ;</i>	} <i>qui.</i>	The man <i>who</i> The horse <i>that</i> The chaise <i>which</i>	} comes.	<i>L' homme qui</i> <i>Le cheval qui</i> <i>La chaise qui</i>	} vient.
	<i>Whom,</i> <i>That,</i> <i>Which ;</i>					
	<i>Whose,</i> <i>of Whom,</i> <i>of Which ;</i>					
		} <i>que.</i> (o)	The man <i>whom</i> The horse <i>which</i> The coach <i>that</i>	} I see	<i>L' homme que</i> <i>Le cheval que</i> <i>Le carrosse que</i>	} je vois.
		} <i>dont.</i>	The man <i>of whom</i> The horse <i>of which</i> The chaise <i>of which</i>	} I speak.	<i>L' homme dont</i> <i>Le cheval dont</i> <i>La chaise dont</i>	} je parle.

N. B. *Qui, que, dont* must be placed immediately *after* the noun to which they relate ; as,

Is the *ship* arrived *which* was expected ?

*Le navire qu'on attendait est-il*⁵² *arrivé ?*

i. e. the *ship which* was expected, is it⁵² arrived ?

EXERCISE.

Do you⁵¹ know the master *who* teaches me french? The scholars
— Connaissez-vous maitre 23 enseigne 24 français m. ? écoliers m.
whom you have recommended to me are very diligent. (This is)
32 avez recommandés — 25 sont très 13. Voici.
the person *of whom* I (was speaking.) Have you seen the ships *that*³²
1 personne f. 32 parlais. vu 1 navire (o)
(are just) (come in ?) You have bought a book *which*³² is very dear.
viennent d'arriver ? acheté livre m. (o) est très cher.
The book *which*³² you have bought is very dear. The book *of which*
(o) 32
you speak is very dear. The house is sold *which*³² you wanted to buy.
parlez 1 maison f. vendue N.B. vouliez — acheter
The ladies you want to see are here. The gentleman is gone *who*³²
dame (r) voulez voir ici. monsieur parti N.B.
has brought you a letter. He has lost all the money he had.
apporté 25 1 lettre f. perdu tout 2 argent(r) avait.

(o) Persons not versed in grammatical terms, are often at a loss to distinguish the *object* from the *nominative*, i. e. when to express *THAT, WHICH* by *QUI*, and when by *QUE*.

To these I will observe, that *THAT, WHICH* are the *nominative*, and expressed by *QUI*, when they are followed immediately by a *verb* ; as,

The coach *that* or *which* is at the door. *Le carrosse qui est à la porte.*

THAT WHICH are the *object* of the verb, and expressed by *QUI*, when, between them and the verb, there is a *noun* or *pronoun* which is the *nominative* of the verb ; as,
The coach *that* or *which* we have met. *Le carrosse que nous avons rencontré.*

(r) The distinctive pronouns *WHOM, THAT, WHICH* are often *left out* in english ; as, *The man I saw ; for the man whom I saw ;* but the corresponding words *QUI, QUE, DONT* must *always* be expressed in french ; as,

The man I saw, i. e. *whom* I saw.

L' homme que je vis.

The wine we drank, i. e. *which* we drank.

Le vin que nous bûmes.

The woman I speak of, i. e. *of whom* I speak.

La femme dont je parle.

33. After any preposition but *of*, or a preposition synonymous to it, *whom* is expressed by *qui* for both genders and numbers.

	<i>Masc. SING.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc. PLUR.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>Which</i> by <i>le</i>	Quel,	la	Quels,	les
<i>la</i>	Quelle,	les	Quelles,	
<i>From Which</i> by <i>du</i>	Quel,	de la	des	Quelles;
<i>de la</i>	Quelle,	des	Quels,	
<i>T, at Which</i> by <i>au</i>	Quel,	à la	aux	Quelles;
<i>à la</i>	Quelle,	aux	Quels,	

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates ; as,

The man <i>with whom</i>	} I come.	L' homme avec <i>qui</i>	} je vins.
The horse <i>on which</i>		Le cheval sur <i>lequel</i>	
The chaise <i>in which</i>	} this fell.	La chaise dans <i>laquelle</i>	} ceci tomba.
The man <i>from whom</i>		L' homme de <i>qui</i>	
The horse <i>from which</i>		Le cheval du <i>quel</i>	
The man <i>to whom</i>	} he gave it.	L' homme à <i>qui</i>	} il le donna.
The horse <i>to which</i> .		Le cheval au <i>quel</i>	

EXERCISE.

You know the lady *to whom* I have spoken. The study *to which*
 Connaissez dame 33 ai parlé. 2 étude f. 33
 he applies is not very useful. The chair *on which* you sit is
 s'applique est 55 très utile. chaise f. sur 33 (êtes assis)
 broken 13. The coach *in which* I came was overturned. The people
 rompu. N.B. carrosse m. dans 33 vins fut renversé. gens m.
with whom I was were very civil. (This is) the stick *with which*
 avec 33 étais étaient civil 13. Voici bâton m. 33
 he struck me. Where is the horse *to which* you have given the corn ?
 frappa 24. Où 33 avez donné 2 avoine ?

34. *Who*, *whom*, *whose* used absolutely, i. e. without reference to any noun mentioned before, imply the word *person* understood.

Who, *whom* are then expressed by *qui* ; as,

Who is there ? i. e. *what person* is here ? *Qui* est là ?

I know *whom* you love, i. e. *what person*, &c. Je sais *qui* vous aimez.

Whose is expressed by *de qui*, when it is used for *of what person* ; and by *à qui*, when it is used for *to what person* ; as,

Whose daughter is she ? *De qui* est-elle fille ?

i. e. (*of what person*) is she the daughter ?

Whose house is that ? *À qui* est cette maison ?

i. e. (*to what person*) does that house belong ?

EXERCISE.

Whom did you send ? *Whom* have you found ? *Whom* did you
 34 avez 51 envoyé ! 34 avez trouvé ! 34 avez
 speak to 56 ? I know *whom* you are speaking of. 56 *Whose* hat
 parlé à ? sais 34 — parlez de 34 chapeau m.
 is this ? *Whose* coach is that ? I do not know *whose* it is.
 est 1 ? 34 carrosse m. 1 ? — ne sais pas 34 30
Whose son is he ? *Whose* wife is she ? *Whose* relations are they ?
 34 fils ? femme ? 34 parent sont-ils ?

WHICH INTERROGATIVE.

In an interrogative sentence *which* requires *three* distinctions.

Which interrogative is either joined to the noun like an adjective, i. e. without the help of a preposition ; as,

Which man ? *Which* carriage ? *Which* horses ?

Or, like a substantive, joined to it by the preposition *of* ; as,

Which of the men ? *Which of* the carriages ? *Which of* my horses ?

Or, like a pronoun used absolutely after the noun ; as,

It is one of these men ; *Which* is it ?

35. *Which* interrogative joined like an adjective, i. e. without a preposition, to the noun to which it relates, is

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
<i>Which ;</i>	Quel,	Quelle,	Quels,	Quelles ;
<i>Of, from Which ;</i>	<i>de</i> Quel,	<i>de</i> Quelle,	<i>de</i> Quels,	<i>de</i> Quelles ;
<i>To, at Which ;</i>	<i>à</i> Quel,	<i>à</i> Quelle.	<i>à</i> Quels,	<i>à</i> Quelles ;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

<i>Which</i> man	} will you have ?	<i>Quel</i> homme	} voulez-vous ?
<i>Which</i> carriage		<i>Quelle</i> voiture	
<i>Which</i> horses		<i>Quels</i> chevaux	

36. *Which* interrogative joined by a preposition to the noun to which it relates, or coming after it absolutely, i. e. without a noun, is

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
<i>Which ;</i>	<i>le</i> Quel,	<i>la</i> Quelle,	<i>les</i> Quels,	<i>les</i> Quelles ;
<i>Of, from Which ;</i>	<i>du</i> Quel,	<i>de la</i> Quelle,	<i>des</i> Quels,	<i>des</i> Quelles ;
<i>To, at Which ;</i>	<i>au</i> Quel,	<i>à la</i> Quelle,	<i>aux</i> Quels,	<i>aux</i> Quelles ;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

<i>Which of</i> these men	} will you have ?
<i>Which of</i> the coaches	
<i>Which of</i> my horses	

<i>Lequel</i> de ces hommes	} voulez-vous ?
<i>Laquelle</i> des voitures	
<i>Lesquels</i> de mes chevaux	

<i>Which</i> is the tallest ?	<i>Lequel</i> est le plus haut ?
<i>Which</i> is the finest ?	<i>Laquelle</i> est la plus belle ?
<i>Which</i> are the best ?	<i>Lesquels</i> sont les meilleurs ?

37. *Which* sometimes implies the *demonstrative* pronoun *that* or *those* understood, this demonstrative word can not be omitted in french, and *which*, as including the two words, is expressed by

<i>Celui</i> que m. }	<i>that</i> which ;	<i>Ceux</i> que m. }	<i>those</i> which ;
<i>Celle</i> que f. }		<i>Celles</i> que f. }	

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates ; as,

<i>Which of</i> these horses shall I ride ?	<i>Lequel</i> de ces chevaux monterai-je ?
Ride <i>which</i> you will, i. e. <i>that which</i> .	Montez <i>celui</i> que vous voudrez.

EXERCISE.

Which book shall I read? *Which* of these books shall I read?
 35 livre m. — 51 lirai-je 51? 36 1 51 ?
 Read *which* you please. *Which* pen shall I make use of 56?
 Lisez 37 il vous plaira. 35 plume f. — 51 me servirai-je de?
Which of these pens shall I 51 make use of? Use *which* you will.
 36 * 1 — me servirai-je 59? Servez-vous de 37 voudrez
Which boy shall I 51 give this to? *Which* of the boys shall I give
 33 garçon — donnerai-je ceci 56? 36 * 1 51
 this to? Give it to *which* you like. *Which* lady is the handsomest?
 56? Donnez-le 37 voudrez. 35 dame est belle 21 ?
Which of these ladies is the handsomest? *Which* ladies do you
 36 1 21 35 — 51
 speak of 56? To *which* do you 51 give the preference? *Which*
 parlez-vous 51 ? 36 — donnez-vous 51 préférence f. ?
 fruit do you 51 like best? *Which* of these fruits do you like best?
 fruit m. — aimez-vous le mieux? * 1 — ?
Which is the ripest? Eat of *which* you like. *Which* road shall
 est mûr 21? Mangez voudrez. route f. —
 we go by 56? *Which* of these roads shall we go by 56? *Which*
 51 irons par? 1 51 par?
 house shall we 51 go to? *Which* is the best 13? Go to *which*
 maison f. — irons-nous 56? meilleur? Allez à
 you choose. *Which* door must I go through? *Which* of these
 voudrez. porte f. faut-il qui je passe par 52 ?
 doors must I go through? Go through *which* you please.
 par 56? Passez par il vous plaira.
What requires the same distinction as *which*.

38. *What* followed by a noun, or relating to a noun mentioned before, is expressed in the same manner as *which*;

		Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
Of from	<i>What</i> ;	Quel,	Quelle,	Quels,	Quelles ;
To, at	<i>What</i> ;	de Quel,	de Quelle,	de Quels,	de Quelles ;
	<i>What</i> ;	à Quel,	à Quelle,	à Quels,	à Quelles ;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

<i>What</i> man	} will you have?	<i>quel</i> homme	} voulez-vous?
<i>What</i> carriage		<i>quelle</i> voiture	
<i>What</i> horses		<i>quels</i> chevaux	

It is my opinion, *what* is yours? C'est mon opinion, *quelle* est la vôtre?

EXERCISE.

What man has he employed? *What* language do you 51 like best?
 38 a-t-il employé ? 36 langue f. — aimez-vous le mieux ?
What study do you 51 apply to 56? *What* sort of books do
 38 étude f. — vous 24 appliquez-vous 51 ? 38 sorte f. 8 livre —
 you 51 read? To *what* use shall I put it 24? *What* news
 lisez-vous 51 ? 38 usage m. — 51 mettrai-je 51 le ? 38 nouvelle f.
 are you 51 speaking of? *What* is your sentiment? *What* is yours 41 ?
 — parlez-vous 51 56 ? 38 est sentiment m. ? 38 le vôtre ?

* *Which* may here be either *singular* or *plural*, agreeably to the number that is meant.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

39. *What* used *absolutely*, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned, implies the word *thing* understood, and is expressed by *que* or by *quoi*.

What is expressed by *que*, when it is the object of a verb ; as,

What are you doing there ? *Que* faites-vous là ?
I do not know *what* to say to her. Je ne sais *que* lui dire.

What is expressed by *quoi*, when it is governed by a preposition, or used as an interjection ; ex.

What do you meddle with⁵⁶ ? De⁵⁶ *quoi* vous²⁴ melez-vous⁵¹ ?
What ! you have not done yet. *Quoi* ! vous n'avez pas encore fini.

EXERCISE.

What do you want ? *What* do you think of that ? *What* shall
39 — 51 cherchez ? 39 — 51 pensez de cela ? 39 —
I do with this ? Do you know *what* this is made of ? *What*
51 ferai de ceci ? — 51 savez 39 ceci fait 56 ? 39
is it good for⁵⁶ ? I do not know *what* you (are talking) about.
il bon à ? — 55 sais 39 parlez de 56.
What ! are you not gone yet⁵³ ? *What* ! you do not answer me.
39 55 parti encore ? 39 55 répondez 24.

40. *What* sometimes implies the *demonstrative* pronoun *that*, and the *distinctive* *which* ; it is then expressed,

Nom. *What*, *ce qui* ; Always do *what* is right ; i. e. *that which* is right.
Faites toujours *ce qui* est juste.

Obj. *What*, *ce que* ; *What* I say is true ; i. e. *that which* I say is true.
(o) *Ce que* je dis est vrai.

But with the prepositions *of*, *to*, or any preposition that is synonymous to them, it is necessary to consider whether the preposition comes before or after *what* ; for,

Of *what* is de *ce qui*, } I speak of *what* is true, i. e. of that which
de *ce que*, } Je parle de *ce qui* est vrai.

What of is de *ce dont* ; as, *What* he speaks of is not true ; i. e. that of which
Ce dont il parle n'est pas vrai.

To *what* is à *ce qui*, } You do not apply to *what* is useful ; to that which
à *ce que* ; } Vous ne vous appliquez pas à *ce qui* est utile.

What to is ce à *quoi* ; as, *What* you apply to is not useful ; that to which
Ce à quoi vous vous appliquez n'est pas utile.

EXERCISE.

Say *what* is true, and do *what* is just. *What*⁴⁰ we do hastily
Dites 40 est vrai, et faites 40 juste. (o) faisons (à la hâte)
is often imperfect. Shew me *what*⁴⁰ you have done. Pay attention to
souvent imparfait. Montrez 26 (m) fait. Faites attention
*what*⁴⁰ I say to you. Are you sure of *what*⁴⁰ you say ? It is *what* you
(o) dis — 24 Etes sûr (o) dites ? C'est 40
may be sure of. I would not⁵⁵ trust to *what*⁴⁰ he proposes. *What*
pouvez être 56 ne voudrais pas me fier (o) propose. 40

you trust to is very uncertain. He complains of what⁴⁰ he has
 vous vous fiez ⁵⁶ est très incertain. se plaint (o) a
 suffered. What he complains of is right. They attribute it to what⁴⁰
 souffert. 40 se plaint ⁵⁶ juste. attribuent le²⁴ (o)
 I have told you. What they attribute it to has never⁵⁵ happened.
 dit 25 40 24 n' est jamais arrivé.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
Mine.	le Mien,	la Mienne,	les Miens,	les Miennes.
Of, from Mine.	du Mien,	de la Mienne,	des Miens,	des Miennes.
To, at Mine.	au Mien,	à la Mienne,	aux Miens,	aux Miennes.
Thine.	le Tien,	la Tienne,	les Tiens,	les Tiennes.
His.	} le Sien,	la Sienne,	les Siens,	les Siennes.
Hers.				
Ours.	le Nôtre,	la Nôtre,	les Nôtres,	les Nôtres.
Yours	le Vôtre,	la Vôtre,	les Vôtres,	les Vôtres.
Theirs.	leur,	la Leur,	les Leurs,	les Leurs.

41. The possessive pronouns *le mien, le tien, le sien, &c.* must be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; as,

Your horse is better than *hers*, i. e. her horse.

Votre cheval est meilleur que *le sien*.

My house is not so fine as *his*, i. e. his house.

Ma maison n' est pas si belle que *la sienne*.

Your histories are prettier than *his*, i. e. his histories.

Vos histoires sont plus jolies que *les siennes*.

EXERCISE.

Why do not⁵⁵ you¹ eat your cake? Your brother has eaten *his*.
 Pourquoi — ne mangez-vous pas 1 gâteau m. ? 1 a mangé 41

My sister has not eaten *hers*. I (will eat) *mine* (by and by.) Your
 a 55 41. mangerai 41 tantôt. 1

lesson is shorter¹⁸ than *mine*, but (I shall know) *mine* before you
 leçon f. court 13 41 mais saurai 41 avant que

know *yours*. It is not⁵⁵ your business, it is *his*. My books are
 sachiez 41 Ce n'est pas 1 affaire f., c' est 41 livre m. sont.

finer¹⁸ than *yours* and *his*. They are not finer than *mine*. Have
 beaux 41 41 30 55 18 41

you cleaned my boots? *Yours* and *mine* are clean¹³, but *his* are not.
 décrotté 1 botte f. ? 41 41 décrotté, 41 ne le sont pas.

42. The possessive words *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, do not always represent a noun mentioned before them; they often come with the verb *be* used in the sense of *belong*, instead of the personal pronouns *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*; as for example,

This book is *mine*, i. e. belongs to *me*;

in this sense *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, are expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, m, à elles, f. as,*

This book is <i>mine</i> .	Ce livre est à <i>moi</i> ;	i. e. belongs to <i>me</i> .
is <i>thine</i> .	est à <i>toi</i> ;	to <i>thee</i> .
is <i>his</i> .	est à <i>lui</i> ;	to <i>him</i> .
is <i>hers</i> .	est à <i>elle</i> ;	to <i>her</i> .
is <i>ours</i> .	est à <i>nous</i> ;	to <i>us</i> .
is <i>yours</i> .	est à <i>vous</i> ;	to <i>you</i> .
is <i>theirs</i> .	est à <i>eux</i> ; m. à <i>elles</i> ; f.	to <i>them</i> .

EXERCISE.

This stick is <i>mine</i> , and this umbrella is <i>his</i> .	It is neither
1 bâton m. 42	1 parapluie m. 42 n'est ni
<i>yours</i> nor <i>his</i> , it is <i>hers</i> .	Is this horse <i>yours</i> It is not <i>mine</i> ;
42 ni 42 30 42	Ce cheval est-il 52 42 ? 30 55 42
it is my cousin's. If it was <i>yours</i> , what would you do (with it) ?	
30 (q) S' 30 était 42 • 39 — feriez-vous 51 en 24 ?	
If it was <i>mine</i> , I (would sell) it	I wish it was <i>ours</i> .
30 42 vendrais 30 (κ) souhaiterais qu' 30 fût 42.	

43. The *possessive* pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, by an idiom peculiar to the english language, are sometimes joined to the noun to which they relate by the preposition *of* ; as *a friend of mine* ; *a book of yours* ; this possessive pronoun can not be expressed by the possessive pronoun in french ; it must be expressed by the possessive article *mes*, *tes*, *ses*, *nos*, *vos*, *leurs*, placed *before* the noun, which must always be *plural* in french ; as,

A friend of <i>mine</i> .	Un de <i>mes</i> amis ;	i. e. one of <i>my</i>	} friends.
of <i>thine</i> .	Un de <i>tes</i> amis ;	one of <i>thy</i>	
of <i>his</i> .	Un de <i>ses</i> amis ;	one of <i>his</i>	
of <i>hers</i> .	Un de <i>ses</i> amis ;	one of <i>her</i>	
of <i>ours</i> .	Un de <i>nos</i> amis ;	one of <i>our</i>	
of <i>yours</i> .	Un de <i>vos</i> amis ;	one of <i>your</i>	
of <i>theirs</i> .	Un de <i>leurs</i> amis ;	one of <i>their</i>	

EXERCISE.

(This is) a relation of <i>mine</i> .	He is a cousin of <i>ours</i> .	A brother of
Voici 1 parent m. 43	(N) est 43	
<i>mine</i> has married a sister of <i>his</i> .	(That is) a child of <i>theirs</i> .	I have
43 a épousé 1	43 Voilà enfant m. 42	
seen to-day a scholar of <i>yours</i> .	I (shall dine) to-morrow with	
vu (aujourd'hui) écolier m. 43	dînerai demain avec	
a friend of <i>ours</i> .	I have found a book of <i>yours</i> amongst mine.	
43	trouvé livre m. 43 parmi 41	
It is not <i>mine</i> ; it is my brother's.	It is a friend's of <i>mine</i> .	
n'est pas 42 30	(q) 30 (q) 43.	

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

Masc. SING. Fem.	Masc. PLUR. Fem.
<i>This, that</i> ; Celui ; Celle.	<i>These, those</i> ; Ceux ; Celles.

44. The *demonstrative* pronouns *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles* must

(q) The possession denoted in english by adding *s* to the noun. is expressed in french by *à* before it ; as, It is my father's. *Il est à mon père* ; Not, *il est de mon père*.

be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent ; as,

He has eaten his apple and *that* of his brother ; i. e. *the apple* of, &c.
Il a mangé sa pomme et *celle* de son frère.

EXERCISE.

She has spoiled her hat and *that* of her brother. He has torn
a gâté 1 chapeau m. 44 1 déchiré
my gown and *that* of my sister. Bring my shoes and *those* of my
1 robe f. 44 Apportez 1 souliers m. 44
mother. (Look at) these 1 guineas and *those* which 32 he has given us.
Regardez (R) guinées f. 44 (O) a données. 25

N. B. The demonstrative words *this, these ; that, those* imply a local distinction which *celui, celle, ceux, celles* do not express ; if you wish to make that distinction in french, you must add to these pronouns the adverbs *ci, here ; and là, there ; thus,*

This ; Celui-ci, Celle-ci. These ; Ceux-ci, Celles-ci.

That ; Celui-là, Celle-là. Those ; Ceux-là, Celles-là ; as,

This horse is better than *that ;*

Ce cheval-*ci* est meilleur que *celui-là ;* i. e. *this* horse here—that *there.*

EXERCISE.

That 1 horse is young, and *this* 44 is old, but I prefer *this* 44 to
(R) cheval-là est jeune, N.B. vieux, mais préfère N.B.
that. 44 These 1 girls dance much better than *those.* 44
N.B. (R) fille-ci dansent beaucoup (E) N.B.

45. If *this, that,* are not followed by a noun, nor relate to a noun mentioned, they imply the word *thing* understood, and are expressed,

This, by *Ceci ;*

That, by *Cela ; as,*

This is good, i. e. *this thing* is good. *Ceci* est bon.

That is better, i. e. *that thing* is better. *Cela* est meilleur.

EXERCISE.

Take *this.* Leave *that.* Have you seen *this ?* *That* is very pretty.
Prenez 45 Laissez 45 vu 45 45 très joli.

(R) The demonstrative words *this, that, these those,* have three different properties.

If *this, that, these, those* are followed by a noun, they have the property of a demonstrative article, and are expressed by *ce, cette, ces ; as,*

This bread, that meat, those clothes. *Ce* pain, *cette* viande, *ces* habits. See rule 1.

If *this, that, these, those* do not point out a noun after them, but represent one mentioned before, they are pronouns, and are expressed by *celui, celle, ceux, celles,* agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which they represent (rule 44.) ; as,

He has eaten his apple & that of his brother. Il a mangé sa pomme & *celle* de son frère.

If *this, that* do not point out a noun after them, nor represent one mentioned before, they may be considered as substantives, and are expressed *this* by *ceci, that* by *cela.*

This is good, but *that* is better. *Ceci* est bon, mais *cela* est meilleur. (rule 45.)

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

46. *One, we, they, people*, used in an indefinite sense, i. e. not relating to any particular person, are expressed by *On*.

N. B. Observe that *On* is always the nominative of a verb, and though it represents *we, they, people*, which are plural, it requires the verb in the *third person singular*; as,

One says,
They say, *People* say, } *on* dit; i. e. *one* says.

EXERCISE.

People are never⁵⁵ so happy nor so miserable as *they* imagine.
 46 n'est jamais si heureux ni malheureux qu' 46 s'imagine.
They say that we (are going) to have peace. *They* say so; but can
 46 dit que nous allons — avoir 7paix. f. 46 le24; peut
one believe it, when *they* (are making) such preparations for war? ⁷?
 46 croire le24, quand 46 fait tant de préparatif pour guerre f. ?

47. The following and other like *indefinite expressions*, are also expressed in french by *On*, with the verb in its active sense.

N. B. The verb is rendered active by leaving out the auxiliary verb *be*, and making the participle into a verb of the same tense and person as the auxiliary verb is; ex.

It was said. *On* disait; i. e. *one* said.
It is reported, *On* rapporte; *one* reports.

EXERCISE.

It is thought that (there will be) a war. *It* is said that hostilities
 47 pense qu' il y aura — guerre. 47 dit que 7hostilités
 have already begun. *It* is supposed that the two fleets have met.
 ont, déjà commencé. 47 s'imagine que deux flotte se sont rencontrées?

48. The english passive verbs used indefinitely, require the active signification in french, with *On* for nominative; but observe that by adding *on* to the sentence, the substantive,* which is the nominative of the verb in english, becomes its object in french; as

I have been told that news has been received; turn this sentence thus,

One has told *me* that *one* has received news.
On m²⁵ a dit qu' *on* a reçu des nouvelles.

EXERCISE.

We have been told that you were married. *I* have been told so
 48 dit que étiez marié. 48 le24
 too, but that is not true. *I* was advised to do it. *I* have not
 aussi, cela n'est pas vrai. 48 avait conseillé de faire le24. 48 ne a pas
 been permitted to do it. Do you⁵¹ know what is said of you?
 48 permis de 24 — savez - vous⁵¹ 40 48 dit de 28?

* By *substantive* is here meant every word which either names or represents a substance.

What can *be* said of me? *It is* said that great news *is*
 39 peut 48 dire 28 ? 47 — dit que 10 grandes nouvelles 48
 expected. Have the letters *been* received which *were* expected?
 attend. 48 lettre 48 reçu 32 48 attendait!

CHAPTER VI.

VERB.

A *verb* is a word which expresses either being or acting.

Being; as, *I am*; *I exist*; *Thou art*; *He is*; *My brother is*; *We are*, &c.

Acting; as, *I speak*; *I blame*; *I walk*; *I drink*; *I sing*, &c.

Every action requires an agent, i. e. a being to perform that action; this agent, in grammar, is called the nominative of the verb.

49. The *verb* must be of the same *number* and *person* as the agent or nominative; this is called *agreement* of the verb with its *nominative*; ex.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL..	
1p. <i>I</i> sing.	<i>Je chante.</i>	<i>Nous chantons.</i>	} we, you, they sing.
2p. <i>Thou</i> singest.	<i>Tu chantes.</i>	<i>Vous chantez.</i>	
3p. <i>He</i> sings.	<i>Il chante.</i>	<i>Ils chantent.</i>	
<i>She</i> sings.	<i>Elle chante.</i>	<i>Elles chantent.</i>	
<i>My brother</i> sings.	<i>Mon frère chante.</i>	<i>Mes frères chantent.</i>	
<i>My sister</i> sings.	<i>Ma sœur chante.</i>	<i>Mes sœurs chantent.</i>	

EXERCISE.

I speak. *Thou* playest. *He* walks. *She* dances. *My brother*
 parler. jouer. marcher. danser.
stays. *My sister* forgets. *We* blame. *You* study. *They* look. *My*
 rester. oublier. blâmer. étudier. regarder.
brothers call or (*are* calling.*) *My sisters* dispute or (*are* disputing.*)
 appeler. disputer.

50. In a *declarative* sentence, i. e. when a question is not asked, the *nominative* of the verb is placed in french, as in english, *before* the verb, as,

* These two modes of expression are rendered in the same manner in french. See the conjugations.

<i>I sing.</i>	<i>Je chante.</i>	<i>Nous chantons.</i>
<i>Thou singest.</i>	<i>Tu chantes.</i>	<i>Vous chantez.</i>
<i>He sings.</i>	<i>Il chante.</i>	<i>Ils chantent.</i>
<i>She sings.</i>	<i>Elle chante.</i>	<i>Elles chantent.</i>
<i>My brother sings.</i>	<i>Mon frère chante.</i>	<i>Mes frères chantent.</i>
<i>My sister sings.</i>	<i>Ma sœur chante.</i>	<i>Mes sœurs chantent.</i>

we, you, they
sing.

EXERCISE.

*I speak*⁴⁹ *french.* *Thou speakest* *french.* *He speaks* *french.* *She*
parler *français.* *parler*⁴⁹ *parler*⁴⁹
speaks *french.* *My brother speaks* *french.* *My sister speaks* *french.*
*parler*⁴⁹ *parler*⁴⁹ *parler*⁴⁹
We speak *french.* *You speak* *french.* *They speak* *french.* *My bro-*
*parler*⁴⁹ *parler*⁴⁹ *parler*⁴⁹
thers speak *french.* *My sisters speak* *french.* *They speak* *it very well.*
*parler*⁴⁹ *parler*⁹ *parler* *le*²⁴ *très bien.*

But when the sentence is *interrogative*, i. e. when a *question* is asked, it is necessary to consider whether the *nominative* of the verb is a *noun* or a *pronoun*.

51. If, when a *question* is asked, the *nominative* of the verb is one of the pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, on* or *ce*, these pronouns are placed in french, as the corresponding words are in english, immediately *after* the verb ; as,

Do (s) <i>I sing</i> well ?	<i>Chante-je</i> bien ?	i. e. sing <i>I</i> well ?
Doest <i>thou</i> sing well ?	<i>Chantes-tu</i> bien ?	singest <i>thou</i> well ?
Does <i>he</i> sing well ?	<i>Chante-t*-il</i> bien ?	sings <i>he</i> well ?
Does <i>she</i> sing well ?	<i>Chante-t*-elle</i> bien ?	sings <i>she</i> well ?
Do <i>we</i> sing well ?	<i>Chantons-nous</i> bien ?	sing <i>we</i> well ?
Do <i>you</i> sing well ?	<i>Chantez-vous</i> bien ?	sing <i>you</i> well ?
Do <i>they</i> sing well ?	<i>Chantent-ils</i> bien ?	sing <i>they</i> well ?
Do <i>they</i> sing well ?	<i>Chantent-elles</i> bien ?	sing <i>they</i> well ?

EXERCISE.

Do *I speak*⁴⁹ *french* well⁵³ ? Doest *thou speak* *french* well ? Does
(s) 51 *parler* *français* bien ? (s) 51 *parler*⁴⁹ 53 ? (s)
he speak *french* well ? Does *she speak* *french* well ? Do *we speak* *french*
51 *parler*⁴⁹ 53 ? 51 *parler*⁴⁹ 53 ? 51 *parler*⁴⁹
well ? Do *you speak* *french* well ? Do *they speak* *french* well ?
53 ? 51 *parler*⁴⁹ 53 ? 51 *parler*⁴⁹ 53 ?

52. If, when we ask a *question*, the *nominative* of the verb is a *noun*, that noun is placed *before* the verb in french, the same as when the sentence is not interrogative : but to show that a *question* is asked, one of the personal pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun, is placed immediately *after* the verb ; as,

(s) The auxiliary words *do, did, shall, will, should, would, may, might* are not expressed in french ; their meaning is implied in the *termination* of the verb.

* When *il, elle, on* come after a verb ending with a vowel, - t - is placed between these pronouns and the verb to soften the pronunciation.

Does <i>my brother</i> sing	well ?	Mon frère chante-t-il bien ?	i. e. <i>my b. sings he ?</i>
Does <i>my sister</i> sing		Ma sœur chante-t-elle bien ?	<i>my s. sings she</i>
Do <i>my brothers</i> sing		Mes frères chantent-ils bien ?	<i>my b. sing they</i>
Do <i>my sisters</i> sing		Mes sœurs chantent-elles bien ?	<i>my s. sing they</i>

EXERCISE.

Does *my brother* speak⁴⁹ french well⁵³ ? Does *my sister* speak french
 (s) 52 parler français bien* ? (s) 52 parler⁴⁹
 well ? Do *my brothers* speak french well ? Do *my sisters* speak
 53 ? (s) 52 parler⁴⁹ 53 ? (s) 52 parler⁴⁹
 french well ? Does your *son* go to school now ? Does your *daughter*
 53 ? (s) 52 va à l'école à présent ? 52
 go to school now ? Do your *sons* go to school now ? Do your
 va ? (s) 52 vont ?
daughters go to school now ? Do the *boys*⁵² make any progress ?
 52 vont ? (s) garçons font 9 progrès plur.
 Do the *girls*⁵² make any progress ? Is all your *family*⁵² well ?
 filles 9 ? se porte toute famille f. ?

CHAPTER VII.

ADVERB.

An adverb is a word added to a verb to denote the manner in which an action is performed ; as, *I walk fast ; he walks slowly ; you write well ; she writes badly* ; the words *fast, slowly, well, badly*, which denote the manner in which the action of the verbs *walk* and *write* is performed, are adverbs.

53. The adverb being to the verb what the adjective is to the noun, i. e. expressing some circumstance of the verb, must be placed immediately *after* the verb which it modifies ; as,

I saw your sister <i>yesterday</i> .	Je vis hier votre sœur.
She speaks french <i>very well</i> .	Elle parle très bien français.
I will come to see her <i>soon</i> .	Je viendrai bientôt la voir.†

* Place the adverb *bien* before *français* ; thus, *bien français*. See 53 rule.

† The perspicuity of a sentence often depends on the placing of the adverbs. These sentences for example ; *J'aime beaucoup à lire*, and *J'aime à lire beaucoup*, though formed of the same words, by changing the place of the adverb *beaucoup*, express two different ideas. *J'aime beaucoup à lire* ; means, I am fond of reading ; *J'aime à lire beaucoup* ; means, I like to read a great deal.

EXERCISE.

You read french *very well*. I wish to learn it²⁴ (*very much*).
 lisez 7français m. très bien⁵³. souhaite — apprendre 30 fort⁵³.
 You will *soon*⁵³ know it²⁴, if you read the rules *attentively*.⁵³ I (will do)
 — bientôt saurez 30, lisez règles attentivement. ferai
 what you have recommended to me *carefully*.⁵³ We (shall go) into
 40 recommandé — 25 soigneusement. irons à
 the country *to-morrow*. I hope you (will come) to see us *often*.⁵³
 campagne f. demain⁵³. espère que viendrez — voir 24 souvent.

54. Some adverbs may be placed in english either before or after the verb which they modify ; as, I *often* see him, or I see him *often*. I *very seldom* speak to him, or I speak to him *very seldom* ; but the adverbs which represent them in french, must always be placed *after* the verb ; as

I <i>often</i> see him.	Je le vois <i>souvent</i> .
I <i>sometimes</i> meet her.	Je la rencontre <i>quelquefois</i> .
I <i>seldom</i> speak to them.	Je leur parle <i>rarement</i> .

EXERCISE.

You *always*⁵⁴ walk alone. I *seldom*⁵⁴ go to town. I *generally*
 Vous toujours vous promenez seul. rarement vais à la ville. ordinairement
 go into the country. I *often*⁵⁴ think of you. You *seldom*⁵⁴ come
 vais à campagne f. souvent pense à 28 rarement venez
 to see us now. I *sometimes* think that you *soon*⁵⁴ (will forget)
 voir 24 à présent. quelquefois⁵⁴ pense que bientôt oublierez
 us. You *certainly*⁵⁴ can not think so. I *sincerely*⁵⁴ wish that
 24 certainement pouvez 55 penser le²⁴ sincèrement souhaite que
 you may succeed. I *heartily*⁵⁴ wish you the same.
 puissiez réussir. de bon cœur souhaite 24 la même chose.

55. The *negative* adverbs

No, not, are	ne—pas, ne—point.
No more,	} ne—plus.
Not any more ;	
Never ;	ne—jamais.
But little,	} ne—guère.
Very little ;	
By no means ;	ne—nullement.

Ne is always placed *before* the verb, and *pas, point, plus, jamais, guère, nullement* are placed immediately *after* the verb ; as,

I do <i>not</i> like that woman.	Je n'aime <i>pas</i> cette femme.
I have <i>never</i> liked her.	Je ne l'ai <i>jamais</i> aimée.
I will <i>not</i> speak to her <i>any more</i> .	Je ne lui parlerai <i>plus</i> .

EXERCISE.

Do *not* you⁵¹ know that man ? Have you *never* seen him before ?
 — 55 connaissez 2 l'homme ? Avez 51 55 vu 25 auparavant ?
 Were you *not* in his company yesterday ? I know him *but little*.
 étiez 51 55 à I compagnie f. hier⁵³ ? connais 24 55
 I do *not* wish to see him *any more*. I *by no means* consent (to it.)
 — 55 souhaite — 24 55 55 consens y²⁴.

CHAPTER VIII.

PREPOSITION.

Prepositions are words which serve to connect other words together, in order to form a sentence ; as,

I am going *to* London *with* my father.

The words *to*, *with*, which connect the substantives, London, father to the verb *go*, are called *prepositions*.

56. The *prepositions* may often be placed in english either *before* or *after* the substantive which they govern ; as,

With whom were you, or whom were you *with* ? *of* what do you speak, or what do you speak *of* ? In french the *prepositions* must always be placed *before* the substantive which they govern ; as,

<i>With</i> whom were you ?	}	<i>Avec</i> qui étiez-vous ?
or whom were you <i>with</i> ?		
<i>To</i> whom did you speak ?	}	<i>A</i> qui avez-vous parlé ?
or whom did you speak <i>to</i> ?		
<i>Of</i> what are you speaking ?	}	<i>De</i> quoi parlez-vous ?
or what are you speaking <i>of</i> ?		

EXERCISE.

What country do you come *from* ? What people did you come
 38 pays m. — 51 venez de56 ? 38 gens f. êtes 51 venu
with ? What news do you speak *of* ? Which road shall
 avec56 ? 38 nouvelles f. 51 parlez de56 ? 35 chemin m. —
 we go *by*56 ? Which of these houses shall we go *to* ? What
 51 irons par ? 36 1 maisons f. — 51 irons à56 ? 39
 are you laughing *at* ? It is what you may depend *upon*.
 51 riez de56 ? C' est 39 pouvez compter sur 56.

AUXILIARY VERB AVOIR, *To Have* ;

And RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE on the foregoing rules.*

I have a new riband16. She has a new gown16. We have
 1 neuf ruban m. 1 13 robe f.
 new13 stockings. You have new13 ruffles. They have a fine
 9N.B. bas16 9N.B. manchette 1 beau
 nosegay. (B) I had a good master. She had a good mistress. We
 bouquet, 1 bon maître. 1 13 maîtresse f.
 had good brothers. You had good sisters. They had10 good friends.
 10 frère de soeurs 9N.B. ami

* The learner must peruse the verbs before he writes these exercises.

I had a large garden. He had a great house. We had two
 1 grand jardin. 1 13 maison.
 large13 gardens. You had two great13 houses. They had a young
 deux 1 jeune
 turkey for their dinner. I shall have a white horse. He will
 dindon pour diner; 1 blanc cheval 16.
 have a white13 waistcoat. We shall have white curtains. You will
 veste f. 9 rideau 16 pl.
 have a bad supper. They will have a bad excuse. I would
 mauvais souper 1 f.
 have delicious fruit. She would have a delicious13 pear. We would
 un délicieux m. 16. 1 poire 16 f.
 have a precious jewel. You would have a precious stone. They
 1 précieux joyau 16 piesre.
 would have a bloody war. That I may have sincere13 friends.
 1 sanglant guerre. 16 f. que 9 ami 16 pl.
 That he may have elevated 9 sentiments. 16 That we may have
 élevé 13 pl.
 delightful landscapes. That you may have prepossessing13 manners.
 délicieux 9 paysage 16 pl. prévenant 9 manière 16 pl.
 That they may have enlightened13 judges. (c) That I might have a
 éclairé 9 juge 16 pl. 1
 sword, a musket and pistols. That he might have a furnished13 house.
 épée 1 fusil 9 pistolet pl. 1 garni maison 16
 That we might have faithful13 servants. That you might have a
 fidèle 9 domestique 16 pl.
 pretty dressing-room. That they might have a beautiful drawing-
 joli cabinet de toilette. 1 superbe salon de
 room.
 compagnie.

ETRE—To Be.

I am sick. Thou art young. He is unhappy. She is unhap-
 malade jeune malheureux.
 py.* We are laborious. You are modest. They are lazy. I
 — rieux — te paresseux
 was prudent. She was prudent. We were discreet. You were
 — * — cret
 studious. They were jealous. Your sisters were jealous. I was
 — dieux. jaloux soeurs
 his intimate friend. She was my greatest enemy. We were
 — me ami 16 plus grand ennemie.
 generous. You were ungrateful. They were cruel. Your daughters
 généreux ingrat — filles.
 were cruel. I shall be a brave soldier. He will be a handsome
 soldat bel
 man. She will be a handsome woman. We will be faithful to our
 homme femme fidèle
 country. You will be in continual fears. They will be our mortal
 pays dans des nuel cranite f. tel
 enemies. I should be ready. She would be troublesome. We
 ennemi prêt incommode.
 should be very ridiculous. You would be too eager. They would be
 ties le trop empressé.

* The adjective or adjectives which follows the verb *être to, be*, agreed in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

extremely unpolite. That I may be so impatient. That he may
 extrêmement malhounête si
 be obstinate. That we may be unreasonable. That you may be hu-
 entêté déraisonnable.
 mane and generous. That they may be guilty. That I might
 humain généreux coupable
 be grateful. That she might be careful. That we might be attentive.
 reconnoissant soigneux tif.
 That you might be credulous. That they might be inconsiderate.
 le. indiscret.

EXERCISE on the four conjugations ER, IR, OIR, RE.

VERBS IN ER.*

AFFIRMATIVELY. I like⁴⁹ wine. Thou askest⁴⁹ for beer. He
 aime[†] 7vin m. demande[†] — 9bière f.
 gives⁴⁹ me water. We are looking⁴⁹ for flowers. You go⁴⁹ to see
 donne[†] 24 9eau. (T) cherche[†] — 9leur. alle[†] — voir
 them. They are looking⁴⁹ at us.—I was helping⁴⁹ him. He
 24 (T) regarde[†] — 24 (T) aide[†] lui²⁴.
 was disturbing me. We were studying our lessons. You were
 troubler⁴⁹ 24 (T) étudier⁴⁹ 1 leçon.
 singing a song. They were playing in the corner.—I brought⁴⁹
 chanter 1 chanson. f. jouer dans coin. m. apporter †
 him²⁴ a book. He admired it²⁴ much. We invited them to stay.
 (T) livre. m. admirer 30 (κ) beaucoup. inviter 24 à rester.
 You went away too soon. They arrived in time.—I shall dine⁴⁹
 Vous vous en alle[†] — trop tôt arriver à tems. (s) dîner
 with you. He will send it²⁴ me. We will accompany you. You
 avec 23. (s) envoye[†] 29 accompagner 24
 will sup with us. They will bring it²⁴ to them.—I should like⁴⁹
 souper 28. apporter — 29. (s) aimer
 to see it.²⁴ He would give it you, if you asked him²⁴ for it.²⁹
 à voir le. (s) donner 24 29, si demandiez (T) — le.
 We should stay with you, if we had time. You would avoid his
 rester 28, avions 7tems. m. éviter 1
 company, if you knew him. They would pay them, if they had
 compagnie, f. connaissez 24. payer 24, avaient
 money. They would lend them²⁴ some, if they asked them²⁴ for it.²⁹
 9argent. prêter (T) (J) 29, demandaient (T) — le.

INTERROGATIVELY. Do I speak⁴⁹ too fast? Doest thou advise me
 (s) 51 parler trop vite? (s) 51 conseiller 24
 to do it²⁴? Does he converse well? Do we spend (too much)
 de faire le? (s) 51 converser bien? 51 dépenser trop
 money⁸? Do you live in town now? Do they call us?
 argent N.B.? 51 demeurer à la ville f. à présent? 51 appeller 24?
 Was I striking too hard? Was he speaking french? Were we
 (T) 51 frapper⁴⁹ trop fort? 51 parler français? (T) 51

* Make the same difference in the verbs which are here given, as is marked in *itali^c* characters in the verb BLAMER, agreeably to tense, number, and person.

† See the irregular verb ENVOYER.

(T) Do not express the auxiliary words *be, am, art, is, are, was, wast, were*, when they are followed by the present participle in *ing*. Consider them only as sings which indicate the tense in which the verb which follows them must be in french.

‡ See † page 83.

going too far? *Were* you eating fruit? *Were* they scolding you?
 aller trop loin? 51 manger 9fruit m.? 51 gronder 24?

— *Did* I hurt⁴⁹ him? *Did* he shut the door? *Did* we
 (s) 51 blesser 24? 51 fermer 1 porte f.? 51

gain any thing? *Did* you invite them? *Did* they insult you?
 gagner quelque chose? (s) inviter 24? insulter 24

— *Shall* I begin⁴⁹ it²⁴ again? *Will* he bring it with him?
 (s) 51 recommencer le —? (s) apporter 24 28

Shall we divide it amongst us? *Will* you think of me? *Will*
 partager 24 entre 28? penser à 28?

they take it²⁴ along with them? — *Should* I lend it him,²⁹ if
 emporter le — avec 28? (s) 51 prêter 24 (1),

he asked me for it? *Would* he stay with us, if we asked him?
 demandait 24 — 29? (s) rester avec 28, en priions 24

Should we dance, if it was not so late? *Would* you shew it²⁴ me,
 (s) danser, (s) était 55 si tard? (s) montrer 29,

if I called at (your house)? *Would* they change it, if I sent it
 passais chez vous? (s) changer 24, si renvoyais

back to them? *Would* they forgive me, if I begged their pardon?
 — — 29? pardonner 24, demandais leur 24 pardon?

NEGATIVELY. I *do* not blame you. He *does* not deny it. We
 (s) 55 blâmer 24 (s) 55 nier 24

do not breakfast so soon. You *do* not give me money⁸ enough.
 55 déjeuner⁴⁹ si tôt. 55 donner 24 argent N.B. assez.

They *do* not cost (so much). — I *was* not touching it. He *was*
 55 coûter tant. (t) 55 toucher⁴⁹ y 24.

not taking it away. We *were* not disputing. You *were* not listening
 emporter le²⁴ — (t) disputer⁴⁹. écouter

to me. They *were* not looking at you. — I *did* not speak to
 — 24 regarder, — 24. (s) 55 parler⁴⁹

her. She *did* not look at me. We *did* not shew it to them.
 24 regarder — 24 montrer 24 29

You *did* not eat any.²⁴ They *did* not invite us. — I *shall* not stay⁴⁹
 manger* (j) inviter 24 (s) 55 rester

long. He *will* not incommode you. We *shall* not play to-night.
 long tems. (s) incommoder 24 jouer ce soir.

You *will* not fail to ask for it²⁴. They *will* not shew it²⁴ you.
 manquer de demander — le. montrer 29

I *should* not like⁴⁹ to go there. He *would* not borrow money,⁸ if he
 (s) 55 aimer à aller y²⁴, (s) emprunter argent N.B., s'

had any.²⁴ We should not despise others, if we had no pride.⁸
 avait (j) mépriser les autres, si n'avions pas orgueil. N.B.

You *would* never pardon him, if you knew what he has done.
 55 pardonner lui²⁴, saviez 40 fait

They *would* not blame me, if they knew the pains I have taken.
 blâmer 24, savaient peines (p) prises.

NEGATIVELY AND INTERROGATIVELY. *Do* I not begin⁴⁹ right?
 (s)† 51 55 commencer bien?

Does she not dance well? *Do* we not incommode you? *Do* you
 (s) 51 55 danser bien? 51 55 incommoder 24? 51

not breakfast this morning? *Do* they not deserve it? — *Was* I
 35 déjeuner 1 matin m.? 51 mériter le²⁴? (t) 51

not relating it right? *Was* he not shaking the table? *Were* we not
 55 raconter 24 bien? 51 remuer table f.? (t) 51

* See note,* under blamer 1st table.

† See * page 59.

walking too fast? *Were* you not speaking to me? *Were* they not
 marcher trop vite? 51 parler — 24? 51
 asking you for it? *Did* I not shut the door? *Did* he not give
 demander 24 — le? (s) 51 55 fermer porte f.? 51 donner
 her? *Did* we not stay too long? *Did* you not encourage
 (t) (j) 29? 51 rester trop long tems? 51 encourager
 them? *Did* they not accompany you?—*Shall* I not bring it? *Will* you?
 24? 51 accompagner 24? (s) 51 55 apporter le 29?
Will he not marry her? *Shall* we not sing a song? *Will* you not
 (s) 51 épouser 24? 51 chanter chanson f.? 55
 grant him? *Will* they not refuse it? *Would* not
 accorder (t) 1 grâce f.? refuser le 29? (s) 55
 that book cost less in London than here? *Would* not your father
 52 coûter moins à Londres qu' ici? (s) 55 52
 send him to France, if he was older? *Would* he not go himself,
 envoyer* 24 6 était âgé 18? (s) 51 aller lui-même,
 if he had time? *Would* not your sister go with him, if he went?
 avait 7 tems m.? (s) 52 aller 28, s' il y allait?

VERBS IN IR†.

REGULAR. *I am* finishing the work *I had* begun. *He is* building.
 (s) finir 2 ouvrage (p) avais commencé. (p) bâtir
 a new house. *We are* demolishing ours. *You are* embellishing it?
 neuve maison. f. (t) démolir 41 embellir 30
 much. *They are* filling it with furniture.—*I was* reflecting on
 beaucoup. remplir 30 de meubles. (t) réfléchir à
 what I have to do. *He was* languishing in misery. *We were*
 40 à faire. languir dans 7 misère. f. (t)
 warning them of the danger. *You were* not applauding what they
 avertir 24 danger. m. 55 applaudir à 40
 have done. *Were* they not betraying us?—*I punished* him severely.
 fait. (t) 51 55 trahir 24? punir 24 sévèrement.
Did he not accomplish his purpose? *Did* we not obey your orders?
 (s) 51 55 accomplir dessein m.? (s) 51 obéir à l' ordre?
You did not choose a good colour. *They matched* them as well as
 (s) 55 choisir bonne couleur. f. assortir 24 aussi bien qu'
 they could.—*I will* banish him from my house. *That will* rejoice
 parent. (s) bannir 24 de l' 45 réjouir
 us (very much.) *We will* bless you (as long) as we live. *You*
 24 beaucoup. bénir 24 tant que vivrons.
will fill what you can find. *That will* not impoverish them
 emplir 40 pourrez trouver. appauvrir 24
 much.—*I would* cure him, if I could. *You would* finish at once
 beaucoup. (s) guérir 24, si pouvais. finir tout d'un coup
 our misfortunes. *We would* abolish it, if we could. *You would*
 1 malheur. abolir 24, pouvions.
 divert them much. *Your brothers would* succeed better, if
 divertir 24 1 réussir (B),
 they were more careful. *Will* this tree blossom this year? *Did*
 étaient soigneux. (s) 2 arbre m. fleurir 1 année f.? (s)

* See the irregular verb *envoyer*.

† *Aller*, to go, requires a place mentioned after it as *je vais à la maison, à la ville, &c.* *I am, going home, to town, &c.* If no place is mentioned, we use the reflexive verb. *Sen aller*, see the conjugation of that verb.

‡ See the regular verb *finir*, and make the same difference in these verbs.

it 30 blossom last 16 year ? Young trees seldom 54 blossom two years
 51 fleurir dernière 7 ? 7 Jeunes rarement fleurir deux
 together. Do the fruits ripen well ? Do they 51 not often 54 wither on
 (de suite.) (s) 52 m. mûrir ? 30 souvent se flétrir à
 the tree ? Do they 51 not commonly 54 (grow rotten) ? (Here are) several
 2 ? (s) 30 ordinairement pourrir ? Voici plusieurs
 sorts of fruit ; choose which you like best. Fill* your basket
 sorte f. 8 ; choisir 37 aimer le mieux. Remplir corbeille f
 (with it.) Enjoy it while it will last. We will supply you
 en 26. Jouir † en 26 pendant que 39 durer. fournir 24
 with pears and apples, as fast as they will ripen. The children
 — 9 poire f. 9 pomme f., aussi vite qu' 30 mûrir. enfant m.
 will rejoice (very much,) for they are very 54 fond of fruit, and it
 se rejouir beaucoup, car — beaucoup aimer — 7 fruit, 30
 is growing dearer every day. I hope that they will obey you, for
 — encherir — tous les jours. espérer qu' obéir 24, car
 children who disobey their parents seldom 54 succeed.
 7 32 désobéir à 1 parent rarement réussir.

IRREGULAR. I am perusing this book. Does it 51 belong to you ?
 (r) parcourir* 1 livre. m. (s) 30 appartenir* — 24 ?
 It belongs to a friend of mine. Run† fast. Why do not you run
 30 appartenir* 43 Courir vite. Pourquoi 55 courir
 faster ? We are running as hard as we can. For whom are
 vite 18 ? (s) courir 20 vite 20 pouvons. Pour 34 (r)
 you gathering these flowers ? We are gathering them for your
 cueillir 1 fleur ? cueillir 24 pour
 mother. I will offer them to her, that she may remember me.
 offrir 24 — 29, afin qu' se souvenir de 28
 Does not your mother hate me ? Why should she hate you ?
 (s) 52 haïr 24 ? 51 haïr 24 ?
 Because she never comes to see us. He maintains that he has not
 Parce que 55 venir — voir 24. soutenir qu' 55
 done it, but I firmly 54 believe that he lies. Was your sister asleep,
 fait 25, fermement crois qu' mentir. (r) 52 dormir,
 when we set out ? They came in as we were going out. They
 quand partir — ? entrer — comme (r) sortir —
 were running to us, when we discovered them. I came yesterday
 accourir vers 28, découvrir 24 venir
 to see you, but you were not in. I went out early in the morning,
 pour 24, étiez 55 y 24. sortir — de bon — — matin, m.
 and I did not return till late. I met your father, and he
 (s) ne† revenir que* tard. rencontrer
 consented to every thing that I proposed to him. Did my father
 consentir à tout ce que proposer 24. (s) 52
 offer you any money ? He offered me all the money that I should
 offrir 24 9 argent ? offrir 24 tout dont aurais
 want. We went out (as soon) as the dinner was over. You did
 besoin. sortir — aussitôt que dîner m. fut fini.
 not set out so soon as you intended. They detained us a good
 partir — si tôt que (aviez dessein.) retenir 24 — long
 while at the inn. At what time will you set out to-morrow ?
 tems à 2 auberge. à 38 heure f. (s) partir — demain ?

* See the irregular verbs in ir.

† 2d person imperative.

‡ Ne que, without pas, expresses not till.

We *shall* set out as soon as we are ready. When *will* you return ?
 (s) partir — aussitôt que serons prêt13. Quand revenir ?

We *shall* not return before the end of next16 week. *Shall* I
 55 revenir avant fin f. prochaine 7semaine. f.

help you to a glass of wine ? Help yourself first. I *will* help
 servir 24 — verre m. 8 vin ? Servir vous26 le premier. servir

myself after you. I *will* never consent (to it.) You grow more
 me24 après 28 55 consentir y 24. devenir

ceremonious every day. Why *do* you not come to see us
 cérémonieux tous les jours. Pourquoi 55 venir — voir 24

oftener ? Why does not your sister come with you ? When *will*
 souvent18 ? 52 venir avec 28 ?

your brother return from his journey ? *Will* he not set out as soon
 52 revenir de voyage m. ? 55 partir — aussitôt

as he hears that you *are* going (to be married ?) *Will* your mother
 qu' apprendra que aller vous marier ? 52

consent to your marriage ? *Will* she not obtain your father's con-
 sentir mariage ? 55 obtenir 11 con-

sent ? If I were in your place, I *would* not go out so soon.
 sentiment m. ? étais à place, (s) 55 sortir — si tôt.

Would my brother obtain that place, if he asked for it24 ? *Should*
 (s) 52 obtenir 1 place, f. demandait — 30 (κ)

the children go out, if it was fine weather ? It is too late ; they
 52 sortir —, s' il faisait beau tems ? (L) trop tard ;

would not return in time for supper. They *would* not remember
 55 revenir à tems pour souper. 55 se souvenir

it.24 They *would* soon54 feel the want (of it.)
 en29. bientôt sentir besoin m. en 24.

VERBS IN OIR.*

Does that man52 owe you any thing ? He owes me a
 (s) 2 homme devoir 24 quelque chose ? devoir 24 —

(great deal) of money. (How much) *does* he owe you ? I *do* not
 beaucoup 8 argent. m. Combien devoir 24 ? 55

know exactly ; but I can get nothing from him. You should tell
 savoir au juste ; ne pouvoir tirer rien de 28 devoir (v) dire

him24 that you want it. You should get him arrested. He is
 (i) que avez besoin en24. (v) faire 24 arrêter. devoir(v)

to pay me part (of it) in a day or two. If you receive it24
 — payer 24 une partie 24 en 29 dans jour m. ou deux. recevoir 30

to-morrow, will you lend me eighteen or twenty pounds ? I
 demain, vouloir prêter 24 dix huit ou vingt livres sterling ?

can not55 lend you (so much.) I can lend you24 ten or twelve.
 pouvoir prêter 24 tant. pouvoir prêter vous en29 dix douze.

Lend me what you can. Were we not to take a walk this
 Prêter 26 40 pourrez. Devoir (v) 55 — faire un tour de promenade 1

evening ? Yes, we were ; but the master will not let me (go out)
 soir m. ? Oui, le devoir(v) ; vouloir laisser 24 sortir

*. See the verbs in oir.

(v) *Should*, denoting *duty*, or the *necessity* of doing a thing, is expressed by the *conditional* of DEVOIR ; as, You *should* or *ought* to do it. Vous DEVRIEZ le faire.

(v) The present tense of the verb BE, *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, and the imperfect *was*, *were*, followed by the *infinitive* of a verb, are expressed by the same tenses of DEVOIR ; as, I *am* to go there. Je DOIS y aller. I *was* to go there. Je DEVAIS y aller.

before I have said my lesson. Can you say it²⁴ now? I *do*
 (avant que) aie dit 1 leçon f. Pouvoir dire 30 à présent?
 not know whether I can say it²⁴ or not; but I knew it²⁴ when
 savoir si pouvoir dire 30 ou non; savais 30, quand
 I came in. You *do* not know it²⁴ yet. I shall know it²⁴ in a little⁸
 suis entré. savoir 30 encore. savoir 30 en — peu n. b.
 time. I can say it²⁴ now. I see your sister who is coming
 tems pouvoir dire 30 à présent. voir 32 (r) venir
 to help us. We *do* not see her often, but we sometimes hear
 — aider 24 voir 24 souvent, quelquefois 54 recevoir
 (from her.) You *shall* see her to-morrow, if you will, for I know
 (de ses nouvelles.) voir 24 demain, vouloir, car savoir
 that she intends to call upon you. If you will believe me, we *will*
 qu' (à dessein) de passer chez 28. vouloir croire 24,
 go. I think that it *will* rain soon. If it rains, *do* you know
 s'en aller. penser pleuvoir bientôt. pleuvoir, savoir
 what we *will* do? We *will* sit down under that large tree, until
 40 ferons? s'asseoir sous (r) gros¹⁷ arbre m. (jusqu' à
 the rain is over. I can not⁵⁵ stay. I *do* not know what I must
 ce que) pluie f. soit passée. pouvoir rester. savoir 40 devoir
 do. It *will* not rain much. It is only a shower.
 faire. pleuvoir Ce n'est qu' 1 ondée. f.

VERBS IN RE.*

What *are* you doing there? I *am* waiting for my brother.
 39 (r) 51 faire là ? (r) attendre —
 He *is* learning his lesson in the garden. If you see him,
 (s) apprendre 1 leçon f. dans jardin. m. voir 24,
 tell him²⁶ that I *am* waiting for him here. I hear you. Why
 dire (1) que attendre 24 ici. entendre 24. Pourquoi
do you interrupt me so often? *Do* you pretend to know that better
 (s) interrompre 24 si souvent? prétendre — savoir 45. (E)
 than I do? I *will* not interrupt you (any more.) These people
 que 23 — ? (s) ne interrompre 24 plus⁵⁵ 1 gens
 sell 10very bad¹⁷ wine. They sell it²⁴ very dear. I never drink
 vendre très mauvais vin. m. vendre 30 cher. 55 boire
 wine,⁸ when they⁴⁶ sell it²⁴ so dear. *Do* you hear that man?
 vin n. b., quand n. b. vendre 30 si (s) entendre 2 ?
 He *is* speaking to us. I hear him, but I *do* not understand what
 (r) parler — 24. entendre 24, comprendre 40
 he says. I *was* answering your letter, when I heard that you were
 dire. (r) répondre à lettre, quand (ai appris) que étiez.
 in town. You surprise us quite, for we *did* not expect you
 en ville. surprendre 24 (tout à fait,) car (s) attendre 24
 so soon. I came down as soon as I heard you. If I return
 is tôt. descendre — aussitôt que entendre 24. rendre
 them²⁴ their goods, *will* they return me my money? They *would*.
 (1) marchandise, rendre 24 2 argent ?
 not return you one half (of it.) I *would* lose the whole rather
 rendre 24 la moitié 24 en 29. perdre tout m. plutôt
 than submit to such terms. What *are* you learning now?
 que (de me soumettre) à 10telles conditions. 39 (r) apprendre à présent ?
 I *am* learning mathematics. *Do* you understand them well? I
 apprendre 7mathématiques. entendre 24 bien ?

* See the verbs in re.

understand them pretty well. If you take 9 pains, you *will* make
entendre 24 assez bien. prendre de la peine, faire
great¹⁷ progress in a short⁸ time. Does your sister learn ⁷music
10 progrès en — peu n.B. (s) 52 apprendre musique
still⁵³ ? No ; she is learning french⁷ and geography. Do you read
encore ? Non ; (R) apprendre français m. ⁷géographie. f. (s) lire
french¹⁶ books now ? I *am* reading Marmontel's tales. I *do* not
lire à présent ? (R) lire 11 ⁷contes.
like tales. I like plays. Do you translate any book ? I translate
aimer⁷ ⁷comédies. traduire quelque ? traduire
english¹⁶ histories into french. I pity you much. Why *do* you
anglais¹³ ⁹histoire f. en français. plaindre 24 fort. Pourquoi
pity me ? Because you are losing your time, and you displease all
plaindre 24 ? Parceque (T) perdre tems, et que déplaire à tout¹³
your friends. I *do* not fear them. I *do* not depend upon them.
1 ami. m. craindre 24. dépendre d' 28.
I *will* do what I think proper. That man *is* always⁵⁴ laughing. Do
faire 40 croire à propos. 2 (T) toujours rire.
you know what he *is* laughing at ? He *does* not know it²⁴ himself.
savoir 39 (T) rire de⁵⁶ ? 55 savoir le lui-même.
Let us drink* your friend's health. What *shall* we drink ? Drink a
— — boire à 11 ⁷santé. f. 39 (s) boire ? Boire †
glass of wine. I *will* drink a glass of beer. I *will* not permit you to
verre m. 8 (s) boire 8 bière. 55 permettre 24 de
do that. Promise me not to do it.²⁴ Well ! I promise it to you. You
faire 45 Promettre † 26 de ne pas faire le. Eh bien ! promettre 24 — 29.
always promise, but you seldom⁵⁴ keep your word. I *do* not believe
toujours⁵⁴ promettre, mais rarement tenir parole. 55 croire
what he says. Why *do* not you believe him ? Do you mean to
40 dire. Pourquoi 55 51 croire 24 ? 51 vouloir —
say that he lies ? I *do* not say so ; I only⁵⁴ say that people often⁵⁴
dire qu' mentir ? 55 dire cela ; seulement dire que 46 n.B. souvent
promise what they⁴⁶ *do* not intend to perform. What *are* you
promettre 40 n.B. 55 avoir dessein de faire. 39 (T)
sewing there ? I *am* making a gown for a sister of mine. For which
coudre là ? (T) faire 1 robe f. pour 43 36
of your sisters *are* you making it²⁴ ? For the youngest. You *are*
1 (T) faire 30 ? jeune 21.
always⁵⁴ doing and undoing the same thing over again. Put out
toujours faire défaire 1 même chose f. — — Eteindre †
one of these candles. Put† these books into their places again.
une (R) chandelles. f. Remettre (R) livre à 1 —
Why *do* you not pay attention to what I say to you ? Will the
Pourquoi faire attention 40 dire — 24 ?
master permit us to (go out) to day ? I *do* not know ; ask
52 permettre 24 le sortir aujourd'hui ? savoir ; demander
it²⁶ him.²⁹ He *will* not live long, if he drinks (so much.) Yet,
le (1) vivre (long tems) si boire tant. Cependant,
he appears to enjoy good health.
paraître — jouir d'une bonne santé. f.

* 1st person imperative.

† 2nd person imperative.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Have you seen my mother ? I have seen her, but I have not spoken
 voir ? voir * 25, parler
 to her. Has your sister done what she had promised me to do ?
 25 52 faire 40 avait promettre 25 de faire ?
 Why has she not done it ? Has your father forbid her to do
 Pourquoi 55 faire 25 ? 52 défendre lui 25 de faire
 it 24 ? Has your brother been where I had told him ? Has he
 le ? 52 être où avais dire lui 25 ?
 received the letter which 32 my sister has sent him 25 ? Have you read
 recevoir lettre f. (o) envoyer * (t) lire*
 it 25 ? Has your father bought the horse which 32 I had recommended
 30 (κ) 52 acheter (o) avais recommander
 to him 25 ? Has he tried it ? Has my mother brought any body
 (t) essayer 25 ? 52 amener quelqu' un
 with her ? Are your brothers gone out ? Have your sisters
 avec 23 ? 52 sortir plur. — ? 52
 finished the work they had begun ? They *would* not have done
 finir ouvrage(p) avaient commencer ? 55 faire
 it so soon, if they had not been compelled (to it.) I have met
 25 si tôt, avaient 55 forcées y 25. rencontrer
 a man on (horseback) who has asked me the way to (your house.
 à cheval demander 25 chemin m. chez vous 28.

REFLECTIVE VERBS.†

AFFIRMAT. I *am* getting up. He *is* washing himself. We
 (t) se lever — (t) se laver 24
 are dressing ourselves. You *are* amusing yourselves. They *are*
 (t) s'habiller 24 s'amuser 24
 getting ready to (go out.) I *was* getting up, when you called me.
 s'apprêter — à sortir —. (t) se lever —, quand appeler 24
 He was warming himself in the parlour. We *were* conversing by
 se chauffer 24 dans salle f. (t) s'entretenir près
 the fire. You *were* (making merry.) They *were* laughing at us.
 du feu. se divertir. se moquer de 28.
 INTERROG. Do I get up too late ? Does that man (run away) ?
 (s) 51 se lever — trop tard ? (s) 2 52 s'enfuir ?
 Does your bird 52 (grow tame) ? Do we warm ourselves
 (s) oiseau m. s'apprivoiser ? 51 se chauffer 24
 (too much) ? How do you do ? How does your sister do ?
 trop ? Comment 15 se porter ? 52 se porter ?
 Was I coming too near ? Was he hiding himself ? Did we
 (t) s'approcher près ? se cacher 24 ? 51
 expose ourselves (too much) ? Were you inquiring after them ?
 s'exposer 24 trop ? s'informer d' 28 ?

NEGATIV. I *do* not care for him. He *does* not mistrust them.
 (s) 55 se soucier de 28 (s) 55 se méfier de 28
 We *do* not repent (of it) 29. You *do* not rise early enough. They
 se repentir en 24. se lever assez matin
 do not meddle with his affairs. I *did* not stop. He *did* not
 se mêler de 1 affaire. (s) s'arrêter. 55

* This participle must be feminine.

† See the reflective verb *se* BLAMER.

undress himself. We *did* not sit down. You *did* not awake in
 se déshabiller 24 . s'asseoir — . s'éveiller à
 time. I *did* not expect that they *would* have called me up so soon.
 tems. s'attendre N.B. (s) éveiller 25 — si tôt.

INTERR. and NEGAT. Am I not mistaken? Does he not apply to
 (T) 51 55 se tromper ? (s) 51 55 s'appliquer
 study? Do we not walk to-day? Why do not you (make
 étude ? 51 se promener aujourd'hui ? Pourquoi 55 51 se
 haste)? Why do not you (get ready)? Do you not rejoice (at the)
 dépêcher ? 51 s'appréter ? 51 se réjouir des
 good news we have received? Do you not remember what I
 17 nouvelles f.(p). reçues ? se souvenir de 40
 have told you? No; I do not remember it. I do not recollect it.
 dit 25 se souvenir en 24. se rappeler le 24.

COMPOUND TENSES.

AFFIR. I have (gone to bed) late. Thou hast soon (fallen asleep).
 * se coucher tard. * bientôt s'endormir.
 He has awoke early. We have (got up) before you. You have
 * s'éveiller de bon matin. * se lever avant 28 *
 hurried yourself (too much). They have dressed themselves in haste.
 se presser trop. * s'habiller à la hâte.

INTER. Have I (gone away) too soon? Hast thou bathed lately?
 * 51 s'en aller trop tôt ? * 51 se baigner depuis peu?
 Has he amused himself well? Have we undressed ourselves
 * 51 s'amuser bien ? * 51 se déshabiller
 too soon? Have you been well since I saw you? Have
 tôt ? * 51 se porter depuis que n'ai vu 25 ? *
 they stopped too long? Have they (got ready) in time?
 51 s'arrêter trop long tems ? * 51 s'appréter à tems ?

NEGAT. I have not been well to-day. Thou hast not complained (of it).
 * 55 se porter * 55 se plaindre en 29
 He has not perceived it much. We have not walked long.
 * 55 s'apercevoir en 29 * 55 se promener long tems.
 You have not rested enough. They have not (sat down) a moment.
 * 55 se reposer assez. * 55 s'asseoir un moment.

INTER. and NEGAT. Have I not (made haste) enough? Hast thou
 * 51 55 se dépêcher assez ? * 51
 not (caught cold)? Has she not married too young? Have we
 55 s'enrhumer ? * 51 55 se marier jeune ? * 51
 not mistaken the way? Have you not inquired after them?
 55 se méprendre de chemin ? * 51 55 s'informer d' 28 ?
 Have they not applied to you? Have they not (been mistaken)?
 * 51 55 s'adresser 28 ? * 51 55 se tromper ?

* In the compound tenses of the verbs that are made reflective, the auxiliary verb *have* can never be expressed by the verb *avoir*; it must be expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary verb *être* to *be*. See the compound tenses of the reflective verb *blâmer*.

† This participle must agree in gender and number with the nominative of the verb. See *Syntax*, Rule 158.

‡ This adverb must be placed before the participle in french. See *Syntax*, Rule 183.

THE CONJUGATIONS

OR

ACCIDENCE OF VERBS.

A VERB, as has been seen, page 77, is a word which expresses either being or acting.

As the same action may be performed in different manners, at different times, and by different persons, it was found necessary to modify or vary the same word, so as to denote the *manner* in which an action is done, the *time* in which it is done, and the *person* or *persons* by whom it is done, and this is what grammarians call *conjugation*.

The *manners* of acting, in grammar called *modes* or *moods*, are four; *infinitive*, *imperative*, *indicative*, *subjunctive*, or *conjunctive*.

The *times*, in grammar called *tenses*, are properly three only; *past*, *present*, and *future*; but, in order to express time with more precision, these are again divided into other tenses, the use of which will be seen in the syntax of verbs.

The *persons* who act in a verb are generally three for each number.

1. The person or persons who speak; as, *I blame*; *we blame*.
2. The person or persons spoken to; as, *thou blamest*; *you blame*.
3. The person, persons, or things spoken of, as *he*, *she*, *my brother*, *my sister blames*; *they*, *my brothers*, *my sisters blame*.

The modifications or variations by which these moods, tenses, and persons are known, differ, according to the different languages.

In english, the difference is shewn by the means of certain signs prefixed to the verb; as, *do blame*; *did blame*; *shall or will blame*; *should or would blame*; *may blame*; *might blame*.

In french, it is made by changing the last syllable of the word ; as, je *blâm* e, tu *blâm* es, il *blâm* e, nous *blâm* ons, vous *blâm* ez, ils *blâm* ent ; je *blâm* ais ; je *blâm* ai ; je *blâmer* ai ; je *blâmer* ais, &c. *

This variation in the tenses and persons, simple as it is, because it is nearly uniform, is nevertheless found embarrassing by some persons.

The difficulty lies chiefly in the present and perfect tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, and in the imperative.

In order to remove it as much as possible, I have placed in one point of view, the tenses which are either similar or partly similar, or formed from one another, that, by perceiving at once the similarity or the difference, the learner's mind may be more easily impressed with it.

* The signs by which these inflections or variations are made, not being the same in all verbs, the conjugations must also be various.

The number of them is not exactly fixed, and varies in almost every grammar. Some fix it at *four*, some at *six*, some at *ten*, some at *eleven*, some at *twelve*.

It appears to me that their number must either be limited to *four*, or extended to *twelve*.

As amongst such a number of conjugations, out of which there will still be a great number of irregular verbs, it is very difficult for learners to distinguish of what conjugation a verb is ; and as the infinitive of all the french verbs ends in one of these terminations ER, IR, OIR, RE, the only signs by which each different conjugation may be discriminated, I have thought it more simple to fix their number at *four*. †

All verbs which may be conjugated after the same manner as one of these four, are called *regular*.

Those verbs which can not be conjugated like one of these four, are called *irregular*, and set in an alphabetical order after the regular, so that the learner can never be mistaken as to the manner of conjugating any verb which he may have need of, by paying attention to the termination of the infinitive only.

AUXILIARY VERB AVOIR.

Infinitive Mood or Manner.

To have.

A voir.

Imperative Mood.

Have.

Aie, sing.

Ayez, plur.*

Let us have.

Ayons.

*Indicative Mood.**Subjunctive Mood.*

have, may have.

had, might have.

Present tense.

I have.

J'[†] ai.5[†]

J' aie.6

Thou hast.

Tu as.26

Tu aies.

He has.

Il a.

Il ait.26

We have.

Nous²⁵ av ons.26

Nous ayons.4

You have.

Vous av ez.26

Vous ayez.

They have.

Ils ont.26.

Ils aient.6

Imperfect tense.

I had.

J' av ais.6

Thou hadst.

Tu av ais.6

He had.

Il av ait.26

We had.

Nous²⁵ av ions.

You had.

Vous av iez.1

They had.

Ils av aient.6

Perfect tense.

I had.¹J'[†] eus.12

J' eusse.2

Thou hadst.

Tu eus.11

Tu eusses.26

He had.

Il eut.26

Il eût.26

We had.

Nous²⁵ eûmes.

Nous eussions.

You had.

Vous eûtes.26

Vous eussiez.

They had.

Ils eurent.18

Ils eussent.18

Future tense.

I shall or will have.

J' Saurai.5

Thou shalt, wilt have.

Tu auras.26

He shall, will have.

Il aura.

We shall, will have.

Nous²⁵ aurons.

You shall, will have.

Vous aurez.

They shall, will have.

Ils auront.26

Conditional tense.

I should, would have.

J' Saurais.6

Thou shd., wld. have.

Tu aurais.6

He should, would have.

Il aurait.26

We should, would have.

Nous²⁵ aurions.

You should, wld. have.

Vous auriez.

They shld., wld. have.

Ils auraient.6

*Gerund, or Present Participle.**Participle Past.*

Having.

Ayant.

Eu.

Had.

The same Verb conjugated Interrogatively.

Have I?

Ai-je⁵¹?Avons-nous⁵¹?

Hast thou?

As-tu⁵¹?Avez-vous⁵¹?

Has he?

A-t-il⁵¹?Ont-ils⁵¹?

Has she?

A-t-elle⁵¹?Ont-elles⁵¹?

Has my brother?

Mon frère a-t-il⁵²?Mes frères ont-ils⁵²?

Has my sister?

Ma sœur a-t-elle⁵²?Mes sœurs ont-elles⁵²?

have we? &c.

* The plural is generally used instead of the singular, though speaking to a single person.

† See note † page 47.

‡ These figures refer to the pronunciation, see page 2.

§ See note 6, page 4.

|| See, syntax of verbs, the distinction between *avais* and *eus*.

¶ These figures refer to the rules.

The same Verb Avoir conjugated Negatively.

Infinitive.

Not to have.

Ne pas avoir.

Imperative.

Have not,

Let us not have.

N' aie, or N' ayez }
N' avons } pas.†

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

I have not.	Je n' ai5	} pas.†	Je n' aie6	} pas.	} may not have.
Thou hast not.	Tu n' as		Tu n' aies		
He has not.	Il n' a		Il n' ait26		
We	Nous n' avons26		Nous n' ayons		
You } have not.	Vous n' avez	} pas.	Vous n' ayez	} pas.	} might not have.
They }	Ils n' ont26		Ils n' aient18		
I	Je n' avais6	} pas.		} pas.	
Thou	Tu n' avais				
He	Il n' avait26				
We	Nous n' avions				
You } had not.	Vous n' aviez	} pas.		} pas.	
They }	Ils n' avaient6				
I	Je n' eus26	} pas.	Je n' eusse	} pas.	
Thou	Tu n' eus		Tu n' eusses		
He	Il n' eût26		Il n' eût26		
We	Nous n' eûmes		Nous n' eussions		
You } had not.	Vous n' eûtes	} pas.	Vous n' eussiez	} pas.	
They }	Ils n' eurent18		Ils n' eussent18		
I	Je n' aurai5	} pas.		} pas.	
Thou	Tu n' auras				
He	Il n' aura				
We	Nous n' aurons				
You } shall, will	Vous n' aurez	} pas.		} pas.	
They }	Ils n' auront26				
I	Je n' aurais6	} pas.		} pas.	
Thou	Tu n' aurais				
He	Il n' aurait				
We	Nous n' aurions				
You } shld. wld.	Vous n' auriez	} pas.		} pas.	
They }	Ils n' auraient6				

Gerund.

Not having. N' ayant pas.

Participle.

Pas eu. Not had.

The same Verb conjugated Negatively and Interrogatively.

Have I	N' ai-je51†	} pas ?	N' avons-nous	} pas ?	} pas ?
Hast thou	N' as-tu51		N' avez-vous		
Has he	N' a-t-il51		N' ont-ils51		
Has she	N' a-t-elle		N' ont-elles51		
Has not my brother ?	Mon frère n' a-t-il52	} pas ?	Mes frères n' ont-ils	} pas ?	} pas ?
Has not my sister ?	Ma sœur n' a-t-elle52		Mes sœurs n' ont-elles		

* See note † page 47.

† See the negative adverbs, rule 55.

‡ See note ¶ page 92.

AUXILIARY VERB *ETRE*.*Infinitive Mood.*

To be.

Etre.

Imperative.

Be.

Let us be.

Sois, SING.

Soyez. PLUR.*

Soyons.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Pres. nt tense.
I am.
Thou art.
He is.
We are.
You are.
They are.

Je3 tsuis.26
Tu es.26
Il est.26
Nous sommes.
Vous êtes.26
Ils sont.26

Je3 sois.23
Tu sois.26
Il soit.26
Nous soyons.4
Vous soyez.
Ils soient.18

be, may be.

Imp. tense.
I was.
Thou wast.
He was.
We were.
You were.
They were.

J ét ais.6
Tu ét ais.
Il ét ait.26
Nous ét ions.26
Vous ét iez.
Ils ét aient.6

Perf. tense.
I was.
Thou wast.
He was.
We were.
You were.
They were.

Je3 tfus.26
Tu fus.‡
Il fut.26
Nous fûmes.
Vous fûtes.26
Ils furent.18

Je3 fusse.2
Tu fusses.26
Il fût.26.
Nous fussions.
Vous fussiez.
Ils fussent.18

were, might be.

Fut. positive.
I shall or will be.
Thou shalt, will be.
He shall, will be.
We shall, will be.
You shall, will be.
They shall, will be.

Je3 serai.5
Tu seras.26
Il sera.
Nous serons.
Vous serez.26
Ils seront.26

Fut. cond' al.
I should, would be.
Thou should, would be.
He should, would be.
We should, would be.
You should, would be.
They should, would be.

Je3 serais.6
Tu serais.
Il serait.26
Nous serions.
Vous seriez.
Ils seraient.6

Gerund, or Present Participle.

Being.

Et ant.

Participle Past.

Été.

Been.

The same Verb conjugated Interrogatively.

Am I?
Art thou?
Is he?
Is she?
Is my brother?
Is my sister?

Suis-je51?
Es-tu51?
Est-il51?
Est-elle51?
Mon frère est-il52?
Ma sœur est-elle52?

Sommes-nous51?
Etes-vous51?
Sont-ils51?
Sont-elles51?
Mes frères sont-ils 52?
Mes sœurs sont-elles52?

are we? &c.

* The plural is generally used instead of the singular, though speaking to a single person.

† See note 2, page 1.

‡ See, syntax, rule 140, the distinction between *étais* and *fus*.

The same Verb être conjugated Negatively.

Infinitive.

Not to be

Ne pas être.

Imperative.

Be not.

Ne sois, or Ne soyez

Let us not be.

Ne soyons } pas.

Indicative.

I am not.	Je3	ne suis	} pas.
Thou art not.	Tu	n' es26	
He is not.	Il	n' est26	
We	Nous	ne sommes	
You } are not.	Vous	n'êtes	} pas.
They	Ils	ne sont26	
I	Je3	n' étais6	
Thou } was not.	Tu	n' étais*	
He	Il	n' était26	} pas.
We	Nous	n' étions	
You } werenot	Vous	n' étiez	
They	Ils	n'étaient6	
I	Je3	ne fus	} pas.
Thou } was not.	Tu	ne fus*	
He	Il	ne fut26	
We	Nous	ne fûmes	
You } were not	Vous	ne fûtes	} pas.
They	Ils	ne furent18	
I	Je3	ne serai5	
Thou	Tu	ne seras	
He } shall, will	Il	ne sera	} pas.
We	Nous	ne serons	
You } not eb.	Vous	ne serez	
They	Ils	ne seront26	
I	Je3	ne serais6	} pas.
Thou	Tu	ne serais	
He } shld. wld.	Il	ne serait	
We	Nous	ne serions	
You } not be.	Vous	ne seriez	} pas.
They	Ils	ne seraient6	

Subjunctive.

Je3	ne sois23	} pas.
Tu	ne sois	
Il	ne soit26	
Nous	ne soyons	
Vous	ne soyez	} pas.
Ils	ne soient18	
Je3	ne fusse	
Tu	ne fusses	
Il	ne fût26	} pas.
Nous	ne fussions	
Vous	ne fussiez	
Ils	ne fussent18	

may not be.

might not be.

Gerund.

Being not. n'étant pas.

Participle.

pas été not been

The same verb conjugated negatively and interrogatively.

Am I	} not ?	ne suis-je	} pas ?	ne sommes-nous	} pas ?
Art thou		n' es-tu		n' êtes-vous	
Is he		n' est-il		ne sont-ils	
Is she		n' est-elle		ne sont-elles	
Is not my brother ?		Mon frère n'est-il pas ?		Mes frères ne sont-ils pas ?	
Is not my sister ?		Ma sœur n'est-elle pas ?		Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas ?	

* See, syntax, rule 140, the distinction between *avais* and *eus*; *étais* and *fus*.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS ER, IR, OIR, RE.*

A Table, shewing in one point of view, the difference between

ER.			IR.		
Infinitive.	Gerund.	Partic.	Infinit.	Gerund.	Part.
Blâm <i>er</i> .	<i>ant.</i>	<i>é.</i>	Fin <i>ir.</i>	<i>issant.</i>	<i>i.</i>
Indicat.	Imperat.	Subjunct.	Indicat.	Imperat.	Subjunct.
Je blâm	<i>e.</i>	<i>e.</i>	Fin <i>is.</i>		<i>isse.</i>
Tu	<i>es.</i>	<i>e. es.</i>		<i>is.</i>	<i>isses.</i>
Il	<i>e.</i>	<i>e.</i>			<i>isse.</i>
Nous	<i>ons</i>	<i>ons. ions.</i>		<i>issons.</i>	<i>issions.</i>
Vous	<i>ez.</i>	<i>ez. iez.</i>		<i>issez.</i>	<i>issiez.</i>
Ils	<i>ent.</i>	<i>ent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>
Je blâm	<i>ais.†</i>		Fin <i>issais.†</i>		
Tu	<i>ais.</i>			<i>issais.</i>	
Il	<i>ait.</i>			<i>issait.</i>	
Nous	<i>ions.</i>			<i>issions.</i>	
Vous	<i>iez.</i>			<i>issiez.</i>	
Ils	<i>aient.</i>			<i>issaient.</i>	
Je blâm	<i>ai.</i>	<i>asse.</i>	Fin <i>is.</i>		<i>isse.</i>
Tu	<i>as.</i>	<i>asses.</i>		<i>is.</i>	<i>isses.</i>
Il	<i>a.</i>	<i>ât.</i>		<i>it.</i>	<i>ît.</i>
Nous	<i>âmes.</i>	<i>assions.</i>		<i>îmes.</i>	<i>îssions.</i>
Vous	<i>âtes.</i>	<i>assiez.</i>		<i>îtes.</i>	<i>îssiez.</i>
Ils	<i>èrent.</i>	<i>assent.</i>		<i>îrent.</i>	<i>îssent.</i>
Je blâmer	<i>ai.</i>		Finir <i>ai</i>		
Tu	<i>as.</i>			<i>a.</i>	
Il	<i>a.</i>			<i>a.</i>	
Nous	<i>ons.</i>			<i>ons.</i>	
Vous	<i>ez.</i>			<i>ez.</i>	
Ils	<i>ont.</i>			<i>ont.</i>	
Je blâmer	<i>ais.†</i>		Finir <i>aist.</i>		
Tu	<i>ais.</i>			<i>aïs.</i>	
Il	<i>ait.</i>			<i>ait.</i>	
Nous	<i>ions.</i>			<i>ions.</i>	
Vous	<i>iez.</i>			<i>iez.</i>	
Ils	<i>aient.</i>			<i>aient.</i>	

* After the same manner as Blâmer are conjugated *all* the verbs the infinitive of which ends in *er*, (about 2700 in number) except Aller and Envoyer. Observe only, that in the verbs in *ger*, as, Changer, Manger, Songer, the *e* is retained before *a*, *o*, in order to soften the sound of *g*; so instead of saying Changons, Mangons, Songons; Changais, Mangais, Songais; we say, Changeons, Mang-eons, Songeons; Changeais, Mang-eais, &c.

After the same manner as Finir are conjugated about 220 verbs in *ir*, both *primitive* and *compound*. Compound verbs are those whose signification changes by the means of a preposition prefixed to them; as *déflourir*, to lose the blossom; *refleurir*, to blossom again; which are conjugated like their primitive *fleurir*, to blossom; *défaire*, to undo; *refaire*, to do again; which are conjugated like their primitive *faire*, to do.

* These are the *only signs* by which it can be known to what conjugation a verb belongs. By paying attention to the *termination* of the *infinitive*, and *altering* the same number of letters as are here marked in *italic*, i. e. those ending in *er* after BLÂM *er*,

the Four Conjugations, and how the tenses of a Verb proceed from one another.

OIR.			RE.		
<i>Infinit.</i>	<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>Partic.</i>	<i>Infinit.</i>	<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>Partic.</i>
Dev <i>oir.</i>	<i>ant.</i>	<i>Dû.</i>	Attend <i>re.</i>	<i>ant.</i>	<i>u.</i>
<i>Indicat.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Subjunct.</i>	<i>Indicat.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Subjunct.</i>
Dois.		Doive.	Attend <i>s.</i>		<i>e.</i>
Dois.	Dois.	Doives.	<i>s.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>es.</i>
Doit.		Doive.	Attend		<i>e.</i>
Dev <i>ons.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ions.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ions.</i>
<i>ez.</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>iez.</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>iez.</i>
Doivent.		Doivent.	<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
Dev <i>ais.†</i>			Attend <i>ais.†</i>		
<i>ais.</i>			<i>ais.</i>		
<i>ait.</i>			<i>ait.</i>		
<i>ions.</i>			<i>ions.</i>		
<i>iez.</i>			<i>iez.</i>		
<i>aient.</i>			<i>aient.</i>		
Dus.		Dusse.	Attend <i>is.</i>		<i>isse.</i>
Dus.		Dusses.	<i>is.</i>		<i>isses.</i>
Dut.		Dût.	<i>it.</i>		<i>it.</i>
Dûmes.		Dussions.	<i>îmes.</i>		<i>issions.</i>
Dûtes.		Dussiez.	<i>îtes.</i>		<i>issiez.</i>
Durent.		Dussent.	<i>îrent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>
Dev <i>rai.</i>			Attendr <i>ai.</i>		
<i>ras.</i>			<i>as.</i>		
<i>ra.</i>			<i>a.</i>		
<i>rons.</i>			<i>ons.</i>		
<i>rez.</i>			<i>ez.</i>		
<i>ront.</i>			<i>ont.</i>		
Dev <i>rais.†</i>			Attendr <i>ais.†</i>		
<i>rais.</i>			<i>ais.</i>		
<i>rait.</i>			<i>ait.</i>		
<i>rions.</i>			<i>ions.</i>		
<i>riez.</i>			<i>iez.</i>		
<i>raient.</i>			<i>aient.</i>		

After the same manner as Devoir are conjugated Redevoir, Percevoir, Apercevoir, S'apercevoir, Concevoir, Recevoir.

N. B. This verb is not regular; if it is found here amongst the regular, it is because its termination requires a conjugation of its own. The words which are *irregular* are printed wholly in roman characters; the *regular* are the *italic terminations* added to the roman letters.

After the same manner as Attendre are conjugated Batre, Abatre, Combatre, Debatre, Rabatre, Rebatre, Fendre, Défendre, Descendre, Condescendre, Fondre, Confondre, Refondre, Morfondre, Rompre, Corrompre, Interrompre, Pondre, Répondre, Correspondre, Répandre, Mordre, Démordre, Tendre, Etendre, Entendre, Prétendre, Rendre, Pendre, Dépendre, Vendre, Perdre, Tor dre, Retordre, Tondre.

those in *ir* after FIN *ir*, those in *oir* after DEV *oir*, and those in *re* after ATTEND *re*, and with the assistance of the tables of the irregular verbs, it is impossible for any person to commit errors which he is not himself able to rectify.

† See note 6, page 4.

REGULAR VERBS IN ER.

Infinitive Mood.

To Blame.

Blâm *er*.*Imperative.*

Blame.

Blâm *e*, SING.Blâm *ez*, PLUR.

Let us blame.

Blâm *ons*.*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Pres't tense. Imper. tense. Perf. tense. Fut. positive. Fut. cond't al.	I Thou He We You They	blame, or am blamest, art blames, or is blame, are blaming.*	Je3 Blâm <i>e</i> .2
			Tu Blâm <i>es</i> .26
			Il Blâm <i>e</i> .
			Nous Blâm <i>ons</i> .
			Vous Blâm <i>ez</i> .
			Il's26 Blâm <i>ent</i> .18
			Je3 Blâm <i>ais</i> .6
			Tu Blâm <i>ais</i> .
			Il Blâm <i>ait</i> .26
			Nous Blâm <i>ions</i> .
	I Thou He We You They	was blaming.* were blaming.	Vous Blâm <i>iez</i> .
			Il's26 Blâm <i>aient</i> .6
			Je3 Blâm <i>ai</i> .5
			Tu Blâm <i>as</i> .26
			Il Blâm <i>a</i> .
			Nous Blâm <i>âmes</i> .
			Vous Blâm <i>âtes</i> .
			Il's26 Blâm <i>èrent</i> .18
			Je3 Blâmer <i>ai</i> .5
			Tu Blâmer <i>as</i> .26
	I Thou He We You They	shall, will blame, or be blaming.	Il Blâmer <i>a</i> .
			Nous Blâmer <i>ons</i> .
			Vous Blâmer <i>ez</i> .
			Il's26 Blâm <i>ont</i> .26
			Je3 Blâmer <i>ais</i> .6
			Tu Blâmer <i>ais</i> .
			Il Blâmer <i>ait</i> .26
			Nous Blâmer <i>ions</i> .
			Vous Blâmer <i>iez</i> .
			Il's26 Blâmer <i>aient</i> .6

Je3 Blâm <i>e</i> .2
Tu Blâm <i>es</i> .26
Il Blâm <i>e</i> .
Nous Blâm <i>ions</i> .
Vous Blâm <i>iez</i> .
Il's26 Blâm <i>ent</i> .18
Je3 Blâm <i>asse</i> .2
Tu Blâm <i>asses</i> .
Il Blâm <i>ât</i> .26
Nous Blâm <i>assions</i> .
Vous Blâm <i>assiez</i> .
Il's26 Blâm <i>assent</i> .18

blame, may blame.

blamed, might blame.

*Gerund.**Participle.*

Blaming.

Blâm *ant*.Blâm *é*.

Blamed.

*Interrogatively.**Negatively.**Interrogativ. and Negativ.*

Blâme-je ?	Je ne Blâme	} pas? I do not blame.	Ne Blâme-je	} do I not blame?
Blâmes-tu ?	Tu ne Blâmes		Ne Blâmes-tu	
Blâme-t-il ?	Il ne Blâme		Ne Blâme-t-il	
Blâmons-nous ?	Nous ne Blâmons		Ne Blâmons-nous	
Blâmez-vous ?	Vous ne Blâmez		Ne Blâmez-vous	
Blâment-ils ?	Il's ne Blâment		Ne Blâment-ils	

N. B. After the same manner as *Blâmer* conjugate all the verbs, the infinite of which ends in *er*, except *aller* and *envoyer*, p. 102, 103.†

* Never say *je suis blâmant*, *tu es blâmant*, *il est blâmant*, *j'étais blâmant*, &c. See note (T) p. 81.

† See note* page 96.

Compound tenses of the verb *Blâmer*, formed by adding the participle *Blâmé* to the auxiliary *Avoir*.

*Infinitive Compound.**To have blamed.**Avoir Blâmé.**Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

I have Thou hast He has We You They	} blamed.	J' ai	}	J' aie	}	} may have blamed.
		Tu as		Tu aies		
Pres. comp'd. Impf. com'd.	} have blamed.	Il a	}	Il ait	}	} blâmé.
		Nous avons		Nous ayons		
		Vous avez		Vous ayez		
		Ils ont		Ils aient		
I Thou He We You They	} had blamed.	J' avais	}	J' eusse	}	} might have blamed.
		Tu avais		Tu eusses		
		Il avait	}	Il eût	}	
		Nous avions		Nous eussions		
		Vous aviez		Vous eussiez		
		Ils avaient		Ils eussent		
I Thou He We You They	} had blamed.	J' eus	}	J' eusse	}	} blâmé.
		Tu eus		Tu eusses		
		Il eut	}	Il eût	}	
		Nous eûmes		Nous eussions		
		Vous eûtes		Vous eussiez		
		Ils eurent		Ils eussent		
Fut. comp'd.	} shall, will have blamed.	J' aurai	}	J' eusse	}	} blâmé.
		Tu auras		Tu eusses		
		Il aura	}	Il eût	}	
		Nous aurons		Nous eussions		
		Vous aurez		Vous eussiez		
		Ils auront		Ils eussent		
Condit. com.	} should, wld. have blamed.	J' aurais	}	J' eusse	}	} blâmé.
		Tu aurais		Tu eusses		
		Il aurait	}	Il eût	}	
		Nous aurions		Nous eussions		
		Vous auriez		Vous eussiez		
		Ils auraient		Ils eussent		

Gerund.

Having blamed.

*Ayant Blâmé.**Participle.*

eu Blâmé. Had blamed

*Interrogatively.**Negatively.**Interrog'ly and Nega'ly.*

Ai-je As-tu A-t-il Avons-nous Avez-vous Ont-ils	} blâmé?	Je n'ai	} pas blâmé	N'ai-je	} pas blâmé?
		Tu n'as		N'as-tu	
		Il n'a		N'a-t-il	
		Nous n'avons		N'avons-nous	
		Vous n'avez		N'avez-vous	
		Ils n'ont		N'ont-ils	

* See, syntax of verbs, the rules on the *past participle*.

*The verb Blamer made reflective.***Infinitive.*

To Blame oneself.

Se Blâmer.

Imperative.

Commanding 26 rule, page 60.

Forbidding 27 rule, page 61.

Blame thyself.	blâm e - toi.	Ne te blâm e	} pas
yourself.	blâm ez - vous.	Ne vous blâm ez	
Let us blame ourselves.	blâm ons - nous.	Ne nous blâm ons	

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

I	} blame.	myself.	Je3 me	blâm e.	Je3 me	blâm e.	} may blame myself.
Thou		thyself.	Tu te	blâm es.	Tu te	blâm es.	
He		himself.	Il se	blâm e.	Il se	blâm e.	
We		ourselves.	Nous nous	blâm ons.	Nous nous	blâm ions.	
You		yourselves.	Vous vous	blâm ez.	Vous vous	blâm iez.	
They		themselves.	Ils se	blâm ent.	Ils se	blâm ent.	
I	} was blaming.	myself.	Je me	blâm ais.			
Thou		thyself.	Tu te	blâm ais.			
He		himself.	Il se	blâm ait.			
We		ourselves.	Nous nous	blâm ions.			
You		yourselves.	Vous vous	blâm iez.			
They		themselves.	Ils se	blâm aient.			
I	} blamed	myself.	Je me	blâm ai.	Je me	blâm asse.	} might blame myself.
Thou		thyself.	Tu te	blâm as.	Tu te	blâm asses.	
He		himself.	Il se	blâm a.	Il se	blâmât.	
We		ourselves.	Nous nous	blâm âmes.	Nous nous	blâm assions	
You		yourselves.	Vous vous	blâm âtes.	Vous vous	blâm assiez.	
They		themselves.	Ils se	blâm èrent.	Ils se	blâm assent.	
I	} shall will bla.	myself.	Je me	blâmer ai.			
Thou		thyself.	Tu te	blâmer as.			
He		himself.	Il se	blâmer a.			
We		ourselves.	Nous nous	blâmer ons.			
You		yourselves.	Vous vous	blâmer ez.			
They		themselves.	Ils se	blâmer ont.			
I	} shd. wd. bla.	myself.	Je me	blâmer ais.			
Thou		thyself.	Tu te	blâmer ais.			
He		himself.	Il se	blâmer ait.			
We		ourselves.	Nous nous	blâmer ions.			
You		yourselves.	Vous vous	blâmer iez.			
They		themselves.	Ils se	blâmer aient.			

*Interrogatively.**Negatively.**Interro'ly. and Neg'ly.*

Me blâme-je ?	Je ne me blâme	} pas ?	Ne me blâme-je	} pas ?
Te blâmes-tu ?	Tu ne te blâmes		Ne te blâmes-tu	
Se blâme-t-il ?	Il ne se blâme		Ne se blâme-t-il	
Nous blâmons-nous ?	Nous ne nous blâmons pas.		Ne nous blâmons-nous pas ?	
Vous blâmez-vous ?	Vous ne vous blâmez pas.		Ne vous blâmez-vous pas ?	
Se blâment-ils ?	Ils ne se blâment pas.		Ne se blâment-ils pas ?	

*Sometimes it happens that the agent, or person who acts, is also the object, i. e. acts upon himself, as when I say ; *I blame myself ; Thou preparest thyself ; He distinguishes himself ; We wash ourselves ; You dress yourself ; They expose themselves,*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN ER.*

Infinitive.

To go.

Aller.

*Imperative.*Go. Va, *sing.*All ez, *plur.*

Let us go.

All ons.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Prent. tense.
 I go, or am going.
 Thou goest, art going.
 He goes, or is going.
 We } go, or
 You } are going.
 They }

Je3 vais6.
 Tu vas26.
 Il va.
 Nous all ons.
 Vous all ez.
 Il vont26.

J' aille.
 Tu ailles.
 Il aille.
 Nous all ions.
 Vous all iez.
 Ils aillent18.

Imperf. tense.
 I was going.
 Thou }
 He }
 We }
 You } were going.
 They }

J' all ais6.
 Tu all ais.
 Il all ait26.
 Nous all ions.
 Vous all iez.
 Ils all aient6.

Perf. tense.
 I went, or
 Thou } did go.
 He }
 We }
 You }
 They }

J' all ai5.†
 Tu all as26.
 Il all a.
 Nous all âmes.
 Vous all âtes.
 Ils all èrent.18

J' all asse2.
 Tu all asses.
 Il all ât26.
 Nous all assions.
 Vous all assiez.
 Ils all assent.

Fut. positive.
 I shall, will go,
 Thou } or be going.
 He }
 We }
 You }
 They }

J' irai5.
 Tu iras26
 Il ira.
 Nous irons.
 Vous irez.
 Ils iront26

Fut. conditl.
 I should. wd. go,
 Thou } or be going.
 He }
 We }
 You }
 They }

J' irais6.
 Tu irais.
 Il irait26
 Nous irions.
 Vous iriez.
 Ils iraient6.

Gerund.

Going.

All ant.

Participle.

All é.

Gone.

N. B. Aller, to Go, requires a place mentioned after it ; as,
 Je Vais à la maison, à la ville, &c. I am going home, to town, &c.

If no place is mentioned, we make the verb reflective as follows :

* A verb is called *irregular*, when all its tenses and persons cannot be formed from the infinitive, by changing only the last syllable, as you see in the verb BLAMER.

In order to render the difference more obvious, the tenses or persons which are formed regularly from the infinitive, have their terminations printed in *italic* characters, the words which are *irregular* are printed wholly in *roman*.

† Fus, Fus, Fut ; Fûmes, Fûtes, Furent, the perfect tense of ETRE, is often used instead of Allai, Allas, Alla ; Allâmes, Allâtes, Allèrent, the perfect of ALLER ; as, J' allai or je fus en France l' année dernière ; I went to France last year. I would prefer allai to fus.

go, may go.

went, might go.

Infinitive.

To go away.

S' en Aller.

Imperative.

Commanding rule 26, p. 60.

Forbidding rule 27, page 61.

Go away, or } *va-t-en*, sing.
be gone, } *Allez-Vous-en*, pl.
Let us go away, *Allons-Nous-en*.

Ne t' *en* va pas. } do not go.
Ne Vous *en* Allez pas. } away.
Ne Nous *en* Allons pas. let us not go.

Indicative.

I go, or am
Thou goest, art
He goes, or is
We } go, are
You } going
They } away.
I was going away.
I went away.
I shll, will go away.
I shd, wld go away.
I am not going away.

Je m' *en* vais
Tu t' *en* vas.
Il s' *en* va.
Nous nous *en* Allons.
Vous vous *en* Allez.
Ils s' *en* vont.
Je m' *en* Allais.
Je m' *en* Allai.
Je m' *en* irai.
Je m' *en* irais.
Je ne m' *en* vais pas, &c.

Subjunctive.

Je m' *en* aille.
Tu t' *en* ailles.
Il s' *en* aille.
Nous nous *en* Allions.
Vous vous *en* Alliez.
Ils s' *en* aillent.
Je m' *en* Allasse.

may go away.

Compound tenses, formed by adding the participle *allé* to the auxiliary verb *être*.

<i>I</i> have	} gone away.	<i>Je</i> m' <i>en</i> suis Allé.
<i>Thou</i> hast		<i>Tu</i> t' <i>en</i> es Allé.
<i>He</i> has		<i>Il</i> s' <i>en</i> est Allé.
<i>We</i> have		<i>Nous</i> nous <i>en</i> sommes Allés.
<i>You</i> have		<i>Vous</i> vous <i>en</i> êtes Allés.
<i>They</i> have		<i>Ils</i> s' <i>en</i> sont Allés.

ENVOYER, *To Send.*

The sole irregularity of this verb is in the *future* and in the *conditional*, the other tenses being formed regularly in the same manner as *Blâmer*.

Infinitive.

To send.

Envoyer.

Indicative.

Pres. *I* send. *J'* Envoie.*
Imp. *I* did send. *J'* Envoyais.
Perf. *I* sent. *J'* Envoyai, &c.
Futu. *I* } *J'* envèrai.5
Thou } *Tu* envèras.
He } shall, or *Il* envèra.
We } will send. *Nous* envèrons.
You } *Vous* envèrez.
They } *Ils* envèront.26
Cond. *I* } *J'* envèrais.6
Thou } *Tu* envèrais.
He } shld. or *Il* envèrait.26
We } wld. send. *Nous* envèrions.
You } *Vous* envèriez.
They } *Ils* envèraient.6

Subjunctive.

J' Envoie, &c.
J' Envoyasse, &c.

Conjugate in the same manner, *Renvoyer*, to *Send back*, to *Dismiss*.

* The modern Grammarian changes the *y* into *i* before an *e* mute.

REGULAR VERBS IN IR.

Infinitive.

To finish.

Fin *ir*.

Imperative.

Finish. Fin *is, sing.*Fin *issez, plur.*

Let us finish.

Fin *issons.*

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

I finish, or am

Je3 20 fin *is*26.Je3 20 fin *isse*2.

Thou finishest, art

Tu fin *is.*Tu fin *isses.*

He finishes, or is

Il fin *it*26.Il fin *isse.*

We } finish, or are

Nous fin *issons.*Nous fin *issions.*

You } finishing.

Vous fin *issez.*Vous fin *issiez.*

They } finishing.

Ils fin *issent*18.Ils fin *issent*18.

I } was finishing.

Je3 fin *issais*6.

Thou } was finishing.

Tu fin *issais.*

He } was finishing.

Il fin *issait*26.

We } were finishing.

Nous fin *issions.*

You } were finishing.

Vous fin *issiez.*

They } were finishing.

Ils fin *issaient*6.

I } finished

Je3 fin *is*26.Je3 fin *isse*2.

Thou } finished

Tu fin *is.*Tu fin *isses.*

He } did finish.

Il fin *it*26.Il fin *it*26.

We } did finish.

Nous fin *îmes.*Nous fin *issions.*

You } did finish.

Vous fin *îtes.*Vous fin *issiez.*

They } did finish.

Ils fin *irent*23.Ils fin *issent*26.

I } shall, will

Je3 finir *ai*5.

Thou } shall, will

Tu finir *as.*

He } finish,

Il finir *a.*

We } be finishing.

Nous finir *ons.*

You } be finishing.

Vous finir *ez.*

They } be finishing.

Ils finir *ont*26.

I } should, would

Je3 finir *ais*6.

Thou } should, would

Tu finir *ais.*

He } finish,

Il finir *ait*26.

We } be finishing.

Nous finir *ions.*

You } be finishing.

Vous finir *iez.*

They } be finishing.

Ils finir *aient*6.

Gerund.

Participle.

Finishing.

Fin *issant.*Fin *i.*

Finished.

Interrogatively.

Negatively.

Interrogatively and Negatively.

Finis-je ?	do I fin ?	Je ne Finis	} pas.
Finis-tu ?	do I fin ?	Tu ne Finis	
Finit-il ?	do I fin ?	Il ne Finit	
Finissons-nous ?	do I fin ?	Nous ne Finissons	
Finissez-vous ?	do I fin ?	Vous ne Finissez	
Finissent-ils ?	do I fin ?	Ils ne Finissent	

I do not finish.	Ne Finis-je	} pas ?
	Ne Finis-tu	
	Ne Finit-il	
	Ne Finissons-nous p.	
	Ne Finissez-vous p.	
	Ne Finissent-ils pas	

do I not finish.

After the same manner as *finir*, are conjugated the following verbs,

s'Abatardir, to degenerate.

Abolir, to abolish.

Aboutir, to end.

s'Abêtir, to grow stupid.

Abonnir, to better.

s'Abrutir, to become stupid.

Accomplir.

- Accomplir, to accomplish.
 Accourcir, to shorten.
*s'*Accroupir, to sit squat.
 Adoucir, to soften.
 Affadir, to render tasteless.
 Affermir, to strengthen.
 Affaiblir, to weaken.
 Affranchir, to free.
 Agir, to act.
 Agrandir, to enlarge.
 Aguernir, to inure to war.
 Aigrir, to exasperate.
 Alentir, to slacken.
 Amaigrir, to grow lean.
 Ameublir, to make moveable.
 Amoindrir, to lessen.
 Amollir, to soften.
 Amortir, to redeem.
 Anéantir, to annihilate.
 Anoblir, to ennoble.
 Appauvrir, to impoverish.
 Appesantir, to make heavy.
 Applanir, to level.
 Applatir, to flatten.
 Applaudir, to applaud.
 Approfondir, to fathom.
 Asservir, to enslave.
 Assortir, to match.
 Assoupir, to make drowsy.
 Assouplir, to supple.
 Assourdir, to deafen.
 Assouvir, to glut, to satiate.
 Assujettir, to subdue.
 Attendrir, to move to pity.
 Atterrir, to approach the land.
 Avertir, to warn.
 Avilir, to revile, to debase.
 Bannir, to banish.
 Bâtir, to build.
 Bénir, to bless.
 Blanchir, to whiten.
 Blémir, to grow pale.
 Bleuir, to make blue.
 Blondir, to grow fair.
se Blottir, to lie squat.
 Bondir, to skip.
 Brandir, to brandish.
 Brouir, to blast.
 Brunir, to burnish.
 Candir, to candy.
 Chérir, to cherish.
 Choisir, to choose.
 Clapir, to squat, to clap.
 Compatir, to compassionate.
 Convertir, to convert.
 Crêpir, to roughcast.
 Croûpir, to stagnate.
 Débrutir, to take the rough-
 ness.
 Définir, to define.
 Défleuir, to lose the blossom.
 Dégarnir, to disgarnish.
 Dégourdir, to warm a little.
 Déguerpir, to move off.
 Démolir, to demolish.
 Dépérir, to decay.
 Dépolir, to unpolish.
 Déroidir, to take off stiffness.
- Dérourgir, to take off redness.
 Désobéir, to disobey.
se Dessaisir, to give up.
 Désunir, to disunite.
 Divertir, to divert.
 Durcir, to harden.
 Eblouir, to dazzle.
 Eclaircir, to brighten.
 Elargir, to widen.
 Embellir, to embellish.
 Emplir, to fill.
 Encherir, to grow dearer.
 Endurcir, to harden.
 Enforcir, to grow strong.
 Enfouir, to bury.
 Enhardir, to embolden.
 Englouir, to swallow up.
 Engourdir, to benumb.
 Enlaidir, to grow ugly.
*s'*Enorgueillir, to grow proud.
 Enrichir, to enrich.
 Ensevelir, to put in a shroud.
 Envahir, to invade.
 Epaissir, to thicken.
 Epanouir, the bud opening.
 Equarrir, to square.
 Etablir, to establish.
 Etourdir, to stun.
 Etrécir, to narrow.
*s'*Evanouir, to faint.
 Farcir, to stuff.
 Fléchir, to bend, to move.
 Flétrir, to wither.
 Fleurir, to blossom, to flourish.
 Fourir, to dig.
 Fourbir, to furbish.
 Fournir, to supply.
 Franchir, to leap over.
 Frémir, to shudder.
se Froidir, to grow cold.
 Garantir, to warrant.
 Garnir, to furnish.
 Gémir, to groan.
 Grandir, to grow tall.
 Grossir, to grow big.
 Guérir, to cure.
 Hennir, to neigh.
 Investir, to invest.
 Jaillir, to spout out.
 Jaunir, to grow yellow.
 Jouir, to enjoy.
 Languir, to languish.
 Meurtrir, to bruise.
 Moisir, to grow mouldy.
 Mollir, to grow soft.
 Mugir, to low.
 Munir, to store.
 Mûrir, to ripen.
 Nantir, to give security.
 Noircir, to blacken.
 Nourrir, to feed.
 Obéir, to obey.
 Obscurcir, to obscure.
 Ourdir, to warp.
 Pâir, to grow pale.
 Parfournir, to take up.
 Pâtir, to suffer.
- Pervertir, to pervert.
 Pétrir, to knead.
 Polir, to polish.
 Pourir, to grow rotten.
 Prémunir, to provide.
 Punir, to punish.
 Raccourcir, to shorten.
 Racornir, to make tough.
 Radoucir, to soften.
 Raffermir, to strengthen a-
 gain.
 Rafraichir, to refresh.
 Ragrandir, to enlarge again.
 Rajeunir, to grow young
 again.
 Ralentir, to slacken.
 Ramolir, to moisten.
 Ramollir, to soften.
 Rancir, to grow rancid.
 Ravilir, to debase.
 Reblanchir, to whiten again.
 Ravir, to ravish, to delight.
 Rebâtir, to build again.
 Rebondir, to rebound.
 Réfléchir, to reflect.
 Refleurir, to blossom again.
 Refroidir, to cool.
 Régir, to rule, to govern.
 Rejaillir, to spurt up.
 Réjouir, to rejoice.
 Rembrunir, to darken.
 Remplir, to fill again.
 Renchérir, to grow dearer.
 Rendurcir, to make harder.
 Renhardir, to grow bold again.
 Répartir, to distribute equally.
 Repolir, to polish again.
 Résaisir, to seize again.
 Resplendir, to shine.
 Ressortir, to resort.
 Retentir, to resound.
 Rétrécir, to straiten.
 Reverdir, to grow green a-
 gain.
 Réunir, to reunite.
 Réussir, to succeed.
 Rôtir, to roast.
 Rougir, to blush.
 Rouir, to steep.
 Roussir, to make reddish.
 Rugir, to roar.
 Saillir, to gush out.
 Saisir, to seize.
 Salir, to soil.
 Sévir, to exercise severity.
 Subir, to undergo.
 Subvertir, to subvert.
se Tapir, to squat.
 Tarir, to drain.
 Ternir, to tarnish.
 Terrir, to land.
 Trahir, to betray.
 Transir, to chill.
 Travestir, to disguise.
 Unir, to unite.
 Verdir, to grow green.
 Vernir, to varnish.
 Vieillir, to grow old.
 Vomir, to vomit.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN IR.*

The *Irregular* verbs belonging to this conjugation are,

s' <i>Abstenir</i> , to abstain	-	like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Accourir</i> , to run to	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>Accueillir</i> , to welcome	- - -	like <i>cueillir</i> .
<i>Appartenir</i> , to belong	-	like <i>venir</i> .
AQUERIR, to acquire	- - -	page 108.
BOULLIR, to boil	- - -	page 109.
<i>Concourir</i> , to concur	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>Conquérir</i> , to conquer	- - -	like <i>aquerir</i> .
<i>Consentir</i> , to consent	- - -	like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Contenir</i> , to contain	- - -	} like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Contrevenir</i> to contravene	- - -	
<i>Convénir</i> , to agree	- - -	
COURIR, to run	- - -	page 110.
<i>Couvrir</i> , to cover	- - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
CUELLIR, to gather	- - -	page 111.
<i>Découvrir</i> , to discover	- - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
<i>Démentir</i> , to give the lie	- - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
se <i>Départir</i> , to give up	- - -	
<i>Désservir</i> , to take off the dishes	- - -	
<i>Detenir</i> , to detain.	- - -	} like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Devenir</i> , to become	- - -	
se <i>Dévêtir</i> , to undress	- - -	
<i>Disconvenir</i> , to disagree	- - -	like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Discourir</i> , to discourse	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep	- - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Endormir</i> , to lull asleep	- - -	
s' <i>Endormir</i> , to fall asleep	- - -	
<i>Encourir</i> , to incur	- - -	like <i>courir</i> .
s' <i>Enfuir</i> , to run away	- - -	like <i>fuir</i> .
<i>Entretenir</i> , to keep up	- - -	like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Entr'ouvrir</i> , to open a little	- - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
FUIR, to flee, to shun, to avoid	- - -	} page 112.
<i>Hair</i> , to hate †	- - -	
<i>Intervenir</i> , to intervene	- - -	
<i>Mainlenir</i> , to maintain	- - -	like <i>venir</i> .

* Several of these irregular verbs having a similarity in their conjugation, as, for example, the verbs in *tir*, which are all but two (*vêtir* and *revêtir*) conjugated like *SENTIR*, the verbs in *enir* which are conjugated like *VENIR*; I have conjugated only one verb of each termination, as a model for the others; and all the verbs which may be conjugated in the same manner as that verb are found under it.

† HAIR is regular only in the *first*, *second*, and *third* persons, singular of the *present* of the *indicative*, and in the *second* person singular of the *imperative*, where *ai* are pronounced in *one* syllable,

Je	<i>hais.</i>	I hate.	pronounce	<i>haye.</i>
Tu	<i>hais.</i>	Thou hatest.		<i>haye.</i>
Il	<i>hait.</i>	He hates.		<i>hay.</i>

in the other tenses and persons *ai* are pronounced in *two* distinct syllables, and the *i* is marked over with *two* dots,

Nous	<i>haïssons.</i>	We hate.	pronounce	<i>ha-isson.</i>
Vous	<i>haïssez.</i>	You hate.		<i>ha-issay.</i>
Ils	<i>haïssent.</i>	They hate.		<i>ha-iss.</i>
Je	<i>haïssais.</i>	I did hate.		<i>ha-issaye.</i>
Je	<i>hais.</i>	I hated.		<i>ha-ee.</i>
Je	<i>hairai.</i>	I shall hate.		<i>ha-eeray.</i>
Je	<i>hairais.</i>	I should hate, &c. like FIN IR.		

<i>Mentir</i> , to lie - - - -	like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>MOURIR</i> , to die - - - -	page 113.
<i>Obtenir</i> , to obtain - - - -	like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Offrir</i> , to offer - - - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
<i>OUVRIR</i> , to open - - - -	page 114.
<i>Parcourir</i> , to over-run - - - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>Partir</i> , to set out - - - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Pressentir</i> , to have a foresight - - - -	
<i>Parvenir</i> , to attain - - - -	} like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Prévenir</i> , to prevent - - - -	
<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed - - - -	
<i>Querir</i> , to fetch* - - - -	
<i>Recourir</i> , to have recourse to. - - - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>Recouvrir</i> , to cover again. - - - -	like <i>ouvrir</i> .
<i>Recueillir</i> , to collect. - - - -	like <i>cueillir</i> .
<i>Redevenir</i> , to become again. - - - -	like <i>venir</i> .
se <i>Rendormir</i> , to sleep again. - - - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Repartir</i> , to set out again. - - - -	
se <i>Repentir</i> , to repent. - - - -	} like <i>aquérir</i> .
<i>Requérir</i> , to require. - - - -	
<i>Ressentir</i> , to resent. - - - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Ressortir</i> , to go out again. - - - -	
<i>Ressouvenir</i> , to remember. - - - -	} like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Retenir</i> , to retain. - - - -	
<i>Revenir</i> , to return. - - - -	
<i>REJETIR</i> , to invest. - - - -	page 115.
<i>Secourir</i> , to succour. - - - -	like <i>courir</i> .
<i>SENTIR</i> , to feel, to smell. - - - -	page 116.
<i>Servir</i> , to serve, to use. - - - -	} like <i>sentir</i> .
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out. - - - -	
<i>Souffrir</i> , to suffer. - - - -	} like <i>ouvrir</i> .
<i>Soutenir</i> , to maintain. - - - -	
se <i>Souvenir</i> , to remember - - - -	} like <i>venir</i> .
<i>Subvenir</i> , to afford. - - - -	
<i>Survenir</i> , to befall. - - - -	
<i>Tenir</i> , to hold. - - - -	} page 117.
<i>TRESSAILLIR</i> , to start. - - - -	
<i>VENIR</i> , to come. - - - -	page 118.
<i>Vêtir</i> , to clothe. - - - -	like <i>revêtir</i> .

* Used only in the *infinitive* after *Aller* and *Envoyer*: as,
Aller querir, to go and fetch. *Envoyer querir*, to send for.

Infinitive.

To acquire,

*Aquerir.

Imperative.

Acquire.

Aquier, SING.

Aquer ez. PLUR.

Let us acquire.

Aquer ons.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

I acquire, or am
Thou acquirest, art
He acquires, or is
We } acquire,
You } are acqui-
They } ring.
I }
Thou } was acquiring.
He }
We }
You } were acquiring.
They }
I }
Thou } acquired,
He } did acquire.
We }
You }
They }
I }
Thou } shall, will
He } acquire,
We } be acquiring.
You }
They }
I }
Thou } should, would
He } acquire,
We } be acquiring.
You }
They }

J' *aquier.
Tu aquier.
Il aquier.26
Nous aquer ons.
Vous aquer ez.
Ils aquierent.18
J' *aquer ais.6.
Tu aquer ais.
Il aquer ait.26
Nous aquer ions.
Vous aquer iez.
Ils aquer aient.6.
J' *aquis.†
Tu aquis.
Il aquis.26
Nous aquismes.
Vous aquises.
Ils aquirent-
J' *aquer rais.5‡
Tu aquer ras.
Il aquer ra.
Nous aquer rons.
Vous aquer rez.
Ils aquer ront.26
J' *aquer rais.6‡
Tu aquer rais.
Il aquer rait.26
Nous aquer rions.
Vous aquer riez.
Ils aquer raient.6

J' *aquier.
Tu aquieres.
Il aquier.
Nous aquer ions.
Vous aquer iez.
Ils aquierent.18
J' *aquisse.2
Tu aquisse.
Il aquis.26
Nous aquissons.
Vous aquissez.
Ils aquisent.18

acquire, may acquire.
 acquired, might acquire.

Gerund.

Acquiring.

Aquer ant.

Participle.

Aquis. Acquired.

Conjugate in the same manner,

Requerir, to require, and Conquerir, to conquer.

N. B. Conquerir is used only in the infinitive, in the gerund Conquerant, in the participle Conquis, and in the perfect

<i>Je</i> conquis.	<i>I</i> conquered.	<i>Je</i> conquisse.	<i>might</i> <i>conquer.</i>
<i>Tu</i> conquis.	<i>Thou</i> conqueredst.	<i>Tu</i> conquisses.	
<i>Il</i> conquit.	<i>He</i> conquered.	<i>Il</i> conquit.	
<i>Nous</i> conquimes, &c.	<i>We</i> conquered.	<i>Nous</i> conquissions.	

* See *qu*, page 16.

† See note page 4.

‡ These two *rr* must be sounded distinctly ; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first *r*.

Infinitive.

To boil. *Bouillir.*

Imperative.

Boil. *Bous, sing.* *Bouill ez, plur.*
Let us boil. *Bouill ons.*

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

<i>I</i> boil, or am	<i>Je</i> 14bous26.	<i>Je</i> bouill e.	boil, may boil.
<i>Thou</i> boilest, art	<i>Tu</i> bous.	<i>Tu</i> bouill es.	
<i>He</i> boils, or is	<i>Il</i> bout26.	<i>Il</i> bouill e.	
<i>We</i> } boil, or	<i>Nous</i> bouill ons.	<i>Nous</i> bouill ions.	
<i>You</i> } are boiling.	<i>Vous</i> bouill ez.	<i>Vous</i> bouill iez.	
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils.</i> bouill ent18.	<i>Ils</i> bouill ent18.	
<i>I</i> } was boiling.	<i>Je</i> 14bouill ais6.		boiled, might boil.
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> bouill ais.		
<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> bouill ait26.		
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> bouill ions.		
<i>You</i> } were boiling.	<i>Vous</i> bouill iez.		
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> bouill aient6.		
<i>I</i> } boiled,	<i>Je</i> 14bouill is26.	<i>Je</i> bouill isse2.	
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> bouill is.	<i>Tu</i> bouill isses.	
<i>He</i> } did boil.	<i>Il</i> bouill it26.	<i>Il</i> bouill it26.	
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> bouill imes.	<i>Nous</i> bouill issions.	
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> bouill ites.	<i>Vous</i> bouill issiez.	
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> bouill irent18.	<i>Ils</i> bouill issent.	
<i>I</i> } shll, wll boil,	<i>Je</i> 14bouillir ai5.		
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> bouillir as.		
<i>He</i> } be boiling.	<i>Il</i> bouillir a.		
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> bouillir ons.		
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> bouillir ez.		
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> bouillir ont26.		
<i>I</i> } shd, wd boil,	<i>Je</i> 14bouillir ais6.		
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> bouillir ais.		
<i>He</i> } be boiling.	<i>Il</i> bouillir ait26.		
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> bouillir ions.		
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> bouillir iez.		
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> bouillir aient6.		

Gerund.

Participle.

Boiling. *Bouill ant.* *Bouill i.* *Boiled.*

N. B. *To Boil*, used in an *active* sense, *i. e.* followed by an *object*, is not expressed by *bouillir*, but by *faire bouillir* ; as,

<i>I</i> } boil, or	water, meat, &c.	<i>Je</i> fais	<i>bouillir</i>	{	<i>de l'eau.</i> <i>de la viande.</i>
<i>Thou</i> } am boiling,		<i>Tu</i> fais	<i>bouillir</i>		
<i>He</i> }		<i>Il</i> fait	<i>bouillir</i>		
<i>We</i> } boil, or are		<i>Nous</i> faisons	<i>bouillir</i>		
<i>You</i> } boiling,		<i>Vous</i> faites	<i>bouillir</i>		
<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> font	<i>bouillir</i>		

I have } boiled, or been boiling. *J'* ai } fait bouillir, &c.
Thou hast }

And so on, by adding the infinitive *bouillir* to the verb *faire*. See *Faire*.

Infinitive.

To run. 14Courir.

Imperative.

Run. Cour s, sing. Cour ez, plur.
 Let us run. Cour ons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present tense.	I run, or am	Je 3 14cour s26.	Je 14cour e.	run, may run.
	Thou runnest, art	Tu cour s.	Tu cour es.	
	He runs, or is	Il cour t26.	Il cour e.	
	We } run, or	Nous cour ons.	Nous cour ions.	
	You } are running.	Vous cour ez.	Vous cour iez.	
	They	Ils cour ent18.	Ils cour ent18.	
Imperfect tense.	I } was running.	Je 14cour ais6.		ran, might run.
	Thou }	Tu cour ais.		
	He }	Il cour ait26.		
	We } were running.	Nous cour ions.		
	You }	Vous cour iez.		
	They	Ils cour aient6.		
Perfect tense.	I } ran,	Je 14cour us26.	Je 14cour usse2.	
	Thou }	Tu cour us.	Tu cour usses.	
	He } did run.	Il cour ut26.	Il cour út26.	
	We }	Nous cour úmes.	Nous cour ussions.	
	You }	Vous cour útes.	Vous cour ussiez.	
	They	Ils cour urent18.	Ils cour ussent.	
Future positive.	I } shll, wll run,	Je 14cour rai5.*		
	Thou }	Tu cour ras.		
	He } be running.	Il cour ra.		
	We }	Nous cour rons.		
	You }	Vous cour rez.		
	They	Ils cour ront26.		
Fut. conditional.	I } shd, wd run,	Je 14cour rais6.*		
	Thou }	Tu cour rais.		
	He } be running.	Il cour rait26.		
	We }	Nous cour rions.		
	You }	Vous cour riez.		
	They	Ils cour raient6		

Gerund.

Participle.

Running. Cour ant.

Cour u. Run.

After the same manner as Courir, conjugate

Accourir. to run to.

Parcourir. to peruse, to overrun.

Concourir. to concur.

Recourir. { to run again, to have
recourse to.

Discourir. to discourse.

Secourir. to succour, to relieve.

Encourir. to incur.

N. B. The compound tenses of Accourir are formed with either Avoir or Etre ; as,

I have run,

J ai accouru, or

Je suis accouru.

Thou hast run,

Tu as accouru,

Tu es accouru.

He has run,

Il a accouru,

Il est accouru.

We have run, &c.

Nous avons accouru,

Nous sommes accourus, &c.

* These two rr must be sounded distinctly ; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first.

Infinitive.

To gather. Cueill*ir.

Imperative.

Gather. Cueill es, sing. Cueill ez, plur.
Let us gather. Cueill ons.

Indicative.

Present tense.
I gather, or am gathering. Je3 cueill*e.
Thou gatherest, art gathering. Tu cueill es2b.
He gathers, or is gathering. Il cueill e.
We } gather or are gathering. Nous cueill ons.
You } Vous cueill ez.
They } Ils cueill ent18.

Imperfect tense.
I } was gathering. Je cueill ais6.
Thou } Tu cueill ais.
He } Il cueill ait26.
We } Nous cueill ions.
You } were gathering. Vous cueill iez.
They } Ils cueill aient6.

Perfect tense.
I } gathered, Je cueill is26.
Thou } Tu cueill is.
He } Il cueill it26.
We } did gather. Nous cueill imes.
You } Vous cueill ites.
They } Ils cueill irent18.

Future positive.
I } Je cueill erai5.
Thou } Tu cueill eras.
He } shll, wll gather Il cueill era.
We } be gathering. Nous cueill erons.
You } Vous cueill erez.
They } Ils cueill eront26.

Fut. conditional.
I } Je cueill erais6.
Thou } Tu cueill erais.
He } shd, wd gather, Il cueill erait26.
We } be gathering. Nous cueill erions.
You } Vous cueill eriez.
They } Ils cueill eraient6.

Subjunctive.

Je cueill e.
Tu cueill es.
Il cueill e.
Nous cueill ions.
Vous cueill iez.
Ils cueill ent18.

Je3 cueill isse2.
Tu cueill isses.
Il cueill it26.
Nous cueill issions.
Vous cueill issiez.
Ils cueill issent.

gather, may gather.

gathered, might gather.

Gerund.

Gathering. Cueill ant.

Participle.

Cueill i. Gathered.

After the same manner as Cueillir are conjugated,
Accueillir, to welcome, and Recueillir, to receive, to collect.

N. B. Accueille is now rather obsolete, instead of it, we use Faire bon accueil ; as,
They welcomed us. Ils nous firent bon accueil.

To be welcome is, Etre bien venu ; as,
You are welcome.

Vous êtes bien venu.

* The nearest idea that I can give with letters, of the sound of Cueill, is *kheughl*.

*Infinitive.**To shun ; To flee.**Fu ir.**Imperative.**Shun.**Fu is, sing.**Fui ez, plur.**Let us shun.**Fui ons.**Indicative.*

Present tense.	<i>I shun, or am</i>	<i>Je</i> 3 <i>fu is</i> 26.
	<i>Thou shunnest, art</i>	<i>Tu</i> <i>fu is.</i>
	<i>He shuns, or is</i>	<i>Il</i> <i>fu it</i> 26.
	<i>We</i> { <i>shun, or</i>	<i>Nous</i> <i>fu yons.</i>
	<i>You</i> { <i>are shunning.</i>	<i>Vous</i> <i>fu yez.</i>
	<i>They</i>	<i> Ils</i> <i>fu ient</i> 18.
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> { <i>was shunning.</i>	<i>Je</i> 4 <i>fu yais</i> 6.
	<i>Thou</i> {	<i>Tu</i> <i>fu yais.</i>
	<i>He</i> {	<i>Il</i> <i>fu yait</i> 26.
	<i>We</i> { <i>were shunning.</i>	<i>Nous</i> <i>fu yions.</i>
	<i>You</i> {	<i>Vous</i> <i>fu yiez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }	<i> Ils</i> <i>fu yaient</i> 6.
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> {	<i>Je</i> <i>fu is</i> 26.
	<i>Thou</i> { <i>shunned,</i>	<i>Tu</i> <i>fu is.</i>
	<i>He</i> { <i>did shun.</i>	<i>Il</i> <i>fu it</i> 26.
	<i>We</i> {	<i>Nous</i> <i>fu îmes.</i>
	<i>You</i> {	<i>Vous</i> <i>fu îtes.</i>
	<i>They</i> }	<i> Ils</i> <i>fu irent</i> 18.
Future positive.	<i>I</i> {	<i>Je</i> <i>fuir ai</i> 5.
	<i>Thou</i> {	<i>Tu</i> <i>fuir as.</i>
	<i>He</i> { <i>shall, will shun,</i>	<i>Il</i> <i>fuir a.</i>
	<i>We</i> { <i>be shunning.</i>	<i>Nous</i> <i>fuir ons.</i>
	<i>You</i> {	<i>Vous</i> <i>fuir ez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }	<i> Ils</i> <i>fuir ont</i> 26.
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> {	<i>Je</i> <i>fuir ais</i> 6.
	<i>Thou</i> {	<i>Tu</i> <i>fuir ais.</i>
	<i>He</i> { <i>shd, wd shun,</i>	<i>Il</i> <i>fuir ait</i> 26.
	<i>We</i> { <i>be shunning.</i>	<i>Nous</i> <i>fuir ions.</i>
	<i>You</i> {	<i>Vous</i> <i>fuir iez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }	<i> Ils</i> <i>fuir aient</i> 6.

*Gerund.**Shunning.**Fuy ant* 26.*Participle.**Fu i. Shunned.**After the same manner is conjugated s'Enfuir, to run away ; thus,*

<i>I run, or am</i>	} <i>running away.</i>	<i>Je</i> <i>m' enfuis.</i>
		<i>Tu</i> <i>t' enfuis.</i>
		<i>Il</i> <i>s' enfuit</i> 26.
		<i>Nous</i> <i>nous enfuyons.</i>
		<i>Vous</i> <i>vous enfuyez.</i>
		<i> Ils</i> <i>s' enfuient</i> 18.

N. B. The compound tenses of *s'Enfuir* are formed with *Etre*, not *Avoir* ; as
I have run away. *Je me suis*
Thou hast run away. *Tu t' es* } *Enfui, &c.*
He has run away. *Il s' est*

*shun, may shun.**shunned, might shun.*

Infinitive.

To die.

Mour *ir.*

Imperative.

Die.

Meurs, *sing.*

Mour *ez, plur.*

Let us die.

Mour *ons.*

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> die, or <i>am</i>	dying.	<i>Je</i> 12meurs26.	<i>Je</i> meure.	<i>die, may die.</i>
	<i>Thou</i> diest, <i>art</i>		<i>Tu</i> meurs.	<i>Tu</i> meures.	
	<i>He</i> dies, or <i>is</i>		<i>Il</i> meurt26.	<i>Il</i> meure.	
	<i>We</i> } die, or		<i>Nous</i> mour <i>ons.</i>	<i>Nous</i> mour <i>ions.</i>	
Imperfect tense.	<i>You</i> } are dying.		<i>Vous</i> mour <i>ez.</i>	<i>Vous</i> mour <i>iez.</i>	<i>died, might die.</i>
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils.</i> meurent18.	<i>Ils</i> meurent.	
	<i>I</i> } was dying		<i>Je</i> 14mour <i>ais</i> 6.		
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> mour <i>ais.</i>		
Perfect tense.	<i>He</i> } did die.		<i>Il</i> mour <i>ait</i> 26.		<i>died, might die.</i>
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> mour <i>ions.</i>		
	<i>You</i> } were dying.		<i>Vous</i> mour <i>iez.</i>		
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> mour <i>aient</i> 6.		
Future positive.	<i>I</i> } shll, will die,		<i>Je</i> 14mour <i>us</i> 26.	<i>Je</i> mour <i>usse</i> 2.	<i>died, might die.</i>
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> mour <i>us.</i>	<i>Tu</i> mour <i>usses.</i>	
	<i>He</i> } be dying.		<i>Il</i> mour <i>ut</i> 26.	<i>Il</i> mour <i>ût</i> 26.	
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> mour <i>ûmes.</i>	<i>Nous</i> mour <i>ussions.</i>	
Fut. conditional.	<i>You</i> } shd, wd die,		<i>Vous</i> mour <i>ûtes.</i>	<i>Vous</i> mour <i>ussiez.</i>	<i>died, might die.</i>
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> mour <i>urent</i> 18.	<i>Ils</i> mour <i>ussent.</i>	
	<i>I</i> } shll, will die,		<i>Je</i> 14mour <i>rai</i> 5.*		
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> mour <i>ras.</i>		
Fut. conditional.	<i>He</i> } be dying.		<i>Il</i> mour <i>ra.</i>		<i>died, might die.</i>
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> mour <i>rons.</i>		
	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous</i> mour <i>rez.</i>		
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> mour <i>ront</i> 26.		
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } shd, wd die,		<i>Je</i> 14mour <i>rais</i> 6.*		<i>died, might die.</i>
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> mour <i>rais.</i>		
	<i>He</i> } be dying.		<i>Il</i> mour <i>rait</i> 26.		
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> mour <i>rions.</i>		
Fut. conditional.	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous</i> mour <i>riez.</i>		<i>died, might die.</i>
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> mour <i>raient</i> 6.		

Gerund.

Dying.

Mour *ant*26.

Participle.

Mort26.

Dead.

After the same manner as Mourir is conjugated se Mourir, to be dying;

<i>Je</i> me meurs.	<i>I</i> am	} dying away.
<i>Tu</i> te meurs.	<i>Thou</i> art	
<i>Il</i> se meurt.	<i>He</i> is	
<i>Nous</i> nous mour <i>ons.</i>	<i>We</i> are	
<i>Vous</i> vous mour <i>ez.</i>	<i>You</i> are	
<i>Ils</i> se meurent.	<i>They</i> are	

N. B. The compound tenses of Mourir are formed by adding Mort to the auxiliary Etre; as, He has died. Il est mort. They have died. Ils sont morts, &c.

* These two rr must be sounded distinctly; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first r.

*Infinitive.**To open.**Ouvr ir.**Imperative.**Open. Ouvr es, sing.**Ouvr ez, plur.**Let us open.**Ouvr ons.**Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense.
I open, or am opening.
Thou openest, art opening.
He opens, or is opening.
We { *open, or*
You { *are opening.*
They }

J' 14ouv r e.
Tu ouv r es.
Il ouv r e.
Nous ouv r ons.
Vous ouv r ez.
*Il s ouv r ent*18.

J' 14ouv r e.
Tu ouv r es.
Il ouv r e.
Nous ouv r ions.
Vous ouv r iez.
Il s ouv r ent.

open, may open.

Imperfect tense
I {
Thou { *was opening.*
He {
We {
You { *were opening.*
They }

*J' 14ouv r ais*6.
Tu ouv r ais.
*Il ouv r ait*26.
Nous ouv r ions.
Vous ouv r iez.
*Il s ouv r aient*6.

Perfect tense
I {
Thou {
He { *opened,*
We { *did open.*
You {
They }

*J' 14ouv r is*26.
Tu ouv r is.
*Il ouv r it*26.
Nous ouv r imes.
Vous ouv r ites.
*Il s ouv r irent*18.

*J' 14ouv r isse*2.
Tu ouv r isses.
*Il ouv r it*26.
Nous ouv r issions.
Vous ouv r issiez.
Il s ouv r issent.

opened, might open.

Future positive.
I {
Thou {
He { *shall, will open,*
We { *be opening.*
You {
They }

*J' 14ouv r ir ai*5.
Tu ouv r ir as.
Il ouv r ir a.
Nous ouv r ir ons.
Vous ouv r ir ez.
*Il s ouv r ir ont*26.

Ful. conditional.
I {
Thou {
He { *shd, wd open,*
We { *be opening.*
You {
They }

*J' 14ouv r ir ais*6.
Tu ouv r ir ais.
*Il ouv r ir ait*26.
Nous ouv r ir ions.
Vous ouv r ir iez.
*Il s ouv r ir aient*6.

*Gerund.**Participle.**Opening.**Ouvr ant*26.*Ouvert*26.*Opened.**After the same manner as Ouvrir, are conjugated**Entr'ouvrir, to open a little.**Recouvrir, to cover again.**Couvrir, to cover.**Offrir, to offer.**Découvrir, to discover.**Souffrir, to suffer.*

Infinitive.

*To invest with.**

Revêt ir.

Imperative.

Invest. Revêt s, sing.
Let us invest.

Revêt ez, plur.
Revêt ons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present tense.
I invest, or am investing. Je3 revêt s26.
Thou investest, art investing. Tu revêt s.
He invests, or is investing. Il revêt 26.
We } invest, are investing. Nous revêt ons.
You } Vous revêt ez.
They } Ils revêt ent18.

Imperfect tense.
I } was investing. Je revêt ais6.
Thou } Tu revêt ais.
He } Il revêt ait26.
We } Nous revêt ions.
You } were investing. Vous revêt iez.
They } Ils revêt aient6.

Perfect tense.
I } invested, did invest. Je revêt is26.
Thou } Tu revêt is.
He } Il revêt it26.
We } Nous revêt imes.
You } Vous revêt îtes.
They } Ils revêt irent18.

Future positive.
I } Je revêtir ai5.
Thou } Tu revêtir as.
He } shll, wll invest, be investing. Il revêtir a.
We } Nous revêtir ons.
You } Vous revêtir ez.
They } Ils revêtir ont26.

Fut. conditional.
I } Je revêtir ais26.
Thou } Tu revêtir ais.
He } shd, wd invest, be investing. Il revêtir ait.
We } Nous revêtir ions.
You } Vous revêtir iez.
They } Ils revêtir aient6.

invest, may invest.

invested, might invest.

Gerund.

Participle.

Investing. Revêt ant26.

Revêt u. Invested.

After the same manner as Revêtir, are conjugated

Vêtir, to clothe; and Dêvêtir, to undress;

but these two verbs are seldom used, except in the infinitive *Vêtir, Dêvêtir*, and in the participle *Vêtu, clothed*; instead of the former, we make use of *Habiller, to clothe, to dress*; and instead of the latter, we use *Dêshabiller, to undress*.

* To invest with honours, dignities, &c. but not to surround.

Infinitive.

To feel; To smell. Sent *ir.*

Imperative.

Feel. Sens, *sing.* Sent *ez, plur.*
Let us feel. Sent *ons.*

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense.	<i>I</i> feel, or <i>am</i>	<i>Je</i> 3 16sens26.	<i>Je</i> sent <i>e</i> 2.	feel, may feel.
	<i>Thou</i> feelest, <i>art</i>	<i>Tu</i> sens.	<i>Tu</i> sent <i>es.</i>	
	<i>He</i> feels, or <i>is</i>	<i>Il</i> sent26.	<i>Il</i> sent <i>e.</i>	
	<i>We</i> } feel,	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>ons.</i>	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>ions.</i>	
	<i>You</i> } are feeling.	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>ez.</i>	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>iez.</i>	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> sent <i>ent</i> 18.	<i>Ils</i> sent <i>ent</i> 18.	
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> sent <i>ais</i> 6.		felt, might feel.
	<i>Thou</i> } was feeling.	<i>Tu</i> sent <i>ais.</i>		
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> sent <i>ait</i> 26.		
	<i>We</i> } were feeling.	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>ions.</i>		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>iez.</i>		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> sent <i>aient</i> 6.		
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> 3 sent <i>is</i> 26.	<i>Je</i> sent <i>isse</i> 2.	felt, might feel.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> sent <i>is.</i>	<i>Tu</i> sent <i>isses.</i>	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> sent <i>it</i> 26.	<i>Il</i> sent <i>it</i> 26.	
	<i>We</i> } felt, did feel.	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>imes.</i>	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>issions</i>	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>ites.</i>	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>issiez.</i>	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> sent <i>irent</i> 18.	<i>Ils</i> sent <i>issent.</i>	
Future positive.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> sentir <i>ai</i> 5.		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> sentir <i>as.</i>		
	<i>He</i> } shll, wll feel,	<i>Il</i> sentir <i>a.</i>		
	<i>We</i> } be feeling.	<i>Nous</i> sentir <i>ons.</i>		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> sentir <i>ez.</i>		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> sentir <i>ont</i> 26.		
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> sentir <i>ais</i> 6.		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> sentir <i>ais.</i>		
	<i>He</i> } shd, wd feel,	<i>Il</i> sentir <i>ait.</i>		
	<i>We</i> } be feeling.	<i>Nous</i> sentir <i>ions.</i>		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> sentir <i>iez.</i>		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> sentir <i>aient</i> 6.		

*Gerund.**Participle.*

Feeling. Sent *ant*26. Sent *i.* Felt.

After the same manner as Sentir are conjugated

Consentir, to consent.	Partir, to set out; to depart.
Démentir, to give the lie.	Préssentir, to have a foresight.
Se départir, to give up.	Repartir, to set out again; to reply.
Desservir, to take off the dishes;	Se repentir, to repent.
Dormir, to sleep. [to do an ill office.	Ressentir, to resent.
Endormir, to lull asleep.	Ressortir, to go out again.
s'Endormir, to fall asleep.	Servir, to serve; se servir to use.*
Mentir, to lie; to tell a lie.	Sortir, to go out.

* Observe that the *third person singular* of the *present tense* of *Servir*, is *sert*, not *serv*.

Infinitive.

To leap for joy.
To start out of fear. } Tressaillir de joie, de peur.*

Imperative.

Start. Tressaill es, sing. Tressaill ez, plur.
 Let us start. Tressaill ons.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense.	<i>I start, or am</i>	<i>Je</i> 3	tressaill e.†	<i>Je</i>	tressaill e.	<i>may start.</i>
	<i>Thou startest, art</i>	<i>Tu</i>	tressaill es.	<i>Tu</i>	tressaill es.	
	<i>He starts, or is</i>	<i>Il</i>	tressaill e.	<i>Il</i>	tressaill e.	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i>	tressaill ons.	<i>Nous</i>	tressaill ions.	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i>	tressaill ez.	<i>Vous</i>	tressaill iez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	tressaill ent18.	<i>Ils</i>	tressaill ent.	
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i>	tressaill ais.6			
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	tressaill ais.			
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i>	tressaill ait.26.			
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i>	tressaill ions.			
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i>	tressaill iez.			
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	tressaill aient6.			
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i>	tressaill is26.	<i>Je</i>	tressaill isse2.	<i>might start.</i>
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	tressaill is.	<i>Tu</i>	tressaill isses.	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i>	tressaill it26.	<i>Il</i>	tressaill it.	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i>	tressaill îmes.	<i>Nous</i>	tressaill issions.	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i>	tressaill îtes.	<i>Vous</i>	tressaill issicz.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	tressaill îrent18.	<i>Ils</i>	tressaill issent.	
Future positive.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i>	tressaillir ai5.			
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	tressaillir as.			
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i>	tressaillir a.			
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i>	tressaillir ons.			
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i>	tressaillir ez.			
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	tressaillir ont26.			
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i>	tressaillir ais6.			
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	tressaillir ais.			
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i>	tressaillir ait26.			
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i>	tressaillir ions.			
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i>	tressaillir iez.			
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	tressaillir aient6.			

*Gerund.**Participle.*

Starting. Tressaill ant26. Tressaill i. Started.

After the same manner as Tressaillir are conjugated

Assaillir, to assault, but it is not used in the first, second, and third persons singular of the present tense, and is seldom used, except in the infinitive Assaillir, and in the participle Assailli, assaulted.

Saillir, to jet out, used only in the infinitive Saillir, in the gerund Saillant, in the participle Sailli, and in the third person of each tense.

* Tressaillir is seldom used without the words *joie*, joy ; or *peur*, fear.

† See *Il* preceded by *i*, page 14.

*To come.**Ven ir.**Imperative.**Come.**Viens, sing.**Ven ez, plur.**Let us come.**Ven ons.**Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense.
I come, or *am*
Thou comest, *art*
He comes, or *is*
We }
You } come, or
They } are coming.

coming.
*Je*3 viens23.
Tu viens.
Il vient26.
Nous ven ons.
Vous ven ez.
Ils viennent18.

*Je*3 vienne2.
Tu viennes.
Il vienne.
Nous ven ions.
Vous ven iez.
Ils viennent.

come, may come.

Imperfect tense.
I }
Thou } was coming.
He }
We }
You } were coming.
They }

*Je*3 ven ais6.
Tu ven ais.
Il ven ait26.
Nous ven ions.
Vous ven iez.
Ils ven aient6.

Perfect tense.
I }
Thou }
He } came, or
We } did come.
You }
They }

Je 19vins26.
Tu vins.
Il vint26.
Nous vinmes.
Vous vintes.
Ils vinrent18.

*Je*3 vinsse2.
Tu vinsses.
Il vint26.
Nous vinssions.
Vous vinssiez.
Ils vinssent18.

came, might come.

Future positive.
I }
Thou }
He } shll, will come,
We } or be coming.
You }
They }

*Je*3 viendrai5.
Tu viendras.
Il viendra.
Nous viendrons.
Vous viendrez.
Ils viendront26.

Fut. conditional.
I }
Thou }
He } shd, wd come,
We } or be coming.
You }
They }

*Je*3 viendrais.
Tu viendrais.
Il viendrait26.
Nous viendrions.
Vous viendriez.
Ils viendraient6.

*Coming.**Ven ant*26.*Ven u.**Come.**After the same manner as Venir are conjugated,**s'Abstenir, to abstain.**Obtenir, to obtain.**Appartenir, to belong.**Parvenir, to attain, to arrive.**Convenir, to agree, to become.**Prévenir, to prevent, to anticipate.**Contrevenir, to contravene.**Provenir, to proceed.**Contenir, to contain.**Revenir, to come again, to return.**Disconvenir, to disagree, to disown.**Retenir, to retain, to keep.**Détenir, to detain.**Soutenir, to maintain.**Devenir, to become.**se Souvenir, to remember.**Entretenir, to keep up.**Subvenir, to afford.**Intervenir, to intervene.**Survenir, to befall, to happen.**Maintenir, to maintain.**Tenir, to hold.*

N. B. The compound tenses of *Venir*, *Convenir*, *Devenir*, *Disconvenir*, *Parvenir*, *Provenir*, *Revenir*, and *Survenir*, are formed with the auxiliary *Etre*, not *Avoir*, as, I have agreed, *Je suis convenu*; not *J'ai conveuu*.

A TABLE

Showing how to conjugate all the verbs in IR, both regular and irregular.

Infir.			Bouillir.			Cueillir.		
Fin ir.	issant,	Part. i.	Infir.	Ger. ant,	Part. i.	Infir.	Ger. ant,	Part. i.
Indic.	Imper.	Subj.	Indic.	Imp.	Subj.	Indic.	Imp.	Subj.
<i>Je fin</i> <i>Pres. tense.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>is</i> <i>is</i> <i>it</i> <i>issons</i> <i>issez</i> <i>issent.</i>	<i>isse</i> <i>isses</i> <i>isse</i> <i>issions</i> <i>issiez</i> <i>issent.</i>	<i>bous</i> <i>bous</i> <i>bout</i> <i>ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>ent.</i>	<i>e</i> <i>bous</i> <i>e</i> <i>ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>ent.</i>	<i>es</i> <i>es</i> <i>e</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>ent.</i>	<i>e</i> <i>es</i> <i>e</i> <i>ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>ent.</i>	<i>e</i> <i>es</i> <i>e</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>ent.</i>	<i>e</i> <i>es</i> <i>e</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>ent.</i>
<i>Je</i> <i>Imp. tense.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>issais</i> <i>issais</i> <i>issait</i> <i>issions</i> <i>issiez</i> <i>issaient.</i>		<i>ais</i> <i>ais</i> <i>ait</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>aient.</i>			<i>ais</i> <i>ais</i> <i>ait</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>aient.</i>		
<i>Je</i> <i>Perf. tense.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>is</i> <i>is</i> <i>it</i> <i>imes</i> <i>ites</i> <i>irent.</i>	<i>isse</i> <i>isses</i> <i>ît</i> <i>issions</i> <i>issiez</i> <i>issent.</i>	<i>is</i> <i>is</i> <i>it</i> <i>imes</i> <i>ites</i> <i>irent.</i>	<i>isse</i> <i>isses</i> <i>ît</i> <i>issions</i> <i>issiez</i> <i>issent.</i>		<i>is</i> <i>is</i> <i>it</i> <i>imes</i> <i>ites</i> <i>irent.</i>	<i>isse</i> <i>isses</i> <i>ît</i> <i>issions</i> <i>issiez</i> <i>issent.</i>	
<i>Je finir</i> <i>Fut. poss.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>ai</i> <i>as</i> <i>a</i> <i>ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>ont.</i>		<i>ai</i> <i>as</i> <i>a</i> <i>ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>ont.</i>			<i>erai</i> <i>eras</i> <i>era</i> <i>erons</i> <i>erez</i> <i>eront.</i>		
<i>Je</i> <i>Fut. condit.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>ais</i> <i>ais</i> <i>ait</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>aient.</i>	Like <i>Finir</i> , conjugate all the verbs in <i>ir</i> , the following ex- cepted.	<i>ais</i> <i>ais</i> <i>ait</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>aient.</i>			<i>erais</i> <i>erais</i> <i>erait</i> <i>erions</i> <i>eriez</i> <i>eraient.</i>	<i>Accueillir</i> , <i>Recueillir.</i>	
<i>Aquérir.</i> <i>Pres. tense.</i> <i>J'</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>ir.</i> <i>aquiers</i> <i>aquiers</i> <i>aquiert</i> <i>ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>aquièrement.</i>	<i>ant,</i> <i>aquiers</i> <i>aquiers</i> <i>aquière</i> <i>ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>aquièrement.</i>	<i>Courir.</i> <i>Pres. tense.</i> <i>J'</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>ir.</i> <i>s</i> <i>s</i> <i>t</i> <i>ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>ent.</i>	<i>ant, u.</i> <i>e</i> <i>es</i> <i>e</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>ent.</i>	<i>Fuir.</i> <i>Pres. tense.</i> <i>J'</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>ir.</i> <i>is</i> <i>is</i> <i>it</i> <i>yons</i> <i>yez</i> <i>ient.</i>	<i>yant, i.</i> <i>ie</i> <i>ies</i> <i>ie</i> <i>yions</i> <i>yez</i> <i>ient.</i>
<i>J'aquérir</i> <i>Imp. tense.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>ais</i> <i>ais</i> <i>ait</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>aient.</i>		<i>J'aquérir</i> <i>Imp. tense.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>ais</i> <i>ais</i> <i>ait</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>aient.</i>		<i>J'aquérir</i> <i>Imp. tense.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>yais</i> <i>yais</i> <i>yait</i> <i>yions</i> <i>yez</i> <i>yaient.</i>	
<i>J'</i> <i>Perf. tense.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>aquis</i> <i>aquis</i> <i>aquit</i> <i>aquimes</i> <i>aquites</i> <i>aquirent.</i>	<i>acquise</i> <i>acquises</i> <i>aquit</i> <i>acquissions</i> <i>acquissiez</i> <i>acquissent.</i>	<i>J'</i> <i>Perf. tense.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>us</i> <i>us</i> <i>ut</i> <i>ûmes</i> <i>ûtes</i> <i>urent.</i>	<i>usse</i> <i>usses</i> <i>ût</i> <i>ussions</i> <i>ussiez</i> <i>ussent.</i>	<i>J'</i> <i>Perf. tense.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>is</i> <i>is</i> <i>it</i> <i>îmes</i> <i>îtes</i> <i>irent.</i>	<i>isse</i> <i>isses</i> <i>ît</i> <i>issions</i> <i>issiez</i> <i>issent.</i>
<i>J'aquérir</i> <i>Fut. poss.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>rai</i> <i>ras</i> <i>ra</i> <i>rons</i> <i>rez</i> <i>ront.</i>		<i>J'aquérir</i> <i>Fut. poss.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>rai</i> <i>ras</i> <i>ra</i> <i>rons</i> <i>rez</i> <i>ront.</i>		<i>J'aquérir</i> <i>Fut. poss.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>ai</i> <i>as</i> <i>a</i> <i>ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>ont.</i>	
<i>J'</i> <i>Fut. condit.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>rais</i> <i>rais</i> <i>rait</i> <i>rions</i> <i>riez</i> <i>raient.</i>		<i>J'</i> <i>Fut. condit.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>rais</i> <i>rais</i> <i>rait</i> <i>rions</i> <i>riez</i> <i>raient.</i>		<i>J'aquérir</i> <i>Fut. poss.</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>Il</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>Ils</i>	<i>ais</i> <i>ais</i> <i>ait</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>aient.</i>	

In the same manner conjugate *Conquerir*, *Requerir*.

Like *Courir* conjugate
Accourir, *Concourir*, *Dis-*
courir, *Encourir*, *Parcou-*
rir, *Recourir*, *Secourir*.

Like *Fuir* conjugate
Enfuir, to run away.

A TABLE

Showing how to conjugate all the verbs in IR, both regular and irregular.

	Infin.	Ger.	Part.		Infin.	Ger.	Part.		Infin.	Ger.	Part.
	<i>ir, ant.</i>		<i>mort.</i>		<i>ir, ant, u.</i>		<i>u.</i>		<i>ir, ant, i.</i>		<i>i.</i>
	Indic.	Imper.	Subj.		Indic.	Imp.	Subj.		Tres- Indic.	Imp.	Subj.
<i>Je</i>	meurs		meure		Revêt s	e			Tressail e	e	
<i>Tu</i>	meurs	meurs	meures		s	s	es		es	es	es
<i>Il</i>	meurt		meure.		revet	e			e	e	
<i>Nous</i>	mour	ons	ions		ons	ons	ions		ons	ons	ions
<i>Vous</i>	ez	ez	iez		ez	ez	iez		ez	ez	iez
<i>Ils</i>	meurent.		meurent.		ent.		ent.		ent.		ent.
<i>Je</i>	ais				Revêt ais				ais		
<i>Tu</i>	ais				ais				ais		
<i>Il</i>	ait				ait				ait		
<i>Nous</i>	ions				ions				ions		
<i>Vous</i>	iez				iez				iez		
<i>Ils</i>	aient.				aient.				aient.		
<i>Je</i>	us		usse		is		isse		is		isse
<i>Tu</i>	us		usses		is		isses		is		isses
<i>Il</i>	ut		ût		it		ît		it		ît
<i>Nous</i>	ûmes		ussions		îmes		issions		îmes		issions
<i>Vous</i>	ûtes		ussiez		îtes		issiez		îtes		issiez
<i>Ils</i>	urent.		ussent.		îrent.		issent.		îrent.		issent.
<i>Je</i>	mourrai				Revêtir ai				Tres- saillir ai		
<i>Tu</i>	ras				as				as		
<i>Il</i>	ra				a				a		
<i>Nous</i>	rons				ons				ons		
<i>Vous</i>	rez				ez				ez		
<i>Ils</i>	ront.				ont.				ont.		
<i>Je</i>	rais				ais				ais		
<i>Tu</i>	rais				ais				ais		
<i>Il</i>	rait				ait				ait		
<i>Nous</i>	rions				ions				ions		
<i>Vous</i>	riez				iez				iez		
<i>Ils</i>	raient.		se Mourir.		aient.		Vêtir, se Dêvêtir.		aient.		Assaillir, Saillir.
<i>Ouvr</i>	<i>ir, ant,</i>		<i>ouvert.</i>		<i>Sent ir, ant, i.</i>				<i>Ven ir, ant, u.</i>		
<i>J'</i>	e		e		sens	e			viens		vienne
<i>Tu</i>	es	es	es		sens	sens	es		viens		viennes
<i>Il</i>	e		e		sent	e			vient		vienne
<i>Nous</i>	ons	ons	ions		Sent ons	ons	ions		Ven ons	ons	ions
<i>Vous</i>	ez	ez	iez		ez	ez	iez		ez	ez	iez
<i>Ils</i>	ent.		ent.		ent.		ent.		viennent.		viennent.
<i>J'</i>	ais				ais				ais		
<i>Tu</i>	ais				ais				ais		
<i>Il</i>	ait				ait				ait		
<i>Nous</i>	ions				ions				ions		
<i>Vous</i>	iez				iez				iez		
<i>Ils</i>	aient.				aient.				aient.		
<i>J'</i>	is		isse		is		isse		vins		vinisse
<i>Tu</i>	is		isses		is		isses		vins		vinsses
<i>Il</i>	it		ît		it		ît		vint		vint
<i>Nous</i>	îmes		issions		îmes		issions		vinmes		vinssions
<i>Vous</i>	îtes		issiez		îtes		issiez		vintes		vinssiez
<i>Ils</i>	îrent.		issent.		îrent.		issent.		vinrent.		vinssent.
<i>J'</i>	ouvrir ai				Sentir ai				viendrai		
<i>Tu</i>	as				as				viendras		
<i>Il</i>	a				a				viendra		
<i>Nous</i>	ons				ons				viendrons		
<i>Vous</i>	ez				ez				viendrez		
<i>Ils</i>	ont.				ont.				viendront.		
<i>J'</i>	ais				ais				viendrai		
<i>Tu</i>	ais				ais				viendrais		
<i>Il</i>	ait				ait				viendrait		
<i>Nous</i>	ions				ions				viendrions		
<i>Vous</i>	iez				iez				viendriez		
<i>Ils</i>	aient.				aient.				viendraient.		

In the same manner conjugate *Entr'ouvrir, Couvrir, Découvrir, Recouvrir, Offrir, Souffrir.*

Consentir, Présentir, Ressentir, Mentir, Démentir, Partir, Repartir, se Départir, Sortir, Ressortir, se Repentir, Servir, Desservir, Dormir, Endormir, s'Endormir.

Convenir, Contrevenir, Devenir, Disconvenir, Intervenir, Parvenir, Prévenir, Provenir, Revenir, se Souvenir, Subvenir, Survenir, Tenir, s'Abstenir, Appartenir, Contenir, Détenir, Entretenir, Maintenir, Obtenir, Retenir, Soutenir.

Infinitive.

To owe.

Dev oir.

Imperative.

Owe.

Dois, sing.

Dev ez, plur.

Let us owe.

Dev ons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> owe.	<i>Je</i> 23	dois26.
	<i>Thou</i> owest.	<i>Tu</i>	dois.
	<i>He</i> owes.	<i>Il</i>	doit26.
	<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	dev ons.
	<i>You</i> } owe,	<i>Vous</i>	dev ez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	doivent18.
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i> 3	dev ais6.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	dev ais.
	<i>He</i> } did owe.	<i>Il</i>	dev ait26.
	<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	dev ions.
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	dev iez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	dev aient6.
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	dus.†
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	dus.
	<i>He</i> } owed.	<i>Il</i>	dut26.
	<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	dûmes.
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	dûtes.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	durent18.
Future positive.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	dev rai5.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	dev ras.
	<i>He</i> } shall, will	<i>Il</i>	dev ra.
	<i>We</i> } owe.	<i>Nous</i>	dev rons.
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	dev rez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	dev ront26.
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	dev rais6.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i>	dev rais.
	<i>He</i> } shd, wd owe.	<i>Il</i>	dev rait26.
	<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	dev rions.
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	dev riez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i>	dev raient6.

owe, may owe.

owed, might owe.

Gerund.

Participle.

Owing.

Dev ant 26.

Dû.

owed.

<i>Interrogatively.</i>		<i>Negatively.</i>		I do not owe.	<i>Interrogatively and Negative.</i>	
Dois-je ?	do I owe ?	Je	ne dois		Ne dois-je	do I not owe ?
Dois-tu ?		Tu	ne dois		Ne dois-tu	
Doit-il ?		Il	ne doit		Ne doit-il	
Devons-nous ?		Nous	ne devons		Ne devons-nous	
Devez-vous ?		Vous	ne devez		Ne devez-vous	
Doivent-ils ?		Ils	ne doivent		Ne doivent-ils	

After the same manner as Devoir are conjugated,

Apercevoir, }	to perceive.	Percevoir, (a law term) to receive.
s' Apercevoir, }		Recevoir, to receive.
Concevoir,	to conceive.	Redevoir, to owe still.

* See N. B. under *devoir*, page 97.

† See note 2, page 1.

The IRREGULAR verbs belonging to this conjugation are

ASSEOIR, } to sit down; page 123.	PREVOIR, to foresee; ----- page 126.
s'ASSEOIR, } to sit down; -----	Prévaloir, to prevail; ----- } see Valoir.
Choir, to fall -----	se Prévaloir to avail oneself; } -----
Déchoir, to decay ----- *	Revaloir, return like for like; - like Valoir.
Echoir, to expire, to be out. - }	Rasseoir, } to sit down } --- like Asseoir.
Ennouvoir, to stir up. ----- like Monvoir.	se Rasseoir, } again; } -----
Entrevoir, to have a glimpse; like Voir.	Revoir, to see again; ----- like Voir.
Equivaloir, to be equivalent; - like Valoir.	Savoir, to know; ----- page 127.
Falloir, must; to be necessary. †	Scoir, to fit, to suit, to become; †
MOUVOIR, to move; ----- page 124.	Surseoir, to supersede; ----- see Prevoir.
Pleuvr, to rain; ----- †	VALOIR, to be worth; ----- page 128.
Pourvoir, to provide; ----- see Prevoir.	VOIR, to see; ----- page 129.
POUVOIR, to be able; ----- page 125.	VOULOIR, to will, to be willing; page 130.

* These three verbs are now hardly ever used, but are found in many ancient writings; they are conjugated thus:

Infinitive.		Participle.	
Ch oir.	To fall.	Ch u.	Fallen. No other tenses.
Dech oir.	To decay.	Dechu u.	Decayed.
Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Je déchois.	I decay, or am	Je déchoie.	I
Tu déchois.	Thou decayest, art	Tu déchoies.	Thou
Il déchoit.	He decays, or is	Il déchoie.	He
Nous déchoyons.	We	Nous déchoyions.	We
Vous déchoyez.	You	Vous déchoyiez.	You
Ils déchoient.	They	Ils déchoient.	They
Je déchus.	I	Je déchusse.	I
Tu déchus.	Thou	Tu déchusses.	Thou
Il déchut.	He	Il déchût.	He
Nous déchûmes.	We	Nous déchussions.	We
Vous déchûtes.	You	Vous déchussiez.	You
Ils déchûrent.	They	Ils déchussent.	They
Je décherrai.	I		
Tu décherras.	Thou		
Il décherra.	He		
Nous décherrons.	We		
Vous décherrez.	You		
Ils décherront.	They		
Je décherrois.	I		
Tu décherrois.	Thou		
Il décherroit.	He		
Nous décherrions.	We		
Vous décheriez.	You		
Ils décherroient.	They		

Infinitive.

Echoir. To expire; speaking of the end of a term; as,
The rent is due, the time is expired. La rente est due, le terme est échu.

Indicative.

Pres. Il échoit.	It expires.
Perf. Il échut.	It expired.
Fut. Il écherra.	It will expire.
Con. Il écheroit.	It would expire.

Subjunctive.

Il échoie.	It may expire.
Il échût.	It might expire.

Gerund.

Eche ant. Expiring.

Participle.

Ech u. Expired.

† FALLOIR, PLEUVOIR, see the Impersonal Verbs, page 160, 162.

† SBOIR, To fit, to suit, to become, has only the third person of each tense in use.

Il siéd.	It fits.	Il seioit.	It fitted.
Ils siënt.	They fit.	Ils seioient.	They fitted.
Il siëra.	It will fit.	Il siërait.	It would fit.
Ils siëront.	They will fit.	Ils siëraient.	They would fit.

Infinitive.

To sit down.

s' Assé oir.

Imperative.

Sit down. Assieds-toi, *sing.*

Assé iez-vous, *plur.*

Let us sit down.

Assé ions-nous.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

<i>Present tense.</i>	<i>I sit, or am</i>	<i>sitting</i>	<i>Je</i> 3	m' 23	assieds 26.	<i>Je</i>	m'	assé ie 2.	<i>may sit down.</i>
	<i>Thou sittest, art</i>	<i>sitting</i>	<i>Tu</i>	t'	assieds.	<i>Tu</i>	t'	assé ies.	
	<i>He sits, or is</i>	<i>sitting</i>	<i>Il</i>	s'	assied 26.	<i>Il</i>	s'	assé ie.	
	<i>We</i>	sit, are sitting down.	<i>Nous</i>	nous	assé ions.	<i>Nous</i>	nous	assé yons.	
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	vous	assé iez.	<i>Vous</i>	vous	assé yez.	
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	s'	assé ient 18.	<i>Ils</i>	s'	assé ient.	
<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>I</i>	was sitting down.	<i>Je</i>	m'	asséiais 6.				<i>might sit down.</i>
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	t'	asséiais.				
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	s'	asséiait 26.				
	<i>We</i>	were sitting down.	<i>Nous</i>	nous	assé yons 4.				
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	vous	assé yez.				
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	s'	asséiaient 6.				
<i>Perfect tense.</i>	<i>I</i>	sat, did sit down.	<i>Je</i>	m'	assis 26.	<i>Je</i>	m'	assisse 2.	<i>might sit down.</i>
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	t'	assis.	<i>Tu</i>	t'	assissses.	
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	s'	assit 26.	<i>Il</i>	s'	assit 26.	
	<i>We</i>	sat down.	<i>Nous</i>	nous	assimes.	<i>Nous</i>	nous	assissions.	
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	vous	assîtes.	<i>Vous</i>	vous	assissiez.	
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	s'	assirent 18.	<i>Ils</i>	s'	assissent.	
<i>Future positive.</i>	<i>I</i>	shll, wll sit, be sitting dn.	<i>Je</i>	m'	asseirai 5.				
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	t'	asseiras.				
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	s'	asseira.				
	<i>We</i>	be sitting dn.	<i>Nous</i>	nous	asseirons.				
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	vous	asseirez.				
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	s'	asseiront 26.				
<i>Fut. conditional.</i>	<i>I</i>	shd, wd sit, be sitting dn.	<i>Je</i>	m'	asseirais 6.				
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	t'	asseirais.				
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	s'	asseirait 26.				
	<i>We</i>	be sitting dn.	<i>Nous</i>	nous	asseirions.				
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	vous	asseiriez.				
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	s'	asseiraient 6.				

Gerund.

Sitting down. s' Assé yant 26.

Participle.

Assis. sat down.

Interrogatively.

Negatively.

Interrogatively and Negativ.

M' assieds-je ?	<i>do I sit?</i>	<i>Je</i>	ne m'	assieds	} pas.	<i>I do not</i>	ne m'	assieds-je	} pas ?
T' assieds-tu ?		<i>Tu</i>	ne t'	assieds			ne t'	assieds-tu	
S' assied-il ?		<i>Il</i>	ne s'	assied			ne s'	assied-il	

Compound tenses formed by adding assis to the auxiliary être.

<i>I have</i>	} sat down.	<i>Je</i>	me	suis	} assis.	<i>Je</i>	me	sois	} assis.	<i>may have sat.</i>
<i>Thou hast</i>		<i>Tu</i>	t'	es		<i>Tu</i>	te	sois		
<i>He has</i>		<i>Il</i>	s'	est		<i>Il</i>	se	soit		
<i>We have</i>		<i>Nous</i>	nous	sommes		<i>Nous</i>	nous	soyons		

In the same manner, conjugate Rasseoir, se Rasseoir, to sit down again.

Infinitive.

To move.

Mouv oir.*

Imperative.

Move.

Meus, sing.

Mouv ez, plur.

Let us move.

Mouv ons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

I move, or am
Thou movest, art
He moves, or is
We }
You } move,
They } are moving.

Je 12meus26.
Tu meus.
Il meut26.
Nous mouv ons.
Vous mouv ez.
Ils meuvent18.

Je meuve2.
Tu meuves26.
Il meuve.
Nous mouv ions.
Vous mouv iez.
Ils meuvent.

I }
Thou } was moving.
He }
We }
You } were moving.
They }

Je 14mouv ais6.
Tu mouv ais.
Il mouv ait26.
Nous mouv ions.
Vous mouv iez.
Ils mouv aient6.

I }
Thou }
He } moved,
We } did move.
You }
They }

Je †mus26.
Tu mus.
Il mut26.
Nous mûmes.
Vous mûtes.
Ils murent18.

Je musse2.
Tu musses.
Il mût26.
Nous mussions.
Vous mussiez.
Ils mussent18.

I }
Thou }
He } shll, will move,
We } be moving.
You }
They }

Je 14mouv rai5.
Tu mouv ras26.
Il mouv ra.
Nous mouv rons.
Vous mouv rez.
Ils mouv ront26.

I }
Thou }
He } shd, wd move,
We } be moving.
You }
They }

Je 14mouv rais6.
Tu mouv rais.
Il mouv rait26.
Nous mouv rions.
Vous mouv riez.
Ils mouv raient6.

Gerund.

Participle.

Moving.

Mouv ant26.

Mu.

Moved.

After the same manner as *Mouvoir* is conjugated *émouvoir*, to move, to stir up, speaking of vapours, or the passions; as,

Le soleil émeut les vapeurs. The sun stirs up the vapours.

Cet homme s'émeut de rien. That man is moved with the least thing.

* *Mouvoir* is a technical term, used only in some general propositions; as for example, Every free body moves in a straight line. *Tout corps libre se meut en ligne droite.*

The general acceptation of *move* is *remuer*; as,
 Move your arm, your leg, your foot, the chair, the dish, the table, &c.
Remuez le bras, la jambe, le pied, la chaise, le plat, la table, &c.

† See note 2, page 1.

move, may move.

moved, might move.

Infinitive.

To be able.

Pouv oir.

Indicative.

Present tense.	I can, or am able.	Je 23	puis26.
	Thou canst, art able.	Tu 12	peux.
	He can, or is able.	Il	peut26.
	We	Nous	pouv ons.
	You } can, are able.	Vous	pouv ez.
Imperfect tense.	They } can, are able.	Ils	peuvent18.
	I } could,	Je 14	pouv ais6.
	Thou } was able.	Tu	pouv ais.
	He } was able.	Il	pouv ait26.
	We } could,	Nous	pouv ions.
Perfect tense.	You } were able.	Vous	pouv iez.
	They } were able.	Ils	pouv aient6.
	I } could,	Je	pus26.
	Thou } was able.	Tu	pus.
	He } was able.	Il	put26.
Future tense.	We } could,	Nous	pûmes.
	You } were able.	Vous	pûtes.
	They } were able.	Ils	purent18.
	I } shall, will be	Je 14	pourai5.
	Thou } able.	Tu	pouras26.
Future conditional.	He } shall, will be	Il	poura.
	We } able.	Nous	pourons.
	You } able.	Vous	pourez.
	They } able.	Ils	pouront26.
	I } could, shd,	Je 14	pourais6.
	Thou } wd be able.	Tu	pourais.
	He } wd be able.	Il	pourait26.
	We } wd be able.	Nous	pourions.
	You } wd be able.	Vous	pouriez.
	They } wd be able.	Ils	pouraient6.

Subjunctive.

Je	puisse2.
Tu	puisses26.
Il	puisse.
Nous	puissions.
Vous	puissiez.
Ils	puissent18.
Je	pusse2.
Tu	pusses.
Il	pût26.
Nous	pussions.
Vous	pussiez.
Ils	pussent18.

may, * may be able.

might, * might be able.

Gerund.

Being able. Pouv ant26.

Participle.

Pu. Been able.

* MAY, MIGHT have, through the verbs, been considered only as *signs* of the *subjunctive mood*; but these words are not always *signs*; they are sometimes *verbs* denoting *power*.

In order to discriminate whether MAY, MIGHT, are *verbs*, or only *signs*, change them into the tenses of the verb BE, that will make the best sense with the word *power* or *able*.

If MAY, MIGHT, thus changed, answer to the tenses of the *indicative* of the verb BE, they must be expressed by the *same tenses* of the verb *POUVOIR*; as,

I may see it, if I choose, *i. e.* it is *in my power*, or I am able to see it, if I choose. Je puis le voir, si je veux.

I might see it, if I chose, *i. e.* it would be *in my power*, or I should be able to see it, if I chose. Je pourais le voir, si je voulais.

If MAY, MIGHT, answer to the tenses of the *subjunctive* of the verb BE, they may be expressed either by the *subjunctive* of the *following verb*, or by the *subjunctive* of *POUVOIR*; as,

Bring it me, that I may see it, *i. e.* that I may be able to see it.

Apportez-le-moi, afin que je le voie, or afin que je puisse le voir.

He brought it me, that I might see it, *i. e.* that I might be able to see it.

Il me l'apporta, afin que je le visse, or afin que je pusse le voir.

† See note 2, page 1.

N. B. MAY

Infinitive.

To foresee.

Prév oir.

Imperative.

Foresee.

Prév ois, sing.

Prév oyez, plur.

Let us foresee.

Prév oyons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

I foresee.

Je prév ois23.

Je prév oie23.

Thou foreseest.

Tu prév ois.

Tu prév oies26.

He foresees.

Il prév oit26.

Il prév oie.

We

Nous prév oyons4.

Nous prév oyions.

You } foresee.

Vous prév oyez.

Vous prév oyiez.

They }

Ils prév oient18.

Ils prév oient.

I

Je prév oyais6.

Thou

Tu prév oyais.

He

Il prév oyait26.

We

Nous prév oyions.

You

Vous prév oyiez.

They }

Ils prév oyaient6

I

Je prév is26.

Je prév isse2.

Thou

Tu prév is.

Tu prév isses.

He

Il prév it26.

Il prév ît26.

We

Nous prév îmes.

Nous prév issions.

You

Vous prév îtes.

Vous prév issiez.

They }

Ils prév irent18.

Ils prév issent.18

I

Je prévoir ai5.

Thou

Tu prévoir as26.

He

Il prévoir a.

We

Nous prévoir ons.

You

Vous prévoir ez.

They }

Ils prévoir ont26.

I

Je prévoir ais6.

Thou

Tu prévoir ais.

He

Il prévoir ait26.

We

Nous prévoir ions.

You

Vous prévoir iez.

They }

Ils prévoir aient26.

Foreseeing.

Prév oyant26.

Prév u.

Foreseen.

After the same manner is conjugated *surseoir*, to supersede, participle *sursis*. *Pouvoir*, to provide, except the perfect tense,

I

Je pourv us.

Je pourv usse2.

Thou

Tu pourv us.

Tu pourv usses.

He

Il pourv ut26.

Il pourv ût26.

We

Nous pourv ûmes.

Nous pourv ussions.

You

Vous pourv ûtes.

Vous pourv ussiez.

They }

Ils pourv urent18.

Ils pourv ussent18.

I

Je pourv us.

Je pourv usse2.

Thou

Tu pourv us.

Tu pourv usses.

He

Il pourv ut26.

Il pourv ût26.

We

Nous pourv ûmes.

Nous pourv ussions.

You

Vous pourv ûtes.

Vous pourv ussiez.

They }

Ils pourv urent18.

Ils pourv ussent18.

N. B. MAY, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present of the subjunctive of *pourvoir*; as *May you be happy!* *Puissiez-vous être heureux!*

But observe that, these instances excepted, the subjunctive never begins a sentence; so this, *May I see it?* is, *Puis-je le voir?* Not *Le voie-je*, or *Puissé-je le voir?*

Infinitive.

To know.

Sav oir.*

Imperative.

Know. Saches, *sing.*

Sachez, *plur.*

Let us know.

Sachons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

I know.

Je sais6.

Je sache.†

Thou knowest.

Tu sais.

Tu saches2.

He knows.

Il sait26.

Il sache.

We } know.

Nous sav ons.

Nous sachions.

You } know.

Vous sav ez.

Vous sachiez.

They } know.

Ils sav ent18.

Ils sachent18.

I }
Thou }
He }
We } did know.

Je sav ais6.

Je susse2.

Tu sav ais.

Tu susses.

Il sav ait26.

Il sût26.

Nous sav ions.

Nous sussions.

Vous sav iez.

Vous sussiez.

Ils sav aient6.

Ils sussent18.

I }
Thou }
He } knew,
We } did know.

*Je*3 sus26.

Je susse2.

Tu sus.

Tu susses.

Il sut26.

Il sût26.

Nous sûmes.

Nous sussions.

Vous sûtes.

Vous sussiez.

Ils surent18.

Ils sussent18.

I }
Thou }
He } shall, will
We } know.

Je 8saurai5.

Tu sauras26.

Il saura.

Nous saurons.

Vous saurez.

Ils sauront26.

I }
Thou }
He } should,
We } would know.

Je 8saurais6.

Tu saurais.

Il saurait26.

Nous saurions.

Vous sauriez.

Ils sauraient6.

Gerund.

Participle.

Knowing. Sachant26.

Su. Known.

know, may know.

know, might know.

* Meaning mental knowledge, science, information; as,

I know my lesson, French, English, mathematics.

Je sais ma leçon, le Français, l'Anglais, les mathématiques.

I know your brother will come. *Je sais* que votre frère viendra.

But *To know*, meaning to be acquainted with, to know by sight, is not expressed by SAVOIR, it is expressed by CONNAÎTRE; as,

I know your brother, your sister, i. e. *I am acquainted* with them, *I know* them by sight. *Je connais* votre frère, votre sœur, &c. See *Connaître*,

† *Not that I know*, &c. so often used in answer to a question, is expressed by the present of the subjunctive of this verb; thus,

Not that I know.

Non pas que je sache.

Not that we know.

Non pas que nous sachions.

*Infinitive.**To be worth.**Val oir.**Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

<i>I am worth.</i>	<i>Je</i>	8vaux26.
<i>Thou art worth.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	vauX.
<i>He is worth.</i>	<i>Il</i>	vaut26.
<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	val ons.
<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	val ez.
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i>	val ent18.

<i>Je</i>	vaille2.*
<i>Tu</i>	vailles26.
<i>Il</i>	vaille.
<i>Nous</i>	val ions.
<i>Vous</i>	val iez.
<i>Ils</i>	vaillent18.

may be worth.

<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	val ais6.
<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i>	val ais.
<i>He</i>	<i>Il</i>	val ait26.
<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	val ions.
<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	val iez.
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i>	val aient6.

<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	val us26.
<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i>	val us.
<i>He</i>	<i>Il</i>	val ut26.
<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	val ûmes.
<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	val ûtes.
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i>	val urent18.

<i>Je</i>	val usse2.
<i>Tu</i>	val usses.
<i>Il</i>	val ût26.
<i>Nous</i>	val ussions.
<i>Vous</i>	val ussiez.
<i>Ils</i>	val ussent18.

might be worth.

<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	8vaudrai5.
<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i>	vaudras26.
<i>He</i>	<i>Il</i>	vaudra.
<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	vaudrons.
<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	vaudrez.
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i>	vaudront26.

<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i>	vaudrais6.
<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i>	8vaudrais.
<i>He</i>	<i>Il</i>	vaudrait26.
<i>We</i>	<i>Nous</i>	vaudrions.
<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	vaudriez.
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i>	vaudraient6.

*Gerund.**Participle.**Being worth. Val ant26.**Val u. Been worth.**After the same manner as Valoir are conjugated**Equivaloir, to be equivalent.**Prévaloir, to prevail.**Revaloir, to return like for like.**se prévaloir, to avail oneself.**But observe that prévaloir and se prévaloir have an imperative.**Prevail.**Prévaux, sing.**Préval ez, plur.**Let us prevail.**Préval ons.*

<i>And, I may</i>	} prevail, is
<i>Thou mayest</i>	
<i>He may</i>	
<i>We may</i>	
<i>You may</i>	
<i>They may</i>	

<i>Je</i>	prév ale,	} not
<i>Tu</i>	prév ales,	
<i>Il</i>	prév ale,	
<i>Nous</i>	prév alions,	
<i>Vous</i>	prév aliez,	
<i>Ils</i>	prév alent,	

*prév aille, &c.** See *Il* preceded by *i*, page 14.

Infinitive.

To see.

V oir.

Imperative.

See.

V ois, sing.

V oyez, plur.

Let us see.

V oyons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

I see.
Thou seest.
He sees.
We }
You } see.
They }

Je 23v ois26.
Tu v ois.
Il v oit26.
Nous v oyons4.
Vous v oyez.
Ils v oient18.

Je v oie23.
Tu v oies26.
Il v oie.
Nous v oyions.
Vous v oyiez.
Ils v oient6.

see, may see.

I }
Thou }
He } did see.
We }
You }
They }

Je v oyais6.
Tu v oyais.
Il v oyait26.
Nous v oyions.
Vous v oyiez.
Ils v oyaient6.

I }
Thou }
He } saw, did see.
We }
You }
They }

Je v is6.
Tu v is.
Il v it26.
Nous v îmes.
Vous v îtes.
Ils v irent18.

Je v isse2.
Tu v isses.
Il v ît26.
Nous v issions.
Vous v issiez.
Ils v issent18.

saw, might see.

I }
Thou }
He } shall, will
We } see.
You }
They }

Je *verrai5.
Tu verras26.
Il verra.
Nous verrons.
Vous verrez.
Ils verront26.

I }
Thou }
He } should would
We } see.
You }
They }

Je *verrais6.
Tu verrais.
Il verrait26.
Nous verrions.
Vous verriez.
Ils verraient6.

Gerund.

Participle.

Seeing. V oyant26.

V u. Seen.

After the same manner as voir are conjugated

Entrevoir, to have a glimpse.

Revoir, to see again.

* Only one r is sounded, the other r serves to make the preceding e long.

Infinitive.

To will, To be willing.

Voul oir.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present tense.	<i>I</i> will,* or am	<i>Je</i> 12veux26.	<i>Je</i> veuille2.
	<i>Thou</i> wilt, art	<i>Tu</i> veux.	<i>Tu</i> veuilles26.
	<i>He</i> wills, or is	<i>Il</i> veut26.	<i>Il</i> veuille.
	<i>We</i> } will,	<i>Nous</i> voul ons.	<i>Nous</i> voul ions.
	<i>You</i> } are willing.	<i>Vous</i> voul ez.	<i>Vous</i> voul iez.
Imperfect tense.	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> veulent18.	<i>Ils</i> veuillent18.
	<i>I</i> would,*	<i>Je</i> 14voul ais6.	
	<i>Thou</i> was willing.	<i>Tu</i> voul ais.	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> voul ait26.	
	<i>We</i> would,	<i>Nous</i> voul ions.	
Perfect tense.	<i>You</i> were willing.	<i>Vous</i> voul iez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> voul aient6.	
	<i>I</i> would,	<i>Je</i> 14voul us26.	<i>Je</i> voul usse2.
	<i>Thou</i> willed.	<i>Tu</i> voul us.	<i>Tu</i> voul usses.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> voul ut26.	<i>Il</i> voul ût26.
Future positive.	<i>We</i> will be willing.	<i>Nous</i> voul ûmes.	<i>Nous</i> voul ussions.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> voul ûtes.	<i>Vous</i> voul ussiez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> voul urent18.	<i>Ils</i> voul ussent18.
	<i>I</i> will,* shall,	<i>Je</i> 14voudrai5.	
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> voudras.	
Fut. conditional.	<i>He</i> will be willing.	<i>Il</i> voudra.	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> voudrons.	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> voudrez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> voudront26.	
	<i>I</i> would,*	<i>Je</i> 14voudrais6.	
	<i>Thou</i> should, wld	<i>Tu</i> voudrais.	
	<i>He</i> be willing.	<i>Il</i> voudrait26.	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> voudrions.	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> voudriez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> voudraient6.	

may be willing.

might be willing.

Gerund.

Being willing.

Voul ant26.

Participle.

Voul u. Been willing.

* Frequent mistakes are committed in the use of the word WILL, which sometimes is a verb implying *will, wish, desire, inclination*, and sometimes, as has been seen through the conjugations, only the *sign* of some of the tenses of verbs.

Though the distinction between WILL, the *verb*, and WILL, the *sign*, in some instances be nice, yet it is necessary it should be made, as it changes the idea.

If WILL, WOULD can be changed into the words *be willing*, they denote the WILL, and are expressed by the tenses of *vouloir* as above.

If WILL, WOULD cannot properly be changed into *be willing*, they are mere *signs* expressed in French by the *termination* of the verb. This sentence, for example ;

Will you go to the play to-night ? may be translated these two ways ;

Voulez-vous aller à la comédie ce soir ? or, *irez-vous à la comédie ce soir ?* with this difference, that in the first instance, I inquire whether it is the *wish, desire, or inclination* of the person I am speaking to, to go to the play, yet he may not go for all that ; in the second, I do not consult his *will or inclination*, for a person may do a thing against his inclination ; but I ask whether *his going* to the play will *actually* take place, either because he has *resolved* to go, or because he is *compelled* to go.

A TABLE

Showing how to conjugate all the verbs in OIR, both regular and irregular.

	<i>Inf.</i> Dev <i>oir</i> ,	<i>Ger.</i> ant,	<i>Part.</i> dû.		<i>Inf.</i> Pouv <i>oir</i> ,	<i>Ger.</i> ant,	<i>Part.</i> pu.
	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>		<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
<i>Pres. tense.</i>	<i>Je</i> dois <i>Tu</i> dois, <i>Il</i> doit <i>Nous</i> Dev <i>ons</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>ez</i> , <i>Ils</i> doivent.	<i>ons</i> , <i>ez</i> ,	<i>doive</i> <i>doives</i> <i>doive</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> doivent.		<i>puisse</i> <i>puisses</i> <i>puisse</i> <i>puissions</i> <i>puissiez</i> puissent.		
<i>Imp. tense.</i>	<i>Je</i> <i>ais</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>ais</i> <i>Il</i> <i>ait</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>ions</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>iez</i> <i>Ils</i> <i>aient</i> .				<i>ais</i> <i>ais</i> <i>ait</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>aient</i> .		
<i>Perf. tense.</i>	<i>Je</i> <i>du</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>du</i> <i>Il</i> <i>dut</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>dûmes</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>dûtes</i> <i>Ils</i> <i>durent</i>		<i>du</i> <i>dusses</i> <i>dût</i> <i>dussions</i> <i>dussiez</i> <i>dussent</i> .		<i>pus</i> <i>pus</i> <i>put</i> <i>pûmes</i> <i>pûtes</i> <i>purent</i> .		<i>pusse</i> <i>pusse</i> <i>pût</i> <i>pussions</i> <i>pussiez</i> <i>pussent</i> .
<i>Fut. post.</i>	<i>Je</i> Dev <i>rai</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>ras</i> <i>Il</i> <i>ra</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>rons</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>rez</i> <i>Ils</i> <i>ront</i> .				<i>pourai</i> <i>pouras</i> <i>poura</i> <i>pourons</i> <i>pourez</i> <i>pouront</i> .		
<i>Fut. condit.</i>	<i>Je</i> <i>rais</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>rais</i> <i>Il</i> <i>rait</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>rions</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>riez</i> <i>Ils</i> <i>raient</i> .		Like <i>Devoir</i> con- jugate <i>Redevoir</i> , <i>Percevoir</i> , <i>Aper- cevoir</i> , <i>Conce- voir</i> , <i>Recevoir</i> .		<i>pourais</i> <i>pourais</i> <i>pourait</i> <i>pourions</i> <i>pouriez</i> <i>pouraient</i> .		
	Asse <i>oir</i> ,	<i>yant</i> ,	<i>assis</i> .		Prév <i>oir</i> ,	<i>oyant</i> ,	<i>u</i> .
<i>Pres. tense.</i>	<i>J'</i> assieds <i>Tu</i> assieds, <i>Il</i> assied <i>Nous</i> Assé <i>ions</i> , <i>Vous</i> <i>iez</i> , <i>Ils</i> <i>ient</i> .	<i>assieds</i> , <i>assied</i>	<i>ie</i> <i>ies</i> <i>ie</i> <i>yons</i> <i>yez</i> <i>ient</i> .		<i>ois</i> <i>ois</i> , <i>oit</i> <i>oyons</i> , <i>oyez</i> , <i>oient</i> .	<i>ois</i> , <i>ois</i> , <i>oie</i> <i>oyons</i> , <i>oyez</i> , <i>oient</i> .	<i>oie</i> <i>oies</i> <i>oie</i> <i>oyions</i> <i>oyiez</i> <i>oient</i> .
<i>Imp. tense.</i>	<i>J'</i> <i>iais</i> <i>Tu</i> <i>iais</i> <i>Il</i> <i>iait</i> <i>Nous</i> <i>yons</i> <i>Vous</i> <i>yez</i> <i>Ils</i> <i>iaient</i> .				<i>oyais</i> <i>oyais</i> <i>oyait</i> <i>oyions</i> <i>oyiez</i> <i>oyaient</i> .		
<i>Perf. tense.</i>	<i>J'</i> assis <i>Tu</i> assis <i>Il</i> assit <i>Nous</i> assîmes <i>Vous</i> assîtes <i>Ils</i> assirent		<i>assise</i> <i>assisses</i> <i>assit</i> <i>assissions</i> <i>assissiez</i> <i>assissent</i> .		<i>is</i> <i>is</i> <i>it</i> <i>îmes</i> <i>îtes</i> <i>irent</i> .		<i>isse</i> <i>isses</i> <i>ît</i> <i>issions</i> <i>issiez</i> <i>issent</i> .
<i>Fut. post.</i>	<i>J'</i> asseirai <i>Tu</i> asseiras <i>Il</i> asseira <i>Nous</i> asseirons <i>Vous</i> asseirez <i>Ils</i> asseiront.				<i>ai</i> <i>as</i> <i>a</i> <i>ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>ont</i> .		
<i>Fut. condit.</i>	<i>J'</i> asseirais <i>Tu</i> asseirais <i>Il</i> asseirait <i>Nous</i> asseirions <i>Vous</i> asseiriez <i>Ils</i> asseiraient.				<i>ais</i> <i>ais</i> <i>ait</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>aient</i> .		

Like *Asseoir*, conjugate *s'Asseoir*, *Rasseoir*, *se Rasseoir*.

Pourvoir, perfect *Pourvus*, *Pourvusse* ;
not *Pourvis*. *Surseoir*, participle *Sursis*.

A TABLE

Showing how to conjugate all the verbs in OIR, both regular and irregular.

	Infín. Sav oir,	Ger. sachant, su.	Part.	Infín. V oir,	Ger. oyant,	Part.
	Indic.	Imp.	Subj.	Indic.	Imp.	Subj.
Pres. tense.	<i>Je</i> sais <i>Tu</i> sais, <i>Il</i> sait <i>Nous</i> Sav ons <i>Vous</i> ez, <i>Ils</i> ent.	saches, sachons, sachez,	sache saches sache sachions, sachiez. sachent.	<i>V ois</i> <i>ois</i> , <i>oit</i> <i>oyons</i> , <i>oyez</i> , <i>oient</i> .	<i>ois</i> , <i>oyons</i> , <i>oyez</i> , <i>oient</i> .	<i>oie</i> <i>oies</i> <i>oie</i> <i>oyions</i> <i>oyiez</i> <i>oient</i> .
Imp. tense.	<i>Je</i> ais <i>Tu</i> ais <i>Il</i> ait <i>Nous</i> ions <i>Vous</i> iez <i>Ils</i> aient.			<i>oyais</i> <i>oyais</i> <i>oyait</i> <i>oyions</i> <i>oyiez</i> <i>oyaient</i> .		
Perf. tense.	<i>Je</i> sus <i>Tu</i> sus <i>Il</i> sut <i>Nous</i> sûmes <i>Vous</i> sûtes <i>Ils</i> surent		susse susses sût sussions sussiez sussent.	<i>is</i> <i>is</i> <i>it</i> <i>imes</i> <i>ites</i> <i>irent</i> .		isse isses ît issions issiez issent.
Fut. posit.	<i>Je</i> saurai <i>Tu</i> sauras <i>Il</i> saura <i>Nous</i> saurons <i>Vous</i> saurez <i>Ils</i> sauront.			<i>verrai</i> <i>verras</i> <i>verra</i> <i>verrons</i> <i>verrez</i> <i>verront</i> .		
Fut. condit.	<i>Je</i> saurais <i>Tu</i> saurais <i>Il</i> saurait <i>Nous</i> saurions <i>Vous</i> sauriez <i>Ils</i> sauraient.			<i>verrais</i> <i>verrais</i> <i>verrait</i> <i>verrions</i> <i>verriez</i> <i>verraient</i> .	Entrevoir, Revoir.	
	Val oir,	ant,	u.	Voul oir,	ant,	u.
Pres. tense.	<i>Je</i> vaux <i>Tu</i> vaux <i>Il</i> vaut <i>Nous</i> Val ons <i>Vous</i> ez, <i>Ils</i> ent.		vaille vailles vaille tons tez vaillent.	<i>veux</i> <i>veux</i> <i>veut</i> <i>Voul ons</i> <i>ez</i> <i>veulent</i> .		veille venilles veille ions iez veuillent.
Imp. tense.	<i>Je</i> ais <i>Tu</i> ais <i>Il</i> ait <i>Nous</i> ions <i>Vous</i> iez <i>Ils</i> aient.			<i>ais</i> <i>ais</i> <i>ait</i> <i>ions</i> <i>iez</i> <i>aient</i> .		
Perf. tense.	<i>Je</i> us <i>Tu</i> us <i>Il</i> ut <i>Nous</i> ûmes <i>Vous</i> ûtes <i>Ils</i> urent.		usse usses ût ussions ussiez ussent.	<i>us</i> <i>us</i> <i>ut</i> <i>ûmes</i> <i>ûtes</i> <i>urent</i> .		usse usses ût ussions ussiez ussent.
Fut. posit.	<i>Je</i> vaudrai <i>Tu</i> vaudras <i>Il</i> vaudra <i>Nous</i> vaudrons <i>Vous</i> vaudrez <i>Ils</i> vaudront.			<i>voudrai</i> <i>voudras</i> <i>voudra</i> <i>voudrons</i> <i>voudrez</i> <i>voudront</i> .		
Fut. condit.	<i>Je</i> vaudrais <i>Tu</i> vaudrais <i>Il</i> vaudrait <i>Nous</i> vaudrions <i>Vous</i> vaudriez <i>Ils</i> vaudraient.			<i>voudrais</i> <i>voudrais</i> <i>voudrait</i> <i>voudrions</i> <i>voudriez</i> <i>voudraient</i> .		

Equivaloir, Revaloir, (Prévaloir, se Prévaloir, subjunctive, Prévale, not Prévaille.)

Infinitive.

To wait for, To expect.

Attend re.

Imperative.

Wait.

Attend s, sing.

Attend ez, plur.

Let us wait.

Attend ons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present tense.	I wait, or am	waiting.	J attend s16.
	Thou waitest, art	waiting.	Tu attend s.
	He waits, or is		Il attend 26.
	We } wait,		Nous attend ons.
Imperfect tense.	You } are waiting.		Vous attend ez.
	They }		Ils attend ent18.
	I } was waiting.		J attend ais6.
	Thou }		Tu attend ais.
Perfect tense.	He } were waiting.		Il attend ait26.
	We }		Nous attend ions.
	You }		Vous attend iez.
	They }		Ils attend aient6.
Future positive.	I } waited,		J attend is26.
	Thou }		Tu attend is.
	He } did wait.		Il attend it26.
	We }		Nous attend imes.
Future conditional.	You }		Vous attend ites.
	They }		Ils attend irent18.
	I } shll, wll wait,		J attendr ai5.
	Thou }		Tu attendr as.
	He } be waiting.		Il attendr a.
	We }		Nous attendr ons.
	You }		Vous attendr ez.
	They }		Ils attendr ont26.
	I } shd, wd wait,		J attendr ais6.
	Thou }		Tu attendr ais.
	He } be waiting.		Il attendr ait26.
	We }		Nous attendr ions.
	You }		Vous attendr iez.
	They }		Ils attendr aient6.

wait, may wait.

waited, might wait.

Waiting.

Attend ant26.

Attend u.

Waited.

After the same manner as Attendre are conjugated

Battre, to beat, to fight.	Descendre, to go or come down.	Rébattre, to beat again, to repeat.
Abattre, to pull down.	Entendre, to hear, to understand.	Refondre, to melt again.
Combattre, to fight.		se Rendre, to render, to return.
Condescendre, to condescend.	Etendre, to stretch, to spread.	Répandre, to spill, to shed.
Confoundre, to confound.	Fendre, to cleave, to split.	Répondre, to answer.
Correspondre, to correspond.	Fondre, to melt, to cast.	Retordre, to twist anew.
Corrompre, to corrupt.	Interrompre, to interrupt.	Rompre, to break.
Débattre, to debate.	Mordre, to bite.	Suspendre, to suspend.
se Débattre, to struggle.	se Morfondre, to grow cold.	Tendre, to tend, to bend.
Défendre, to forbid.	Pendre, to hang.	Tordre, to shear.
se Défendre, to defend one-self.	Perdre, to lose, to ruin.	Tordre, to twist, to wring.
Démordre, to relax.	Pondre, to lay eggs.	Vendre, to sell.
Dépendre, to depend.	Prétendre, to pretend.	
	Rabattre, to abate.	

The IRREGULAR verbs belonging to this conjugation are

<i>Absoudre</i> , to absolve, -----	<i>see</i> Resoudre.	<i>ECRIRE</i> , to writo, -----	<i>page 143.</i>
<i>Abstraire</i> , to abstract, -----	<i>see</i> Traire.	<i>Elire</i> , to elect, -----	<i>like Lire.</i>
<i>Accroître</i> , to accrue, -----	<i>like</i> Connaître.	<i>Emoudre</i> , to whet, to grind, <i>like</i> Moudre.	
<i>Admettre</i> , to admit, -----	<i>like</i> Mettre.	<i>Encoudre</i> , to encompass, --	<i>like</i> Feindre.
<i>Apparaître</i> , to appear, -----	<i>like</i> Connaître.	<i>Enclorre</i> , to enclose, †	
<i>APPRENDRE</i> , to learn, -----	<i>page 136.</i>	<i>Enduire</i> , to daub, -----	<i>like</i> Instruire.
<i>Astraindre</i> , to restrain, -----	{ <i>like</i> Feindre.	<i>Enfreindre</i> , to infringe, --	{ <i>like</i> Feindre.
<i>Attraindre</i> , to reach, to hit, }		<i>Enjoindre</i> , to enjoin, -----	
<i>BOIRE</i> , to drink, -----	<i>page 137.</i>	<i>s'Entremettre</i> , to intermeddle, <i>like</i> Mettre.	
<i>Braire</i> , to bray.*		<i>Entreprendre</i> , to under-	
<i>Coudre</i> , to gird, -----	<i>like</i> Feindre.	<i>take</i> , -----	<i>like</i> Apprendre.
<i>Circoncire</i> , to circumcise, --	<i>see</i> Dire.	<i>Epreindre</i> , to squeeze	
<i>Circonscrire</i> , to circum-		<i>out</i> , -----	<i>like</i> Feindre.
<i>scribe</i> , -----	<i>like</i> Ecrire.	<i>Eteindre</i> , to extinguish, --	
<i>Clore</i> , to close, to shut, †		<i>Exclure</i> , to exclude, -----	<i>see</i> Conclure.
<i>Commettre</i> , to commit, -----	<i>like</i> Mettre.	<i>Extraire</i> , to extract, -----	<i>like</i> Traire.
<i>Comparaître</i> , to appear, --	<i>like</i> Connaître.	<i>FAIRE</i> , to do, to make, -----	<i>page 144.</i>
<i>Complaire</i> , to comply with, --	<i>like</i> Plaire.	<i>FEINDRE</i> , to feign, -----	<i>page 145.</i>
<i>Comprendre</i> , to understand, <i>like</i> Apprendre.		<i>Frïre</i> , to fry, -----	<i>see</i> Rire.
<i>Compromettre</i> , to compro-		<i>Induire</i> , to induce, -----	<i>like</i> Instruire.
<i>mise</i> , -----	<i>like</i> Mettre.	<i>Inscrire</i> , to inscribe, -----	<i>like</i> Ecrire.
<i>CONCLURE</i> , to conclude, --	<i>page 138.</i>	<i>INSTRUIRE</i> , to instruct, --	<i>page 146.</i>
<i>Conduire</i> , to conduct, to		<i>Interdire</i> , to interdict, -----	<i>see</i> Dire.
<i>lead</i> , -----	<i>like</i> Instruire.	<i>Introduire</i> , to introduce, --	<i>like</i> Instruire.
<i>Confire</i> , to pickle, -----	<i>see</i> Dire.	<i>Joindre</i> , to join, -----	<i>like</i> Feindre.
<i>Conjoindre</i> , to join together, <i>like</i> Feindre.		<i>LIRE</i> , to read, -----	<i>page 147.</i>
<i>CONNAÎTRE</i> , to know, -----	<i>page 139.</i>	<i>Luire</i> , to shine, -----	<i>see</i> Instruire.
<i>Construire</i> , to construct, --	<i>like</i> Instruire.	<i>Maudire</i> , to curse, -----	{ <i>see</i> Dire.
<i>Contraindre</i> , to compel, --	<i>like</i> Feindre.	<i>Médire</i> , to slander, -----	
<i>Contredire</i> , to contradict, --	<i>see</i> Dire.	<i>Méconnaître</i> , not to know, --	<i>like</i> Connaître.
<i>Contrefaire</i> , to counterfeit, <i>like</i> Faire.		<i>se Méprendre</i> , to mistake, --	<i>like</i> Apprendre.
<i>Convaincre</i> , to convince, --	<i>like</i> Vaincre.	<i>METTRE</i> , to put, -----	<i>page 148.</i>
<i>COUDRE</i> , to sew, -----	<i>page 140.</i>	<i>MOUDRE</i> , to grind, -----	<i>page 149.</i>
<i>Craindre</i> , to fear, -----	<i>like</i> Feindre.	<i>Naître</i> , to come to life, --	<i>see</i> Connaître.
<i>CROIRE</i> , to believe, -----	<i>page 141.</i>	<i>Nuire</i> , to harm, to hurt, --	<i>see</i> Instruire.
<i>Croître</i> , to grow up, -----	<i>like</i> Connaître.	<i>Oindre</i> , to anoint, -----	<i>like</i> Feindre.
<i>Cuire</i> , to do victuals, to		<i>Omettre</i> , to omit, -----	<i>like</i> Mettre.
<i>cook</i> , -----	<i>see</i> Instruire.	<i>Paître</i> , to graze, -----	{ <i>like</i> Connaître.
<i>Découdre</i> , to unsew, -----	<i>like</i> Coudre.	<i>Paraître</i> , to appear, -----	
<i>Décrire</i> , to describe, -----	<i>like</i> Ecrire.	<i>Peindre</i> , to paint, -----	<i>like</i> Feindre.
<i>Décroître</i> , to decrease, --	<i>like</i> Connaître.	<i>Permettre</i> , to permit, --	<i>like</i> Mettre.
<i>se Dédire</i> , to recant, to re-		<i>Plaindre</i> , to pity, -----	{ <i>like</i> Feindre.
<i>tract</i> , -----	<i>see</i> Dire.	<i>se Plaindre</i> , to complain, -	
<i>Déduire</i> , to deduct, -----	<i>like</i> Instruire.	<i>PLAIRE</i> , to please, -----	<i>page 150.</i>
<i>Défaire</i> , to undo, to de- }	{ <i>like</i> Faire.	<i>se Plaire à</i> , to delight in, --	<i>like</i> Plaire.
<i>feat</i> , -----		<i>Poursuivre</i> , to pursue, --	<i>like</i> Suivre.
<i>se Défaire</i> , to get rid of, - }	{ <i>like</i> Feindre.	<i>Prédire</i> , to foretel, -----	<i>see</i> Dire.
<i>Déjoindre</i> , to disjoin, -----		<i>Prendre</i> , to take, -----	<i>like</i> Apprendre.
<i>Démettre</i> , to disjoin, -----	{ <i>like</i> Mettre.	<i>Prescrire</i> , to prescribe, --	<i>like</i> Ecrire.
<i>se Démettre</i> , to abdicate, }		<i>Produire</i> , to produce, -----	<i>like</i> Instruire.
<i>Déplaire</i> , to displease, --	<i>like</i> Plaire.	<i>Promettre</i> , to promise, --	<i>like</i> Mettre.
<i>Désapprendre</i> , to unlearn, --	<i>like</i> Apprendre.	<i>Proscrire</i> , to proscrib, --	<i>like</i> Ecrire.
<i>Déteindre</i> , to take off the		<i>Reboire</i> , to drink again, --	<i>like</i> Boire.
<i>die</i> , -----	<i>like</i> Feindre.	<i>Reconduire</i> , to lead back, --	<i>like</i> Instruire.
<i>Détruire</i> , to destroy, -----	<i>like</i> Instruire.	<i>Reconnaître</i> , to know again, <i>like</i> Connaître.	
<i>DIRE</i> , to say, -----	<i>page 142.</i>	<i>Recoudre</i> , to sew again, --	<i>like</i> Coudre.
<i>Disparaître</i> , to disappear, --	<i>like</i> Connaître.	<i>Récrire</i> , to write again, --	<i>like</i> Ecrire.
<i>Dissoudre</i> , to dissolve, --	<i>like</i> Resoudre.	<i>Recuire</i> , to do or cook again, <i>see</i> Instruire.	
<i>Distraire</i> , to disturb atten-		<i>Redéfaire</i> , to undo again, --	<i>like</i> Faire.
<i>tion</i> , -----	<i>like</i> Traire.	<i>Redire</i> , to say again, -----	<i>like</i> Dire.
<i>Eclorre</i> , to hatch, †		<i>Reduire</i> , to reduce, -----	<i>like</i> Instruire.

* Braire is used only in the following tenses and persons;

Present

Il brait, *He*, it brays.
Ils braient, *They* bray.

Future.

Il braira, *He*, it will bray.
Ils brairont, *They* will bray.

Conditional.

Il brairait, *He*, it would bray.
Ils brairaient, *They* would bray.

† Clore, and its compounds Eclorre, Enclorre, have only the following tenses and

<i>Refaire</i> , to do again,-----	<i>like Faire.</i>	<i>Sourire</i> , to smile, -----	<i>like Rire</i>
<i>Relire</i> , to read again, -----	<i>like Lire.</i>	<i>Souscrire</i> , to subscribe, ---	<i>like Ecrire.</i>
<i>Reluire</i> , to shine,-----	<i>like Instruire.</i>	<i>Soustraire</i> , to subtract,-----	<i>like Traire.</i>
<i>Remettre</i> , to put again,-----	<i>like Mettre.</i>	<i>SUIVRE</i> , to follow,-----	<i>page 153.</i>
<i>Rémoudre</i> , to grind again, -	<i>like Moudre.</i>	<i>Suffire</i> , to be sufficient, ---	<i>see Dire.</i>
<i>Renaître</i> , to revive,-----	<i>see Connaitre.</i>	<i>Surfaire</i> , to exact,-----	<i>like Faire.</i>
<i>Rentraire</i> , to fine-draw, ---	<i>like Traire.</i>	<i>Surprendre</i> , to surprise, ---	<i>like Apprendre.</i>
<i>Repaitre</i> , to feed, -----	<i>see Connaitre.</i>	<i>Survivre</i> , to outlive, survive,	<i>like Vivre.</i>
<i>Reprendre</i> , to take again, ---	<i>like Apprendre.</i>	<i>se Traire</i> , to hold one's tongue,	<i>like Plaire.</i>
<i>RESOUDRE</i> , to resolve, ---	<i>page 151.</i>	<i>Teindre</i> , to dye, -----	<i>like Feindre.</i>
<i>Restreindre</i> , to restringe, ---	<i>like Feindre.</i>	<i>Traduire</i> , to translate, ---	<i>like Instruire.</i>
<i>Revivre</i> , to live again,-----	<i>like Vivre.</i>	<i>TRAIRE</i> , to milk,-----	<i>page 154.</i>
<i>RIRE</i> , to laugh, -----	<i>page 152.</i>	<i>Transcrire</i> , to transcribe, ---	<i>like Ecrire.</i>
<i>Satisfaire</i> , to satisfy, -----	<i>like Faire.</i>	<i>Transmettre</i> , to transmit, ---	<i>like Mettre.</i>
<i>Séduire</i> , to seduce,-----	<i>like Instruire.</i>	<i>VAINCRE</i> , to vanquish, ----	<i>page 155.</i>
<i>Soumettre</i> , to submit, -----	<i>like Mettre.</i>	<i>VIVRE</i> , to live,-----	<i>page 156.</i>

persons in use :

Infinitive.			Participle.	
	Clo re.	To close.	Clo s.	Closed.
Indicative.			Subjunctive.	
<i>Je</i>	clo s.	<i>I</i> close, or <i>am</i> closing.	<i>Je</i>	close.
<i>Tu</i>	clo s.	<i>Thou</i> closest, <i>art</i> closing.	<i>Tu</i>	closes.
<i>Il</i>	clo t.	<i>He</i> closes, <i>is</i> closing.	<i>Il</i>	close.
<i>Je</i>	clor ai.	<i>I</i>	} <i>may close.</i>	
<i>Tu</i>	clor as.	<i>Thou</i>		
<i>Il</i>	clor a.	<i>He</i>		
<i>Nous</i>	clor ons.	<i>We</i>		
<i>Vous</i>	clor ez.	<i>You</i>	} <i>shall, will close, or be closing.</i>	
<i>Ils</i>	clor ont.	<i>They</i>		
<i>Je</i>	clor ais.	<i>I</i>	} <i>should, would close, or be closing.</i>	
<i>Tu</i>	clor ais.	<i>Thou</i>		
<i>Il</i>	clor ait.	<i>He</i>		
<i>Nous</i>	clor ions.	<i>We</i>		
<i>Vous</i>	clor iez.	<i>You</i>	} <i>may have closed.</i>	
<i>Ils</i>	clor aient.	<i>They</i>		
Compound Tenses.				
<i>I have</i>	} closed.	<i>J'</i> ai	} <i>clos.</i>	} <i>may have closed.</i>
<i>Thou hast</i>		<i>Tu</i> as		
<i>He has</i>		<i>Il</i> a		
<i>We have</i>		<i>Nous</i> avons		
<i>You have</i>	} closed.	<i>Vous</i> avez	} <i>clos.</i>	} <i>may have closed.</i>
<i>They have</i>		<i>Ils</i> ont		
<i>I had closed, &c.</i>		<i>J'</i> avais clos, &c.		

Conjugate in the same manner, *Enclore*,

To enclose.

Eclore has only the following tenses and persons in use :

Infinitive.		Participle.	
	Eclo re.	To be hatching.	Eclo s.
Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
<i>Il</i>	éclo t.	<i>Il</i>	éclose.
<i>Ils</i>	éclosent.	<i>Ils</i>	éclosent.
<i>Il</i>	éclo ra.	} <i>may be hatching.</i>	
<i>Ils</i>	éclo ront.		
<i>Il</i>	éclo rait.		
<i>Ils</i>	éclo raient.		

*Infinitive.**To learn.***Apprend re.**Imperative.*

Learn.

Apprend *s, sing.*Apprenez, *plur.*

Let us learn.

Apprenons.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense.	<i>I</i> learn, or <i>am</i>	<i>J</i> † <i>*apprend s</i> 26.	<i>J</i> apprenne2.	learn, may learn.
	<i>Thou</i> learnest, <i>art</i>	<i>Tu</i> 16 <i>apprend s.</i>	<i>Tu</i> apprennes26.	
	<i>He</i> learns, or <i>is</i>	<i>Il</i> apprend26.	<i>Il</i> apprenne.	
	<i>We</i> } learn,	<i>Nous</i> apprenons.	<i>Nous</i> apprenions.	
	<i>You</i> } are learning.	<i>Vous</i> apprenez.	<i>Vous</i> appreniez.	
Imperfect tense.	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> apprennent18.	<i>Ils</i> apprennent.	learned, might learn.
	<i>I</i> } <i>was</i> learning.	<i>J</i> apprenais6.		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> apprenais.		
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> apprenait26.		
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> apprenions.		
Perfect tense.	<i>You</i> } <i>were</i> learning.	<i>Vous</i> appreniez.		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> apprenaient6.		
	<i>I</i> }	<i>J</i> † appris26.	<i>J</i> apprisse2.	
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> appris.	<i>Tu</i> apprisses.	
	<i>He</i> } learned,	<i>Il</i> apprit26.	<i>Il</i> apprit26.	
	<i>We</i> } <i>did</i> learn.	<i>Nous</i> apprimes.	<i>Nous</i> apprissions.	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> apprîtes.	<i>Vous</i> apprissiez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> apprirent18.	<i>Ils</i> apprissent18.	
	<i>I</i> }	<i>J</i> apprendr ai5.		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> apprendr as26.		
Future positive.	<i>He</i> } <i>shall, will</i> learn,	<i>Il</i> apprendr a.		
	<i>We</i> } <i>be</i> learning.	<i>Nous</i> apprendr ons.		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> apprendr ez.		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> apprendr ont26.		
Future conditional.	<i>I</i> }	<i>J</i> apprendr ais6.		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> apprendr ais.		
	<i>He</i> } <i>should, would</i> learn,	<i>Il</i> apprendr ait26.		
	<i>We</i> } <i>be</i> learning.	<i>Nous</i> apprendr ions.		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> apprendr iez.		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> apprendr aient6.		

*Gerund.**Participle.*

Learning.

Apprenant26.

Appris26.

Learned.

*After the same manner as Apprendre, are conjugated**[mistake.*Désapprendre, *to unlearn.**se Méprendre to commit a*Prendre, *to take.**Reprendre, { to take again,*Comprendre, *to comprehend, to understand.**{ to rebuke.*Entreprendre, *to undertake.**Surprendre, to surprise.** Sound only one *p* ; see *pp*, page 15.

† See note † page 47.

*Infinitive.**To drink.**Boi re.**Imperative..**Drink.**Boi s, sing.**Buvez, plur.**Let us drink.**Buvons.**Indicative.*

Present tense.	<i>I</i>	<i>drink, or am</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>23boi s26.</i>
	<i>Thou</i>	<i>drinkest, art</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>boi s.</i>
	<i>He</i>	<i>drinks, or is</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>boi t26.</i>
	<i>We</i>	<i>drink,</i>	<i>Nous</i>	<i>buvons.</i>
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	<i>buvez.</i>
	<i>They</i>	<i>are drinking.</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>boi vent18.</i>

Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i>	<i>was drinking.</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>*buvais6.</i>
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	<i>buvais.</i>
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	<i>buvait26.</i>
	<i>We</i>	<i>were drinking.</i>	<i>Nous</i>	<i>buvions.</i>
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	<i>buviez.</i>
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	<i>buvaient6.</i>

Perfect tense.	<i>I</i>	<i>drank,</i> <i>did drink.</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>*bus26.</i>
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	<i>bus.</i>
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	<i>büt26.</i>
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i>	<i>bûmes.</i>
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	<i>bûtes26</i>
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	<i>burent18.</i>

Future positive.	<i>I</i>	<i>shall, will drink,</i> <i>be drinking.</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>23boir ai5.</i>
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	<i>boir as26.</i>
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	<i>boir a.</i>
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i>	<i>boir ons.</i>
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	<i>boir ez.</i>
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	<i>boir ont26.</i>

Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i>	<i>shd, wd drink,</i> <i>be drinking.</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>23boir ais6.</i>
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	<i>boir ais.</i>
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	<i>boir ait26.</i>
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i>	<i>boir ions.</i>
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	<i>boir iez.</i>
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	<i>boir aient6.</i>

*Gerund.**Drinking.**Buvant26.**Participle.**Bu.**Drunk.**drink, may drink.**drank, might drink.**After the same manner as Boire is conjugated**Reboire, to drink again; to drink afresh.*

Infinitive.

To conclude.

Conclu re.

Imperative.

Conclude.

Conclu s, sing.

Couclu ez, plur.

Let us conclude.

Conclu ons.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense.	<i>I</i> conclude, or am concluding.	<i>Je</i> 21conclu s26
	<i>Thou</i> concludest, art concluding.	<i>Tu</i> conclu s.
	<i>He</i> concludes, or is concluding.	<i>Il</i> conclu t26.
	<i>We</i> } conclude, are concluding.	<i>Nous</i> conclu ons.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> conclu ez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> conclu ent18

<i>Je</i> conclu e2.
<i>Tu</i> conclu es26.
<i>Il</i> conclu e.
<i>Nous</i> conclu ions.
<i>Vous</i> conclu iez.
<i>Ils</i> conclu ent18.

Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> } was concluding.	<i>Je</i> 21conclu ais6.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> conclu ais.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> conclu ait26.
	<i>We</i> } were concluding.	<i>Nous</i> conclu ions.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> conclu iez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> conclu aient6.

Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } concluded, did conclude.	<i>Je</i> 21conclu s26.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> conclu s.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> conclu t26.
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> conclû mes.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> conclû tes.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> conclu rent18.

<i>Je</i> conclu sse2.
<i>Tu</i> conclu sses.
<i>Il</i> conclû t26.
<i>Nous</i> conclu ssions.
<i>Vous</i> conclu ssiez.
<i>Ils</i> conclu ssent18.

Future positive.	<i>I</i> } shall, will conclude, be concluding.	<i>Je</i> 21conclur ai5.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> conclur as26.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> conclur a.
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> conclur ons.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> conclur ez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> conclur ont26.

Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } should, would conclude, be concluding.	<i>Je</i> 21conclur ais6.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> conclur ais.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> conclur ait26.
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> conclur ions.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> conclur iez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> conclur aient6.

*Gerund.**Participle.*

Concluding.

Conclu ant26.

Conclu.

Concluded.

After the same manner as Conclure, is conjugated

Exclure, to exclude; observe only that the *participle* of Exclure is *exclut*, *excluded*.

conclude, may conclude.

concluded, might conclude.

Infinitive.

To know.*

†Connait re.

Imperative.

Know.

Connais, *sing.*

Connaissez, *plur.*

Let us know.

Connaissons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present tense.	I know.	Je	3	†connais	6.	Je	connaisse	2.	know, may know.
	Thou knowest.	Tu		connais.		Tu	connaisse	26.	
	He knows.	Il		connait	26.	Il	connaisse.		
	We	Nous		connaissons.		Nous	connaissons.		
	You	Vous		connaissez.		Vous	connaissez.		
Imperfect tense.	They } know.	Ils		connaissent	18.	Ils	connaissent	18.	knew, might know.
	I	Je		connaissais	6.				
	Thou	Tu		connaissais.					
	He	Il		connaissait	26.				
	We	Nous		connaissons.					
Perfect tense.	You	Vous		connaissez.					
	They } did know.	Ils		connaissaient	6.				
	I	Je		connus	26.	Je	connusse	2.	
	Thou	Tu		connus.		Tu	connusses.		
	He	Il		connut	26.	Il	connût	26.	
Future tense.	We	Nous		connûmes.		Nous	connussions.		
	You	Vous		connûtes.		Vous	connussiez.		
	They } did know.*	Ils		connurent	18.	Ils	connussent	18.	
	I	Je		connaitr ai	5.				
	Thou	Tu		connaitr as	26.				
Future positive.	He	Il		connaitr a.					
	We	Nous		connaitr ons.					
	You	Vous		connaitr ez.					
	They } shall, will know.	Ils		connaitr ont	26.				
	I	Je		connaitr ais	6.				
Future conditional.	Thou	Tu		connaitr ais.					
	He	Il		connaitr ait	26.				
	We	Nous		connaitr ions.					
	You	Vous		connaitr iez.					
	They } should, would know.	Ils		connaitr aient	6.				

Knowing.

Connaissant 26.

Connu.

Known.

After the same manner as Connaitre, are conjugated

Méconnaître, not to know.	Paraître, to appear.
Reconnaître, to know again.	Apparaître, to appear, speaking of ghosts.
Croître, to grow up, to increase.	Comparaître, (a law term,) to appear.
Accroître, to accrue.	Disparaître, to disappear.
Décroître, to decrease.	Pâître, to graze.
Recroître, to grow again.	Repâître, to feed.
Renâître, to revive.	
Naître, to come to life,	{ perf. ind. Naqu -is, -is, -it; -îmes, -îtes, -îrent.
part. né.	{ perf. sub. Naqu-isse, -isses, -it; -issions, -issiez, -issent.

* Meaning to know by sight, or to be acquainted with; as,
I know that man, this horse, that house, your brother, your sister, *i. e.* by sight.
Je connais cet homme, ce cheval, cette maison, votre frère, votre sœur.

See Savoir, p. 127.

† Sound only one n, and lay the accent upon o.

Infinitive.

To sew.

Coud re.

Imperative.

Sew. Coud s, sing.
Let us sew.Cousez, plur.
Cousons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present tense.
I sew, or am
Thou sewest, art
He sews, or is
We }
You } sew,
They } are sewing.

Je 14coud s26.
Tu coud s.
Il coud 26.
Nous cousons.
Vous cousez.*
Ils cousent18.

Je 14couse2.
Tu couses26.
Il couse.
Nous cousions.
Vous cousiez.
Ils cousent18.

sew, may sew.

Imperfect tense.
I }
Thou } was sewing.
He }
We }
You } were sewing.
They }

Je 14cousais6.
Tu cousais.
Il cousait26.
Nous cousions.
Vous cousiez.
Ils cousaient6.

Perfect tense.
I }
Thou }
He } sewed,
We } did sew.
You }
They }

Je 14cousis.†
Tu cousis26.
Il cousit26.
Nous cousîmes.
Vous cousîtes.
Ils cousirent18.

Je 14cousisse2.
Tu cousisses.
Il cousit26.
Nous cousissions.
Vous cousissiez.
Ils cousissent18.

sewed, might sew.

Future positive.
I }
Thou }
He } shll, wll sew,
We } be sewing.
You }
They }

Je 14coudr ai5.
Tu coudr as26.
Il coudr a.
Nous coudr ons.
Vous coudr ez.
Ils coudr ont26.

Fut. conditional.
I }
Thou }
He } shd, wd sew,
We } be sewing.
You }
They }

Je 14coudr ais6.
Tu coudr ais.
Il coudr ait26.
Nous coudr ions.
Vous coudr iez.
Ils coudr aient6.

Gerund.

Participle.

Sewing. Cousant26.

Cousu. Sewed.

After the same manner as Coudre, are conjugated

Découdre, to unsew.

Recoudre, to sew again.

* See s between two vowels, page 17.

† See note 4, page 4.

Infinitive.

To believe.

Croire.

Imperative.

Believe. Crois, *sing.*
Let us believe.

Croyez, *plur.*
Croyons.

Indicative.

Present tense.
I believe. *Je* 3 croi s26.
Thou believest. *Tu* 23crois s.
He believes. *Il* croi t26.
We } *Nous* croyons.
You } believe. *Vous* croyez4.
They } *Ils* croi ent18.

Imperfect tense.
I } *Je* 23crois4.
Thou } *Tu* croyais.
He } *Il* croyait26.
We } did believe. *Nous* croyions.
You } *Vous* croyiez.
They } *Ils* croyaient6.

Perfect tense.
I } *Je* crus26.
Thou } *Tu* crus.*
He } believed, *Il* crut26.
We } did believe. *Nous* crûmes.
You } *Vous* crûtes.
They } *Ils* crurent18.

Future positive.
I } *Je* 23croir ai5.
Thou } *Tu* croir as26.
He } shall, will *Il* croir a.
We } believe. *Nous* croir ons.
You } *Vous* croir ez.
They } *Ils* croir ont26.

Fut. conditional.
I } *Je* 23croir ais6.
Thou } *Tu* croir ais.
He } should, would *Il* croir ait26.
We } believe. *Nous* croir ions.
You } *Vous* croir iez.
They } *Ils* croir aient6.

Subjunctive.

Je 23croi e.
Tu croi es26.
Il croi e.
Nous croyions.
Vous croyiez4.
Ils croi ent18.

believe, may believe.

believed, might believe.

Je crusse2.
Tu crusses.
Il crût26.
Nous crussions.
Vous crussiez.
Ils crussent18.

Gerund.

Believing. Croyant26.

Participle.

Cru. Believed.

Infinitive.

To say, To tell.

Di re.

Imperative.

Say.

Di s, sing.

Dites, plur.

Let us say.

Di sons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> say, or am	<i>Je</i> di s26.
	<i>Thou</i> sayest, art	<i>Tu</i> di s.
	<i>He</i> says, or is	<i>Il</i> di t26.
	<i>We</i> } say,	<i>Nous</i> di sons.
	<i>You</i> } are saying.	<i>Vous</i> dites26.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> di sent18.

<i>Je</i> di se2.
<i>Tu</i> di scs26.
<i>Il</i> di se.
<i>Nous</i> di sions.
<i>Vous</i> di siez.
<i>Ils</i> di sent18.

say, may say.

Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> } was saying.	<i>Je</i> di sais6.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> di sais.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> di sait26.
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> di sions.
	<i>You</i> } were saying.	<i>Vous</i> di siez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> di saient6.

Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> di s26.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> di s.
	<i>He</i> } said,	<i>Il</i> di t26.
	<i>We</i> } did say.	<i>Nous</i> di mes.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> di tes.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> di rent18.

<i>Je</i> di sse2.
<i>Tu</i> di sses.
<i>Il</i> di t26.
<i>Nous</i> di ssions.
<i>Vous</i> di ssiez.
<i>Ils</i> di ssent18.

said, might say.

Future positive.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> dir ai5.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> dir as26.
	<i>He</i> } shll, will say,	<i>Il</i> dir a.
	<i>We</i> } be saying.	<i>Nous</i> dir ons.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> dir ez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> dir ont26.

Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> dir ais6.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> dir ais.
	<i>He</i> } shd, wd say,	<i>Il</i> dir ait26
	<i>We</i> } be saying.	<i>Nous</i> dir ions.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> dir iez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> dir aient6.

Saying.

Di sant26.

Di t26.

Said.

After the same manner as Dire, are conjugate.

Contredire, to contradict.
 se Dédire, to retract, to recant.
 Interdire, to interdict.
 Maudire, to curse.
 Médire, to slander.

Prédire, to foretell.
 Redire, to say again.
 Confire, to confect, preserve fruit in sugar.
 Circoncire, to circumcise. part. Circoncis.
 Suffire, to be sufficient. part. Suffi.

Observe only, that except Redire, the second person plural of the present of the indicative, and of the imperative of all these verbs ends in *sez*. and not in *tes*; so, *Vous confisez*, *Vous contredisez*; and that in Maudire the *s* is doubled in the middle of the word; so, *Nous maudissons*, *Vous maudissez*; *Je maudissais*, &c. not *Nous maudisons*, &c.

Infinitive.

To write.

Ecri re.

Imperative.

Write.

Ecri s, sing.

Ecri vez, plur.

Let us write.

Ecri vons.

Indicative.

Present tense.
I write, or am
Thou writest, art
He writes, or is
We } write,
You } are writing.
They }

writing.
*J** écri s26.
Tu écri s.†
Il écri t26.
Nous écri vons.
Vous écri vez.
Ils écri vent18.

Subjunctive.
J écri ve2.
Tu écri ves26.
Il écri ve.
Nous écri vions.
Vous écri viez.
Ils écri vent18.

write, may write.

Imperfect tense.
I }
Thou } was writing.
He }
We }
You } were writing.
They }

*J** écri vais6.
Tu écri vais.
Il écri vait26.
Nous écri vions.
Vous écri viez.
Ils écri vaient6

Perfect tense.
I }
Thou } wrote,
He } did write.
We }
You }
They }

J écri vis.†
Tu écri vis.
Il écri vit26.
Nous écri vimes.
Vous écri vites.
Ils écri virent18.

J écri visse2.
Tu écri visses.
Il écri vit26.
Nous écri vissions.
Vous écri vissiez.
Ils écri vissent18.

wrote, might write.

Future positive.
I }
Thou }
He } shll, wll write,
We } be writing.
You }
They }

J écri ai5.
Tu écri as26.
Il écri a.
Nous écri ons.
Vous écri ez.
Ils écri ont26.

Future conditional.
I }
Thou }
He } shd, wd write,
We } be writing.
You }
They }

J écri ais6.
Tu écri ais.
Il écri ait26.
Nous écri ions.
Vous écri iez.
Ils écri aient6.

Gerund

Writing.

Ecri vant26.

Participle.

Ecri t26.

Written.

After the same manner as Ecrire, are conjugated

Circonscrire, to circumscribe.

Proscrire, to proscribe.

Décrire, to describe.

Récrire, to write again.

Inscrire, to inscribe

Souscrire, to subscribe.

Prescrire, to prescribe.

Transcrire, to transcribe, to copy.

* See note † page 47.

† See note 4, page 4.

*Infinitive.**To do, To make.**Fai re.**Imperative.*Do.
Let us do.

Fai s, sing.

Faites, plur.
Fai sons.*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense.
I do, or am
Thou doest, art
He does, or is
We } do,
You } are doing.
They }

doing.
Je 3 fai s6.
Tu fai s.
Il fai t26
Nous fai sons.
Vous faites.
Ils font26.

Je fasse2.†
Tu fasses26.
Il fasse.
Nous fassions.
Vous fassiez.
Ils fassent18.

do, may do.

Imperfect tense.
I }
Thou } was doing.
He }
We }
You } were doing.
They }

Je fai sais6.
Tu fai sais.*
Il fai sait26.
Nous fai sions.
Vous fai siez.
Ils fai saient6.

Perfect tense.
I }
Thou }
He } did, or made.
We }
You }
They }

Je fis26.
Tu fis.
Il fit26.
Nous fimes.
Vous fites.
Ils firent18.

Je fisse2.
Tu fisses.
Il fit26.
Nous fissions.
Vous fissiez.
Ils fissent18.

did, might do.

Future positive.
I }
Thou }
He } shll, will do,
We } be doing.
You }
They }

Je †ferai5.
Tu feras26.
Il fera.
Nous ferons.
Vous ferez.
Ils feront26.

Full conditional.
I }
Thou }
He } shd, wd do,
We } be doing.
You }
They }

Je †ferais6.
Tu ferais.
Il ferait26.
Nous ferions.
Vous feriez.
Ils feraient6.

*Gerund.**Participle.*

Doing.

Fai sant26.

Fai t26.

Done, made.

After the same manner as Faire, are conjugated

Contrefaire, to counterfeit.
 Défaire, to undo, to defeat.
 se Défaire, to get rid of.
 Redefaire, to undo again.

Refaire, to do again.
 Satisfaire, to satisfy.
 Surfaire, to exact, to ask too much.

* See s between two vowels, page 17. † Pronounce *fray, fraw*, &c. ‡ See *se*, p. 18.

Infinitive.

To pretend, To feign.

Feindre.

Imperative.

Pretend. Feins, *sing.*
Let us pretend.

Feignez, *plur.*
Feignons.

Indicative.

Present tense.
I pretend. *Je* 3 feins 26.
Thou pretendest. *Tu* 19 feins.
He pretends. *Il* feint 26.
We } pretend. *Nous* feignons.
You } *Vous* feignez.
They } *Ils* feignent 18.

Imperfect tense.
I } was pretend- *Je* 19 feignais 6.
Thou } ing. *Tu* feignais.
He } *Il* feignait 26.
We } were pretend- *Nous* feignions.
You } ing. *Vous* feigniez.
They } *Ils* feignaient 6.

Perfect tense.
I } pretended, *Je* 19 feignis 26.
Thou } *Tu* feignis.
He } did pretend. *Il* feignit 26.
We } *Nous* feignîmes.
You } *Vous* feignîtes.
They } *Ils* feignirent 18.

Future positive.
I } shall, will *Je* 19 feindrai 5.
Thou } pretend. *Tu* feindras 26.
He } *Il* feindra a.
We } *Nous* feindrons.
You } *Vous* feindrez.
They } *Ils* feindront 26.

Fut. conditional.
I } should, would *Je* 19 feindrais 6.
Thou } pretend. *Tu* feindrais.
He } *Il* feindrait 26.
We } *Nous* feindrions.
You } *Vous* feindriez.
They } *Ils* feindraient 6.

Pretending.

Feignant 26.

Feint 26. Pretended.

pretend, may pretend.

pretended, might pretend.

After the same manner as Feindre, is conjugated

Astreindre, to tie, to bind.
Craindre, to fear.
Contraindre, to constrain.
Ceindre, to gird.
Enceindre, to encompass.
Joindre, to join.
Conjoindre, to unite.
Déjoindre, to disjoin.
Enjoindre, to enjoin.
Enfreindre, to infringe.

Oindre, to anoint.
Teindre, to die.
Déteindre, to take off the die.
Eteindre, to extinguish, to put out.
Atteindre, to reach.
Peindre, to paint.
Plaindre, to pity.
se Plaindre, to complain.
Restreindre, to restrain, to limit.
Epreindre, to squeeze out, to strain.

Infinitive.

To instruct.

Instrui re.

Imperative.

Instruct.

Instrui s, sing.

Instrui sez, plur.

Let us instruct.

Instrui sons.

Indicative.

Present tense.
I instruct, or am
Thou instructest, art
He instructs, or is
We } instruct, are
You } instructing.
They }

*instru*cting.
J 19instrui s26.
Tu instrui s.
Il instrui t26.
Nous instrui sons.
Vous instrui sez.
Ils instrui sent18.

Subjunctive.

J instrui se6.
Tu instrui ses26.
Il instrui se.
Nous instrui sions.
Vous instrui siez.
Ils instrui sent18.

Imperfect tense.
I } was instruct-
Thou } ing.
He }
We } were instruct-
You } ing.
They }

J 19instrui sais6.
Tu instrui sais.
Il instrui sait26.
Nous instrui sions.
Vous instrui siez.
Ils instrui saient6.

Perfect tense.
I }
Thou }
He } instructed,
We } did instruct.
You }
They }

J 19instrui sis26.
Tu instrui sis.
Il instrui sit26.
Nous instrui simes.
Vous instrui sites.
Ils instrui sirent6.

J instrui sisse2.
Tu instrui sisses.
Il instrui sit26.
Nous instrui sissions.
Vous instrui sissiez.
Ils instrui sissent.

Future positive.
I }
Thou } shall, will
He } instruct,
We } be instructing.
You }
They }

J 19instruire ai5.
Tu instruire as26.
Il instruire a.
Nous instruire ons.
Vous instruire ez.
Ils instruire ont26.

Future conditional.
I }
Thou } should, would
He } instruct,
We } be instructing.
You }
They }

J 19instruire ais.
Tu instruire ais.
Il instruire ait26.
Nous instruire ions.
Vous instruire iez.
Ils instruire aient6.

Gerund.

Instructing.

Instrui sant26.

Participle.

Instrui t26. Instructed.

After the same manner as Instruire, are conjugated

Conduire, to conduct.

Reconduire, to take or lead back.

Construire, to construct.

Cuire, to do victuals, to cook.*

Recuire, to do or cook over again.

Déduire, to deduct.

Détruire, to destroy.

Enduire, to daub.

Introduire, to introduce.

Luire, } to shine, part. Lui, Relui.

Reluire, }

Nuire, to hurt, to injure, part. Nui.

Produire, to produce.

Réduire, to reduce, to compel.

Séduire, to seduce.

Traduire, to translate.

* To cook, followed by an object, is generally expressed by *Faire cuire* ; as, I cook, or am cooking meat, fish, &c. *Je fais cuire de la viande, du poisson, &c.*

Infinitive.

To read.

*Li re.

Imperative.

Read.

Li s, sing.

Li sez, plur.

Let us read.

Li sons.

Indicative.

Present tense.	I read, or am	Je3	*li s26.
	Thou readest, art	Tu	li s.
	He reads, or is	Il	li t26.
	We	Nous	li sons.†
	You } read,	Vous	li sez.
	They } are reading.	Ils	li sent18.

Imperfect tense.	I	Je	*li sais6.
	Thou } was reading.	Tu	li sais.†
	He	Il	li sait26.
	We	Nous	li sions.
	You } were reading.	Vous	li siez.
	They }	Ils	li saient6.

Perfect tense.	I	Je	lus 26.
	Thou	Tu	†lus.
	He	Il	lut26.
	We	Nous	lûmes.
	You } did read.	Vous	lûtes.
	They }	Ils	lurent18.

Future positive.	I	Je	*lir ai5.
	Thou	Tu	lir as26.
	He	Il	lir a.
	We	Nous	lir ons.
	You } shll, will read, be reading.	Vous	lir ez.
	They }	Ils	lir ont26.

Fut. conditional.	I	Je	*lir ais6.
	Thou	Tu	lir ais.
	He	Il	lir ait26.
	We	Nous	lir ions.
	You } shd, wd read, be reading.	Vous	lir iez.
	They }	Ils	lir aient6.

Gerund.

Reading.

Li sant26.

Participle.

Lu.

Read.

After the same manner as Lire, are conjugated

Elire, to elect.

Relire, to read again.

read, may read.

read, might read.

* See note 4, page 4.

† See p. 17, s between two vowels.

‡ See note 2, page 1.

Infinitive.

To put.

*Mett re.

Imperative.

Put.

Mets, sing.

Mett ez, plur.

Let us put.

Mett ons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present tense
I put, or am
Thou putttest, art
He puts, or is
We } put,
You } are putting.
They }

putting.
Je 3 mets26.
Tu mets.
Il met26.
Nous mett ons.
Vous mett ez.
Ils mett ent18.

Je *mett e.
Tu mett es26.
Il mett e.
Nous mett ions.
Vous mett iez.
Ils mett ent18.

put, may put.

Imperfect tense.
I }
Thou } was putting.
He }
We }
You } were putting.
They }

Je *mett ais6.
Tu mett ais.
Il mett ait26.
Nous mett ions.
Vous mett iez.
Ils mett aient6.

Perfect tense.
I }
Thou }
He } put,
We } did put.
You }
They }

Je †mis26.
Tu mis.
Il mit26.
Nous mimes.
Vous mites.
Ils mirent16.

Je †misse2.
Tu misses.
Il mit26.
Nous missions.
Vous missiez.
Ils missent18.

put, might put.

Future positive.
I }
Thou }
He } shall, will put,
We } be putting.
You }
They }

Je *mettr ai5.
Tu mettr as26.
Il mettr a.
Nous mettr ons.
Vous mettr ez.
Ils mettr ont26.

Fut. conditional.
I }
Thou }
He } shd, wd put,
We } be putting.
You }
They }

Je *mettr ais6.
Tu mettr ais.
Il mettr ait26.
Nous mettr ions.
Vous mettr iez.
Ils mettr aient6.

Gerund.

Participle.

Putting.

Mett ant26.

Mis.

Put.

After the same manner as Mettre, are conjugated

Admettre, to admit.

Omettre, to omit.

Commettre, to commit.

Permettre, to permit.

Compromettre, to compromise.

Promettre, to promise.

Démettre, to put out of joint.

Remettre, to put again, to deliver up.

se Démettre, to abdicate.

Soumettre, to submit.

s'Entremettre, to intermeddle.

Transmettre, to transmit.

* Sound only one t.

† See note 4, page 4.

*Infinitive.**To grind.**Moudre.**Imperative.*

Grind. Moudre, *sing.*
 Let us grind.

Moulez, *plur.*
 Moulons.

Indicative.

Present tense.
I grind, or am grinding. *Je* 14moudre26.
Thou grindest, art grinding. *Tu* moudre s.
He grinds, or is grinding. *Il* moudre26.
We } grind, *Nous* moulons.
You } are grinding. *Vous* moulez.
They } *Ils* moulent18.

Subjunctive.

Je 14moules2.
Tu moules26.
Il moule.
Nous moulions.
Vous mouliez.
Ils moulent18.

grind, may grind.

Imperfect tense.
I } was grinding. *Je* 14moulais6.
Thou } *Tu* moulais.
He } *Il* moulait26.
We } *Nous* moulions.
You } were grinding. *Vous* mouliez.
They } *Ils* molaient6.

Perfect tense.
I } ground, *Je* 14moulus26.
Thou } did grind. *Tu* moulus.*
He } *Il* moulut26.
We } *Nous* moulûmes.
You } *Vous* moulûtes.
They } *Ils* moulurent18.

Je 14moulusse2.
Tu moulusses.
Il moulût26.
Nous moulussions.
Vous moulussiez.
Ils moulussent18.

ground, might grind.

Future positive.
I } shall, will grind, *Je* 14moudrai5.
Thou } be grinding. *Tu* moudras26.
He } *Il* moudra.
We } *Nous* moudrons.
You } *Vous* moudrez.
They } *Ils* moudront26.

Future conditional.
I } should, would grind, *Je* 14moudrais6.
Thou } be grinding. *Tu* moudrais.
He } *Il* moudrait26.
We } *Nous* moudrions.
You } *Vous* moudriez.
They } *Ils* moudraient6.

Gerund.

Grinding.

Moulant26.

Participle.

Moulu.

Ground.

After the same manner as Moudre, are conjugated

Emoudre, to grind, to whet.

Rémoudre, to grind again.

* See note 2, page 1.

*Infinitive.**To please.**Plai re.**Imperative.*

Please. *Plai s, sing.*
Let us please.

Plai sez, plur.
Plai sons.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

I please. *Je plai s6.*
Thou pleasest. *Tu plai s.*
He pleases. *Il plai t26.*
We } *please.* *Nous plai sons.*
You } *Vous plai sez.**
They } *Ils plai sent18.*

Je plai se2.
Tu plai ses26.
Il plai se.
Nous plai sions.
Vous plai siez.
Ils plai sent18.

I } *did please.* *Je plai sais6.*
Thou } *Tu plai sais.**
He } *Il plai sait26.*
We } *Nous plai sions.*
You } *Vous plai siez.*
They } *Ils plai saient6.*

I } *pleased,* *Je †plus26.*
Thou } *did please.* *Tu plus.*
He } *Il plut26.*
We } *Nous plumes.*
You } *Vous plûtes.*
They } *Ils plurent18.*

Je †plusse2.
Tu plusses.
Il plût26.
Nous plussions.
Vous plussiez.
Ils plussent18.

I } *shall,* *Je plair ai5.*
Thou } *will please.* *Tu plair as26.*
He } *Il plair a.*
We } *Nous plair ons.*
You } *Vous plair ez.*
They } *Ils plair ont26.*

I } *should,* *Je plair ais6.*
Thou } *would please.* *Tu plair ais.*
He } *Il plair ait26.*
We } *Nous plair ions.*
You } *Vous plair iez.*
They } *Ils plair aient6.*

*Gerund.**Participle.*

Pleasing. *Plai sant26.*

Plu. *Pleased.*

After the same manner as Plaire, are conjugated

Complaire, to comply.

se Plaire, to delight in.

Déplaire, to displease.

se Taire, to hold one's tongue, to be silent.

* See s between two vowels, page 17.

† See note 2, page 1.

please, may please.

pleased, might please.

*Infinitive.**To resolve, To dissolve.**Résoud re.**Imperative.*Resolve. Résous, *sing.*
Let us resolve.Résolvez, *plur.*
Résolvons.*Indicative.*

Present tense.

<i>I</i> resolve, or am resolving.	<i>Je</i> 14résous26.
<i>Thou</i> resolvest, art resolving.	<i>Tu</i> résous.
<i>He</i> resolves, or is resolving.	<i>Il</i> résout26.
<i>We</i> resolve, are resolving.	<i>Nous</i> résolvons.
<i>You</i> resolve, are resolving.	<i>Vous</i> résolvez.
<i>They</i> resolve, are resolving.	<i>Ils</i> résolvent18.

Imperfect tense.

<i>I</i> was resolving.	<i>Je</i> résolvais6.
<i>Thou</i> was resolving.	<i>Tu</i> résolvais.
<i>He</i> was resolving.	<i>Il</i> résolvait.
<i>We</i> were resolving.	<i>Nous</i> résolvions.
<i>You</i> were resolving.	<i>Vous</i> résolviez.
<i>They</i> were resolving.	<i>Ils</i> résolvaient6.

Perfect tense.

<i>I</i> resolved, did resolve.	<i>Je</i> résolus26.
<i>Thou</i> resolved, did resolve.	<i>Tu</i> résolus.
<i>He</i> resolved, did resolve.	<i>Il</i> résolut26.
<i>We</i> resolved, did resolve.	<i>Nous</i> résolûmes.
<i>You</i> resolved, did resolve.	<i>Vous</i> résolûtes.
<i>They</i> resolved, did resolve.	<i>Ils</i> résolurent18.

Future positive.

<i>I</i> shall, will resolve, be resolving.	<i>Je</i> 14résoudrai5.
<i>Thou</i> shall, will resolve, be resolving.	<i>Tu</i> résoudras26.
<i>He</i> shall, will resolve, be resolving.	<i>Il</i> résoudra.
<i>We</i> shall, will resolve, be resolving.	<i>Nous</i> résoudrons.
<i>You</i> shall, will resolve, be resolving.	<i>Vous</i> résoudrez.
<i>They</i> shall, will resolve, be resolving.	<i>Ils</i> résoudront26.

Fut. conditional.

<i>I</i> should, would resolve, be resolving.	<i>Je</i> 14résoudrais6.
<i>Thou</i> should, would resolve, be resolving.	<i>Tu</i> résoudrais.
<i>He</i> should, would resolve, be resolving.	<i>Il</i> résoudrait26.
<i>We</i> should, would resolve, be resolving.	<i>Nous</i> résoudrions.
<i>You</i> should, would resolve, be resolving.	<i>Vous</i> résoudriez.
<i>They</i> should, would resolve, be resolving.	<i>Ils</i> résoudraient6.

Subjunctive.

Je résolve2.
Tu résolves26.
Il résolve.
Nous résolvions.
Vous résolviez.
Ils résolvent18.

resolve, may resolve.

resolved, might resolve.

*Gerund.*Resolving. } Résolvant26.
Dissolving. }*Participle.*Résolu. Resolved, determined.
Résous. Melted, dissolved.**After the same manner as Résoudre, are conjugated*Absoudre, *to absolve*, part. Absous, *absolved*; and Dissoudre, *to dissolve*, part. Dissous, *dissolved*.*N. B.* These two verbs have no *perfect tense*.* As, *Le soleil a resous le brouillard en pluie.* The sun has melted the mist into rain.

*Infinitive.**To laugh.**Ri re.**Imperative.*Laugh.
Let us laugh.*Ri s, sing.**Ri ez, plur.*
*Ri ons.**Indicative.*

Present tense.	<i>I</i> laugh, or am	<i>Je</i> 3 *ri s26.
	<i>Thou</i> laughest, art	<i>Tu</i> ri s.
	<i>He</i> laughs, or is	<i>Il</i> ri t26.
	<i>We</i> } laugh,	<i>Nous</i> ri ons.
	<i>You</i> } are laughing.	<i>Vous</i> ri ez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> ri ent18.

Subjunctive.

<i>Je</i> *ri e2.
<i>Tu</i> ri es26.
<i>Il</i> ri e.
<i>Nous</i> ryons4.
<i>Vous</i> ryez.
<i>Ils</i> ri ent18.

laugh, may laugh.

Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> *ri ais6.
	<i>Thou</i> } was laughing.	<i>Tu</i> ri ais.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> ri ait26.
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> ryons4.
	<i>You</i> } were laughing.	<i>Vous</i> ryez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> ri aient6.

Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> *ri s26.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> ri s.
	<i>He</i> } laughed,	<i>Il</i> ri t26.
	<i>We</i> } did laugh.	<i>Nous</i> ri mes.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> ri tes.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> ri rent18.

<i>Je</i> *ri sse2.
<i>Tu</i> ri sses.
<i>Il</i> ri t26.
<i>Nous</i> ri ssions.
<i>Vous</i> ri ssiez.
<i>Ils</i> ri ssent18.

laughed, might laugh.

Future positive.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> *rir ai5.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> rir as26.
	<i>He</i> } shall, will	<i>Il</i> rir a.
	<i>We</i> } laugh,	<i>Nous</i> rir ons.
	<i>You</i> } be laughing.	<i>Vous</i> rir ez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> rir ont26.

Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> *rir ais6.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> rir ais.
	<i>He</i> } should, would	<i>Il</i> rir ait26.
	<i>We</i> } laugh,	<i>Nous</i> rir ions.
	<i>You</i> } be laughing.	<i>Vous</i> rir iez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> rir aient6.

*Gerund.*Laughing. *Ri ant*26.*Participle.**Ri.* Laughed.*After the same manner as Rire, are conjugated**Sourire, to smile.**Frيره, to fry, part. Frit, fried.*

N. B. *Frيره* is used only in the 1st, 2d, and 3d person of the present of the indicative, *je fris, tu fris, il frit*; in the future, *je frirai, tu friras, &c.* and in the conditional, *je frirais, tu frirais, &c.*; the other tenses are formed with the verb *Faire*, and the infinitive of this verb; so, *We fry, nous faisons frيره*; *you fry, vous faites frيره*; *they fry. ils font frيره.*

Fry this fish, these eggs, that meat. *Faites frيره ce poisson, ces œufs, cette viande.*

Infinitive.

To follow.

Suiv re.

Imperative.

Follow. Suis, *sing.*
Let us follow.

Suiv ez, plur.
Suiv ons.

Indicative.

Present tense.
I follow, or am following. Je 3 suis 26.
Thou followest, art following. Tu 23 suis.
He follows, or is following. Il suit 26.
We follow, are following. Nous suiv ons.
You follow, are following. Vous suiv ez.
They follow, are following. Ils suiv ent 18.

Subjunctive.

Je suiv e 2.
Tu suiv es 26.
Il suiv e.
Nous suiv ions.
Vous suiv iez.
Ils suiv ent 18.

follow, may follow.

Imperfect tense.
I was following. Je 23 suiv ais 6.
Thou was following. Tu suiv ais.
He was following. Il suiv ait 26.
We were following. Nous suiv ions.
You were following. Vous suiv iez.
They were following. Ils suiv aient 6.

Perfect tense.
I followed, did follow. Je 23 suiv is 26.
Thou followed, did follow. Tu suiv is.
He followed, did follow. Il suiv it 26.
We followed, did follow. Nous suiv îmes.
You followed, did follow. Vous suiv îtes.
They followed, did follow. Ils suiv irent 18.

Je suiv isse 2.
Tu suiv isses.
Il suiv ît 26.
Nous suiv issions.
Vous suiv issiez.
Ils suiv issent 18.

followed, might follow.

Future positive.
I shall, will follow, be following. Je 23 suivr ai 5.
Thou shall, will follow, be following. Tu suivr as 26.
He shall, will follow, be following. Il suivr a.
We shall, will follow, be following. Nous suivr ons.
You shall, will follow, be following. Vous suivr ez.
They shall, will follow, be following. Ils suivr ont 26.

Future conditional.
I should, would follow, be following. Je 23 suivr ais 6.
Thou should, would follow, be following. Tu suivr ais.
He should, would follow, be following. Il suivr ait 26.
We should, would follow, be following. Nous suivr ions.
You should, would follow, be following. Vous suivr iez.
They should, would follow, be following. Ils suivr aient 6.

Gerund.

Following. Suiv ant 26.

Participle.

Suiv i. Followed.

After the same manner as Suivre, are conjugated

s'Ensuire, to follow from, i. e. a consequence.
Poursuire, to pursue.

Infinitive.

To milk.

Traire.

Imperative.

Milk.

Trais, sing.

Trayez, plur.

Let us milk.

Trayons.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

Present tense.	I milk, or am milking.	Je	trais6.
	Thou milkest, art milking.	Tu	trais.
	He milks, or is milking.	Il	trais26.
	We } milk,	Nous	trayons4.
	You } are milking.	Vous	trayez.
	They	Ils	traient18.

Je	traies2.
Tu	traies26.
Il	traie.
Nous	trayions.
Vous	trayiez.
Ils	traient18.

Imperfect tense.	I } was milking.	Je	traisais6.
	Thou } was milking.	Tu	traisais.
	He } was milking.	Il	traisait26.
	We } were milking.	Nous	trayions.
	You } were milking.	Vous	trayiez.
	They	Ils	trayaient6.

Perfect tense	I } milked,	Je	tirai.*
	Thou } did milk.	Tu	tiras26.
	He } did milk.	Il	tira.
	We } did milk.	Nous	tirâmes.
	You } did milk.	Vous	tirâtes.
	They	Ils	tirèrent18.

Je	tirasse2.
Tu	tirasses.
Il	tirât26.
Nous	tirassions.
Vous	tirassiez.
Ils	tirassent18.

Future positive.	I } shall, will milk,	Je	trairai5.
	Thou } shall, will milk,	Tu	trairas26.
	He } shall, will milk,	Il	traira.
	We } be milking.	Nous	trairons.
	You } be milking.	Vous	trairez.
	They	Ils	trairont26.

Future conditional.	I } shld, wld milk,	Je	trairais6.
	Thou } shld, wld milk,	Tu	trairais.
	He } shld, wld milk,	Il	trairait26.
	We } be milking.	Nous	trairions.
	You } be milking.	Vous	trairiez.
	They	Ils	trairaient6.

*Gerund.**Participles.*

Milking. Trayant.

Traisant. Milked.

After the same manner as Traire, are conjugated

Abstraire, to abstract.

Rentreire, to fine-draw.

Distraire, to disturb one's attention. Soustraire, to subtract.

Extraire, to extract.

N. B. These verbs have no perfect tense.

* Traire having no perfect tense, we supply its place with the perfect of the verb tirer, which may be used in the same sense as traire; example,
I milked my cows, my goats, &c. Je tirai mes vaches, mes chèvres, &c.

Infinitive.

To vanquish.

Vainc re.

Imperative.

Vanquish.

Vainc s, sing.

Vainquez, plur.

Let us vanquish.

Vainquons.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present tense.
I vanquish, or *am*
Thou vanquishest, *art*
He vanquishes, or *is*
We } vanquish,
You } are vanquish-
They } ing.

Je 3 vainc s26.
Tu 19 vainc s.
Il vainc *.
Nous vainquons.
Vous vainquez.†
Ils vainquent18.

Je vainque.†
Tu vainques26.
Il vainque.
Nous vainquions.
Vous vainquiez.
Ils vainquent18.

may vanquish.

Imperfect tense.
I } *was* vanquish-
Thou } ing.
He }
We } *were* vanquish-
You } ing.
They }

Je 19 vainquais6.
Tu vainquais.†
Il vainquait26.
Nous vainquions.
Vous vainquiez.
Ils vainquaient6.

Perfect tense.
I }
Thou }
He } vanquished,
We } *did* vanquish.
You }
They }

Je 19 vainquis26.
Tu vainquis.†
Il vainquit26.
Nous vainquîmes.
Vous vainquîtes.
Ils vainquirent18.

Je vainquisse2.
Tu vainquisses.
Il vainquit26.
Nous vainquissions.
Vous vainquissiez.
Ils vainquissent18.

might vanquish.

Future positive.
I }
Thou } *shall, will* van-
He } quish,
We } *be* vanquish-
You } ing.
They }

Je 19 vaincr ai5.
Tu vaincr as26.
Il vaincr a.
Nous vaincr ons.
Vous vaincr ez.
Ils vaincr ont26.

Future conditional.
I }
Thou } *should, would*
He } vanquish,
We } *be* vanquish-
You } ing.
They }

Je 19 vaincr ais6.
Tu vaincr ais.
Il vaincr ait26.
Nous vaincr ions.
Vous vaincr iez.
Ils vaincr aient6.

Gerund.

Participle.

Vanquishing.

*Vainquant*26.

Vaincu.

Vanquished.

After the same manner as Vaincre, is conjugated

Convaincre, to convince.

* The 1st, 2d, and 3d person *singular* of the *present* of the *indicative*, are not much used.

† See *qu*, page 16.

*Infinitive.**To live, To have life.***Viv re.**Imperative.**Live.**Vis, sing.**Viv ez, plur.**Let us live.**Viv ons.**Indicative.**Subjunctive.**I live.**Je3 †vis26.**Je viv e2.**Thou livest.**Tu vis.**Tu viv es26.**He lives.**Il vit26.**Il viv e.**We } live.**Nous viv ons.**Nous viv ions.**You } live.**Vous viv ez.**Vous viv iez.**They } live.**Ils viv ent18.**Ils viv ent18.**I } did live.**Je †viv ais6.**Thou } did live.**Tu viv ais.**He } did live.**Il viv ait26.**We } did live.**Nous viv ions.**You } did live.**Vous viv iez.**They } did live.**Ils viv aient6.**I } lived, did live.**Je vécus.†**Je vécusse2.**Thou } lived, did live.**Tu vécus.**Tu vécusses.**He } lived, did live.**Il vécut26.**Il vécût26.**We } lived, did live.**Nous vécûmes.**Nous vécussions.**You } lived, did live.**Vous vécûtes.**Vous vécussiez.**They } lived, did live.**Ils vécurent18.**Ils vécussent18.**I } shall, will live.**Je †vivr ai5.**Thou } shall, will live.**Tu vivr as26.**He } shall, will live.**Il vivr a.**We } shall, will live.**Nous vivr ons.**You } shall, will live.**Vous vivr ez.**They } shall, will live.**Ils vivr ont26.**I } should, would live.**Je †vivr ais6.**Thou } should, would live.**Tu vivr ais.**He } should, would live.**Il vivr ait26.**We } should, would live.**Nous vivr ions.**You } should, would live.**Vous vivr iez.**They } should, would live.**Ils vivr aient6.**Gerund.**Participle.**Living.**Viv ant26.**Vécu.**Lived.**After the same manner as Vivre, are conjugated**Revivre, to revive, to come to life again. Survivre, to survive, to outlive.*

* *To live, meaning to dwell, is expressed by demeurer ; as,
We live in London, in town, in the country.*

Nous demeurons à Londres, à la ville, à la campagne.

† See note 4, page 4.

‡ See note 2, page 1.

*live, may live.**lived, might live.*

TABLES showing how to conjugate all the verbs in RE, both regular and irregular.*

	Inf.	Ger. Part.		Inf.	Ger. Part.	
	Attend <i>re</i> ,	ant, u.		Boi <i>re</i> ,	buvant, bu.	
	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Imp. Subj.</i>		<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Imp. Subj.</i>	
<i>Pres. tense.</i>	<i>J'</i> Attend <i>s</i> ,	<i>s</i> , <i>e</i>		<i>Boi s</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>ve</i>
	<i>Tu</i> <i>s</i> ,	<i>s</i> , <i>es</i>		<i>s</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>ves</i>
	<i>Il</i> <i>ait</i>	<i>e</i>		<i>t</i>	<i>t</i>	<i>ve</i>
	<i>Nous</i> <i>ons</i> ,	<i>ons</i> , <i>ions</i>		<i>bu</i> <i>bons</i> ,	<i>bu</i> <i>bons</i> ,	<i>bu</i> <i>bons</i>
	<i>Vous</i> <i>ez</i> ,	<i>ez</i> , <i>iez</i>		<i>vent</i> .	<i>buvez</i> ,	<i>buvez</i>
	<i>Ils</i> <i>ent</i> .	<i>ent</i> .			<i>vent</i> .	<i>vent</i> .
<i>Imp. tense.</i>	<i>J'</i> <i>ais</i>			<i>bu</i> <i>vais</i>		
	<i>Tu</i> <i>ais</i>			<i>bu</i> <i>vais</i>		
	<i>Il</i> <i>ait</i>			<i>bu</i> <i>vait</i>		
	<i>Nous</i> <i>ions</i>			<i>bu</i> <i>vions</i>		
	<i>Vous</i> <i>iez</i>			<i>bu</i> <i>viez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i> <i>aient</i> .			<i>bu</i> <i>vient</i> .		
<i>Perf. tense.</i>	<i>J'</i> <i>is</i>	<i>isse</i>		<i>bu</i>		<i>busse</i>
	<i>Tu</i> <i>is</i>	<i>isses</i>		<i>bu</i>		<i>busses</i>
	<i>Il</i> <i>it</i>	<i>it</i>		<i>bu</i>		<i>bût</i>
	<i>Nous</i> <i>îmes</i>	<i>issions</i>		<i>bu</i> <i>mes</i>		<i>buissions</i>
	<i>Vous</i> <i>îtes</i>	<i>issiez</i>		<i>bu</i> <i>mes</i>		<i>buissiez</i>
	<i>Ils</i> <i>irent</i> .	<i>issent</i> .		<i>bu</i> <i>rent</i> .		<i>buissent</i> .
<i>Fut. poss.</i>	<i>J'</i> Attendr <i>ai</i>			<i>Boir ai</i>		
	<i>Tu</i> <i>as</i>			<i>as</i>		
	<i>Il</i> <i>a</i>			<i>a</i>		
	<i>Nous</i> <i>ons</i>			<i>ons</i>		
	<i>Vous</i> <i>ez</i>			<i>ez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i> <i>ont</i> .			<i>ont</i> .		
<i>Fut. condit.</i>	<i>J'</i> <i>ais</i>	Battre, and its com-		<i>ais</i>		
	<i>Tu</i> <i>ais</i>	pounds; Fendre, Dé-		<i>ais</i>		
	<i>Il</i> <i>ait</i>	fendre, Descendre,		<i>ait</i>		
	<i>Nous</i> <i>ions</i>	Condescendre, Fon-		<i>ions</i>		
	<i>Vous</i> <i>iez</i>	dre, Confondre, se		<i>iez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i> <i>aient</i> .	Morfondre, Rompre,		<i>aient</i> .		
Corrompre, Interrompre, Pondre, Répondre, Correspondre, Répandre, Mordre, Démordre, Tendre, Etendre, Entendre, Prétendre, Rendre, Pendre, Dépendre, Suspendre, Vendre, Perdre, Tordre, Tondre.						
Conjugate in the same manner Reboire.						
	Apprend <i>re</i> ,	apprenant, appris.		Connait <i>re</i> ,	connaissant, connu.	
<i>Pres. tense.</i>	<i>J'</i> <i>s</i>	apprenne		<i>connais</i>	connaisse	
	<i>Tu</i> <i>s</i>	apprennes		<i>connais</i>	connaises	
	<i>Il</i> <i>apprend</i>	apprenne		<i>connait</i>	connaisse	
	<i>Nous</i> <i>apprenons</i>	apprenions		<i>connaissons</i>	connaissons	
	<i>Vous</i> <i>apprenez</i>	appreniez		<i>connaissez</i>	connaissez	
	<i>Ils</i> <i>apprennent</i> .	apprennent.		<i>connaissent</i> .	connaissent.	
<i>Imp. tense.</i>	<i>J'</i> <i>apprenais</i>			<i>connaissais</i>		
	<i>Tu</i> <i>apprenais</i>			<i>connaissais</i>		
	<i>Il</i> <i>apprenait</i>			<i>connaissait</i>		
	<i>Nous</i> <i>apprenions</i>			<i>connaissons</i>		
	<i>Vous</i> <i>appreniez</i>			<i>connaissez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i> <i>apprenaient</i> .			<i>connaissaient</i> .		
<i>Perf. tense.</i>	<i>J'</i> <i>appris</i>	apprisse		<i>connus</i>	connusse	
	<i>Tu</i> <i>appris</i>	apprisses		<i>connus</i>	connusses	
	<i>Il</i> <i>apprit</i>	apprît		<i>connut</i>	connût	
	<i>Nous</i> <i>apprîmes</i>	apprîmes		<i>connûmes</i>	connûmes	
	<i>Vous</i> <i>apprîtes</i>	apprîmes		<i>connûtes</i>	connûtes	
	<i>Ils</i> <i>apprirent</i> .	apprissent.		<i>connurent</i> .	connurent.	
<i>Fut. poss.</i>	<i>J'</i> Apprendr <i>ai</i>			<i>aitr ai</i>		
	<i>Tu</i> <i>as</i>			<i>as</i>		
	<i>Il</i> <i>a</i>			<i>a</i>		
	<i>Nous</i> <i>ons</i>			<i>ons</i>		
	<i>Vous</i> <i>ez</i>			<i>ez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i> <i>ont</i> .			<i>ont</i> .		
<i>Fut. condit.</i>	<i>J'</i> <i>ais</i>			<i>ais</i>	Méconnaître, Reconnaître,	
	<i>Tu</i> <i>ais</i>			<i>ais</i>	Paraître, Apparaître, Com-	
	<i>Il</i> <i>ait</i>	Like Apprendre are		<i>ait</i>	paraître, Disparaître, Croî-	
	<i>Nous</i> <i>ions</i>	conjugated Désap-		<i>ions</i>	tre, Accroître, Décroître,	
	<i>Vous</i> <i>iez</i>	prendre, Prendre,		<i>iez</i>	Recroître, Paire, Repaire,	
	<i>Ils</i> <i>aient</i> .	Comprendre, Entre-		<i>aient</i> .	Naitre, Renaitre. (See re-	
prendre, se Méprendre, Reprendre, Surprendre.						

*The verbs Conclude, to conclude; Coudre, to sew; Moudre, to grind; Resoudre, to resolve; Traire, to milk; Vaincre, to vanquish; which are not frequently used, have been left out of this table, in order to render it more convenient; they may be seen in their alphabetical order amongst the verbs in RE.

† Imperative the same as the indicative.

TABLES showing how to conjugate all the verbs in RE, both regular and irregular.

Croi re,				Ecri re,				Fai re,			
Inf.	Ger.	Part.		Inf.	Ger.	Part.		Inf.	Ger.	Part.	
re,	croyant,	cro.		re,	vant,	t.		re,	sant,	t.	
Indic.	Imper.	Subj.		Indic.	Imp.	Subj.		Indic.	Imp.	Subj.	
Je croi	s,	e		Ecri s	re	ve		Fai s		fasse	
Tu	s,	es		s,	s,	ves		s,	s,	fasses	
Il	t	e		t		ve		t		fasse	
Nous	croions,	croions,	croions	rons,	rons,	vions		sons,	sons,	fassions	
Vous	croiez,	croiez,	croiez	vez,	vez,	viez		faîtes,	faîtes,	fassiez	
Ils	ent.	ent.		vent.	vent.	vent.		font.		fassent.	
Je croyais				vais				sais			
Tu croyais				vais				sais			
Il croyait				vait				sait			
Nous croyions				vions				sions			
Vous croyiez				viez				siez			
Ils croyaient.				vaient.				saient.			
Je crus		crusse		vis		visse		fis		fisse	
Tu crus		crusses		vis		visses		fis		fisses	
Il crut		crût		vit		vit		fit		fit	
Nous crûmes		crussions		vîmes		vissions		fîmes		fissions	
Vous crûtes		crussiez		vîtes		vissiez		fîtes		fissiez	
Ils crurent.		crussent.		virent.		vissent.		fîrent.		fissent.	
Je croirai				Ecri ai				ferai			
Tu as				as				feras			
Il a				a				fera			
Nous ons				ons				ferons			
Vous ez				ez				feriez			
Ils ont.				ont.				feront.			
Je ais				ais	Circonscrire,			ferais	Contrefaire,		
Tu ais				ais	Décrire, Ins-			ferais	Défaire, se		
Il ait				ait	crire, Prescri-			ferait	Défaire, Re-		
Nous ions				ions	re, Proscrire,			ferions	faire, Redé-		
Vous iez				iez	Récrire, Sous-			feriez	faire, Satis-		
Ils aient.				aient.	crire, Trans-			feraient.	faire, Sur-		
Di re,	sant,	t.		crire.				faire.			
Je s		se		Feind re, feignant, feint.				Instrui re, sant, t.			
Tu s,	s,	ses		feins	feigne			s		se	
Il t		se		feins	feignes			s,	s,	ses	
Nous sons,	sons,	sions		feint	feigne			t		se	
Vous dites,	dites,	siez		feignons *	feignons			sons,	sons,	sions	
Ils sent.		sent.		feignez	feigniez			sez	sez	siez	
Je sais				feignent.	feignent.			sent.		sent.	
Tu sais				feignais				sais			
Il sait				feignais				sais			
Nous sions				feignait				sait			
Vous siez				feignons				sions			
Ils saient.				feigniez				siez			
Je s		sse		feignaient.				saient.			
Tu s		ssets		feignis	feignisse			sis		sisse	
Il t		t		feignis	feignisses			sis		sisses	
Nous mes		ssions		feignit	feignit			sit		sit	
Vous tes		ssiez		feignîmes	feignîssions			sîmes		sissions	
Ils rent.		ssent.		feignîtes	feignîssiez			sîtes		sissiez	
Je dirai				feignirent.	feignissent.			ins-sirent.		sissent.	
Tu as				Feindr ai				truir ai			
Il a				as				as			
Nous ons				a				a			
Vous ez				ons				ons			
Ils ont.				ont.				ez			
Je ais				ais	Astreindre,			ont.			
Tu ais				ais	Craindre, Con-			ais	Conduire, Re-		
Il ait				ait	traindre, Cein-			ais	conduire, Dé-		
Nous ions				ions	dre, Encein-			ait	duire, En-		
Vous iez				iez	dre, Joindre,			ions	duire, Intro-		
Ils aient.				aient.	Conjoindre,			iez	duire, Pro-		
Contredire, Dédire, Interdire, Mau-				Déjoindre, Enjoindre, En-				aient.	duire, Ré-		
dire, Médire, Redire, Prédire, Circon-				freindre, Oindre, Teindre,				duire, Séduire, Traduire,			
crire, Confire, Suffire. (See remark				Déteindre, Eteindre, Attein-				Construire, Détruire,			
under Dire, p. 142.)				dre, Peindre, Plaire, Res-				Cuire, Recuire, Luire,			
				treindre, Epreindre.				Reluire, Nuire. (See Ins-			
								truire, p. 146.)			

* Imperative the same as the indicative.

TABLES showing how to conjugate all the verbs in RE, both regular and irregular.

	Lir e,				Plai r e,				Suiv r e,		
	Infin.	Ger.	Part.		Infin.	Ger.	Part.		Infin.	Ger.	Part.
	li	sant,	lu.		Plai	sant,	plu.		re,	ant,	i.
	Indic.	Imper.	Subj.		Indic.	Imp.	Subj.		Indic.	Imp.	Subj.
Je	s		se	Je	s	se		Je	suis	e	
Tu	s,	s.	ses	Tu	s,	s,	ses	Tu	suis,	suis,	es
Il	t		se	Il	t		se	Il	suit	e	
Nous	sons,	sons,	sions	Nous	sons,	sons,	sions	Nous	ons,	ons,	ions
Vous	sez,	sez,	siez	Vous	sez,	sez,	siez	Vous	ez,	ez,	iez
Ils	sent.		sent.	Ils	sent.		sent.	Ils	ent.	ent.	
Je	sais			Je	sais			Je	ais		
Tu	sais			Tu	sais			Tu	ais		
Il	sait			Il	sait			Il	ait		
Nous	sions			Nous	sions			Nous	ions		
Vous	siez			Vous	siez			Vous	iez		
Ils	saient.			Ils	saient.			Ils	aient.		
Je	lus		lusse	Je	plus		plusse	Je	is		isse
Tu	lus		lusses	Tu	plus		plusses	Tu	is		isses
Il	lut		lût	Il	plut		plût	Il	it		ît
Nous	lûmes		lussions	Nous	plûmes		plussions	Nous	îmes		issions
Vous	lûtes		lussiez	Vous	plûtes		plussiez	Vous	îtes		issiez
Ils	lurent.		lussent.	Ils	plurent.		plussent.	Ils	trent.		issent.
Je	lir ai			Je	Plair ai			Je	Suivr ai		
Tu	as			Tu	as			Tu	as		
Il	a			Il	a			Il	a		
Nous	ons			Nous	ons			Nous	ons		
Vous	ez			Vous	ez			Vous	ez		
Ils	ont.			Ils	ont.			Ils	ont.		
Je	ais			Je	ais			Je	ais		
Tu	ais			Tu	ais			Tu	ais		
Il	ait			Il	ait			Il	ait		
Nous	ions			Nous	ions			Nous	ions		
Vous	iez			Vous	iez			Vous	iez		
Ils	aient.			Ils	aient.			Ils	aient.		
Like Lire conjugate Elire, Relire.				Déplaire, se Plaire, se Taire.				s'Ensuivre, Poursuivre.			
	Mett r e,	ant,	mis.		Ri r e,	ant,	ri.		Viv r e,	ant,	vécu.
Je	mets		e	Je	s		e	Je	vis		e
Tu	mets,	mets,	es	Tu	s,	s,	es	Tu	vis,	vis,	es
Il	met		e	Il	t		e	Il	vit		e
Nous	mettons,	ons,	ions	Nous	ons,	ons,	ryons	Nous	ons,	ons,	ions
Vous	ez,	ez,	iez	Vous	ez,	ez,	ryez	Vous	ez,	ez,	iez
Ils	ent.		ent.	Ils	ent.		ent.	Ils	ent.		ent
Je	ais			Je	ais			Je	ais		
Tu	ais			Tu	ais			Tu	ais		
Il	ait			Il	ait			Il	ait		
Nous	ions			Nous	ions			Nous	ions		
Vous	iez			Vous	iez			Vous	iez		
Ils	aient.			Ils	aient.			Ils	aient.		
Je	mis		misse	Je	s		sse	Je	vécus		vécusse
Tu	mis		misses	Tu	s		sse	Tu	vécus		vécusses
Il	mit		mit	Il	t		t	Il	vécut		vécût
Nous	mîmes		missions	Nous	mes		ssions	Nous	vécûmes		vécussions
Vous	mîtes		missiez	Vous	tes		ssiez	Vous	vécûtes		vécussiez
Ils	mirent.		missent.	Ils	rent.		ssent.	Ils	vécurent.		vécussent.
Je	mettr ai			Je	Rir ai			Je	Vivr ai		
Tu	as			Tu	as			Tu	as		
Il	a			Il	a			Il	a		
Nous	ons			Nous	ons			Nous	ons		
Vous	ez			Vous	ez			Vous	ez		
Ils	ont.			Ils	ont.			Ils	ont.		
Je	ais	Admettre, Com-		Je	ais			Je	ais		
Tu	ais	mettre, Comprom-		Tu	ais			Tu	ais		
Il	ait	mettre, Demet-		Il	ait			Il	ait		
Nous	ions	tre, Entremet-		Nous	ions			Nous	ions		
Vous	iez	tre, Omettre,		Vous	iez			Vous	iez		
Ils	aient.	Permettre, Pro-		Ils	aient.			Ils	aient.		
mettre, Remettre, Soumettre, Trans-				Sourire, Fri-				Revivre, Survivre,			
				re. (See re-							
				mark under Rire, p. 152.)							

Some verbs which have only the *third person singular*, and sometimes the third person plural of their tenses in use, are called *impersonal*, though they would perhaps be more properly called *monopersonal*, i. e. verbs of *one person*; the most frequently used are the following:

Infinitive.

Tonner.	Eclairer.	Pleuvoir.	Geler.	Neiger.	Gréler.	Venter.
To Thunder.	To Lighten.	To Rain.	To Freeze.	To Snow.	To Hail.	To Blow.

Indicative.

Present tense.
It thunders.
It lightens.
It rains.
It freezes.
It snows.
It hails.
The wind blows.

Il tonne.
Il éclaire.
Il pleut.
Il gèle.
Il neige.
Il grêle.
Il vente.

Subjunctive.

Il tonne.
Il éclaire.
Il pleuve.
Il gèle.
Il neige.
Il grêle.
Il vente.

it may thunder, &c.

Imperfect tense.
It did thunder.
It did lighten.
It did rain.
It did freeze.
It did snow.
It did hail.
The wind *did* blow.

Il tonnait.
Il éclairait.
Il pleuvait.
Il gelait.
Il neigeait.
Il grêlait.
Il ventait.

Perfect tense.
It thundered.
It lightened.
It rained.
It froze.
It snowed.
It hailed.
The wind blew.

Il tonna.
Il éclaira.
Il plut.
Il gela.
Il neigea.
Il grêla.
Il venta.

Il tonnât.
Il éclairât.
Il plût.
Il gelât.
Il neigeât.
Il grêlât.
Il ventât.

it might thunder, &c.

Future positive.
It will thunder.
It will lighten.
It will rain.
It will freeze.
It will snow.
It will hail.
The wind *will* blow.

Il tonnera.
Il éclairera.
Il pleuvra.
Il géléra.
Il neigera.
Il grêlera.
Il ventera.

Fut. conditional.
It would thunder.
It would lighten.
It would rain.
It would freeze.
It would snow.
It would hail.
The wind *would* blow.

Il tonnerait.
Il éclairerait.
Il pleuvrait.
Il gèlerait.
Il neigerait.
Il grêlerait.
Il venterait.

Interrogatively.

Tonne-t-il ?
Eclaire-t-il ?
Pleut-il ?
Gèle-t-il ?
Neige-t-il ?
Grêle-t-il ?

does it thunder ?

Negatively.

Il ne tonne
Il n' éclaire
Il ne pleut
Il ne gèle
Il ne neige
Il ne grêle

pas.

it does not thunder.

Interrogatively and Negatively.

Ne tonne-t-il ?
N' éclaire-t-il ?
Ne pleut-il ?
Ne gèle-t-il ?
Ne neige-t-il ?
Ne grêle-t-il ?

pas ?

does it not thunder ?

Infinitive.

There be. Y avoir.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Affirmatively.

There is,
There are.....Il y a.
There was,
There were.....Il y avait.
There was,
There were.....Il y eut.
There will be.....Il y aura.
There would be.....Il y aurait.

Il y ait.

Il y eût.

there may be.

There is not,
There are not.....Il n'y a pas.
There was not,
There were not.....Il n'y avait pas.
There was not,
There were not.....Il n'y eut pas.
There will not be.....Il n'y aura pas.
There would not be.....Il n'y aurait pas.

Il n'y ait pas.

Il n'y eût pas.

there may not be.

Interrogatively.

Is there,
Are there?.....Y a-t-il?
Was there,
Were there?.....Y avait-il?
Was there,
Were there?.....Y eut-il?
Will there be?.....Y aura-t-il?
Would there be?.....Y aurait-il?

Is there not,
Are there not?.....N'y a-t-il pas?
Was there not,
Were there not?.....N'y avait-il pas?
Was there not,
Were there not?.....N'y eut-il pas?
Will not there be?.....N'y aura-t-il pas?
Would not there be?.....N'y aurait-il pas?

Compound tenses.

There has been,
There have been.....Il y a eu.
There had been.....Il y avait eu.
There had been.....Il y eut eu.
There will have been....Il y aura eu.
There would have been..Il y aurait eu.

Il y ait eu.

Il y eût eu.

There has not been,
There have not been....Il n'y a pas eu.

Has there been? Y a-t-il eu? Has not there been? N'y a-t-il pas eu?

Must.

Falloir.

The verb *Must* is conjugated through its *different persons*; but its representative *Falloir* has only the *third person singular* of *each tense*, with *Il* for nominative; then the *nominative* of *Must* becomes the *nominative* of the *following* verb in French, which verb must be in the *present* of the *subjunctive* after *Il faut*, *Il faudra*; and in the *perfect*, after *Il fallait*, *Il fallut*, *Il faudrait*, as appears by the following example,

<i>I must</i>	} go out.	<i>Il faut</i>	<i>que je sorte.</i>
<i>Thou must</i>			<i>que tu sortes.</i>
<i>He must</i>			<i>qu' il sorte.</i>
<i>My brother must</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte.</i>
<i>We must</i>			<i>que nous sortions.</i>
<i>You must</i>	} go out.	<i>Il faut</i>	<i>que vous sortiez.</i>
<i>They must</i>			<i>qu' ils sortent.</i>
<i>It was necessary</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I, thou,</i> <i>he, &c. should</i> go out.	<i>Il fallait</i> <i>Il fallut</i>	<i>que je sortisse.</i>
<i>for me</i>			<i>que tu sortisses.</i>
<i>for thee</i>			<i>qu' il sortît.</i>
<i>for him</i>			<i>que mon frère sortît.</i>
<i>for my brother</i>			<i>que nous sortissions.</i>
<i>for us</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I go out.</i>	<i>Il faudra</i>	<i>que vous sortissiez.</i>
<i>for you</i>			<i>qu' ils sortissent.</i>
<i>for them</i>			<i>que je sorte.</i>
<i>It will be necessary</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I go out.</i>	<i>Il faudra</i>	<i>que tu sortes.</i>
<i>for me</i>			<i>qu' il sorte.</i>
<i>for thee</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte.</i>
<i>for him</i>			<i>que nous sortions.</i>
<i>for my brother</i>			<i>que vous sortiez.</i>
<i>for us</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I should</i> go out.	<i>Il faudrait</i>	<i>qu' ils sortent.</i>
<i>for you</i>			<i>que je sortisse.</i>
<i>for them</i>			<i>que tu sortisses.</i>
<i>It would be necessary</i>			<i>qu' il sortît.</i>
<i>for me</i>			<i>que mon frère sortît.</i>
<i>for thee</i>			<i>que nous sortissions.</i>
<i>for him</i>			<i>que vous sortissiez.</i>
<i>for my brother</i>			<i>qu' ils sortissent.</i>
<i>for us</i>			
<i>for you</i>			
<i>for them</i>			

Negatively.

<i>I must not</i>	} go out.	<i>Il ne faut pas</i>	<i>que je sorte.</i>
<i>Thou must not</i>			<i>que tu sortes.</i>
<i>He must not</i>			<i>qu' il sorte.</i>
<i>My brother must not</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte.</i>

Interrogatively.

<i>Must I</i>	} go out ?	<i>Faut-il</i>	<i>que je sorte ?</i>
<i>Must thou</i>			<i>que tu sortes ?</i>
<i>Must he</i>			<i>qu' il sorte ?</i>
<i>Must my brother</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte ?</i>
<i>Must I not</i>	} go out ?	<i>Ne faut-il pas</i>	<i>que je sorte ?</i>
<i>Must thou not</i>			<i>que tu sortes ?</i>
<i>Must he not</i>			<i>qu' il sorte ?</i>
<i>Must not my brother</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte ?</i>

Must have, meaning *To be in need of* a thing, is expressed thus :

<i>I</i> must have	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{money, books ;} \\ \text{or, } I, \text{ thou, he, \&c.} \\ \text{want money,} \\ \text{books.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> me	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \text{faut de l'argent, des} \\ \text{livres.} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Thou</i> must have		<i>Il</i> te	
<i>He</i> must have		<i>Il</i> lui	
<i>We</i> must have		<i>Il</i> nous	
<i>You</i> must have		<i>Il</i> vous	
<i>They</i> must have		<i>Il</i> leur	
<i>My brother</i> must have		<i>Il</i> faut des livres à mon frère.	

<i>It was necessary.</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to have money,} \\ \text{books ; or, } I \text{ wanted} \\ \text{money, books.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> me	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \text{fallait, or fallut de} \\ \text{l'argent, des livres.} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\}$
for <i>me</i>		<i>Il</i> te	
for <i>thee</i>		<i>Il</i> lui	
for <i>him</i>		<i>Il</i> nous	
for <i>us</i>		<i>Il</i> vous	
for <i>you</i>		<i>Il</i> leur	
for <i>them</i>			

<i>It will be necessary.</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to have money,} \\ \text{books ; or, } I \text{ shall} \\ \text{want money, \&c.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> me	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \text{faudra de l'argent,} \\ \text{des livres.} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\}$
for <i>me</i>		<i>Il</i> te	
for <i>thee</i>		<i>Il</i> lui	
for <i>him</i>		<i>Il</i> nous	
for <i>us</i>		<i>Il</i> vous	
for <i>you</i>		<i>Il</i> leur	
for <i>them</i>			

<i>It wd be necessary.</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to have money,} \\ \text{books ; or, } I \text{ should} \\ \text{want money, \&c.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> me	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \text{faudrait de l'argent,} \\ \text{des livres.} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\}$
for <i>me</i>		<i>Il</i> te	
for <i>thee</i>		<i>Il</i> lui	
for <i>him</i>		<i>Il</i> nous	
for <i>us</i>		<i>Il</i> vous	
for <i>you</i>		<i>Il</i> leur	
for <i>them</i>			

The impersonal verb *TARDER*, *To long*, is also conjugated in the same manner as the above ;

<i>I</i> long	} to see her, to go there.	<i>Il</i> me	} tarde de la voir, d'y aller.
<i>Thou</i> longest		<i>Il</i> te	
<i>He</i> longs		<i>Il</i> lui	
<i>We</i> long		<i>Il</i> nous	
<i>You</i> long		<i>Il</i> vous	
<i>They</i> long		<i>Il</i> leur	
<i>My brother</i> longs			

<i>I</i> did long	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> me	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \text{tardait de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Thou</i> didst long		<i>Il</i> te	
<i>He</i> did long		<i>Il</i> lui	
<i>We</i> did long		<i>Il</i> nous	
<i>You</i> did long		<i>Il</i> vous	
<i>They</i> did long		<i>Il</i> leur	

<i>I</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{longed,} \\ \text{did long} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> me	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \text{tardâ de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Thou</i>			<i>Il</i> te	
<i>He</i>			<i>Il</i> tui	

<i>I</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{shall,} \\ \text{will long} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> me	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \text{tardera de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Thou</i>			<i>Il</i> te	
<i>He</i>			<i>Il</i> tui	

<i>I</i>	<i>should</i> long to see her, &c.	<i>Il</i> me	tarderait de la voir.
----------	------------------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

I.	1,	one.	* <i>Un, m. Une, f.</i>
II.	2,	two.	<i>Deux.</i>
III.	3,	three.	<i>Trois.†</i>
IV.	4,	four.	<i>Quat re.</i>
V.	5,	five.	<i>Cinq.</i>
VI.	6,	six.	<i>Six.</i>
VII.	7,	seven.	<i>Sept.</i>
VIII.	8,	eight.	<i>Huit.</i>
IX.	9,	nine.	<i>Neuf.</i>
X.	10,	ten.	<i>Dix.</i>
XI.	11,	eleven.	<i>Onze.</i>
XII.	12,	twelve.	<i>Douze.</i>
XIII.	13,	thirteen.	<i>Treize.</i>
XIV.	14,	fourteen.	<i>Quatorze.</i>
XV.	15,	fifteen.	<i>Quinze.</i>
XVI.	16,	sixteen.	<i>Seize.</i>
XVII.	17,	seventeen.	<i>Dix-sept.</i>
XVIII.	18,	eighteen.	<i>Dix-huit.</i>
XIX.	19,	nineteen.	<i>Dix-neuf.</i>
XX.	20,	twenty.	<i>Vingt.</i>
XXI.	21,	twenty-one.	<i>Vingt et un.</i>
XXII.	22,	twenty-two.	<i>Vingt-deux.</i>
XXIII.	23,	twenty-three.	<i>Vingt-trois.</i>
XXIV.	24,	twenty-four.	<i>Vingt-quatre.</i>
XXV.	25,	twenty-five.	<i>Vingt-cinq.</i>
XXVI.	26,	twenty-six.	<i>Vingt-six.</i>
XXVII.	27,	twenty-seven.	<i>Vingt-sept.</i>
XXVIII.	28,	twenty-eight.	<i>Vingt-huit.</i>
XXIX.	29,	twenty-nine.	<i>Vingt-neuf.</i>
XXX.	30,	thirty.	<i>Trente.</i>
XXXI.	31,	thirty-one.	<i>Trente et un.</i>
XXXII.	32,	thirty-two, &c.	<i>Trente-deux, &c.</i>
XXXIX.	39,	thirty-nine.	<i>Trente-neuf.</i>
XL.	40,	forty.	<i>Quarante.</i>
XLI.	41,	forty-one.	<i>Quarante et un.</i>
XLII.	42,	forty-two, &c.	<i>Quarante-deux, &c.</i>
XLIX.	49,	forty-nine.	<i>Quarante-neuf.</i>
L.	50,	fifty.	<i>Cinquante.</i>
LI.	51,	fifty-one.	<i>Cinquante et un.</i>
LII.	52,	fifty-two, &c.	<i>Cinquante-deux, &c.</i>
LIX.	59,	fifty-nine.	<i>Cinquante-neuf.</i>
LX.	60,	sixty.	<i>Soixante.</i>
LXI.	61,	sixty-one, &c.	<i>Soixante et un, &c.</i>
LXIX.	69,	sixty-nine.	<i>Soixante-neuf.</i>
LXX.	70,	seventy.	<i>Soixante-dix.</i>
LXXI.	71,	seventy-one.	<i>Soixante-onze.</i>

* These words are both *Articles* and *Substantives*.

Articles when prefixed to a noun; as, *Un homme, Une femme; Un livre, Deux livres; Trois hommes; Quatre maisons; Cinq chevaux; Dix écus, &c.*

Substantives when preceded by an article; as, *un Deux; un Trois; un Quatre; le Deux, le Trois, le Quatre, de janvier, de février, de cœur, de pique, &c. des Trois; des Quatre, &c.*

† The chapter on pronunciation contains rules which show how to pronounce all these words.

LXXII.	72,	seventy-two.	<i>Soixante-douze.</i>
LXXIII.	73,	seventy-three.	<i>Soixante-treize.</i>
LXXIV.	74,	seventy-four.	<i>Soixante-quatorze.</i>
LXXV.	75,	seventy-five.	<i>Soixante-quinze.</i>
LXXVI.	76,	seventy-six.	<i>Soixante-seize.</i>
LXXVII.	77,	seventy-seven.	<i>Soixante-dix-sept.</i>
LXXVIII.	78,	seventy-eight.	<i>Soixante-dix-huit.</i>
LXXIX.	79,	seventy-nine.	<i>Soixante-dix-neuf.</i>
LXXX.	80,	eighty.	<i>Quatre-vingt.</i>
LXXXI.	81,	eighty-one.	<i>Quatre-vingt-un.</i>
LXXXII.	82,	eighty-two.	<i>Quatre-vingt-deux.</i>
LXXXIII.	83,	eighty-three.	<i>Quatre-vingt-trois.</i>
LXXXIV.	84,	eighty-four.	<i>Quatre-vingt-quatre.</i>
LXXXV.	85,	eighty-five.	<i>Quatre-vingt-cinq.</i>
LXXXVI.	86,	eighty-six.	<i>Quatre-vingt-six.</i>
LXXXVII.	87,	eighty-seven.	<i>Quatre-vingt-sept.</i>
LXXXVIII.	88,	eighty-eight.	<i>Quatre-vingt-huit.</i>
LXXXIX.	89,	eighty-nine.	<i>Quatre-vingt-neuf.</i>
XC.	90,	ninety.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix.</i>
XCI.	91,	ninety-one.	<i>Quatre-vingt-onze.</i>
XCII.	92,	ninety-two.	<i>Quatre-vingt-douze.</i>
XCIII.	93,	ninety-three.	<i>Quatre-vingt-treize.</i>
XCIV.	94,	ninety-four.	<i>Quatre-vingt-quatorze.</i>
XCV.	95,	ninety-five.	<i>Quatre-vingt-quinze.</i>
XCVI.	96,	ninety-six.	<i>Quatre-vingt-seize.</i>
XCVII.	97,	ninety-seven.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-sept.</i>
XCVIII.	98,	ninety-eight.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-huit.</i>
XCIX.	99,	ninety-nine.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.</i>
C.	100,	a hundred.	<i>Cent.</i>
CI.	101,	a hundred and one.*	<i>Cent un.</i>
CII.	102,	a hundred and two, &c.	<i>Cent deux, &c.</i>
CX.	110,	a hundred and ten.	<i>Cent dix.</i>
CXX.	120,	a hundred and twenty.	<i>Cent vingt.</i>
CC.	200,	two hundred.	<i>Deux cents.†</i>
CCL.	250,	two hundred and fifty.	<i>Deux cent cinquante.</i>
CCC.	300,	three hundred.	<i>Trois cents.</i>
CM.	900,	nine hundred.	<i>Neuf cents.</i>
M.	1000,	a thousand.‡	<i>Mille.</i>
C.	100,	one hundred.	<i>Un cent.</i>
CC.	200,	two hundred.	<i>Deux cents.</i>
M.	1000,	one thousand.	<i>Un mille.‡</i>
MM.	2000,	two thousand.	<i>Deux mille.</i>

* The article *A*, and the conjunction *And*, are omitted with these numbers in French.

† *Quatre vingt* and *Cent*, followed by a noun *plural*, require *s*; as, *Quatre vingts ans*, eighty years; *Deux cents hommes*, two hundred men; but not when they are followed by another number; as *Quatre vingt dix ans*; *Deux cent cinquante hommes*.

Observe also, that the noun which follows the number *One*, after another number, must be *singular* in French, though it is *plural* in English; as, *One and twenty years*. *Vingt et un an*. *One and thirty men*. *Trente et un homme*; but if the noun is followed by an adjective, the adjective must be *plural*; as, *Vingt et un an accomplis*. *Trente et un homme armés*.

‡ In the date of the year, *One* is omitted, and *Thousand* is spelt *Mil*, not *Mille*; so we write 1819, *Mil huit cent dix neuf*, not *Un mille huit cent dix neuf*.

From the foregoing numbers are formed the *adjectives of number* ;

1st, the first.	le <i>Premier</i> , m. la <i>Première</i> , f.
2nd, the second.	{ le <i>Second</i> , m. la <i>Seconde</i> , f. le or la <i>Deuxième</i> , m. and f.*
3rd, the third.	le <i>Troisième</i> .
4th, the fourth.	le <i>Quatrième</i> .
5th, the fifth.	le <i>Cinquième</i> .
6th, the sixth.	le <i>Sixième</i> .
7th, the seventh.	le <i>Septième</i> .
8th, the eighth.	le <i>Huitième</i> .
9th, the ninth.	le <i>Neuvième</i> .
10th, the tenth.	le <i>Dixième</i> .
11th, the eleventh.	le <i>Onzième</i> , or l' <i>Onzième</i>
12th, the twelfth.	le <i>Douzième</i> .
13th, the thirteenth.	le <i>Treizième</i> .
14th, the fourteenth.	le <i>Quatorzième</i> .
15th, the fifteenth.	le <i>Quinzième</i> .
16th, the sixteenth.	le <i>Seizième</i> .
17th, the seventeenth.	le <i>Dix-septième</i> .
18th, the eighteenth.	le <i>Dix-huitième</i> .
19th, the nineteenth.	le <i>Dix-neuvième</i> .
20th, the twentieth.	le <i>Vingtième</i> .
21st, the twenty-first.	le <i>Vingt et unième</i> .
22nd, the twenty-second.	le <i>Vingt-deuxième</i> .
23rd, the twenty-third.	le <i>Vingt-troisième</i> .
24th, the twenty-fourth.	le <i>Vingt-quatrième</i> .
25th, the twenty-fifth.	le <i>Vingt-cinquième</i> .
26th, the twenty-sixth.	le <i>Vingt-sixième</i> .
27th, the twenty-seventh.	le <i>Vingt-septième</i> .
28th, the twenty-eighth.	le <i>Vingt-huitième</i> .
29th, the twenty-ninth.	le <i>Vingt-neuvième</i> .
30th, the thirtieth.	le <i>Trentième</i> .
31st, the thirty-first.	le <i>Trent et unième</i> .
32nd, the thirty-second, &c.	le <i>Trente-deuxième</i> , and so on, by adding <i>ième</i> , to the substantive numbers, pages 164, 165.

Observe only, that in those ending in *e*, the *e* is left out ; as, *Quatre*, *Quatrième* ; *Douze*, *Douzième* ; and in those ending in *f*, the *f* is changed into *v*, for softness of sound ; as, *Neuf*, *Neuvième* ; *Dix-neuf*, *Dix-neuvième*.

From the above adjectives are also formed the *numeral adverbs* ;

1stly, firstly.	<i>Premièrement</i> .
2ndly, secondly.	{ <i>Secondement</i> . <i>Deuxièmement</i> .
3rdly, thirdly.	<i>Troisièmement</i> .
4thly, fourthly.	<i>Quatrièmement</i> .
5thly, fifthly.	<i>Cinquièmement</i> .
6thly, sixthly.	<i>Sixièmement</i> ,
and so on, by adding <i>ment</i> to the above adjectives.	

* *Second* and *Deuxième* are used indiscriminately, when they are followed by a noun ; as, *Le second*, or *Le deuxième jour* ; *La seconde*, or *La deuxième semaine* ; but after another number, *Deuxième* alone can be used ; so we could not say, *Vingt second* ; *Trente second* ; we must say, *Vingt deuxième* ; *Trente deuxième*, &c.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE AND NOUN.

1. The use of the article being to convey a determinate signification to substantives or nouns which follow it, must be used before adjectives, the infinitives of some verbs, adverbs, prepositions or conjunctions, when substantively used ; as,

<i>le bon,*</i>	<i>le mauvais,</i>	<i>le savoir,</i>	<i>le pour,</i>	<i>le contre,</i>
the good,	the bad,	the learning,	the for,	the against.

EXERCISE.

There are no means to satisfy those that will know the
 il n'y a pas moyens 168 satisfaire 88 74 veulent savoir
 why from the wherefore. Good and bad seem to be blended
pourquoi *pourquoi.* 1 *bon* 1 *mauvais* sen.bler mêlé 29
 together through all nature, and sometimes to be confounded with each
 ensemble dans quelquefois confondu 29 l'un avec
 other. White and black are two opposite colours, green hurts the sight
 l'autre. 1 *blanc* 1 *noir* opposé 29 couleur, 1 *vert* blesser vue f.
 less than red. The wise man seeketh wisdom, but the fool de-
 moins que 1 *rouge.* 1 *sage* chercher 1 *sagesse* fou mè-
 spiseth understanding. Newton says, that there are seven primitive
 priser raison. dire qu'il y a
 colours, called 1 orange, colour 1 red, 1 yellow, 1 green, 1 blue, 1 indigo,
 32 couleur appelé — rouge, jaune, vert, bleu,
 and 1 violet.

2. The article is omitted—1st, When the substantive denotes neither a *species* nor an *individual* nor any part of a thing, i. e. when nothing is determinate on the extent of its signification ; as,

Il est dans un état d'ignorance,
 He is in a state of ignorance.

2dly, Before nouns apostrophized, i. e. addressed to, as to individuals ; as,

Rochers, soyez sensibles à ma douleur,
 Rocks, be sensible of my grief.

3dly, Often also when we make an enumeration ; as,

Le grand feu de New York détruisit maisons, magasins, marchandises, &c.

The great fire of New York destroyed houses, warehouses, merchandise, &c.

EXERCISE.

You are in a state of doubt, fear, and distrust. Corrupted 32 men and
 état doute, 2 crainte, 2 défiance. Corrompu

* Observe that all adjectives, verbs, prepositions, &c. when substantively used, are masculine in French.

of ill lives easily believe that there is no more 2 virtue, 2 probity,
 mauvaise 184 croire il n'y a pas plus
 and 2 sincerity in others than in themselves. Charming flowers, through
 les autres Charmante 29 32 par
 you nature is more beautiful. Soldiers! be firm. 2 Citizens, strangers, 2
 plus belle. Soldats! Citoyens
 enemies, 2 people, 2 kings, 2 emperors, 2 pity and respect him.* The
 empereurs le plaignent et le 54 révèrent 54.
 river carried away 2 houses, flocks, trees, bridges, &c. Generals, offi-
 rivière emporter — troupeaux ponts Généraux
 cers, soldiers, all promised that they would resist with great intrepidity.
 promettre 74 résisteraient intrepidité.

3. The article is omitted, but the preposition (*de* or *d'*) is used after the words *sorte*, sort; *genre*, kind; *mélange*, mixture; *espèce*, species; or any other of the same signification; as

L'homme est sujet à toutes sortes d'infirmités.

Man is exposed to all sorts of infirmities.

EXERCISE.

There are two kinds of curiosity; the one of interest, which excites us
 il y a sorte f. intérêt, 74 porter 54
 to desire to learn what may be useful to us; and the other of pride, which
 à désirer d'apprendre 84 178 54; l'autre orgueil, 74
 proceeds from the desire of knowing what others are† ignorant of.
 venir désir savoir 84 les autres ignorer
 (Old age) is a sort of tyrant, who forbids, under pain of death, all the
 vieillesse f. sorte tyran, 74 défendre sous mort
 pleasures of youth. Politeness is a mixture of discretion, †complacency,
 plaisir jeunesse. Politesse mélange complaisance,
 and †circumspection. Praises are a kind of tribute (that is paid) to true
 louange sorte 3 tribut qu'on paie|| 1 vrai
 merit. There is in goodness a kind of magnet which attracts all men to
 il y a dans aimant 74 attirer
 itself. The hieroglyphics of the Egyptians were figures of men, †birds,
 soi. hieroglyphes Egyptiens
 †animals, and †reptiles.
 oiseau.

4. The preposition *to*, translated by *de*.

The preposition *to*, is translated into French by the preposition *de*—1st, Before nouns expressing *consanguinity*, appropriation to a particular *person*, *kindred*, *kinsfolk*, *kinsman*, *kinswoman*; as,

Le roi d'Espagne, frère de Napoléon premier.

The king of Spain, brother to Napoleon the first.

2d, After the words *road*, *way*, *path*, *alley*; as,

Nous sommes sur la route de Newark.

We are on the road to Newark.

EXERCISE.

On the eighteenth of February, one thousand four hundred and seventy-

(A) dixhuit (B) février 21 mil (C) (D)

* See † page 63. † See † page 81. ‡ See § page 47. || See * page 103.

(A) *On* is never represented in French with expressions of time.

(B) The preposition *of* when immediately followed by the name of the month, is generally omitted.

(C) When mentioning the date of the Christian era, we write *mil*, instead of *mille*.

(D) The conjunction *and* is now omitted in French before cardinal numbers

eight the duke *of* Clarence, brother *to* king Edward *the* fourth, was
 drowned in a butt of Malmsey wine. Mr. P. jeweller *to* the queen,
 has a very prudent wife. The road *to* Croyden is very bad in winter.
 Go *to* the ferry boat *to* inquire the road *to* Paterson, and then you
 will see Mr. Smith, cousin *to* your friend who went *to* the theatre
 with Miss Charlotte, sister *to* the director of the bank. The
 heir *to* the crown of Portugal is called prince of Brazil.

5. *A, an, no*, expressed by *de*. The article *a*, or *an*, or the negative* *no*, is expressed by the preposition *de*, after a verb negatively used, except the verb *to be*.

Il n'a pas d'ami. Vous n'êtes pas un Cicéron.
 He has not a friend. You are not a Cicero.

EXERCISE.

He has no sugar. She has no beer. We have no cider. You have
 no coffee. They have no tea. They have no water. I have had no
 wine. Thou hast had no china. She has had no saucer. You have
 had no soup. They had no cloaks. Thou wilt have no hat. He
 will have no handkerchief. She will have no pencil. We shall have
 no boy. I should have no waistcoat. Thou wouldst have no watch.

6. The sign *un, une*, can be used when the intention is to name one person or thing only, whether the verb is used negatively, or negatively and interrogatively, but then *un, une*, means *one*, not *a* or *an*, and *de* is considered its plural; as,

Je n'ai pas un livre.
 I have not a book; i. e. not one single book.
 Je n'ai pas de livre.
 I have no book; i. e. not any of any kind.

EXERCISE.

I have no peaches. Thou hast no strawberries. We have had no
 plates. They have had no cups. I have not a cent. I have no cents.
 assiettes. tasses. sou. sous.

(e) The article *the* is used in English, and not in French, before the ordinal numbers *first, second, third, &c.* when they come after the words *book, chapter, section, &c.*, or the name of a sovereign, Charles the Second, chapter the sixth.

* *No*, between a verb and a substantive is translated like *not any*.

Have we no cook? Have we not a cook ? I can not conceive
 cuisinier? cuisinier? Je ne puis pas concevoir
 why this gentleman feeds his horse himself. Has he no servant
 pourquoi fait paître lui-même. : domestique
 to do that work for him ? No, sir ; he can not keep a servant ; he
 besogne garder
 has no property, and his lady, who is considered a beauty, spends
 bien épouse considérée dépenser
 perhaps too *much* on her daughters, who are no beauties.
 peut-être ne sont pas des beautés.

7. *Some, any*, expressed by *de*, not by *du, de la, des*. The partitive sign, *some,* any*, after a verb used negatively is expressed by the preposition *de* alone, because the substantive is used in an indeterminate sense ; as,

This year they will not have any peaches.
 Cette année ils n'auront pas de pêches.

EXERCISE.

Never give her⁵⁹ any⁷ advice, for you see (s) she does not shew
 Ne jamais donnez † conseil car voir montrer
 any⁷ talent, after all the pains (s) you have taken with her.⁵⁸ I will
 toutes peines prises
 not drink any⁷ water, nor eat any⁷ fruit. Your brother bought a
 boire ni ne manger acheter
 fine horse yesterday, but he ought to remember (s) he will not always
 hier doit se rappeler n'aura toujours
 have money. I went last Saturday to market, but could not get
 aller dernier Samedi marche Je ne pas trouver
 any⁷ ripe gooseberries. I have not had any oysters yet.¹⁸⁴
 mures³² groseilles. eu huitres encore.

8. *Some, any*, expressed by *du, de la, des*, not *de*. The partitive signs, *some, any*, resume their proper form *du, de la, des*, after a negative verb ;

1st. When the verb is used negatively and interrogatively ; because then the substantive means a certain portion ; ‡ as,

Navez vous pas des livres ? Have you no books ?

2dly. When the the noun is qualified by an adjective placed after the substantive ; as,

Je ne vous ferai pas des reproches frivoles.
 I shall not make you frivolous reproaches.

3dly. When the noun is determined by any words following it ; as,

Je ne vous donnerai pas des pêches de cet arbre.
 I will not give you any peaches of that tree.

* When the substance is restrained to a little, a few, some is expressed by *quelques*, not by *du, de la, des*, which imply an unlimited number or quality.†

† See (i) page 63.

‡ See * page 49.

4thly. When there are in the sentence words which limit the effect of the negation ; as,

Les Turcs ne portent pas tous des turbans.
Turks do not all wear turbans.

EXERCISE.

Have we not any 8 books? Have they not any ribands? Have
Avoir 133 190 ? Avoir 133 190 rubans?
we convenient 33 houses? Had they had extensive 33 fields? Had
commode † 133 190 spacieux champs? Avoir
you not had fashionable gowns? I shall not make you frivolous 33
133 190 à-la-mode robes? (bb.N.B.) frivoles
reproaches. I will not send spoiled 33 oranges. I informed him 54
† reproches. † envoyer gâtes informai
that I would not send him any fruit of my garden. I beg her not
(bb.N.B.) envoyer * prier 54 190
to play tunes of your composition. He desires us not to tell
(N.B.) jouer † airs composition. prier 54 raconter
stories without explaining the personages mentioned in them,
† histoires lui* expliquer personages qui y sont mentionnés 55
and not bring him any books contrary to good morals, for he
190 (N.B.) apporter * 8 contraires mœurs, car
knows that men have not all sentiments calculated to appreciate
(bb.N.B.) † propre à apprecier
what they read.
84 lisent.

9. The partitive sign *some* is understood (i. e. not expressed) in french, after the preposition *de*, whatever be the english preposition which *de* represents ;

Il nous donna du cidre au lieu de vin;

He gives us some cider instead of wine ;

and the english prepositions *at, about, of, from, by, with*, are translated by *de* alone, without the article, when they follow an adjective or a participle ; § as,

Plein de charmes.

Estimé de tout.

Full of charms.

Esteemed by all.

EXERCISE.

Human life is full of disappointments. (To die) for one's country
Humaine vie plein 9 revers. Mourir son pays
is a death full of charms. A noble but confused thought is a diamond
mort charme. se 32pensée diamant
covered with dust. If fortune has blessed you with her gifts, if
couvert 9 poussière. favorisse 55 9 don
besides you are endowed with wit and judgment, be not puffed up
outré cela doué esprit Jugement, ne vous enflez pas
with pride, and do not condemn others. No one is fit for friendship
orgueil, mépriser les autres. On n'est pas propre à l'amitié

* See (i) page 63.

† See 7th Rule Introduction.

‡ See note (s) page 76.

§ The adjectives or participles which signify plenty or scarcity, are generally followed in french by *de* without any article ;

Je suis content de vous.

I am satisfied with you.

who is not endowed with virtue. Whoever attacks the sacred
 quand on 190 doué vertu. Quiconque attaquer sacré
 person of a king, is guilty of high treason. The ladies of the
 32personne f. roi, coupable haut trahison.
 present day buy mousseline de laine instead of silk, but they
 ,aujourd' hui acheter mousseline de laine soie,
 (cannot use) ink instead of paint. These amiable children, after
 ne peuvent se servir d'encre fard.
 a long walk, have returned and brought us pears, instead of
 longue promenade, revenir apporter poires,
 apples.
 pommes.

10. The suppression of the partitive sign does not take place when the above prepositions are used in their proper form, or after any other preposition ; as,

En hiver on couvre les pommes de terre avec de la paille.
 In winter people cover potatoes with some straw.

EXERCISE.

See that lady, she has trimmed her dress with *green³² riband.
 Voyez orné robe vert ruban.
 The minister is really satisfied with men whom the people hate. The
 ministre vraiment satisfait
 Egyptian ladies 39cover 13their face with *veils. The English
 Egyptiennes se couvrent le visage
 manufacture their superfine cloths³² with* Spanish²⁷ wool.³²
 manufacturer drap laine.

NUMERAL ARTICLE.

A, AN; UN, UNE.

11. *A, an* denoting individuality, i. e. *one* only of the substance spoken of, is expressed in french by the number *un, une*, and no distinction is made between *a* and *one* ; as,

A or one bottle.	une bouteille.
A or one dozen.	une douzaine.
A or one pound.	une livre.
A or one hundred.	un cent. (f)

EXERCISE.

A glass,	a bottle,	a pound,	a day,	a year.
verre, m.	bouteille, f.	livre f.	jour, m.	an. m.

12. But *a, an* before the names of measure, weight, number and periods of time, used in a collective sense, i. e. not denoting individuality, is not expressed by *un, une*, it is expressed by *le, la* ; as,

* See Rule 9 (N.B.) page 51.

(f) Any number prefixed to a noun may be considered as an article, since, like the article, it serves to determine the acceptation of that noun ; as *Deux hommes*, two men ; *Trois femmes*, three women ; *Quatre livres*, four books ; *Six bouteilles*, six bottles, &c.

Wine sells at six shillings *a* bottle; Le vin se vend six shelins *la* bou-
i. e. six shilling *per* bottle. teille; not *une* bouteille.
Butter twenty pence *a* pound; Le beurre vingt sous *la* livre;
i. e. *per* pound. not, *une* livre.
Eggs a shilling *a* dozen; Les œufs un shelin *la* douzaine;
i. e. *one* shilling *per* dozen not, *une* douzaine.
Oranges a guinea *a* hundred; Les Oranges *une* guinée *le* cent;
i. e. *one* guinea *per* hundred. not, *une* guinée *un* cent.
I go to town once *a* day; Je vais à la ville *une* fois *le* jour,
i. e. *each* day, or *daily*. or *par* jour; not, *une* jour
Three times *a* week, or *weekly*. Trois fois *la* semaine, or *par* sem.

By these words *a* bottle, *a* pound, *a* dozen, *a* hundred, I do not mean that *one single* or individual bottle, pound, dozen or hundred sells at that price; but *each* bottle, pound, dozen, or hundred; nor that I go to town one *single* day or week; but *each* day, *each* week.

EXERCISE.

I must¹⁸¹ buy a pound of plums. (How much) do they
Il faut que j'achete¹¹ prune. Combien — on¹³³
sell them a pound? They⁹⁰ sell¹²⁵ them two pence a dozen.
vend les⁵⁴ ? On N.B. vendre les⁵⁴ deux sou douzaine.f.
Beer sells¹²⁵ at four pence a pint, wine five shillings a bottle,
Bière f. se vendre — quatre sou pinte, f, vin m. cinq shelin
brandy six pence a glass, and rum five shillings a quart. I go¹²⁵
eau-de-vie , rum. m. quart. f. aller
to school once a day. I take¹²⁵ lessons three times a week.
École une fois prendre leçon fois semaine.f.
We have (holydays) only once a year.
n'avons vacances qu'* une fois année.

DEMONSTRATIVE ARTICLE.

THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE, CE, CET, CETTE, CES.

13. The demonstrative words, *ce, cet, cette, ces* are used in the same instances as the corresponding signs are in english; they serve to point out the objects we name, and follow the same rule as *le, la, les*; ex.

I like <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> wine,	J'aime <i>ce</i> vin,
<i>this</i> or <i>that</i> beer,	<i>cette</i> bière,
<i>this</i> or <i>that</i> money,	<i>cet</i> argent,
<i>these</i> or <i>those</i> fruits.	<i>ces</i> fruits.

N. B. *ce, cet, cette, ces* do not express that local distinction which is implied in the words *this, these*; *that, those*; so, if you wish to make the same distinction in french, you must add to the noun, *ci* to denote the nearest object, and *là* to denote the remotest; as,

* The adverb *Only* may be expressed two ways, either by *Soulement* after the verb, or by *Ne* before the verb, and by *Que* after it; so, *Nous avons vacances SOULEMENT une fois*, or *Nous n'avons vacances QU' une fois, &c.*

I prefer *this* wine to that,
this beer to that.*
 I prefer *that* wine to this,
that beer to this,*
this money to that,
those fruits to these.

Je préfère *ce* vin-*ci* à celui-*là*.
cette bière-*ci* à celle-*là*.
 Je préfère *ce* vin-*là* à celui-*ci*.
cette bière-*là* à celle-*ci*.
cet argent-*ci* à celui-*là*.
ces fruits-*là* à ceux-*ci*.

EXERCISE.

This man, this woman, these children. That horse, that
 homme, femme, enfant. cheval,
 house, those trees. This field, that grass, these people, those
 maison, f. arbre. champ, m. herbe, f. gens,
 flocks. This man is taller than that. 88 That woman is
 troupeau. grand41 celui-là.N.B.
 handsomer than this.88 These children play better than those.88
 belle41 N.B. jouer125 † N.B.
 Those trees are larger than these.88 This field is better than that.88
 125 gros41 N.B. † N.B.

POSSESSIVE ARTICLE.

MY, THY, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR.

MON, MA, MES, TON, TA, TES; SON, SA, SES; NOTRE, &c.

14. These words follow the same rule as the article *le, la, les*; they agree in gender and number with the noun which follows them; so,

Her father, is, *son* père.
His mother, *sa* mère.

† *His* or her son, *son* fils.
His or her daughter, *sa* fille.

EXERCISE.

My book, my pen, my papers. His coach, his chaise, his
 livre, m. plume, f. papier. carosse, m. chaise, f.
 horses; His coach, her chaise, her horses. Our friends, your
 cheveau; ami,
 children, their relations.
 enfant, parent.

15. The possessive article *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their* is expressed by the definite *le, la, les*, when prefixed to the name or any part of the body, after a verb denoting a natural action of the body; as,

I open <i>my</i>	} mouth.	J' ouvre	} <i>la</i> bouche;
Thou openest <i>thy</i>		Tu ouvres	
He opens <i>his</i>		Il ouvre	

* *This, that, these, those*, are also pronouns; see note (p.)

† See note (E) page 56.

‡ See || page 45.

|| When I say, *J'ouvre la bouche*, I open *the* mouth; the hearer understands that it is of my own mouth that I am speaking, for if it was the mouth of another being, I should name that being. Again, *Je me suis coupé le doigt*, corresponds with the english, I have cut *myself* in the finger; and *J'ai mal au doigt*, with, I have a pain in *the* finger. Here also the possession being sufficiently determined by the pronoun *me*, or by the verb *J'ai*, any other possessive expression would be superfluous; however, these are idioms which practice alone can render familiar.

Or when the verb denotes an action done upon the body ; as,

<i>I have cut my</i>	} finger.	<i>Je me suis</i>	} coupé le doigt.
<i>Thou hast cut thy</i>		<i>Tu t' es</i>	
<i>He has cut his</i>		<i>Il s' est</i>	

Never say ; *J'ai coupé mon doigt* ; *Tu as coupé ton doigt* ; *Il a coupé son doigt*, &c.

N. B. Observe that in speaking of an action done upon the body, the person on whom the action is done must be denoted by a personal pronoun ; so, if the verb is not reflective, i. e. if the agent does not act upon itself, as it does above, one of the pronouns *me, nous, te vous, lui, leur*, agreeably to number and person, must be added to the verb ; as,

He has cut	} finger.	<i>Il m'</i>	} a coupé le doigt.
<i>thy</i>		<i>Il t'</i>	
<i>his or her</i>		<i>Il lui</i>	
He has cut	} fingers.	<i>Il nous</i>	} a coupé les doigts.
<i>our</i>		<i>Il vous</i>	
<i>your</i>		<i>Il leur</i>	

Never say ; *Il a coupé mon doigt* ; *Il a coupé ton doigt* ; *Il a coupé son doigt*, &c.

EXERCISE.

Raise your arm. Move your leg. Advance your foot. She
 Lever* bras, m. Remuer* jambe.f. Avancer* pied, m.
 shuts¹²⁵ her eyes, and opens her mouth ; I have²³⁷ hurt my arm. You
 fermer yeux, ouvrir¹²⁵ bouche ; f. † blessé
 have²³⁷ cut your hand. He has²³⁷ broken his leg. She has²³⁷ put
 † coupé main. f. † rompu † —
 her foot (out of joint.) You have hurt my arm. He has cut my hand.
 démis † blessé † coupé
 You have put her foot (out of joint.) The carriage ran¹³⁶ over his
 † — démis voiture f. a passé par-dessus †
 body, and broke¹³⁶ his leg.
 a rompu †

16. If in instances similar to the above, i. e. before the names of the parts of the body, the possessive words *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their* come with the verbs, To have a pain, Avoir mal ; To hurt, se Faire mal ; To be cold, Avoir froid ; To be warm, Avoir chaud ; they are expressed by *au, à la, aux* ; as,

<i>I have a pain in my</i>	} finger.	<i>J' ai</i>	} mal au doigt ;
<i>Thou hast a pain in thy</i>		<i>Tu as</i>	
<i>He has a pain in his</i>		<i>Il a</i>	

† See 237 rule.

* Second person of the imperative.

† These sentiments must be expressed as if the words were construed in this manner : I to myself have ²³⁷ hurt the arm. You to yourself have²³⁷ cut the hand. He — me suis blessé — vous êtes coupé
 to himself has²³⁷ broken the leg. She to herself has²³⁷ disjointed the foot. You to — s' est rompu — s' est démis —
 me have hurt the arm. He to me has cut the hand. You to her have disjointed the m' avez blessé — me a coupé — lui avez démis
 foot. The carriage to him has run¹³⁶ over the body, and to him has broken the leg. voiture f. — lui a passé par-dessus — lui a rompu.

<i>I have hurt my</i>	} hand	<i>Je me suis</i>	} fait mal à la main ;
<i>Thou hast hurt thy</i>		<i>Tu t' es</i>	
<i>He has hurt his</i>		<i>Il s' est</i>	
<i>My feet are</i>	} cold,	<i>J' ai</i>	} froid aux pieds ;
<i>Thy feet are</i>		<i>Tu as*</i>	
<i>His or her feet are*</i>		<i>Il or elle a</i>	

EXERCISE.

I have a pain in my head. My mother has a pain in her side.
 24 mal † tête. f. 24 mal côté. m.
 My father has got the gout in his feet. Have²³⁷ you not hurt your
 270 goute f. † Ne vous êtes-vous pas fait mal †
 leg? No; but I have²³⁷ hurt my knee. In the last²⁹ battle, my
 jambef. ? 191; me suis fait mal † genou. m. Dans dernière bataille, f.
 brother was wounded in his arm, and I was wounded in the shoulder.
 fut blessé † , fus blessé † épaule.
 My hands are²³⁹ warm, but my feet are²³⁹ very cold.
 avoir chaud, † avoir grand froid.

17. *Its* and *their* neuter, are also expressed by *le, la, les*, and the pronoun *en* is added to the verb, when the noun to which they are prefixed is not governed by the same verb as the noun to which they refer; as,

That tree is fine, but *its* fruit is good for nothing.

Cet arbre est beau, mais *le* fruit *n'en* vaut rien; i. e. the fruit of it.

But they are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur*, if the nouns are governed by the same verb; as,

I like that tree, *its* shape and *its* leaves.

J'aime cet arbre, *sa* forme et *ses* feuilles.

EXERCISE.

That water is good,²⁹ I know¹²⁵ *its* qualities (turn, the qualities
 eau f. bon, (g) connaître qualités,
of it.) and I have experienced *its* effects, (*i. e.* the effects *of it*.) To¹⁷⁰
 en, 54 j'ai éprouvé effet, en 55. Pour
 paint the human heart (it is necessary) to know all *its* springs, (*i. e.*
 peindre humain 32 cœur m. il faut 172 — connaître tous ressort,
 the springs *of it*.) London astonishes strangers; they admire *its*
 en 54 Londres étonner 125 étranger; admirer 125
 extent, and *its* riches, *i. e.* (*of it*.)
 étendue, richesse, f. en 54.

18. The possessive *mon, ma, mes* must be prefixed to names of kindred and friendship, when we call or answer any one by those names; as,

Come here, brother.

Venez ici, *mon* frère.

I can not, sister.

Je ne saurais, *ma* sœur.

* See 239 rule.

† Say; At the head; at the side; at the feet; at the leg; at the knee; at the arm; at the shoulder. N. B. at the is expressed in the same manner as to the.

‡ Turn, I have warmth at the hands, but I have great cold at the feet.

EXERCISE.

Mother, you are⁹² wanted. I am coming, child. Daughter
 , on vous demande. J' — vais,¹⁵⁵ 2enfant. fille,
 are you ready? Yes, father. Come, friends, (let us be) merry.
 prêt?²⁹ Oui, Allons, ami, — — soyons gai.²⁹

19. The article is left out in french, when expressed in english, at the title page, or before any of the parts of a book ; as,

A french grammer. Grammaire française.
 The preface. The first part. Préface. Première partie.

EXERCISE.

A treatise upon the immortality of the soul. An introduction to
 traité sur immortalité âme. introduction
 the french³² language. The preface. The first²⁹ part. The end.
 français²⁹ langue. f. préface. premier partie. f. fin.

20. The article *a, an* which comes after *what*, is omitted in french ; as,

What *a* man ! Quel homme ! not quel *un* homme !
 What *a* woman ! Quelle femme ! — quelle *une* femme !

EXERCISE.

What⁸² a pretty dog ! What a funny head he has ! What
 Quel joli³³ chien ! 82 drôle de tête f. ! 82
 a large³³ house ! What a cold³² day ! What a beautiful woman !
 grand³³ maison ! f. 82 froid jour ! m. 82 belle³³ femme !

21. The article *a, an* coming before *hundred* or *thousand*, followed by a noun, or relating to a noun, is not expressed in french, the words *cent* and *mille* having the property of an article* ; as,

I have won *a* thousand guineas ; J'ai gagné *mille* guinées ;
 Will you have *a* hundred of them ? En voulez-vous *cent* ? not, *un* cent.

EXERCISE.

Can¹²⁵ you lend me a thousand pounds ? I can¹²⁵ lend
 Pouvoir (kk) prêter 54 mille livres sterling ? pouvoir prêter
 you⁵⁴ a hundred, but I can not¹⁹⁰ lend you⁵⁴ a thousand. We
 vous en⁷⁰ cent, pouvoir¹²⁵ vous en⁷⁰ mille.
 have an army of a hundred thousand men. They have a hundred
 125 armée f. homme. 125
 field²⁵ pieces.
 pièces de campagne.

22. No article is used in french, before a noun added to illustrate or explain another noun ; and the article which is prefixed to such nouns in english, must be omitted in french ; as,

Zaira *a* tragedy of Voltaire. Zaire tragédie de Voltaire.
 Paris the capital of France. Paris capitale de la France.
 Never, Zaire *une* tragédie ; nor Paris *la* capitale, &c.

* See note (f) page 172.

EXERCISE.

Neptune the god of the sea. Telemachus an epic poem.
 dieu mer. Télémaque épique poëms
 Madrid the capital³² city of Spain. My brother is a citizen of
 capitale ville 5Espagne. citoyen
 Geneva, a small republic between France and Switzerland. He is a
 Genève, république entre f. 5Suisse. f.
 counsel and a member of the great council.
 avocat membre grand conseil. m.

23. But if we left out the first noun, we should say ;

J'ai vu une tragédie de Voltaire. J'ai vu la capitale de la France.

The article *a, an* is also omitted in french after some neuter verbs, such as Etre, to be ; Dévenir, to become ; se Faire, to turn ; Passer pour, to be reckoned, to pass for ; the noun which follows these verbs being considered as an adjective which serves to illustrate their nominative ; as,

Is he *a* frenchman ? Est-il Français ?
 He passes for *a* German. Il passe pour Allemand.
 His father is *a* merchant. Son père est négociant ; not, *un* négoc.

But the article must be expressed, if the noun is attended by an adjective or by a relative pronoun, for it then returns into the class of substantives ;

His father is a weathy merchant. Son père est *un* riche négociant.

EXERCISE.

Are you a Frenchman ? No ; I am a Spaniard. He passes¹²⁵
 133 Français ? 191 ; 125 Espagnol. passer
 for a Portuguese. His father was a physician. He was a jew, and he
 pour Portugais. était médecin. juif,
 is turned a christian.
 s'est fait chrétien.

24. No article is used in french, 1st, before a noun which, being joined to a verb, forms only one idea with that verb ; as, Avoir peur, to fear, to be afraid ; Avoir mal, to ache, to have a pain ; Avoir raison, to be right, to be in the right, &c. ;

2dly. Before a noun which forms a kind of adverb with the preposition antecedent : such are avec ardeur, for ardement, with eagerness ; sans considération, without consideration ; and when the substantive is not particularised.

3dly. Before the cardinal numbers, one, two, three, four, five, six*.

Lend me twenty pounds. I have six oranges.
 Prêtez-moi vingt livres. J'ai six oranges.

* The article must be used before the cardinal numbers, if the noun to which they are joined have a fixed number ; such as, *les quatre saisons*, the four seasons ; *les neuf muses*, the nine muses ; and also if it be specified ; as, *les deux que j'ai écrites*, the two letters which I have written ; *le dix Janvier*, the tenth Janvier.

EXERCISE.

I am²³⁹ in the right. She is²³⁹ in the wrong. I have a pain
 avoir — raison. avoir — tort. avoir mal
 in my head. He made¹²⁵ me a sign. He has done me an injury.
 16 faire 54 signe. faire 55 tort.
 Those who speak *without* reflection are exposed to many errors. We
 ceux parler sans reflexion exposés bien erreur
 often do *by* self-love what we think we do *through* (good nature).
 fair amour-propre ce que croire par bienveillance
 Bibliographers arrange books in *five* principal classes; divinity, juris-
 phé ger livre en 32 théologie
 prudence, history, polite letters, and arts. The mouth of the Danube
 histoire belle lettres f. embouchure m.
 has *five* large canals in the (Euxine sea). The temple of Solomon was
 grand Pont Euxin m.
 begun *four hundred* and *eighty* years after the departure of the Israel-
 commence quatre-vingts départ
 ites from Egypt. I have *pity* (on the) poor.
 Egypte. pitié des pauvre pl.

25. Sometimes *two nouns* come together, having a depen-
 dence on each other, and forming a kind of complex idea; as,
 John's horse. The prince's sword. The lady's gown. A silk gown.

The English have *two ways* of using these *nouns*; they say,

1. The horse of John. The sword of the prince. The gown of the lady. A gown of silk.
2. John's horse. The prince's sword. The lady's gown. A silk gown.

The French, on the contrary, have only *one* of these modes
 of placing *two nouns* together; they, as in the 1st instance,
 always place *first* the noun which is the *subject* of discourse,
 with *du, de la, des, de, or à* before the second noun, agreeably
 to the sense in which it is used; as,

John's horse. Le cheval *de* Jean; i. e. the horse of John.
 The prince's sword. L' épée *du* prince; the sword of the prince.
 The lady's gown. La robe *de la* dame; the gown of the lady. 6
 A silk gown. Une robe *de* soie; a gown of silk.

EXERCISE.

Which⁸⁰ do you admire¹²⁵ most, Cato's perseverance or
 Laquelle — 133 admirer le plus, Caton 7persévérance, f.
 Cæsar's intrepidity? Will you have any London porter? No; I
 Césa intrepidité? — 174 Londres porter? m. 191;
 will drink a glass of Lisbon wine. I have lost my gold watch. I had
 boire¹²⁵ verre m Lisbonne vin perdue or mentre. f. avais
 it⁵⁴ at the park gate. I am afraid¹²⁵ I have left it⁵⁵ (in the)
 l' park m. porte. f. I — craindre (nn) de l'⁵⁵ avoir laissée au
 (coffee room). Put this gentleman's horse into my brother's stable.
 café. m. Mettre* monsieur cheval dans écurie.
 Have you seen my mother's silk gown, and my sister's new† bonnet?
 vu soie robe, f. nouveau m.?
 It⁶⁵ is a present from the brother of her children's guardian. After
 C' présent m. de tuteur m.
 her husband's death, all his father's friends forsook¹³⁷ her.
 mari mort, f. tous ami abandonner¹²⁵ l'⁵⁴

* Second person imperative.

† Put this adjective before the noun.

26. Sometimes however the order of the nouns could not be changed in the above manner in english, without changing also the meaning; for ex. these expressions, a *wine glass*, a *tea spoon*, could not be turned into *glass* of wine, a *spoon* of tea; yet the nouns require this order in french: instead of changing the order of the words to alter the idea, as the English do, the French change the preposition, and instead of *de*, they use *à*; so,

A glass of wine, is, Un verre *de* vin; and

A wine glass, is, Un verre *à* vin; i. e. a glass used for wine.*

N. B. When the nouns are compounded of the words *fair*, *foire*; market, *marché*, and in speaking of messes, and the ingredients which they are made of, the *two nouns* are connected by *au*, *à la*, *aux*; as,

The *hay* market. Le marché *au* foin: i. e. the market for hay.

Some *cream* tarts. Des tartes *à la* crème; tarts made with cream.

EXERCISE.

Bring me a wine glass, and a tea spoon. Take the coffee
Apportez moi⁵⁶ vin[†] verre, m. thé cuiller. f. Porter [‡]café
cups into the dining room. He has broken the water pot. Where
tasse dans diner chambre.f. cassé eau pot, m. Où
is my sister's work bag? It⁶² is in my mother's bed room. Have
ouvrage sac? m. Il dans coucher chambre.f.
you ever seen a steam mill? No; but I have seen several water
jamais vu vapeur moulin m.? 191; mais plusieurs eau
mills and many⁶ wind mills. Will¹²⁵ you come I to the horse
moulin N.B. vent moulin. Vouloir venir chevaux
fair? I want to go to the poultry market. Let us go through the
foire f.? J'ai besoin d'aller volaille f. marché.m. — ; — aller[†] par
hay market.
foin.

27. Sometimes the name of a *country* is changed in english into an adjective, and prefixed to the name of its production; as Spanish wine, french brandy, english beer, dutch cheese, &c.; that adjective must be expressed by the substantive in french, and placed *after* the name of the production, connected by the preposition *de*; as,

Spanish wine. Vin *d'*Espagne; i. e. wine *of* Spain.

French brandy. Eau-de-vie *de* France; i. e. brandy *of* France.

* This rule is not without some exceptions, for we say, Un pot de chambre, a chamber pot; Une fille de chambre, a chamber maid; Un bonnet de nuit, a night cap; Un mouchoir de poche, a pocket handkerchief; Un cheval de carosse, a coach horse; Un cochon de lait, a suckling pig, &c. these few exceptions will be learnt by reading, and in conversation.

N. B. Many of these compound names are expressed by a single word in french; as, Coachman, Cocher; Footman, Laquais; Countinghouse, Comptoir; Coachhorse, Remise. These expressions are found in the dictionaries, and will be learnt by reading.

† When I say to a person, bring me a *wine glass*, it is evident that it is the *glass* I want, not the wine, so I ought to mention the *glass* first.

‡ First person imperative.

EXERCISE.

Have you got any french brandy? No; but I have good
 133 270 France eau-de-vie? 191; bon
 spanish wine. Do you like 125 english beer? No; I do 70 not;
 Espagne vin.m. — 133 aimer Angleterre bière f.? 191; Je ne l'aime pas?
 I prefer 125 dutch beer or french cider. Will 125 you have english
 J'aime mieux Hollande France cidre. m. Vauloir — 174 Angleterre
 cheese, or swiss cheese?
 fromage, m. Suisse ? 3

28. Before the name of a *country*, after a noun denoting dignity or authority, such as emperor, king, prince, &c. *of* is expressed by *de*; as,

The emperor *of* Russia. L'empereur *de* Russie.
 The parliament *of* England. Le parlement *d'*Angleterre.

After any other noun, *of* is expressed by *du*, *de la*, *des*; as,
 The south *of* France. Le sud *de la* France.
 The north *of* England. Le nord *de l'* Angleterre.

EXERCISE.

The king *of* Congo. The queen *of* Angola. The stadtholder
 roi reine stathouder
of Holland. The cortes *of* Spain. The petty states *of* Italy. The
 Hollande. cortes plur. Espagne. petits états Italie.
 air *of* France is more healthful than that 88 *of* Italy. The soil *of*
 air m. f. plus salubre celui sol m.
 Spain and Portugal would be 125 very fertile, if it was well cultivated.
 m. — être très fertile, s'il était bien cultivé.
 The south *of* England is warmer than the north *of* France.*
 sud m. chaud 41 nord m.

* The gender of nouns will no longer be marked in these exercises with the initial letters *m. f.*; the learner must now find out the gender by the rules given page 33 and following, according to the termination of the noun. But observe that it is by the *sound* of the last syllable of the word, not by the spelling that we know the gender of the noun. Now suppose you want to find out the gender of these twelve nouns, *France, Pays, Nation, Besoin, Agrément, delice, Vie, Secours, Pêche, Abricot, Fruit, Gibier*, which you will find in the beginning of the following exercise. 1st. *France*; this noun ends in *e mute*; see page 35 a general rule for the mute termination *i* page 33, or *s* page 35, and you will find that these terminations are both *masc.* *Nation*; look for *ION*, 34; you will find that nouns of this termination, a few excepted, are all *fem.* *Besoin*; look for the termination *ON*, page 34, and you will find it to be *masc.* *Agrément*; look for *ENT*, page 34, you will find that nouns of this termination are all, but one, *masc.* *Delice*; look for the termination *CE*, page 36, you will find *delice*, *masc.*, being an exception to the general rule, which is *fem.* *Vie*; see page 35, the general rule for common names ending in *e mute*, and you will find it to be *fem.* *Secours*; look for *OUR*, page 35, and you will find it to be a *masc.* termination. *Pêche*; look for *CHÉ*, page 37; you will not find that word in the exceptions, which are *masc.* then you conclude that it is included in the general rule, which is of the contrary gender. *Abricot*; look for *O* or *OT*, page 34; you will find that nouns of that termination are all *masc.* *Fruit*; look for *I*, page 33, a *masculine* termination. *Gibier*; look for *ER*, page 34; you will find it to be a *masc.* termination; and so on for any other noun the gender of which you want to know. But impress your mind with the general rule, and read often the exception, that by such frequent readings you may retain the most useful words contained in it; for you must not expect to retain them all at once. The advantage of these rules must appear obvious. By marking the gender at the end of the noun, or by referring to the dictionary for it, you learn only the gender of one word, whilst by referring to these rules, you learn the gender of a whole set of words.

*Recapitulatory exercise on the foregoing rules.**

This recapitulatory exercise contains likewise the ten first rules of the introduction, beginning page 44, and following.

I come from France and Italy. I have been at Paris, Bordeaux,
 venir¹²⁵ Italie. à ²⁰⁴
 Lyons, Geneva, Florence, Leghorn, Naples and Rome. How do
 Lyon, Genève, Livourne, Comment —
 you like²⁶⁸ France and Italy? I like¹²⁵ them both¹²² (very
 133 trouver ? aimer les⁵⁴ l'une et l'autre beau-
 much¹⁸³), but I would ¹²⁵ rather live in France than in Italy.
 coup N.B., aimer mieux (kk) vivre qu'
 France is certainly a most beautiful country. It⁶² has within itself
 certainement très beau ²⁴⁰ Elle en elle-même
 every thing that can¹²⁵ minister to the wants, comforts and delights
 tout ce qui pouvoir servir (kk) besoin, agrément délice
 of life, France produces¹²⁵, almost without the assistance of art,
 vie. produire presque sans secours art,
 all²⁹ sorts of delicious fruit; pears, apples, grapes, peaches, apricots,
 tout sorte délicieux³² fruit; poire, pomme, raisin, pêche, abricot,
 plums, cherries, figs, olives, a (great deal) more corn, wine and oil,
 prune, cerise, figue, — beaucoup plus blé, vin 'huile
 than the inhabitants can ¹²⁵ consume; and the country abounds¹²⁵
 que habitant ⁴⁷ pouvoir consommer; pays abonder
 with game, ²⁰⁴ poultry, and ²⁰⁴ cattle. The population of France,
 en gibier, volaille, bétail.
 (considering ¹⁷ its extent) is immense. They⁹⁰ reckon in France
 si on en considère l'étendue On N.B. compter¹²⁵
 twenty-five millions of souls. France is undoubtedly the most
 vingt cinq âme. ¹²⁵ sans contredit plus
 powerful nation ⁴⁹ in Europe. It⁶² alone has withstood the efforts of
 puissant²⁹ de l' Elle seule résisté ²⁰² aux
 Russia, Prussia, Germany, England, Holland, Spain, and Sardinia,
 Russie, Prusse, Allemagne, Angleterre, Hollande, Espagne, Sardaigne,
 that wanted to¹⁷² subdue it; but after twenty years of uninterrupted³²
 74 voulaient — subjuguier la⁵⁴; vingt an continue²⁹
 victories, that brave and warlike³² nation was (at last) overcome by
 victoire, 13 32 guerrier²⁹ fut enfin accablé¹⁵⁸ par
 all²⁹ those powers combined,²⁹ and compelled to submit to the
 tout puissance combiné, N.B. forcé²⁹ de se soumettre
 greatest²⁹ humiliation to which men can be condemned, that⁸⁸
 plus grand 76 puissent être condamné¹⁵⁸, celle
 of obeying²⁰² beings whom they despise.¹²⁵ Now that I have a
 151 obéir à être 74 mépriser. A présent que un

* The recapitulatory exercise at the end of each part of speech, is intended to try how far the learner understands the rules on which he has been practising on that part of speech. An infallible way to ascertain it, is to induce him to mark under every word on that part of speech the rule by which he makes use of such word; for instance, in the above exercise on the article and the noun, to make him mark under every noun, the rule by which, or at least to make him give a reason why he uses such and such an article, and so on with the other parts of speech; for unless he can do this, it is evident that he does not understand that part of speech, that he has no foundation to build upon, and he must read the rules over again, till he is able to do it.

† Do not put any article after en.

little time to myself, I am going to travel. I (am fond) of
 peu tems à moi, 155 aller — voyager. aimer¹²⁵ à
 travelling. In travelling one sees (so many) new* things, and
 voyager¹⁵⁴. En voyageant on⁹⁰ voit¹²⁹ tant nouvelle²⁹ chose,
 every new object furnishes some new idea to the mind. In a few
 chaque nouve objet fournir¹²⁵ † nouvelle idée esprit. Dans — peu
 days I will go to France, and after spending some time with my
 jour — aller , après avoir passé + avec
 friends at Paris, I will go to Switzerland, Italy, and Spain, where I
 ami à — 125 Suisse, 204 , 204 , où
 will embark¹²⁵ for America. I long to see that country of liberty
 — m'embarquer pour Amérique. Il me tarde de voir 13 230 liberté
 and independence, where rational³² beings may¹²⁵ communicate
 indépendance, où raisonnable²⁹ être pouvoir communiquer
 their ideas to their (fellow beings) without fearing¹⁵⁴ the holy²⁹
 idée semblable sans craindre saint*
 political³² or religious inquisition. After having¹⁵⁴ visited the prin-
 politique ou religieuse³² avoir visité
 cipal²⁹ cities of the wise republic of the immortal Washington, I will
 * ville sage* republique immortel* , —
 go to Mexico, Chili, and Peru. I want to see if the tree of liber-
 aller¹²⁵ Mexique, , Pérou. ai envie de voir si arbre
 ty, lately¹⁸⁴ planted in the new world, is¹⁵⁶ thriving better than it⁶²
 , depuis peu planté 213 nouveau monde, — réussir¹²⁵ mieux qu' il n'⁴⁷
 has done in the old, and if it is spreading its enlivening³² branches
 a faire 213 ancien, 92 155 étendrel²⁵ ses vivifiant²⁹
 over the fertile³² plains of that immense and rich³² continent. What
 sur 29 plaine 13 32 riche Quel
 a pleasure to see millions of intelligent³² beings uniting all their
 plaisir 163 voir 29 être unir¹⁵⁴ 29
 energies to¹⁷⁰ break the chains of superstition and despotism, those
 pour rompre chaîne -despotisme,
 two satanic³² enemies of reason, that divine spark of the supreme
 deux satanique²⁹ ennemis raison, 13 32 étincelle 32
 wisdom! If the father of light deigns¹²⁵ to cast a look on the actions
 sagesse ! lumière daigner 172 jeter regard sur
 of men, it is surely in such a work that he must delight to see his
 , c' sûrement²¹³ tel 36 ouvrage qu' doit se complaire à voir
 image employed. What is the reason that trade is so languishing,
 occupé. Quelle que commerce¹²⁵ si languissant,
 and that money is so scarce now? (People in trade) think¹²⁵ that
 argent rare à présent? Commerçants penser que
 it is the war. Oh! war is a dreadful thing. War is the scourge of
 65 guerre. Oh! 125 affreuse³² chose. fléau
 mankind. How preferable²⁹ are peace and harmony amongst all
 genre humain. Combien préférable¹⁸⁵ 125 paix 'harmonie parmi tous
 men! If men were reasonable, they (would never go to) war. War
 ! Si étaient raisonnable, 29 ne se feraient jamais
 begets¹²⁵ taxes, taxes beget poverty, and plunge¹²⁵ people into
 engendrer taxe, 125 pauvreté, plonger people 213
 misery. Thus whole³² nations are made¹⁵⁸ miserable²⁹ to gratify
 misère. Ainsi entier²⁹ rendre 170 satisfaire

* Put this adjective *before* the noun.

† When the substance is restrained to a *little, a few*, SOME is expressed by *quelque* *quelques*, not by *du, de, la, des*, which imply an *unlimited* number or quantity.

the ambition of a few vain³² beings whom often chance
 petit nombre vain²⁹ être 74 souvent hazard
 alone raises to the supreme rank, and who have the art of inciting
 seul élever¹²⁵ 32 rang, 74 125 exciter¹⁵⁴
 men to slaughter men, by calling them⁶⁶ heroes, who⁶⁶ are merely
 à égorger en appelant ceux * héros, D.N. ne sont que
 the base executioners of their inhuman³² orders. Will you come
 vil²⁹ exécuter inhumain²⁹ Vordre, vouloir 133 venir
 and take a walk along the river side before dinner? The sight of
 (nm) faire tour sur rivière bord 206 diné? vue
 the water is pleasant at this time of the year. (Is there) any fish in
 ean agréable tems année. Ya-t-il²⁴⁶ poisson
 this river? Not many; (there are) eels and carps, and some
 ? Pas ; Il y a³⁴⁶ anguille carpe, †
 trouts; but we are not far from the sea, and our fish-market is
 truit: 190 loin de mer, poissonnerie
 well supplied with sea 25fish. We have salmon, turbot, soles,
 bien pourvu¹⁵³ de de mer poisson, salmon, sole,
 mackerel, codfish, excellent³² oysters, crabs, and lobsters. Let us
 macquereau, morue, † 31 huitre, crabe homard. — —
 go and see your market. What an abundance of (every thing)
 aller (un) voir marché. Quelle⁸² abondance 107
 (there is in it!) What a deal of hares, rabbits and partridges!
 il y a²⁴⁶ —! 82 quantité lièvre, lapin perdrix!
 I see people yonder¹⁸³ who are selling¹²⁵ woodcocks, snipes and
 voir gens²²⁹ là-bas N.B. 75 155 vendre bécasse, bécassine
 (wild pigeons.) (Here are) also pheasants and quails. Do you
 ramier 247 aussi faisan caille — 133
 like quails? Yes; (very much.) We must¹⁸¹ walk towards
 aimer ? ; beaucoup. Il faut que nous allions vers
 home. It⁶² is dinner time. Let us walk into the dining room.
 la maison. C' N.B. diner heure. — — Entrer 213 diner salle
 The dinner is on the table. What have we for dinner? A
 sur Qu' 83 125 133 pour ?
 round of beef with cabbage and carrots, and a loin of veal with
 rouelle bœuf avec choux! carotte, longe veau,
 peas and spinage. Bring me some mustard, salt, pepper, a coffee
 pois épinards. || Apportez⁵⁶ moutarde, sel, poivre, café
 cup, and a table spoon. (How much) do they⁹⁰ sell¹²⁵ meat a
 tasse, soupe cuiller. Combien — 133 N.B. vendre viande
 pound in this town? Beef and mutton sell¹²⁵ eight pence a
 livre 213 ville? mouton se vendre huit sou
 pound, and veal seven pence. That is very dear. Yet we often
 veau sept C' très cher. Cependant 184

* Turn by calling *heroes them who &c.*

† See note † p. 183.

‡ Put this adjective *after* all these nouns.

|| This words is plural in french.

♢ *Très* can be used before adjectives derived from participles; such as, *interessant*, *interesting*; *occupé*, busy, &c.; but as in these instances *fort* or *bien* would answer just as well, it is more prudent to use these.

Très must be always followed by an adjective. Thus, the English *very*, used alone as a reply to, or an affirmation of what precedes, must be translated by *beaucoup*, or any other adverb.

The Academy and some grammarians connect *très* by a hyphen with the adjective that follows it; but the majority of writers, editors, printers, and grammarians, omit it as useless.

buy¹²⁵ a hundred pounds weight at a time. Corn sells¹²⁵ twelve
 en⁷⁰ acheter cent livre — à 12 fois. Blé se vendre douze
 shillings a bushel, and bread three pence a pound; but good³³
 shelin boisseau, pain trois livre; bon²⁹
 workmen get¹²⁵ four shillings a day. Bring a bottle of wine,
 ouvrier gagner quatre jour. Apporter* bouteille vin,
 and some wine glasses. Will you have french wine or spanish wine?
 verre. Vouloir — 174 France Espagne ?
 I will drink a glass of Port wine, if you have any.⁵⁴ (There is)
 — boire , si en.(p) Il n'y a ²⁴⁶
 no⁵ wine in the bottle ? Is there no⁵ wine in the wine cellar ?
 pas ²¹³ N'y a-t-il pas cave ?
 Go to the wine merchant, and tell him to send me ⁵⁴ a
 Aller* chez de vin marchand, dire* lui de envoyer m'
 dozen bottles of Port wine at sixty shillings a dozen. This
 douzaine de à soixante shelin
 wine costs me five shillings a bottle. You have a very fine
 coûter ⁵⁴ cinq belle
 gold watch. It⁶² has cost a hundred guineas. It⁶⁵ is a present
 or montre. Elle coûté guinée. C' présent
 from my cousin's guardian. Have you seen my brother's powder bag ?
 cousin tuteur. vu poudre sac !
 It⁶² is in my father's bed room. Let us walk up to that hill.
 Il ²¹³ coucher chambre. — — Aller* — colline.
 What⁸² a fine prospect we have from here! What a deal of fine
 Quelle belle perspective d' ici ! ⁸² quantité belle²⁹
 flowers (there is) here! Let us gather some⁹⁶ to¹⁷⁰ make
 fleur il ya ici ! — — cueillir* en⁷⁰ quelques-unes pour faire
 nosegays for your sister's children who (are so fond of) flowers.
 bouquet pour ⁷⁴ aiment tant —
 (Here are) some violets. What a pretty rose bud ! I see¹²⁵ yonder
 Voici ²⁴⁷ violette.† ⁸² joli³³ rose bouton ! voir là-bas
 some hawthorns, (honey suckles) and sweet³² briars. (That is)
 aubépinet, chèvre-feuille odorant églantier.† Voilà²⁴⁷
 my sister's husband's country house. Your father's house is finer⁴¹
 mari de campagne maison. belle
 than that.⁸⁸ (There are) people who are looking¹²⁵ at the flower
 n.b. Voilà²⁴⁷ gens²²⁹ ¹⁵⁵ regarder ²⁰¹ fleur
 pots which are at your mother's window. My brother's coachman
 pot† ⁷⁴ à fenêtre. cocher
 fell¹³⁷ from his horse yesterday¹⁸³; He broke¹³⁷ his leg, and put¹³⁷
 tomber de — cheval hier; N.B. se casser jambe, se démettre
 his arm out of joint.
 bras — — —||

* Imperative.

† Use the *singular* in french.

‡ If you mean pots *with* flowers in, you must say, *pots de fleurs* ; if you mean pots
 to *put* flowers in, you must say, *pots à fleurs*.

|| *Out of joint*, is expressed in the verb *démordre*.

CHAPTER IV.

ADJECTIVE.

An *adjective* is a word added to a *noun*, to denote some quality or circumstance belonging to that noun ; as, good wine, fine flowers.

29. The *adjective* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the noun to which it is added ; as,

That is a *handsome* man.

Voilà un *bel* homme.

That is a *handsome* woman.

Voilà une *belle* femme. (g)

N. B. A past participle, used to qualify a substantive, follows the same rules as an adjective ; ex.

He is very well *made*.

Il est très bien *fait*.

She is very well *made*.

Elle est très bien *faite*.

(g) The *feminine gender* of an *adjective*, or of a *participle* used adjectively, is formed by adding *e* mute, that is to say, *e* not accented, to the masculine ; as,

loved ; pretty ; lost ; great ; fine ; last ; precise ; little ; learned.

Masc. aimé, joli, perdu, grand, fin, dernier. précis, petit, savant.
Fem. aimée, jolie, perdue, grande, fine, dernière. précise, petite, savante.

EXCEPTIONS.

E. Adjectives ending in *e* mute, are the same for both genders ; as, Un *honnête* homme ; an *honest* man. Une *honnête* femme ; an *honest* woman. Un *jeune* homme *aimable* ; an *amiable* young man. Une *jeune* femme *aimable* ; an *amiable* young woman.

I. The feminine of *béni*, blessed, is *bénite* ; that of *favori*, favourite, is *favorite*.

U. The feminine of *beau*, fine ; *nouveau*, new ; *mou*, soft ; *fou*, mad ; is *belle*, *nouvelle* ; *molle*, *folle*, from *bel*, *nouvel*, *mol*, *fol* used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel.

C. The feminine of *blanc*, white ; *franc*, frank ; *sec*, dry ; *caduc*, decayed ; *public*, public ; *grec*, greek ; *turc*, turkish ; is *blanche*, *franche*, *sèche*, *caduque*, *publique*, *que*, *turque*.

D. The feminine of *nud*, naked, *crud*, raw ; is *nue*, *crue* ; and that of *verd*, green, is *greverte*.

F. Adjectives ending in *f*, change *f* in *ve* for the feminine ; as,

Masc. *bref*, brief ; *neuf*, new ; *naïf*, candid ; *actif*, active ; *plaintif*, sorrowful.

Fem. *brève*, brief ; *neuve*, new ; *naïve*, candid ; *active*, active ; *plaintive*, sorrowful.

G. The feminine of *long*, long, the only adjective ending in *g*, is *longue*.

L, N, } Adjectives ending in *el*, *eil*, *ul*, *un*, *ien*, *on*, *as*, *aïs*, *es*, *et*, *os*, *ot*, double the final
S, T, } consonant, and take *e* mute for the feminine gender ; as,

cruel ; rosy ; null ; ancient ; good ; big ; fat ; thick ; clean ; foolish.

Masc. cruel, vermeil, nul, ancien ; bon, gros, gras, épais, net, sot.

Fem. cruelle, vermeille, nulle, ancienne, bonne, grosse, grasse, épaisse, nette, sott.

Except the adjectives of nations ; as, *français*, french ; *anglais*, english ; &c. *mauvais*, bad ; *naïas*, silly ; *ras*, shorn ; *complet*, complete ; *discret*, discreet ; *inquit*, uneasy ; *replet*, replete ; *secret* ; which follow the general rule, *française*, anglaise, *mauvaise* ; &c. *frais*, fresh ; *tiers*, third ; which make *fraiche*, *tierce* ; and *benin*, benign ; *malin*, mischievous ; which make *benigne*, *maligne*, in the feminine.

X. Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x*, into *se* for the feminine ; as,

Masc. *heureux*, happy ; *paresseux*, lazy ; *jaloux*, jealous ; *faux*, false ;

Fem. *heureuse*, happy. *paresseuse*, lazy. *jalouse*, jealous. *fausse*, false.

Except *doux*, sweet soft ; which makes *douce* ; and *vieux*, old, which makes *vieille*.

N. B. The plural of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding *s* to the singular.

EXERCISE.

That young man is (in love.) That young woman is (in love.) He
 (bb) jeune homme amoureux (bb) femme *
 is very young. She is very young. He is married. She is married.²⁹
 très jeune. * marié. 158 * N.B.
 He is capricious. She is capricious. All²⁹ men are capricious.
 capricieux. * Tout
 All²⁹ women are capricious.
 *

30. When an adjective qualifies several nouns singular of
 of the same *gender*, that adjective must be of the same *gender*
 as those nouns, and *plural*; as,

My father and brother are *gone* out. Mon père et mon frère sont *sortis*.
 My mother and sister are *gone* out. Ma mère et ma sœur sont *sorties*.

EXERCISE.

Miss A. and Miss B. are (in love.) They are very happy. They will
 Mademoiselle amoureux.* Elles très heureux* —
 soon¹⁸⁴ be married. That⁸⁹ makes the mother and daughter very
 bientôt être * (bb) rendre très
 proud.* They are both¹²² very capricious; but they are civil and
 orgueilleux. Elle toutes deux *; civil *
 obliging. That¹³ lady has a gown and a petticoat very well matched.
 obligeant.* (bb) dame robe jupe très bien assorti.*
 The tea and the sugar are good, but the cream and the water are
 thé sucre bon, crème eau
 bad.
 mauvais.

31. But if the nouns are of different genders, the adjective
 must be of the *masculine* gender, and in the plural number; as,
 My father and mother are *gone* out. Mon père et ma mère sont *sortis*.
 He found his son and daughter *dead*. Il trouva son fils et sa fille *morts*.^(h)

EXERCISE.

Mr. A. and Miss B. are (in love.) They are very happy.
 Monsieur amoureux. Ils
 Are they not married yet¹⁸³? They are both¹²² very capricious;
 190 marié¹⁵⁸ encore? tous deux;
 but they are civil and obliging. He makes¹²⁵ his son and daughter
 civil obligeant. rendre
 unhappy. You have a coat and a waistcoat very well matched. The
 malheureux.^(h) habit veste très assorti.
 tea and the water are good, but the cream and the sugar are very
 thé eau bon, crème sucre
 bad.
 mauvais.

* See note (g), how the feminine gender is formed, page 186.

(h) When the adjective is not separated from the nouns by a verb, some authors make it agree with the noun; thus, *Il trouva son fils et sa fille morte*; but they except the adjectives which express union; as, *Il trouva son fils et sa fille réunis, réconciliés, &c.*

These exceptions and exceptions of exceptions are very difficult for learners to retain; therefore I would advise them to follow the general rule, which is perfectly agreeable to the fundamental principles of the french language.

32. Adjectives in english are generally placed *before* the noun, in french they are generally placed *after* it; as,

A *black* coat.

Un habit *noir*.

A well *made* man.

Un homme bien *fait*.

The *french* language.

La langue *française*.

EXERCISE.

All²⁹ the polite people in⁴⁹ Europe speak the french²⁹ language.

Tout poli²⁹ gens m. de l' parler français langue.

(I am told) that it is a very difficult language. Eat* a piece of new
on m'a dit⁹² que c' difficile Manger morceau frais

bread, and drink a glass of white wine. England is a delightful
pain, boire* verre blanc vin. Angleterre délicieux

country; but (there is) always a cold and damp air. (There are)
230; il y a²⁴⁶ froid humide 246

charming women, opulent cities, fruitful lands, and pleasant
charmant†, opulent²⁹ ville, fertile²⁹ terre. agréable²⁹

country 25houses. I like¹²⁵ their simple²⁹ and cordial²⁹ manners.
de campagne maison. aimer 14 simple cordial manière.

33. Except these adjectives, which are generally placed *before* the noun;

Premier, 1st; second, 2d; and other adjectives of *number*.

Beau bel, m. } *fine*,

Méchant, *wicked*.

Belle, fem. } *handsome*.

Meilleur, *better*.

Bon. m. bonne, f. *good*.

Même, *same*.

Grand, *great, large*.

Moindre, *less*.

Gros, m. grosse f. *big*.

Petit, *little, small*.

Jeune, *young*.

Plusieurs, *several*.

Joli, *pretty*.

Tout, *all, whole*.

Mauvais, *bad*.

Vieux, m. vieille, f. *old*; as,

She is a *handsome* woman.

C'est une *belle* femme.

She has a *good* husband.

Elle a un *bon* mari.

EXERCISE.

(That is) a large house. It⁶² is in a fine situation. It belongs

Voilà²⁴⁷ grand²⁹ Elle 213 belle situation. 52 appartenir

to a young man. He has lately married an old woman. He⁶⁵ is a
jeune depuis peu épousé vieille C'

big man. She is a little woman. They have two pretty children.
gros 65 petit²⁹ deux joli²⁹

34. But if any one of the above adjectives comes with another adjective that can not be placed before the noun, they must *both* be placed *after*, connected by a *conjunction*; as,

A *handsome, amiable* woman. Une femme *belle et aimable*.

A *good, complaisant* husband. Un mari *bon et complaisant*. (i)

* Imperative.

† See note (g) how the feminine gender of adjectives is formed.

(i) The rules for the placing of adjectives are not very strictly adhered to, especially in poetry. Even in prose many adjectives may be placed either *before* or *after* the noun, according as their position is more agreeable to the ear, of which a learner can be no judge; so his surest way is to follow the rules, and to notice in reading, those

EXERCISE.

(That is) a large convenient house. It⁶² is in a fine healthy
 247 grand²⁹ commode Elle 213 belle saine
 situation. It belongs to a profligate young man. He has lately
 62 appartenir débauché 33 39 depuis peu
 married an old rich woman. He⁶⁵ is a great man, He is a tall
 épousé riche C' (i) 65 (i)
 man. They are very honest²⁹ people. They are very civil²⁹
 65 sont très honnête (i) gens. 65 honnête. (i.)
 people.

35. The adjectives of number, *premier*, first; *second*, *deuxième*, second; *troisième*, third; *quatrième*, fourth; *cinquième*, fifth, &c. are placed in french as in english, *before* the noun; as,

The *first* day.
 The *fourth* month.

Le *premier* jour.
 Le *quatrième* mois.

EXERCISE.

The first day of the week. The third month of the year. The
 jour semaine. mois année.
 fourth year of the reign of the fifth monarch.
 régne monarque.

36. But when the adjectives *third*, *fourth*, *fifth*, *sixth*, &c. are used as a distinction to some personage; as, *George the third*, *Henry the eighth*; or to date the months; as, *July 14th*,

adjectives which he finds sometimes before and sometimes after the noun. Yet custom, for want of other expressions, has fixed a place for some adjectives which must be attended to, as the placing the adjective before or after the noun, changes the idea; the most common are,

Un <i>brave</i> homme.	A well behaved man.	Un homme <i>vilain</i> .	A niggardly fellow.
Un homme <i>brave</i> .	A courageous man.	Un <i>pauvre</i> homme.	A man without genius.
De <i>braves</i> gens.	Well behaved people.	Un homme <i>pauvre</i> .	A poor man.
Des gens <i>braves</i> .	Courageous people.	Une <i>cruelle</i> femme.	An unfeeling woman.
Un <i>bon</i> homme.	A simple man.	Une femme <i>cruelle</i> .	A cruel woman.
Un homme <i>bon</i> .	A good natured man.	Une <i>sage</i> femme.	A midwife.
Un <i>honnête</i> homme.	An honest man.	Une femme <i>sage</i> .	A wise man.
Un homme <i>honnête</i> .	A civil man.	Une <i>grosse</i> femme.	A big, fat woman.
D' <i>honnêtes</i> gens.	Honest people.	Une femme <i>grosse</i> .	A woman with child.
Des gens <i>honnêtes</i> .	Civil people.	Un <i>furieux</i> animal.	A huge creature.
Un <i>gentil</i> homme.	A noble man.	Un animal <i>furieux</i> .	A fierce animal.
Un homme <i>gentil</i> .	A genteel man.	Un <i>certaine</i> nou-	A certain piece of
Un <i>galant</i> homme.	A liberal man.	velle.	news.
Un homme <i>galant</i> .	A gallant.	Une nouvelle <i>certaine</i> .	True or sure news.
Un <i>grand</i> homme.	A great man.	De <i>nouveau</i> vin.	Fresh wine.
Un homme <i>grand</i> .	A tall man. [low.]	Du vin <i>nouveau</i> .	Wine newly made.
Un <i>plaisant</i> homme.	An odd sort of a fel-	La <i>morte</i> eau.	The neap tides.
Un homme <i>plaisant</i> .	A pleasant man.	De l'eau <i>morte</i> .	Standing water.
Un <i>vilain</i> homme.	A disagreeable man.		

The adjective *Cher* placed before the noun signifies *dear*, *affectionate*; as, *Mon cher père*, my dear father; placed after it, it signifies *of high price*; as, *Une livre cher*, a dear book.

New is both *neuf* and *nouveau*; *neuf* is said of things newly made; as, *A new coat*, *Un habit neuf*, i. e. made of new cloth; *un livre neuf*, a new book, i. e. a book that has not been used, &c. *Nouveau* is said of things newly invented, of new productions; as, *Un habit nouveau*, a coat of a new fashion; *Un nouveau livre*, or *un livre nouveau*, a new book, i. e. a new production. *Un nouvel habit* means a new dress.

November 5th ; they are changed into the *substantive* numbers *deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six, &c.*

If used as a distinction, they are put *after* the name of the personage ; as,

George *the third*.

Henry *the eighth*.

George *trois*, i. e. george *three*.

Henri *huit*, i. e. henry *eight*.

If used as a date, they are put *before* the name of the month ; as,

July 14th.

November 5th.

Le *quatorze* Juillet.

Le *cinq* Novembre. (*k*)

EXERCISE.

Henry the fourth was a great man and a good king ; he succeeded
 Henri * grand roi ; succéder à
 Henry the third, brother to Charles the ninth, the greatest villain
 * de * 44 scélérat
 that⁷⁴ ever reigned¹³⁶ over a civilized people. Henry the eighth,
 qui † ait⁵⁰ jamais régné sur civilisé³² 228 Henri *
 after having¹⁵⁴ been the friend of Pope Clement the seventh, became
 après avoir été ami Pape * devenir
 the greatest enemy of the papal³² authority, and delivered England
 44 ennemi papal²⁹ autorité, délivrer
 (from the) shameful yoke of an Italian priest.
 du honteux³² joug Italien prêtre.

37. Adjectives of measure and dimension, such as *high, tall, low, deep, thick, big, wide, broad, long, short, &c.* which are placed after the number in english, must be placed *before* it in french, joined to it by *de* ; as,

A room twelve feet *long*, and ten *broad*.

Une chambre *longue de* douze pied, et *large de* dix ;

Literal. A room *long* of twelve feet, and *broad* of ten.

A wall ten feet *high*, and two feet *thick*.

Un mur *haut de* dix pieds, et *épais de* deux ;

Literal. A wall *high* of ten feet, and *thick* of two.

N. B. The adjectives of *measure* and *dimension* are frequently expressed in french by their *substantives* ; † then the words remain in the same order in the french as they are in english, but both the number and the noun of measure must be preceded by *de* ; as,

(*k*) Except *Premier* in dating the days, and *Premier* and *Second* when used for a distinction ; for we do not say, Le *un* Janvier, the *one* of January ; but, Le *premier* Janvier, Le *deux*, Le *trois*, &c. nor we say, George *un*, George *one* ; George *deux*, George *two* ; but George *premier*, George *second*, and then George *trois*, George *three* ; George *quatre*, &c.

* See numbers, p. 164.

† See note (o) p. 66.

‡ The substantive may be formed by adding *ur* to the adjective when it ends with a vowel ; as, *Large, largeur* ; and *eur* when it ends with a consonant ; as, *Haut, hauteur*, &c.

A room twelve feet *long*, and ten broad.

Une chambre *de douze pieds de longueur*, et *de dix de largeur*.

Literal. A room *of* twelve feet *of length*, and *of* ten *of breadth*.

A wall ten feet *high*, and two feet *thick*.

Un mur *de dix pieds de hauteur*, et *de deux d'épaisseur* ;

Literal. A wall *of* ten feet *of height*, and *of* two *of thickness*.

But observe that when the adjective is changed into its substantive, the verb *être* must be changed into *avoir*, and *de* is omitted before the number ; as,

Our room is twelve feet long, and ten broad.

Adject. Notre chambre *est longue de douze pieds*, et *large de dix*.

Subst. Notre chambre *a douze pied de longueur*, et *dix de largeur* ;

i. e. Our room *has* twelve feet *of length*, and ten *of breadth*.

Adject. Ce mur *est haut de dix pieds*, et *épais de deux*.

Subst. Ce mur *a dix pieds de hauteur*, et *deux d'épaisseur* ;

i. e. This wall *has* ten feet *of height*, and two *of thickness*.

EXERCISE.

Our garden is two hundred paces long, and a hundred and fifty
 jardin * pas long, 21 †
 broad. It is surrounded by a wall twelve feet high, two feet thick,
 large. 11 entouré d' mur * pieds haut, épais
 and a hundred yards long. Our garden has two hundred paces of
 21 verge pas
 length, and a hundred and fifty of breadth. It is surrounded by a
 longueur, 21 † largeur. 11 entouré d'
 wall of twelve feet of height, and of two of thickness. Our garden is
 pieds hauteur, épaisseur.
 long of two hundred paces, and broad of a hundred and fifty ; or, our
 long pas large 21 † ; ou,
 garden has two hundred paces of length, and a hundred and fifty of
 pas longueur,
 breadth.
 largeur.

REMARKS ON THE ADJECTIVES.

38. The adjective can *not* be separated by an article from the noun which it qualifies, therefore those articles which come *between* the adjective and the noun in english, must be placed *before* them in french ; as,

Such *a* man.

Un tel homme : *not* tel un homme.

So great *a* thing.

Une si grande chose.

Except *tout*, all, whole, which requires the article *after* it ; as,

All *his* time.

Tout *son* tems.

The whole day.

Tout *le* jour.

A whole day.

Tout *un* jour.‡

* See numbers p. 164.

† See note * p. 165.

‡ And if *tout* is governed by a preposition, the preposition must be placed *before* *tout*, and the article *after* ; as,

Of the whole regiment. De tout le régiment. *To the whole fleet.* A toute la flotte.

Except also, when the adjective is used to distinguish some particular person from another person of the same name ; as,

Peter *the* cruel.

Pierre *le* cruel.

Cato *the* elder.

Caton *l'*ancien.

Alexander *the* great.

Alexandre *le* grand.

EXERCISE.

Did¹³⁶ you ever see such a man ? I never saw¹³⁶ so tall²⁹ a wo-
 Avez jamais vu tel ? 190 ai vu si grand
 man. It is not so great a thing.
 Ce 190 si grand²⁹ chose.

39. By prefixing to an adjective, an article of the same gender and number as the noun to which it refers, that adjective has often the property of a *substantive*, and the words *man*, *woman*, *people*, which are expressed in english, may be omitted in french ; as,

The wise *man* is happy.

Le sage est heureux.

He is a troublesome *man*.

C'est *un importun*.

She is a little brown *woman*.

C'est *une petite brune*.

The great ; the covetous *people*.

Les grands ; les avares.*

EXERCISE.

An English man. A French woman. He is a drunken man ; a
 Anglais Française 65 ivrogne ;
 covetous man. She is an idle woman ? They are ungrateful
 avare. 65 paresseux (g) 65 sont ingrat
 people. Learned men are esteemed.²⁹ Ignorant people are
 Savant estimé. (N.B.) Ignorant
 despised.²⁹ Take notice of these words in reading authors, and in
 méprisé. (N.B.) Faites attention à ((bb) en lisant auteur, 213
 the dictionaries.
 dictionnaire.

40. As an article *prefixed* to an adjective without a noun, gives to it the property of a *substantive*, so when the article is taken from a noun, that noun assumes the power of an *adjective* ; for example,

I know *a poet*.

I speak of *a philosopher*.

Here the words *poet* and *philosopher* are *substantives*, because they name the *objects* spoken of, consequently they require an article ; so,

Je connais *un poète*.

Je parle d'*un philosophe*.

But when I say,

The *man* I speak of is *a poet* and *a philosopher* ;

He is *a poet*, but he is not *a philosopher* ;

the substance I am speaking of is *man*, the words *poet* and

* This rule extends to many adjectives, but not to all ; they should be taken notice of in reading.

philosopher are only *attributes* of that substance, and they no more require an article than if I said ;

The man I speak of is *witty*, is *wise* ; so the French,

L'homme dont je parle est *poète* et *philosophe*.

Il est *poète*, mais il n'est pas *philosophe*.

A *philosopher* is seldom a *poet*, but a *poet* is seldomer a *philosopher*.

Philosopher in the first part of the sentence is a *substantive*, in the second an *adjective*. *Poet* in the first part of the sentence is an *adjective*, in the second a *substantive* ; so the French,

Rarement un philosophe est *poète*, mais plus rarement une *poète* est *philosophe*.

(See the 23d rule.)

EXERCISE.

My brother is a colonel, and my father is a general. He is the
colonel, général. Il
commander in chief. That man was a tailor. He lately¹⁸⁴ turned a
commandant en chef. 140 tailleur. depuis peu s'est fait
school master. He passes for a doctor. His son was a bookseller ;
ecole maitre. passer pous médecin. 140 libraire ;
now he is a surgeon.
chirurgien.

COMPARISONS.

The same words which serve to *qualify* nouns, serve also, by the means of certain *adverbs* prefixed to them, to *compare* their qualities.

The quality of a substance, when compared with another, is either *superior*, *inferior*, or *equal* to the other ; this is called *comparative*.

Or the quality is *raised above*, or *lowered below* several others, and this is called *superlative*.

OF COMPARATIVES.

41. The comparative of superiority, *more* before the adjective, or *r* or *er* added to it, as *more* strong or stronger, is formed in french by *plus* before the adjective ;* as,

My horse is *more* strong or stronger *than* yours.

Mon cheval est *plus* fort *que* le vôtre.

EXERCISE.

Spain is larger than France ; but France is richer and more
Espagne grand²⁹ que ; riche
powerful than Spain. This¹³ field is better than that,⁸⁸ because it⁶²
puissant²⁹ N.B. champ † N.B., parce qu' il
is better cultivated. Your watch is finer than mine, because it⁶² is
† cultivé. montre belle 85 elle
newer and dearer ; but mine is better, and will last longer than yours.
neuve, cher²⁹ ; 85 † — durer long tems 85.

* Except *meilleur*, better ; *pire*, worse, adjectives, } which are comparatives of
mieux, better ; *pis*, worse, adverbs, } themselves

† See note (E) page 56.

42. The comparative of inferiority, *less*, before the adjective, is formed in french by *moins* before the adjective ;* as,

My horse is *less* strong *than* yours.
Mon cheval est *moins* fort *que* le vôtre.

The same comparative formed by *so* before the adjective, and *as* after it, is expressed, *so* before the adjective by *si*, and *as* after it by *que* ; as,

My horse is not *so* strong *as* yours.
Mon cheval n'est pas *si* fort *que* le vôtre.

EXERCISE.

Spain is not so rich, nor so powerful as France. That field is less
Espagne 190 29, ni 29 N.B. champ
fruitful than this.⁸⁸ Your sister is not so handsome, nor so rich as
fertile N.B. belle,
your cousin, but she is not less amiable.
cousine, aimable.

43. The comparative of equality, *as* before, and *as* after the adjective, is expressed, *as* before the adjective by *aussi*, and *as* after it by *que* ; as,

My horse is *as* strong *as* yours. Mon cheval est *aussi* fort *que* le vôtre.

EXERCISE.

Spain is not by much as populous as France. That field is as
190 de beaucoup peuplé²⁸ N.B. champ
fruitful as this.⁸⁸ Your sister is as amiable as your cousin. My
fertile N.B. aimable cousine.
watch is as good²⁹ as yours, but it is not so fine.
montre bon (g) 85, 62 belle.

OF SUPERLATIVES.

44. The superlative formed by *most* or *least* before the adjective, or by *st* or *est* added to it ; as, *most* strong or *strongest*, is formed in french by adding *le*, *la*, *les* to the comparative words *plus*, *moins* ; as,

Comp. Stronger, *plus* fort, m. *plus* forte, f.

Sup. Strongest, le *plus* fort, la *plus* forte, les *plus* forts, les *plus* fortes ;

Comp. Less strong, *moins* fort, m. *moins* forte, f.

Sup. Least strong, le *moins* fort, la *moins* forte, les *moins* forts, les
[*moins* fortes ;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

My pony is the *strongest* of my horses.

Mon bidet est le *plus* fort de mes chevaux.

My mare is the *least* strong of the two.

Ma jument est la *moins* forte des deux. (l)

* Except *moindre*, less, which is a comparative of itself.

(l) Observe what is said, note † page 45, that *two* of the signs called *article*, can not be prefixed to the same noun ; so,

My strongest horse ; is, Mon *plus* fort cheval ; Not, Mon le *plus* fort cheval.

[Observe

N. B. The comparison of *adverbs* is formed like that of *adjectives*; as,

Strongly, Fortement. *More* strongly, *Plus* fortement.
Most strongly, *Le plus* fortement. *Less* strongly, *Moins* fortement, &c.

EXERCISE.

France is the most populous country in Europe. China is the
 largest empire in the world. (This is) my finest book. If it is not
 grand 49 monde. 247 (l) beau S' il
 the finest, it is the best. It is the dearest book that I have ever
 , 62 meilleur. 65 cher 32 74 50 jamais
 bought.
 acheté.

REMARKS ON THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

45. When the comparison runs between *two parts* of a sentence, an *article* is added to the comparative in english; as,

The more you study, the more you learn.

This article is *omitted* in french;

Plus vous étudiez, plus vous apprenez.

And the adjective or noun which, in these instances, comes *before* the verb in english, must be placed *after* it in french; as,

The longer the day is, the shorter is the night.

Plus le jour est long, plus la nuit est courte;

Literal. *More the day is long, more the night is short.*

The more populous a country is, the richer it is.

Plus un pays est peuplé, plus il est riche;

Literal. *More a country is populous, more it is rich.*

EXERCISE.

The more you study, 125 the more you learn. The more I see her,
 étudier, apprendre. voir 54,
 the less I like her. The more I know men, the less I esteem them.
 aimer 54 connaître , estimer 54
 The more difficult a thing is, the more honourable it is. I think that
 difficile chose , honorable 62 penser (bb) N.B.
 the more pains I take, 125 the less progress I make.
 plus peine prendre, moins progrès faire.

46. The comparative words *plus, moins, si, aussi* must be *repeated before every adjective*, though they are in the same sentence; as,

Observe also, that if the adjective is placed first, the article needs not to be repeated before the noun; but if the noun is first, the article must be repeated before the adjective; as,

It is the *strongest* horse I have seen.

C'est le *plus* fort cheval que j'ai vu; or, C'est le cheval le *plus* fort que j'ai vu

* See note † page 47.

She is *as* rich and handsome as her cousin.
Elle est *aussi* riche et *aussi* belle que sa cousine.

EXERCISE.

She is more studious²⁹ and dutiful than her sister. She is already
studieux (g) obéissant²⁰ déjà
as wise and clever as her mother; but she is so proud and affected
sage habile ; fier²⁹ affecté²⁹
that nobody likes¹²⁵ her.
27 aimer 54.

47. The comparative words *plus*, *moins*, *moindre*, *meilleur*, *mieux*, *pire*, *pis* require *ne* before the verb which follows them; as,

This is *better* than I thought.
Ceci est *meilleur* que je ne pensais.

However *ne* is not required if the following verb is in the infinitive, or if it is preceded by a conjunction; as,

It is greater *to* forgive than *to* revenge.
Il est plus grand *de* pardonner que *de** se venger.
I am better now than *when* I was in town.
Je me porte mieux à présent que *quand* j'étais à la ville.

EXERCISE.

He has lost more than he has gained. He is richer than he was.
perdre gagner. riche 140
He lives better than he did¹³⁹ before. He is less happy than people
vivre (E) p.56 faire 206 N.B. heureux 90 N.B.
imagine. It is better to read than be idle. He is more studious now
s'imaginer. Il vaut mieux 172 lire (II) oisif. studieux à présent
than when he was at school.
140 à école.

48. The particles *by* and *than* coming after the comparative, or after the adverbs *more*, *less*, followed by a word denoting *quantity*, not *quality*, are expressed by *de*, not by *que* or *par*; as,

It is stronger *by* much. Il est plus fort *de* beaucoup.
It costs more *than* ten guineas. Il coûte plus *de* dix guinées.

EXERCISE.

This does not cost less than fifty guineas. It is too dear by half.
89 — 190 coûter guinée. C' trop moitié.
I would not sell it⁵⁴ for less than sixty. I have not had it⁵⁵ more
vendre le à eu l'
than a year.
an. †

* The same preposition which follows the comparative must be repeated after *que*;
as, We are more inclined *to* revenge, than *to* forgive.

Nous sommes plus portés à nous venger *qu'à* pardonner.

† *Année* is used to mark an epoch, without thinking of its duration, and *année* to determine a duration of twelve months.

49. The preposition *in*, after a superlative in english, is expressed in french in the same manner as *of*, agreeably to the rules on the article ; as,

He is the richest merchant *in* London.

C'est le plus riche négociant *de* Londres; i. e. *of* London.

She is the most virtuous woman *in* the city.

C'est la femme la plus vertueuse *de* la ville; i. e. *of* the city.

EXERCISE.

(That is) the cleverest boy in the school. His father is the most
 247 habile garçon école.
 learned man in the kingdom. His mother is the most sensible³²
 savant royaume. spirituel²⁹
 woman in the whole town.

38

50. The superlative followed by the relative or definite pronoun, *qui*, *que*, *dont* requires the following verb in the subjunctive mood; as,

She is the prettiest woman *that* was at the ball.

C'est la plus jolie femme *qui* fût au bal.

He is the handsomest man *that* I have ever seen.

C'est le plus bel homme *que* j'aie jamais vu.

EXERCISE.

Mr. A. is the best friend I have. He is the most honest man I
 Mons. meilleur (s) 65 honnête (s)
 know. His sister is the handsomest woman I have ever seen.
 connaître. belle (s) jamais vue.

*Recapitulatory exercise on the foregoing rules.**

What⁸² charming weather! How ¹⁸⁵ beautiful the country²³⁰ looks!
 Quel charmant tems! Que belle ¹⁸⁵ campagne être! ¹²⁵
 How attractive nature is, when it is arrayed in its verdant charms!
¹⁸⁵ attrayant, quand ⁶² orné de ses verdoyant charme!
 How sweet solitude is to innocent minds! Let us go and take a
¹⁸⁵ doux (g) cœur! — aller (nn) faire
 (short walk) in the neighbouring fields, (whilst we wait) till your
 tour²⁶³ n.b. ²¹³ voisin champ, en attendant que
 sister is²¹⁸ ready. How¹⁸⁵ is²⁴¹ your aunt? She is still very ill.
 soit prêt. Comment se porter tante? encore malade.
 I am sorry (for it.) She is a virtuous, prudent, and generous wo-
 fâché en⁵⁴ ⁶⁵ vertueux, (g) généreux (g)
 man. Her daughter is very handsome, but she is too proud. She
 fille belle, ⁵¹ trop orgueilleux (g);
 is as haughty as if she were the finest woman in England; yet
 fier ¹⁴⁰ ; cependant
 as she is richer and handsomer than her cousin, she will ⁴¹ sooner get
 comme belle, cousine, f. — tôt¹⁸³ trouver

* See note * under the preceding recapitulatory exercise.

a husband ; but virtue is more precious than riches. (Something
 mari ; vertu précieux (g) richesse. (Il faut
 must be allowed) for her age ; she is so young. She is older than I 52
 passer quelque chose) à * âge ; jeune. âgé moi
 am. She is as old as my sister who is married. She is 239 not less
 † âgé 74 marié. a n. e.
 than twenty. I do not think that she is 239 more than eighteen. She
 vingt ans. — penser en 70 ait 145
 is taller by two inches, but she is not so handsome by much. She has
 grand pouce, belle
 been spoiled in her infancy. Your sister is the most lovely girl I
 gâté enfance. aimable (s)
 know. She is so diligent and 46 attentive. You do not learn so well
 connaître. attentif. (g) — apprendre
 as she does, because you are not so studious. My sister learns better
 † , parceque studieux. (g) (E p. 56)
 than I do, because she has a better memory than I have, but I take more
 52 † , mémoire 52 † ,
 pains than she does. I found 136 my exercise easier than I thought.
 peine faire. † ai trouvé thème aisé penser. 140
 It is better than I expected. It is less difficult than you imagined.
 attendre. 140 62 moins difficile s'imaginer. 140
 My son has made greater progress than I expected. (There are)
 41 progrès 47 espérais. 140. 246
 authors who write better than they speak ; there are others who speak
 auteur 125 † 125 125
 better than they write. The more I examine this affair, the more
 125 45 (bb) affaire, f. 45
 puzzling 29 I find it 62. Give that 89 to your eldest 32 sister, and this 89
 embarrassant 54 (bb) aîné 29 † (bb)
 to your younger brother. Your writing is bad, but this 88 is worse,
 jeune 33 † écriture, f. (bb) pire ¶
 and that 88 is the worst of all. This ditch is nine feet deep, and
 (bb) ¶ tout. 29 (bb) fossé pied profond, †
 six feet broad. That tree is a hundred yards high, and ten feet
 large. (bb) arbre 21 verge haut,
 thick. London 25 bridge, now the finest bridge in England, is seven
 épais. pont, à présent beau
 hundred and sixty-six feet long, and fifty-six feet broad ; the center
 † pieds , large ; du millieu
 25 arch is one hundred and fifty feet broad, and thirty-two feet high.
 arche, f. 21 † , haut.
 Napoleon the first succeeded 202 Louis the 16th ; Louis the 18th
 a 136 succédé à ;
 succeeded Napoleon the 2d, king of Rome, and second emperor of the
 136 à , roi , 33 empereur
 French. I want a watch ; but I should not like to give more than ten
 260 montre ; — aimer à donner

* See note † page 45.

† This auxiliary verb is generally *left out* in french ; if you express it, you must follow rule 47.

‡ See note (E) page 56.

¶ *Eldest* and *younger* can not be expressed by the *comparative* nor superlative in french, they must be expressed by the *positive*, for, as there is only *one eldest* and *one younger*, there can be no comparison.

¶ See note * page 193.

¶ See note * page 165.

guineas (for it.) You can not get a good one for less than twenty. I
guinée en54 (kk) avoir en54 à moins

will not give more than twelve. The best quality a man can125
— en70 qualité (s) 50 pouvoir

have, is to be civil and obliging to the most uncivil and disobliging
(kk), de civil obligeant incivil désobligeant

people. The more difficult a thing is, the more merit (there is) in
gens.229 difficile chose , mérite 246 à

doing169 it.54 The more we contemplate the beauties of nature, the
faire 62 contempler beauté ,

less reason we have to (be proud.) The richer and the more
moins sujet de nous enorgueillir. riche

elevated in dignity we are, the less pride we ought to have, and
élevé en dignité , moinsN.B. orgueil devoir 172 avoir,

the more we are obliged to be just and reasonable; but most men
obligé d' juste raisonnable ; la plupart des

(of these days) remember that they are rich and powerful,
d'aujourd'hui ne se souvenir130 (bb)N.B. puissant,

only to170 oppress the poor and the weak, and to be more unjust and
que pour opprimer pauvre faible 170 être injuste

unreasonable. The great wall (on the) north of China is about
déraisonnable. muraille au nord la Chine environ

fifteen hundred miles long, and the royal canal of that empire is
quinze

about eighteen hundred miles long. The walls of Babylon were two
dix-huit mur Babylone

hundred feet high, and fifty broad. An angry man, who suppresses
piéd En colère étouffer

his passion, thinks worse than he speaks; an angry man who will
penser plus mal parler ; vouloir

chide speaks worse than he thinks. One of the greatest defects of
gronder Un défaut

the Pharsalia, is that fury of imagination which Lucan did not
Pharsale, f. cette fougue f. que Lucain

know how to repress, and which made him rather an enthusiast
savoir réprimer en faire plutôt enthousiaste m.

than a poet. I have no pity on the misery of those who, being young
poète. n' pas pitié de misère ceux jeune

and strong, choose rather to beg than to work; but I pity the
fort, aimer mieux mendier de travailler; mais j'ai pitié des

old who can not get their livelihood. Westminster Abbey,
vieillards pouvoir gagner vie. Abbaye,

within its walls, is three hundred and sixty feet long; at the nave
en dedans des mur cent soixante piéd à nef

it is seventy feet broad, and at the cross one hundred and ninety.
soixante-dix croix 21 quatre-vingt-dix.

The front of Somerset house towards the Strand is about one hundred
façade vers environ 21

feet long, and the front towards the principal court is two hundred
vers cour

feet and more. The most learned men make sometimes the grossest
savant faire quelquefois grossier

mistakes. Obedience is the surest means of pleasing our parents.
faute. Obéissance moy en plaire à parents.

CHAPTER V.

PRONOUN.

A *pronoun* is a word used to represent a *noun*, as when I say *I* instead of naming my own name ; *thou, you, he, she, it, they* instead of naming that of another being.

There are various sorts of pronouns, generally known by the names of *personal, relative, possessive, demonstrative, indefinite*.

SECT. I.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

As there are *three* persons in grammar, so there are *three* sorts of words to represent them, but sometimes the same person is represented by *several* words, as appears from the following table.

Agents or <i>nominatives</i> of Verbs.			<i>objects</i> of Verbs, or of Prepositions.*			
1st per.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je, Moi.</i>	<i>Me</i>	<i>Me, Moi.</i>		
	<i>We ;</i>	<i>Nous,</i>	<i>Us ;</i>	<i>Nous.</i>		
2nd per.	<i>Thou,</i>	<i>Tu, Toi.</i>	<i>Thee,</i>	<i>Te, Toi.</i>		
	<i>You ;</i>	<i>Vous.</i>	<i>You ;</i>	<i>Vous,</i>		
3rd p. m.	<i>He,</i>	<i>Il, Lui.</i>	<i>Him,</i>	<i>Le, Lui.</i>		
	<i>They ;</i>	<i>Ils. Eux.</i>	<i>Them ;</i>	<i>Les, Leur, Eux.</i>		
3rd p. f.	<i>She,</i>	<i>Elle,</i>	<i>Her,</i>	<i>La, Lui, Elle.</i>		
	<i>They ;</i>	<i>Elles.</i>	<i>Them ;</i>	<i>Les, Leur, Elles.</i>		
3rd p. n.	<i>It,</i>	<i>Il, m. Elle. f.</i>	<i>It,</i>	<i>Le, m. La, f. En, Y.</i>		
	<i>They ;</i>	<i>Ils, m. Elles. f.</i>	<i>Them ;</i>	<i>Les, m. & f. En, Y.</i>		
3rd pers. common	}		<i>Himself,</i>	} <i>Se, Soi :</i>		
			<i>Herself,</i>			
			<i>Itself,</i>			
			<i>Themselves ;</i>			

And as these words are not used indiscriminately, it is necessary to attend to the following observations.

* In every action there is an Agent, doer, or performer ; as I write, I teach, Thou teachest, He teaches, The masters teaches ; and if the action is of a nature to be communicated, there is also generally a Patient or receiver ; as, I write a Letter, I teach You, Him, Her, Them, French, English, &c. This Agent or doer, in grammar, is called the *nominative* of the verb, and the Patient or receiver, is called the *object* ; so, I, Thou, He, The master are *nominatives* ; Letter, You, Him, Her, &c. are *objects* of the verb.

Until now I have avoided speaking of Cases, because if a case be what it seems to be, a modification or variation from the original word, it is evident that in french there are no cases in nouns ; and it is astonishing that grammarians should still persist in giving six cases to our nouns, as is done in Latin. Whether a noun be the giver or receiver of an action, i. e. whether it be the *nominative* or the *object* of the verb, it remains invariably the same ; for ex.

AGENTS, OR NOMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY.

These pronouns are sometimes singly the nominative of a verb ; as *I am, thou art, he is* ; sometimes jointly with another substantive* ; as, *you and I are* ; *he and his brother are* ; and sometimes they are used absolutely without a verb ; as, *Who is there ? I.*

51. When *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they* are attended by a verb that agrees with them in number and person, they are ;

<i>I,</i>	<i>Je.</i>	<i>He, It, m.</i>	<i>Il.</i>
<i>Thou,</i>	<i>Tu.</i>	<i>They, mas.</i>	<i>Ils.</i>
<i>We,</i>	<i>Nous.</i>	<i>She, It, f.</i>	<i>Elle.</i>
<i>You.</i>	<i>Vous.</i>	<i>They, fem.</i>	<i>Elles.</i>

These words keep the same place in the sentence in french as in english ;† ex
I am, thou art, he is, she is. Je suis, tu es, il est, elle est.
Am I ? art thou ? is he ? is she ? Suis-je ? Es-tu ? Est-il ? Est-elle ?

EXERCISE.

*I learn*125 *french.* *Doest thou speak it*54 *well ?* *He has*
apprendre français, m. — 133 parler 62 bien !
*not learned long. It*62 *is not difficult. She is too idle. We have*
190 *long-tems. difficile. trop paresseux. (g)*
not time. You will never learn. They are too fond of play.
tems. 190 125 — 183 aimer à jouer.

52. If *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they* are joined to another substantive,* for a nominative to the same verb, or if they are used without a verb to agree with them, they are ;

<i>I,</i>	<i>Moi.</i>	<i>He,</i>	<i>Lui.</i>
<i>Thou,</i>	<i>Toi.</i>	<i>They, mas.</i>	<i>Eux.</i>
<i>We,</i>	<i>Nous.</i>	<i>She,</i>	<i>Elle.</i>
<i>You,</i>	<i>Vous.</i>	<i>They, fem.</i>	<i>Elles ; ex.</i>

Mon frère aime votre sœur.

My brother loves your sister.

Votre sœur aime mon frère.

Your sister loves my brother.

In the first instance, *Frère, brother*, is the nominative of the verb ; in the second, it is the object. *Sœur, sister*, in the first instance, is the object of the verb ; in the second, it is the nominative ; and in both instances, the words are the same.

But it is not so with the Personal, and Relative pronouns. The same substantive, when the object of the verb, is not always expressed by the same word as when it is the agent or nominative ; so we do not say,

Il aime elle, elle aime il ;
we say, Il l'aime elle l'aime ;

He loves she, she loves he ;

He loves her, she loves him.

If it be asked why this variation in the pronouns and not in nouns ; it may be answered, that the pronouns having been invented to prevent the tiresome repetition of the same noun, if there had been only one word to supply its place, the repetition of that word must have been too frequent, and only half the inconvenience would have been removed.

* Observe that by *substantive* I do not mean *nouns* only, I mean also the *personal pronouns* ; for the word which represents a *substantive*, is as much a *substantive* as the word which names it.

† See the *verbs*, page 92, and following.

In conjunction with another substantive :

You and I are ready.

Vous et moi nous sommes prêts.

He and his sister are ready.

Lui et sa sœur sont prêts.

You and they are ready.

Vous et eux vous êtes prêts.

They and their friends are here.

Eux et leurs amis sont ici. (m)

Without a verb to agree with :

Who is ready to go ? I.

Qui est prêt à partir ? moi.

It is I who will go first.

C' est moi qui irai le premier.

It is he who will go first.

C' est lui qui ira le premier.

It is they who will go first.

Ce sont eux qui iront les premiers.

EXERCISE.

You and I will learn french.

He and I will learn together.

127 — apprendre

— 127 ensemble.

You and they have learned before :

My brother and I have begun

127

auparavant :

127 commencer

to learn it⁵⁴.

He and his sister learn very well.

They and their

à

le.

126

très

master always speak french together : Who learns best ? He or I ?

184

126

le mieux ?

?

It⁶² is I who learn best.

It⁶² is he who learns best.

N.B.

128

N.B.

128

53. When a personal pronoun is the agent or *nominative* of several verbs, it is generally repeated with each verb ; as,

I say and maintain that, &c.

Je dis et je soutiens que, &c.

He is poor, and will always be so. *Il est pauvre, et il le sera toujours.†*

EXERCISE.

He always promises, but does not keep his word. We have

184

promettre,

—

190

tenir

parole.

seen it⁵⁵, and will see it²⁵ again.

vu

le ,

revoir 54 †

OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM.

Now let us see when *me* is *me* or *moi* ; *thee*, *te* or *toi* ; *him*, *le* or *lui* ; *her*, *la* or *lui* ; *them*, *les*, *leur*, *eux*, *elles*.

(m) The pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *nous*, *vous* are sometimes added to *Je*, *Tu*, *Nous*, *Vous*, to point out more clearly a contradistinction ; as,

You will write and I will read.

Vous écrirez, et moi je lirai. [allons.

You come from Paris, and we are going there. *Vous venez de Paris, et nous nous y*

N. B. The words, *Myself*, *Thyself*, &c. which are often used by way of emphasis at the end of a sentence ; as, I will do it myself ; are expressed, *Myself*, *moi-même* ; *Thyself*, *toi-même* ; *Himself*, *lui-même* ; *Herself*, *elle-même* ; *Ourselves*, *nous-mêmes* ; *Yourselves*, *vous-mêmes* ; *Themselves*, *eux-mêmes*, *m. elles-mêmes*, *f.*

† If the verbs are in the same tense, and used in the same sense, as in the example, I say and maintain, the pronoun may be omitted before the second verb, *Je dis et soutiens* ; but if the verbs are in different tenses, as in the other example, He is poor, and will always be so ; or if the verbs are used in different senses, i. e. one affirmatively, and the other negatively, the pronoun must be repeated.

‡ Again is expressed by *re* before *voir*.

The *objective pronouns* are always attended by some *verb* or *proposition* which governs them.

They are placed sometimes *before* the verb, and sometimes *after* it; and it is the place which they keep in the sentence that determines which word is to be used.

The *order* which the *objective pronouns* keep with the *verb*.

General Rule.

54. When the *objective pronouns* *me, thee, us, you, him, &c.* are governed by a verb, place them immediately *before* that verb, and express

<i>Me,</i> to <i>Me</i> ;	} by <i>Me.</i>	<i>to Him,</i> to <i>Her</i> ;	} by	<i>Lui.</i>
<i>Thee,</i> to <i>Thee</i> ;	} <i>Te.</i>	<i>to Them</i> ;		<i>Leur.</i>
<i>Us,</i> to <i>Us</i> ;	} <i>Nous.</i>	<i>to It,</i> to <i>Them</i> ,	} <i>neut.</i>	<i>Y.</i>
<i>You,</i> to <i>You</i> ;	} <i>Vous.</i>	<i>of It.</i> of <i>Them</i> ,	} <i>neut.</i>	<i>En.</i>
<i>Him, It</i> ; <i>Le.</i>		<i>Him-Herself,</i>	} <i>Se</i> ; thus,	
<i>Her, It</i> ; <i>La.</i>		<i>Itself,</i>		
<i>Them</i> ; <i>Les.</i>		<i>Themselves</i> ;		
He looks at	<i>me.</i>	<i>Il me regarde.</i>		
	<i>thee.</i>	<i>Il te regarde.</i>		
	<i>us.</i>	<i>Il nous regarde.</i>		
	<i>you.</i>	<i>Il vous regarde.</i>		
	<i>him, or it.</i>	<i>Il le regarde.</i>		
	<i>her, or it.</i>	<i>Il la regarde.</i>		
	<i>them.</i>	<i>Il les regarde.</i>		
Does he look at <i>me</i> ?		<i>Me regarde-t-il?*</i>		
He does not look at <i>me</i> .		<i>Il ne me regarde pas.</i>		
Does he not look at <i>me</i> ?		<i>Ne me regarde-t-il pas?</i>		

EXERCISE.

Your brother does not love me. He never comes to see us

— aimer125 190 venir 127 voir.

Does he not speak to you, when he meets you? My mother will not

— 138 parler (o) , rencontrer ? vouloir (kk)

allow me to speak to him. I will write to her. I will scold her

permettre de (o) — écrire (o) — gronder

for using you so. Do not say (any thing to her (about it). She

de trahir ainsi. — dire125 99 (o) en

would use me worse (for it.) She would beat me. If I knew it, I

— trahir plus mal en59 — battre Si savais le,

* This *t* is added for the sake of melody; see note * page 76.

EXERCISE.

would not suffer it. I must¹⁸¹ reconcile them. I will invite them
 — souffrir Il faut que je reconcilie — inviter
 to come to see me. I will speak to them to-day.
 à venir 172 voir — (o) aujourd'hui.

55. Observe that if the *objective pronouns* are governed by a verb compounded of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* or *être*, and of a participle past, they must be placed *before* the auxiliary verb, and between the auxiliary and the principle; thus,

He has spoken	{	to me	<i>Il m' a parlé.</i>
		to thee.	<i>Il t' a parlé.</i>
		to us.	<i>Il nous a parlé.</i>
		to you.	<i>Il vous a parlé.</i>
		to him, to her.	<i>Il lui a parlé.</i>
		to them.	<i>Il leur a parlé.</i>
		of it, of them.	<i>Il en a parlé.</i>

Has he spoken to me? *M' a-t-il parlé ?*
 He has not spoken to me. *Il ne m'a pas parlé.*
 Has he not spoken to me? *Ne m' a-t-il pas parlé ? &c.*

EXERCISE.

Have you seen my brother? I have seen him, but I have
 voir ?
 not spoken to him. My mother has forbidden me to speak to him.
 190 parler (o) défendre de (o)
 Has he returned you the book which you had lent him? No, he
 rendre livre 72 aviez prêter * ? 191
 has not returned it⁶² yet.¹⁸³ Has he read it⁶²? I do not think²²¹
 190 rendre le encore. lire † ? — penser
 he has opened it⁶². I am afraid²²¹ he 195 has lost it.⁶² He has
 145 ouvrir † — craindre 146 perdre †
 told me that you have given it him. I have not given it him.
 dire que donner 62 * 62 *
 It⁶² is not mine. I have borrowed it⁶² from a friend. He has
 Il 86 emprunter † à
 asked me for²⁰¹ it again.
 redemander — † †

If the pronouns *me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them* are
me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them
 governed by the imperative of a verb, consider whether the
 sentence commands, or whether it forbids.||

The *order* which the *objective pronouns* keep with the *verb*.

56. 1st Exception. When the *objective pronouns me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them* are governed by the *imperative* of a

* See note (i) p. 63.

† See note (k) p. 64.

‡ Again is expressed by *re* before *demander*.

|| The verb commands when the action spoken of is to be done; the verb forbids when the action spoken of is not to be done; so, *Wait*, is a command; *Do not wait*, is a forbiddance or prohibition.

verb used in a *commanding* sense, i. e. without a negation, the pronouns which represent them are placed immediately *after* the verb ;

In these instances *me* is expressed by *moi*, and *thee* by *toi*.

Wait for me. Get thyself ready.

Attendre 201 Apprêter —

57. But if the *imperative* is used in a *forbidding* sense, i. e. if it is attended by a negation, the pronouns must be placed immediately *before* the verb, agreeably to the general rule ;

Then *me* is expressed by *me*, and *thee* by *te* ; ex.

Imperative Commanding, 56 rule.		Imperative Forbidding, 57 rule.		do not look at me
Look at me.	Regarde-moi.	Ne me	} regarde pas.	
thyself.		toi. Ne te		
Look at us.	Regardez-nous.	Ne nous	} regardez pas.	
yourself.		vous. Ne vous		
Let us look at him or it.	Regardons-le	Ne le	} regardons pas.	
her or it		la. Ne la		
them.		les. (n) Ne les		

EXERCISE.

Help 258 me. Do not help me. Help 258 yourself; help him;
 Aider* — 190 Servir* † ; servir ;
 help her ; help them. Do not help him ; do not help her ; do not
 ; servir — servir ; —
 help them. Wait for me. Do not wait for me. Bring me a clean 32
 Attendre* 201 — 201 Apporter* blanche
 plate. Do not give me such a dirty plate. Bring it 62 here. Do not
 assiette. — si 38 sale 32 * la ici. —
 bring it here. Shew it him. Do not shew it him. Take it. Do
 62 Montrer* 62 lui. † 62 162 Prendre 62 —
 not take it. Hear me. Hear him. Do not hear him. Stop her. Do
 62. Ecouter* — Arrêter —
 not stop her. Let 248 her go. Do not let her go. Let them alone. ‡
 Laisser aller. — 248 tranquilles.

58. 2nd Exception. The *objective pronouns* are not always the object of verbs, they are sometimes governed by a *preposition* which some verbs require to unite them to the substantive which follows them ; then the pronoun being the object of the preposition, not the object of the verb, it is placed *after* the preposition, and *me* is expressed by *moi* ; *thee*, by *toi* ; *him*,

(n) With two imperatives governing the same pronouns, to avoid monotony, we say

Donnez-le-moi, ou me le vendez. Give it me or sell it me.
 Voyez-le, et le consolez. See him, and comfort him.

* The second person singular of the imperative is seldom used in French, except through familiarity or contempt ; the second person plural is used, though speaking to a single person ; so instead of saying *Place*, we say *Placez* ; instead of *Attends*, we say *Attendez*.

† See reflexive verbs, pages 100, 101.

‡ See note (1) page 63.

by *lui* ; *her*, by *elle* ; *us*, by *nous* ; *you*, by *vous* ; *them*, masc. by *eux* ; *them*, fem. by *elles* ; *ex*.

He came *to me*.

Il vint à moi.

He complained *of thee*.

Il se plaignit de toi.

He applied *to him, to her, to them*. *Il s'adressa à lui, à elle, à eux, &c. (o)*

EXERCISE.

Come near me. Have you thought of me? I always think
s'approcher † de penser à ? 184 penser

of you. I was coming to you, when they obliged me to go to her.
† — venir 155 à , obliger d' aller à

You are laughing 155 at me. Do you know what she says of him?
— se moquer † de — savoir 125 84 dire de ?

He does not care for her nor for what she says of him. They
— se soucier d' ni de 84

have enquired after you. Have you applied to them? I will not
237 † s'informer de 200 237 † s'adresser à ? vouloir

trust 202 them. What reason have you to mistrust 202 them? I do
me fier à 82 raison de vous méfier d' ?

not speak of them.

The order which *several objective pronouns keep together*.

59. When *several objective pronouns* are governed by the same verb, a precedency must be given to some of them.

If, agreeably to the general rule, the pronouns are placed *before* the verb,

(o) Some difficulty arises here with respect to the preposition *A*, which, like the preposition *To*, is generally implied in the pronoun; for we say

Il me donna un livre,

He gave me a book; instead of

Il donna un livre à moi;

He gave a book to me.

Je lui prêtai de l'argent,

I lent him money; instead of

Je prêtai de l'argent à lui;

I lent money to him.

But in some instances this preposition can not be left out; for though we say, *He give me a book; I lent him money*; we could not say, *He came me; I went him*; we must say, *He came to me; I went to him*.

The verbs which require the preposition *A* to unite them to the pronoun, are the following; 1st, all the *Reflective Verbs*, which, as they always have a pronoun attached to them for their object, can not govern another substantive, without a preposition; as,

Il s'est adressé à moi, à toi, &c. He has applied *to me, to thee, &c.*

Ne vous fiez pas à lui, à elle, &c. Do not trust *him, her, &c.*

2dly, A few *Neuter Verbs* which also require a preposition to unite them to the pronoun which attends them. The most frequently met with are:

Aller, to go; as,

N'allez pas à lui.

Do not go to him.

Boire, to drink;

Je bois à vous.

I drink to you.

Courir *Accourir*, to run;

Il accourt à nous.

He is running to us.

Descendre, to go or come down;

Elle descendit à moi.

She came down to me.

Etre, to be, viz. to belong;

Ceci est à eux.

This belongs to them.

Monter, to go or come up;

Je monterai à elle.

I shall go up to her.

Penser, to think;

Pensez à nous.

Think of us.

Recourir, to have recourse;

Recourez à eux.

Have recourse to them.

Venir, to come;

Ils vinrent à moi.

They came to me.

† See note † page 205.

Me,	}	<i>have the precedence over le, la, les, y, en.</i>
Nous,		
Te,		
Vous,		
Se,		
Le,	}	<i>have the precedence over lui, leur, y, en.</i>
La,		
Les		
Lui,	}	<i>have the precedence over y, en.</i>
Leur		
Y		<i>has the precedence over en;* as,</i>

Will he give him or it <i>to me</i> , her or it <i>to me</i> , them <i>to me</i> ?	<i>Me le</i> <i>Me la</i> <i>Me les*</i>	} <i>donnera-t-il?</i>	
He promised him or it <i>to us</i> , her or it <i>to us</i> , them <i>to us</i> ,	<i>Il nous l'</i> <i>Il nous l'</i> <i>Il nous les</i>		} 136 <i>a promis.</i>
Will he not lend it <i>to you</i> , her or it <i>to you</i> , them <i>to you</i> ?	<i>Ne vous le</i> <i>Ne vous la</i> <i>Ne vous les</i>		
He will send it <i>to me</i> there, some <i>to me</i> there, (<i>p</i>) some <i>to you</i> there.	<i>Il me l'y</i> <i>Il m'y en</i> <i>Il vous y en</i>	} <i>envèra.</i>	
He will not send it him or her, any <i>to him</i> , or <i>her</i> , (<i>p</i>) them <i>to them</i> .	<i>Il ne le lui</i> <i>Il ne lui en</i> <i>Il ne les leur</i>		} <i>envèra pas.*</i>

EXERCISE.

I have something to tell you. What⁸³ is it? I can not tell it
 98 à dire (y) ? pouvoir (kk) le
 you now. I will tell it you (by and by.) Why will¹⁷³ not you
 à présent. — tantôt Pourquoi vouloir
 tell it me now? I have a letter for you. Your brother has sent it⁶²
 ? lettre pour envoyée ‡
 me to bring it you. Where is it? Give it me. Why will¹⁷³ not
 55 170 apporter ‡ Où 62? Donner⁶² 60 vouloir¹²⁵
 you give it me? If you do not give it me immediately, I will¹⁷³ not
 62 ? — 62 aussitôt, — ne
 ask you for²⁰¹ it again, and I will tell him¹⁶² of it. Here it is²⁴⁷.
 — || plus, 190 — lui || le La voici N.B.
 Shew it⁶² me. I will return it to you presently. I have brought you
 Montrer 60 — rendre 62 — tout à l'heure. apporter 55
 some fruit too. Give us some. What⁸³! you had promised it to us,
 aussi. (p) Quoi! aviez promettre 62 — ,

* See, page 62, 63, a table which shews how to arrange several pronouns together.
 (p) Some, any, implying of it, of them, are rendered by *en*.

‡ See note (κ) p. 64.

|| We do not say in french, *Demander quelqu'un pour une chose*, to ask somebody for a thing; the thing is always the object of the verb, and the person the object of a preposition; we say, *Demander une chose à quelqu'un*, to ask a thing to somebody, the same as we say, *Donner une chose à quelqu'un*, to give a thing to somebody. Nor do we say, *Dire une personne d' une chose*, to tell a person of a thing, we say, *Dire une chose à une personne*, to tell a thing to a person.

EXERCISE.

and you give it to them. I offered¹³⁶ it to you first and you would
 62 — ai offert 62 — 55 premièrement avez¹³⁶
 not have it. I will send you some to-morrow. Do not forget to send
 voulu 55. — envoyer (p) demain. — oublier de
 me some, for it is long²⁴⁶ since I ¹⁹⁶ have eat any. I will⁷⁰ not.
 (p) , car il y a long-tems que mangé (p) N.B.

60. But if, agreeably to the 56th rule, the pronouns are placed *after* the verb, in which instances *moi, toi* are used instead of *me, te*, then

Le,
 La,
 Les,
 Y } have the precedency over *moi, toi*; as,

Send *him*, or *it* to me. Envoyez *le-moi*.
her or *it* to me. *la-moi*.
them to me. *les-moi*.
them to me there. *les-y-moi*.*

EXERCISE.

Give it me. Bring her to me. Send them to me there. Send
 Donner¹²⁵ Amener — Envoyer — y (H) p. 53.
 some to me there.

61. Observe also that if *me, thee* after an imperative, are followed by *some, of it, of them*, they are not expressed by *moi, toi*, as above; *me* some, *me* of it, &c. are expressed by *m'en*; *thee* some, &c. are expressed by *t'en*, whether they come before or after the verb; ex.

He has sent *me* some. Il *m'en* a envoyé. send *me* some. envoyez-*m'en*.
 Doest thou remember *it*? *t'en* souviens-tu? remember *it*. souviens-*t'en*.

EXERCISE.

He gave *me* some. Give me some. He put¹³⁷ *me* (in mind) (of it.)
 donner (p) (p) faire souvenir en
 Put me (in mind) of it. He brought thee some. Recall to thyself
 Faites souvenir 59 apporter (p) Rappeler —
 the difficulties of it.
 difficulté 59.

REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

62. As there are only *two* genders in french, the masculine and the feminine, the neuter pronouns *it, they, them* must be expressed by *il, elle, ils, elles, le, la, les*, the same as *he, she, they, him, her, them*, masculine or feminine, agreeably to the gender of the noun which they represent; so we say,

Of a *man* or a coach;

Il vient; je *le* vois,

He or *it* is coming; I see *him* or *it*.

Of a *woman* or a watch;

(See note K, page 64.)

Elle est belle; regardez *la*. *She* or *it* is fine; look at *her* or *it*.

N. B. *It* is often used in an impersonal sense, i. e. without reference to any substantive mentioned before ; as,

It is glorious, shameful, necessary, proper, &c.

In these instances, *It* is always expressed by *il*, or by *ce*.

It is expressed by *il*, if the verb is followed by an adjective ; as,

It is glorious, shameful, necessary, proper, &c.

Il est glorieux, honteux, nécessaire, à propos, &c.

It is expressed by *ce*, when the verb is followed by a substantive, either with or without an adjective ; as,

Is *it* you ? *Il* is he. *It* is his son. *It* is a shameful thing.

Est-*ce* vous ? C'est lui. C'est son fils. C'est une chose honteuse.
not, Est-*il* vous ? *Il* est lui. *il* est son fils, means *he* is his son.

EXERCISE.

Look at that tree ; it is well blossomed, yet it produces no
Regarder 201 arbre ; fleuri, cependant produire 190
fruit. I will cut it down, if it does not bear fruit this year. (These
abattre, (κ) p. 64. * , — porter année. 247
are) very fine trees, but they are too young to bear fruit yet 183.
très 33 , trop jeune 29 pour déjà. N.B.
They do not bear fruit, when they are so young. (That is) a fine
— , si 29 247
flower. It is a rose. Will you have 174 it ? How sweet it smells !
fleur. 65 Vouloir — (κ) p. 64. 185 bonté sentir !
I will take it to my mother. She is so 183 fond of roses. Take
173 256 (κ) p. 64. — tant aimer — Prendre
some of these cherries ; they are very good. They are not
96 (bb) cerise ; très 29
quite ripe 29 yet 183 They will be better in another week.
tout à fait mûr encore. N.B. (ε) p. 56. 213 une semaine.
It 62 is very pleasant to have a garden near one's house. It 62 is the
N.B. agréable d' jardin près de sa N.B.
greatest 33 pleasure I have. Was it 62 you who sent 128 us some fruit
44 plaisir(s) 50 Etait N.B. envoyer 137
the other day ? No, it 62 was my brother. I thought 221 it 62 was
autre jour ? Non, N.B. 140 penser 140 N.B.
you. Did you like 137 it 54 ? Yes, it was very nice.
— trouver bon ? , 140 bon.

63. Though *lui* and *leur* may be said of beings that have life, such as brutes and plants ; as,

That tree is withered, give *it* some water.

Cet arbre est flétri, donnez *lui* de l'eau ;

They can not be said of lifeless beings, commonly called

* To cut is Couper ; To cut down is Abattre, not Couper en bas.

† Sweet is here used adverbially, so is Bon, and it does not require any agreement.

things ; (*q*) in speaking of things, to *it*, to *them* must be expressed by *Y* ; as,

She loves reading, she gives all her time *to it*.

Elle aime la lecture, elle *y* donne tout son tems.

EXERCISE.

Take the horses into the stable, and bring them ⁵⁶ some hay. This
 256 213 écurie, 256 (1) p. 63. foin.
 tree is dying, ¹⁵⁵ give ¹⁶² it a little water. Most men
 arbre — se mourir, donner 56 peu eau. La plupart des
 worship love ; they sacrifice every thing to it. Geography is a
 adorer ¹³⁰ amour ; sacrifier 107 54. Géographie
 pleasant study ; you should give some time to it. You do not pay
 agréable ³² étude ; 176 * tems 54 faire
 sufficient attention to it. I want to learn mathematics ; but I can not
 assez 54. 260 mathématique ; (kk)
 apply to them. I have not time to stick to them.
 m'appliquer 59. de m'attacher 59

64. *Lui, elle, eux, elles*, after a preposition, are said only of persons ; in speaking of brutes or things, the preposition must be changed into some adverb which implies the meaning of both the preposition and pronoun ; as,

Take this horse, and get *upon it*.

Prenez ce cheval, et montez *dessus*, not sur *lui*. (*q*)

If an *adverb* can not be found to supply the place of the *preposition*, || give another turn to the sentence, by which the *preposition* will disappear ; as,

He is come *with it* ; Il l' a apporté, i. e. he has *brought it*.
 not, Il est venu avec *lui*, which would imply a *person*, not a *thing*.

EXERCISE.

If men knew ¹⁴⁰ virtue, they would burn with love for it, and t
 connaître , bruler d' pour ,
 own that (there is) no real happiness without it. That chair is
 avouer que 246 vrai † bonheur sans (bb) chaise

* See note † page 183.

(*q*) Except those that are generally personified, such as *Heaven, Fortune, Providence, the Elements, some Virtues and Vices* ; as,

Love is the tyrant of reason, yet there are people who sacrifice every thing to it.

L'amour est le tiran de la raison, cependant il y a des gens qui LUI sacrifient tout.

Or when in a *metaphorical sense*, we attribute to *things*, what in a *proper sense* can only be attributed to *persons* ; so, speaking of a *Sword*, we say ;

Je LUI dois la vie, I owe my life to it.

Of a *Book* ; *Ces livres me contentent cher, mais je LEUR dois mon instruction.*

These books cost me dear, but I owe my instruction to *them*.

But in speaking of the same *things* without giving rational attributes to them, we could not use *LUI, LEUR*, we must use *Y* ; as,

It is an old sword, but I have got a new hilt put to it.

C'est une vieille épée, mais j'y ai fait mettre une garde neuve.

|| You find in the dictionaries the words which are both *prepositions* and *adverbs*.

† *Would* is here understood in english.

‡ Put this adjective before the noun.

EXERCISE.

broken, do not sit⁵⁷ upon it. The rails are newly painted,
 rompu¹⁵⁸, — s'asseoir^{||} dessus barreau fraîchement peint²⁹,
 do not lean⁵⁷ against them. Stand⁵⁶ (by the side) of them. I have
 — s'appuyer^{||} contre Se tenir^{||} à côté
 made a terrace in my garden, a grotto under it, and planted trees all
 terrasse ²¹³, grotte dessous, planté arbre
 round it. I am going to make a fountain (in the) middle of it, and a
 autour ¹⁵⁵ ¹⁷² d'eau ²⁵ jet au milieu,
 canal through it. Have you ever been in it?
 à travers. jamais dedans?

65. *He, she, it, they* coming with the verb *be*, followed by a substantive, are generally expressed by *ce*; as,

He is an officer. C' est un officier.
She is a seamstress. C' est une couturière.
They are merchants. Ce sont des négociants.

If the substantive which follows the verb, denotes *rank, state, trade, or profession*, *he, she, they* may be expressed by *il, elle, ils, elles*, but the article must be left, out; as,

Il est officier. *elle* est couturière. *Ils* sont négociants.
 not, *il* est un officier. *elle* est une couturière. *ils* sont des négociants. (see 23 rule.)

EXERCISE.

Do you know that gentleman who is coming (this way?) He is
 — 133 connaître (bb) monsieur — venir¹⁵⁵ (par ici?)
 a philosopher. He is a very learned man. That is his wife who
 philosophe. très savant C'est là femme
 is with him. She is a very haughty³² woman. Is that their house?
 58 hautain²⁹ femme. Est-ce là ?
 Yes, it is. It is a very good²⁹ house. They are very respectable
 Oui, 70. 33 32
 people.
 gens.

66. *He, she, they, him, her, them* are sometimes used without reference to any noun expressed before them, but imply the words *man, woman, or people* understood; in this sense they are expressed,

He, } by *celui*; *She,* } by *celle*; *They,* } by *ceux*; as,
Him, } *Her,* } *Them,* }

He who can live dishonored, does not deserve to live, i. e. *the man who*
Celui qui peut vivre déshonoré ne mérite pas de vivre.

I have met *her whom* you wished so much to see, i. e. *the woman whom*.
 J'ai rencontré *celle que* vous souhaitiez si fort de voir.

N. B. The pronouns *celui, celle, ceux*, and the relative *qui, que, dont* which attends them, must not be separated, as the corresponding words are sometimes in english; they must be placed together;

They are mistaken *who* think that riches make men happy.

Ceux qui pensent que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux se trompent.

i. e. *They who* think that riches make man happy are mistaken.*

EXERCISE.

Happy he who lives, i. e. the *man who* lives contented with his lot.

Heureux vivre content 200 sort.

Providence never abandons him who does not abandon himself.

190 abandonner — s'abandonner lui-même.

She who refuses a husband, is not always sure to find another.

refuser mari, sûr en trouver un autre.

He is a flatterer who praises men for virtues which they have

flatteur louer des (o) p. 66.

not. He can not be happy whose happiness depends upon other

saurait 192 74 bonheur dépend des autres

people. They are not always happy who seem to be so.

— 39 paraître — le

67. *His, her, their* are also sometimes used in the same sense as the above pronouns, i. e. implying the words *man, women, or people* understood, and are then expressed,

His, by *de celui*, *her*, by *de celle*; *their*, by *de ceux*; as,

We always blame *their* conduct *who* do not succeed.

On blâme toujours la conduite de *ceux qui* ne réussissent pas.

i. e. We blame always the conduct of *those*, viz. of *the people* who do not succeed.

EXERCISE.

Every body blames his manners, i. e. the manners of *him*, who acts

106 blâmer manière , agir

without modesty. I would not trust her virtue, who does not care

modestie. vouloir me fier à vertu — se soucier

for her reputation. Their labours do not always succeed, who take

de travail — 184 réussir prendre

their measures best.

mesure le mieux.

68. When an *objective* pronoun is governed by *several verbs*, that pronoun must be *repeated* with every verb by which it is governed; as,

She loves and esteems *you*.

Elle vous aime et vous estime.

Speak or write *to her*.

Parlez lui ou lui écrivez.

EXERCISE.

He saw and heard me. He loves and esteems you. I hate and

voir entendre 54 aimer estimer 54 haïr

despise him. I entreat and conjure you.

mépriser 54 prier conjurer 54

* These sentences may also be expressed without changing the order of the words; thus,

CEUX-LÀ SE TROMPENT QUI PENSENT QUE LES RICHESSES RENDENT LES HOMMES HEUREUX;

or, C'EST SE TROMPER QUE DE PENSER QUE LES RICHESSES RENDENT LES HOMMES HEUREUX.

But these expressions are more adapted to poetry and oratory, than to conversation.

† Turn this sentence in French; *They who* seem happy, are not always so.

† Turn; The labours of *those who* take best their measures, do not always succeed.

69. It sometimes happens that the verb by which the *ob-jective* pronouns are governed, is preceded by *another verb*; as,
I can not do it; *He will* not give it me; *You may* lend it to him.

In these instances, it is better to place the pronouns *before* the *last* verb than before the *first*; so, instead of saying,

Je ne *le* puis pas faire; say, Je ne puis pas *le* faire.
 Il ne *me le* veut pas donner; Il ne veut pas *me le* donner.*

EXERCISE.

Will you help me to do it? Can not you do it yourself? He
 173 aider 169 faire 54? 192 (m) N.B.?
 wishes to marry her. She will not speak to him. She can not
 souhaiter 172 épouser 54 vouloir (kk) (o) 54 192
 bear him.
 souffrir 54.

70. *Le, la, les, en, y* are often used when the corresponding words are not requisite in english; for example, in answer to these questions;

Are you Mr. B? Etes-vous monsieur B?
 Is that your house? Est-ce là votre maison?
 Are these your gloves? Sont-ce ici vos gants?

It would not be sufficient in french, as it is in english, to answer with the auxiliary verb only, and say,

Oui, je suis; yes, *I am*.

Non, ce n'est pas; no, it is not. Oui, ce sont; yes, they are.

We are obliged to *add* one of the above pronouns, and say;

Oui, je *le* suis. Non, ce ne l'est pas. Oui, ce *les* sont.(r)
 You have got fine apples. Vous avez de belles pommes.
 Will you have *some*? (of them). En voulez-vous quelques-unes?
 Yes, give me *a few*, i. e. (of them). Oui, donnez m'en quelques-unes.

N.B. And if the *auxiliary verb* with which the question is asked is attended by *another verb*, that *verb* must also be repeated; as,

Has he done it? L'a-t-il fait?
 No, he *has* not, i. e. (done it). Non, il ne l'a pas fait.
 Do you remember it? Vous en souvenez-vous?
 Yes, I *do*, i. e. (remember it). Oui, je m'en souviens.
 Are you going to the play? Allez-vous à la comédie?
 No, I *am* not, i. e. (going there). Non, je n'y vais pas.

EXERCISE.

Is this the master of the house? Yes, he is; i. e. *the master*. He
 Est-ce ici maître ? , (r) ;

* This rule is not strictly adhered to by French writers, especially ancient authors; however it makes the sentence clearer, and it is the surest for a foreigner, as there are no exceptions to this rule, and there are several to the other, which he might be liable to mistake.

(r) If the answer is made with the pronouns *He, She, They*, relating to persons, *lui, elle, eux, elles* added to the verb, render the other words unnecessary;

Is that your brother? Yes, *he* is. Is that your sister? No, *she* is not.

Est-ce là votre frère? Oui, c'est *LUI*. Est-ce là votre sœur? Non, ce n'est pas *ELLE*.

EXERCISE.

is rich and I am not; i. e. *rich*. He has friends and I have not; i. e. *riches* (m) * f ami (m) *any friends*. Are these the books of which you were speaking? (p) * Sont-ce ici 74 155 ?
 Yes, they are; i. e. *the books*. Is your brother at home? No, he is 65 ; * 134 au logis ? 191,
 not; i. e. *there*. Have you seen your brother lately? No, I 190 . (H) p. 58. vu depuis peu ? 191,
 have not, i. e. *seen him*. When you see 142 him, tell him that I want to + verrez , dire lui 56 (bb) 260 172
 speak to him. I will; i. e. *tell it him*. I do not know what he wants; (o) + savoir 84 vouloir;
 do you? i. e. *know it*? No, I do not; i. e. *know it*; if I did; 140 i. e. + ? 70N.B. , + ; 70N.B. ; + ;
know it, I would not have asked you about it.
 70N.B. , demander —† 59.

71. If the pronoun is added to represent a noun, it must be one of the words *le, la, les*, agreeably to the gender and number of that noun ; as,

Are you *the son* of Mr. A ? Etes-vous le *fil*s de monsieur A ?
 Yes, I am, i. e. (*the son*). Oui, je *le* suis.
 Are you *the daughter* of Mrs. B ? Etes-vous la *fil*le de madame B ?
 No, I am not, (*the daughter*). Non, je ne *la* suis pas.
 Are these *your gloves* ? Sont-ce ici *vos gants* ?
 Yes, they are, i. e. (*my gloves*). Oui, ce *les* sont.

EXERCISE.

Are you the brother of that lady ? Yes, I am. Are you the sister (bb) ?
 of that gentleman ? No, I am not. Are these your horses ? Yes, (bb) monsieur ? Sont-ce ici cheval ?
 they are.
 65

72. But if the word to be represented is an adjective, an adverb, or a whole sentence, *le* is used without regard to gender or number ; as,

Are you *married*, sir ? Etes-vous *marié*, monsieur ?
 Yes, I am, i. e. (*married*). Oui, je *le* suis.
 Are you *married*, madam ? Etes-vous *mariée*, madame ?
 No, I am not, i. e. (I am not so). Non, je ne *le* suis pas.
 Are you *contented*, ladies ? Etes-vous *contentes*, mesdames ?
 Yes, we are, i. e. (we are so). Oui, nous *le* sommes.

EXERCISE.

Sir, are you ready ? Yes, I am; i. e. *ready*. Are you ready, Mad-
 , prêt ? , 29 ,

* You do not repeat the noun or adjective, which is understood in English, but you must add one of the above pronouns to the verb, as long as the same subject is continued.

† These signs, or auxiliary verbs which represent the principal verb in English, have no meaning in French, you must repeat the verb itself.

‡ See note || p. 207.

EXERCISE.

am? No, Sir, I am not; i. e. *ready*. Are your brothers returned 158?
 ? , , 134 265?
 No, they are not; i. e. *returned*.

73. *En, y*, which are generally applied to things, may, in answer to a question or a command, be applied to persons, *en* instead of *de moi, de toi, de nous, de vous, de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles*; *y* instead of *à moi, à toi, à nous, à vous, à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles*; as,

Remember me. Souvenez-vous de moi.
 I will, i. e. (remember you) Je m'en souviendrai.
 Have you thought of us? Avez-vous pensé à nous?
 Yes, we have, i. e. (thought of you). Oui, nous y avons pensé.

EXERCISE.

Were you speaking of me? Yes, I was; i. e. *speaking of you*.
 — 133 155 58? , *
 Do you care for her? No, I do not; i. e. *care for her*. Will you
 — se soucier de 58? 191, * 173
 not trust 202 him? No, indeed, I will not; i. e. *trust him*. Have 237
 vous fier à 53? 191, en vérité, +
 you not applied to them? Yes, we have 237; i. e. *have applied to*
 s'adresser 58? , * ,
 them.

Recapitulatory exercise on the foregoing rules.†

Your sister has not used 257 me well. What has she done to you?
 n'en a pas usé avec 183 N.B. 83 faire (o) ?
 We were at the ball last night; I asked 252 her to dance with me; she
 140 bal 285 ; prier 137 168 danser ;
 refused me, and after she had refused me, she danced with another.
 refuser 137 , après que eut refusé , 137
 She mentioned it to me this morning. She is very sorry (for it.)
 a 136 parlé en (o) (bb) 234 fâché 29 en
 She desired me to tell you so. She did 140 not intend to offend you.
 a 136 prié 168 dire le 54. avoir dessein 168 offenser
 She had promised to dance with him before you had 218 asked her.
 avais promettre 168 avant que eussiez demander
 She ought 177 then to have told me so. She forgot 137 it. She did
 aurait donc — dû dire le 54 oublier —
 not think (of it.) I beg you will forgive 202 her. You had pro-
 penser 137 y prier ô de pardonner lui aviez
 mised me that, when you should come to see me, you would bring
 que, quand venir 172 voir , — 256
 me your children. Why did 136 you not bring them with you?
 Pourquoi avez amenés ?
 I could not bring them to-day. I will 173 bring them the next
 ai 136 pu 256 aujourd'hui. — 256 prochaine

* See † page 214.

† See compound tenses of a reflective verb used interrogatively, page 101.

‡ See note * p. 182.

§ Turn in French, *I beg you to forgive her*.

time I come¹⁴². Bring them to me as soon as you can.¹⁴² I will.⁷⁰
 fois²²¹ viendrai. 256 (o) aussitôt que pouvoir. N.B.
 They have desired me to buy¹⁶² them fruit, and to send it to them,
 252 168 acheter (1) p. 63. , 168 envoyer (o) ,
 but I will take it to them myself. I long to see them. It is so
 256 62 (o) (m) N.B., * de voir Il y a si
 long²⁴⁶ since I have seen them. They will be very glad²⁹ to see
 long tems que 196 vus¹⁵⁹ bien aise 168
 you. They are very fond of you. They are always talking¹⁵⁵ of
 — fort 183 aimer — 155 183 parler
 you. You are so good[†] to them. They like you better than their
 avez tant de bonté pour aimer (E) p. 56.
 uncle. He is incessantly teasing¹⁵⁵ them. They will¹⁷³ not stay
 oncle. — sans cesse¹⁸³ tourmenter vouloir rester
 with him. They would rather come to me or go to you. They are
 aiment mieux (o) (o) 65
 very amiable³² children. I often think of them. I am much obliged
 aimable²⁹ 184 penser 200 bien obligé
 to you. You have got a nice stick. Let²⁴³ me look at it. Will
 (o) 270 joli bâton. Laisser voir — Vouloir
 you have it? I make you a present (of it.) I thank you. I will¹⁷³
 174 ? faire 24 en remercier vouloir
 not deprive you of it. I do not care (for it). I have bought it with
 (kk) priver — se soucier en acheter dans
 the intention of giving¹⁵⁴ it away. Have you got another? Yes,
 dessein donner — En⁷⁰ 270 un autre ? ,
 I have.⁷⁰ Is this your new³² watch? Yes, it is. It is silver; I
 N.B. Est-ce ici neuve montre? , ce 70. 62 d'argent;
 thought²²¹ it was gold. My uncle has promised me a gold one, if I
 pensais 140 62 140 d'or. oncle d'or en⁷⁰,
 get a prize this year. I wish²²¹ you may.⁷⁰ N.B. Ah!
 remporter prix (bb) 233 souhaiter en remportiez un. Ah!
 is it⁶² you? How glad I am to see you! If you had not called upon
 N.B. ? 185 aise 168 voir! aviez 266
 me now, I would have called upon you this afternoon. I wanted²⁶⁰
 à présent, 266 (bb) après midi. 140
 to see you. We go to the play to-night; will you come with us?
 aller comédie[†] 235 ; ô venir ?
 Will your cousin¹³⁴ be there? I think²²¹ she will⁷⁰. I will go; for
 — ô cousine f. (H) p. 56. penser N.B. ô ; car
 I long (very much) to see her. She is a most amiable³² young lady.
 || fort 163 voir 65 des plus aimables jeune demoiselle.¶
 You do not know (how much) I love and esteem her. I always think
 — savoir combien aimer estimer 184 penser

† * See Long, p. 163.

† To be so good, to be so kind, are expressed by Avoir tant de bonté: *Be so good, be so kind*, in the imperative, Ayez la bonté; not *Soyez si bon*.

† *Comédie* in French, does not mean *Comedy* only, but is said of any kind of plays acted upon a stage, and also of the house itself where such plays are acted; you may also express the word *Play* by *Spectacle*. *Théâtre* in French is generally understood of that part of the house called the *stage*; yet it is said also of the *house* itself.

ô See note * page 130.

|| See the impersonal verb *long*, p. 163.

¶ *Demoiselle* is said of all ladies who have never been married, whatever their age may be; *Dame* is said of all ladies who are or have been married.

of her, but I (am afraid) 221 she never thinks of me. What reason
 200 , craindre 190 200 82 raison
 have you to think so? Because, when I meet her, she does not
 168 le54 ? Parceque, rencontrer, — *
 take any notice of me. You should 176 speak to her. You should
 faire aucune attention à devoir (o) 176
 call upon her. I (am afraid) of offending 154 her. I know 221 she has
 (kk) 266 craindre déplaire 202 lui savoir
 a great regard for you, but I can not say that she loves you.
 — beaucoup de respect pour , (kk) dire (bb) N.B.
 Yet, I recollect that one day, as I was speaking of you to her,
 Cependant, se rappeler un jour, comme 155 (o) ,
 she asked me if I knew 140 you well. I told her that I did, 70
 demander connaître bien dire (i) p. 63. (bb) N.B. † N.B.
 and she seemed 137 pleased (at it.) If she is at the theatre to night,
 paraître bien aise en à comédie ‡ 235
 I will tell her what you have told me. I shall be much obliged
 84 bien obligé
 to you, if you do. I see a gentleman in that box yonder who
 (o) , monsieur (bb) loge là-bas 75||
 owes me (a great deal) of money, but I dare not ask him for it, for
 devoir — beaucoup argent, oser ¶ , de
 fear of giving him pain; yet I am in great want (of it;) and
 peur faire 154 162 peine; cependant, avoir grand besoin en;
 as (you are acquainted with him,) I will be obliged to you, if you
 comme vous vous connaissez ** , (o) ,
 will tell him so, the first time you have an opportunity to
 144 dire (i) p. 63. le54. fois (s) 142 24 occasion 168
 mention it to him. Who, Mr. A? I know him very well. He is
 parler en (o) Qui, Mons. A? connaître très bien.
 a very honest man; he will pay you, you may be sure of it. I
 honnête (i) ; payer , pouvoir sûr
 answer for him as for myself. I suppose 221 he has forgotten it.
 repandre 200 comme 200 moi-même. s'imaginer oublier
 My sisters were talking this morning of going 154 to drink tea at
 155 parler (bb) matin aller 172 prendre thé
 your 208 house this afternoon. Shall you be there? Certainly, I shall 70.
 N.B. après midi. (H) p. 58. Certainement, N.B.
 I should not like to lose that opportunity of seeing them. I want to
 aimer 169 (bb) occasion 154 260
 return 265 them the book which 74 they have lent me, and to thank
 N.B. (i) p. 63. (o) p. 66. prêter , remercier

* Express *Not* by *ne* only, before the verb, as *aucune* which follows it, supplies the place of *pas* or *point*.

† You may express *I did* by *Oui* only, or you may repeat the verb *Connaître*, and say, I did *know* you.

‡ See note † p. 216.

§ Here you may express *Do* by the verb *Faire*, or you may repeat the verb and the pronouns, if you tell it *her*.

|| Turn; I see in that box yonder a gentleman who, &c.

¶ See note || p. 207.

** Leave out *with him*; as *Vous vous connaissez* means, you are acquainted with each other.

them (for it.) I have been told that one of them is going to be
 en 92 une * — 155 172
 married²⁶¹. Is it true? They⁹⁰ talk of it, but I do not know whether
 se marier. vrai ? N.B. parler , si
 it is true or not. Ask 162her. I dare not ask her such a thing;
 ou non. Demander le (1) p. 63. oser (1) p. 63. 38 chose;
 she would be angry with me. I met¹³⁷ them walking together the
 fâché²⁹ 200 rencontrer à la promenade ensemble
 other day, and I related¹³⁷ to them what had²³⁸ happened to us,
 autre , raconter (o) 84 était arriver (o) ,
 after we had left¹⁵⁹ them; they laughed (at it) (very much.) They
 après que 137 quittées ; * rire¹³⁷ en beaucoup. *
 told¹³⁷ me they wished¹⁴⁰ that they had been with us. I also¹⁸⁴
 dire²³¹ * souhaiter (nn) aussi
 showed¹³⁷ them the letter which you have written to me, desiring me
 montrer (1) p. 63. (o) p. 66. écrite 159 (o) , pour prier
 not¹⁹⁰ to mention it to them, for fear²¹⁸ your father (should come) to
 N.B. 168 parler en (o) , de peur que 195 vint à
 know of it; but I requested them not¹⁹⁰ to mention it to him. Have
 savoir — le; prier¹³⁷ N.B. de perler en (o)
 they mentioned it to you? No, they have not⁷⁰. They only¹⁸⁴
 * en (o) 191, * N.B. * seulement
 told¹³⁶ me that they had met you, and that you had²³⁷ walked (a
 ont dit (bb) N.B. * avaient , étiez se promener
 little way) with them. They were (very well) pleased²⁹ with you. I
 un peu * * très — content N.B. 200
 was not less so⁵⁴ with them. They have invited me to come and
 moins le d' * * inviter 169 venir (nn)
 spend an evening with them. I intend¹²⁵ to pay them¹⁶² a visit
 271 234 avec * avoir dessein 168 rendre (1) p. 63.
 soon 183. Pray give my love to them, and tell them¹⁶² so. I will⁷⁰.
 bientôt. N.B. faire amitiés (o) † , (1) p. 63. le N. B.
 Is not your country 25house finished yet¹⁸³? No, it is not, and I do
 de campagne 134 finir¹⁵⁸ N.B. 191, * 70, —
 not know when it will be. My father does not like it now. He says
 savoir quand * 70 — aimer* (K) p. 64.
 that it is too near the road. He wants²⁶⁰ to sell it, and 204
 (bb) N.B. * trop près de route. avoir envie 168 * (K) p. 64. d'en⁷⁰
 build another a little further in the country. I wonder he does
 bâtir 120 un peu loin⁴¹ 213 230 s'étonner 221 —
 not like it; it seems¹²⁵ a good house, and it is in a pleasant
 * ; * avoir apparence — † , * 213 agréable²³
 situation. He is going¹⁵⁵ to add a terrace to it, and make a moat
 — aller 172 ajouter terrasse , fossé
 round it. Have you been in the park? They⁹⁰ are making a pond
 autour 54 parc ? N.B. — faire¹⁵⁵ étang
 in the middle of it. (Here is) some fruit. Will you have¹⁷⁴ any?
 milieu 64 247 — (p)
 I shall be obliged to you, if you will give me some. Take some.
 obligé (o) , 144 (p) Prendre (p)

* Mind the *gender* of the *noun* which this pronoun represents.

† Express this sentence thus: *I pray you to give my love to them, and to tell them, &c.*

‡ Turn this sentence thus: *It has a good appearance.*

Take some more. (There²⁴⁶ is) plenty in the garden. We have
 (p) davantage. en⁷⁰ — abondance²¹³ jardin. en⁷⁰
 (so much) that we do not¹⁹² know what to do (with it.) Have you
 tant (bb) N.B. — N.B. que¹⁷² faire²⁰⁰ * en.
 been where I told¹³⁶ you? No, I have not⁷⁰. Why do not you go?
 être où ai dit¹⁹¹, N.B. Pourquoi—y⁷⁰ ¹³³
 Are you not ready yet¹⁸³? Yes, I am. Is your sister ready? I
¹³³ prêt encore N.B. , ⁷⁰ ¹³⁴ ²⁹
 (am afraid) she is not. Go and tell her¹⁶² to (get ready) as fast as
 craindre²²¹ ¹⁴⁶ ⁷⁰ Aller(nn) dire(1) p. 63 ¹⁶⁸ s'apprêter ⁴³ vite ⁴³
 she can.¹⁴² Is this the book of which you were speaking to me?
 pourra. Est-ce ici ⁷⁴ ¹⁵⁵ (o)
 Yes, it is. Have you read it? Yes, I have⁷⁰. Is it entertaining? Yes,
⁷⁰ lire N.B. amusant?
 very. Read it. You know Mr. B.; do you not²⁸²? Yes, I
 beaucoup connaître Monsieur ; n'est-ce pas? Oui,
 do⁷⁰. He is a very clever young man, but I (am afraid¹⁹⁵) he is a
 N.B. ⁶⁵ très habile³² jeune , craindre ²²¹ ¹⁴⁶ un
 little (too much) addicted to gaming. Has he ever asked you for
 peu trop adonné jeu. jamais †
 money? Yes, he has.⁷⁰ Did¹³⁶ you lend him¹⁶² any? Yes, I
 argent ? , N.B. Avez prêté (1) p. 63. (p) ,
¹³⁶ did⁷⁰. I am very sorry (for²⁰⁰ it,) for I do not think that he will
 ai N.B. fâché en , car — (bb) N.B.
 ever return it to you. Do you think he will⁷⁰? Yes, I do⁷⁰. He is
 rendrel¹⁴⁵ (o) — ²²¹ ¹⁴⁵ N.B. , N.B. ⁶⁵
 a very worthy³² young man. I wish²²¹ you would recommend him
 de beaucoup de mérite ¹⁸⁰ vouloir recommander
 to some of your friends who could serve him. I will⁷⁰. I esteem him
⁹⁶ pût servir N.B. estimer
 (very much) myself, and I beg you by all that is dear to you, not¹⁹⁰
 fort (m) N.B. supplier par tout ce qui cher (o) , N.B.
 to mention to him what⁸⁴ I have said to you, for I would never
 de parler de (o) (o) p. 66. (o) , car ¹⁹⁰
 pardon you for it. I will⁷⁰ not. Only¹⁸⁴ tell him¹⁶², when you
 pardonner † N.B. Seulement (1) p. 63.
 see¹⁴² him, that I shall be much obliged to him, if he will do me the
 voir , (bb) N.B. bien obligé (o) , ¹⁴⁴ faire
 favour that he has promised me. I will tell him¹⁶² so⁵⁴. I like them
 grâce ⁷⁴ promettre¹⁵⁹ (1) p. 63. le aimer ⁶⁶
 who show themselves such as they are. (So do I.) Tell him¹⁶² to
 montrer se tels que Et moi aussi. (1) p. 63. ¹⁶⁸
 call upon me as soon as he can¹⁴². I will⁷⁰. Now, I must wish you
²⁶⁶ ⁴³ tôt ⁴³ pouvoir. N.B. A présent, ¹⁸¹ souhaiter
 good morning. Come and see us again soon. You may¹⁷⁸ be sure
²³⁴ N.B. Venir — (nn) revoir † bientôt. pouvoir sûr
 that I will⁷⁰. I will come as often as I can, whilst I am so near
 (bb) N.B. N.B. ⁴³ ⁴³ ¹⁴², pendant que ¹⁴² près
 you. I hope you will⁷⁰.
 de ²²¹ N.B.

* With is implied in the pronoun *en*.

† See note II, page 207.

‡ *Re* prefixed to a verb, expresses the word *again*.

SECT. II.

RELATIVE OR DISTINCTIVE PRONOUN

WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT.

QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL.

74. When *who, whom, whose, that, which* come after one or several substantives which they particularize, they are expressed,

Nomin. Object.	Who,	} Qui ;	The man <i>who</i>	} comes.	<i>L' homme qui</i>	} vient.
	That,		The horse <i>that</i>		<i>Le cheval qui</i>	
	Which,		The chaise <i>which</i>		<i>La chaise qui</i>	
Posses.	Whom,	} Que ;	The man <i>whom</i>	} I see. (s)	<i>L' homme que</i>	} je vois.
	That,		The horse <i>which</i>		<i>Le cheval que</i>	
	Which,		The coach <i>that</i>		<i>Le carrosse que</i>	
see note o, page 66.						
Posses.	Whose,	} Dont ;	The man <i>of whom</i>	} I speak.	<i>L' homme dont</i>	} je parle.
	of Whom,		The horse <i>of which</i>		<i>Le cheval dont</i>	
	of Which,		The chaise <i>of which</i>		<i>La chaise dont</i>	

EXERCISE.

I see a gentleman yonder who is waiting for me. It62 is from him
voir monsieur* là bas 75 155 attendre 201 N.B. 221
I have bought that horse which is lame. He has another which suits
acheter (bb) boiteux. en70 un autre convenir
me. I have one which, I think, will die. You know the gentleman
en70 un , croire, mourir. + * (s)
we have just244 met. It62 is from him I have bought the horse that
venons de rencontrer. N.B. 221
you have seen. He has another which I want to buy, to replace that
voir. en70 120 260 acheter, 170 remplacer 88
which I have lost. He is the gentleman whose horse has won the
perdre. 65 * gagné le
race. He is not the person of whom you complain. No, he is70
prix de la course. 65 personne f. se plaindre. , 65 (r)
not. He is a man of whom I have a good opinion. The horse of
65 24 29
which I was speaking to you is sold.
— parler155 (o) vendre.

75. *Qui, que, dont*, whatever be the order of the corresponding words in english, must be placed immediately after the noun to which they relate ;

Is the gentleman come, *who is*242 to dine with us ?

Le monsieur *qui doit*242 diner avec nous, est-il venu ?

i. e. the gentleman *who* is to dine with us, is *he*134 come ?

(s) The distinctive words *whom, that, which* are often left out ; as, The man I saw, for the man whom I saw ; The wine we drank, for the wine which we drank ; but the corresponding words *qui, que, dont* must never be omitted, and if they are the nominative, or the object of several verbs they must be repeated with each verb ; as,

The man I saw, i. e. *whom* I saw. L' homme *que* je vis.
The wine we drank, i. e. *which* we drank. Le vin *que* nous bûmes.
The woman I speak of, i. e. *of whom* I speak. La femme *dont* je parle.

* *Monsieur*, not *Gentilhomme*, which in the French language means *Nobleman*.

† See page 127, and 139, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.

N. B. Dont, besides being placed immediately after the noun to which it relates, must be followed by a substantive in the nominative ; as,

He is a man *whose* probity is known.

C'est un homme *dont* la probité est connue, or, *dont* on connaît la, &c.

If *whose* is followed by a noun governed by a preposition, it can not be expressed by *dont*, it must be expressed by *du-Quel de laQuelle, desQuels, desQuelles*, agreeably to gender and number ; as,

He is a man *on* whose probity one may rely ; *i. e.* on the probity of *whom*.

C'est un homme sur la probité *duquel* on peut compter ; not, C'est un homme *dont* sur la probité, nor sur la probité *dont*. (t)

EXERCISE.

A gentleman has been here who wanted²⁶⁰ to speak to you. Is the
 il es venu ici * vouloir¹⁴⁰ 172 (o)
 man (come back) whom I had sent (for him) ? Yes, he is.⁷⁰ Is
 134 revenir avais envoyer le querir ? , N.B. Peut-on
 the money to be had (turn, *can* ^{one}⁹⁰ have the money) which we are in
 92 avoir (kk) avons²⁴
 need of ? No, it is not.⁷⁰ (That is) the gentleman whose horse I
 besoin 203 191 , N.B. 247
 wanted²⁶⁰ to buy. He is a man whose probity I know, a man
 vouloir¹⁴⁰ 172 acheter. 65 probité + ,
 whose talents I admire, and whose friendship I value much. He is a
 , amitié priser fort. 65
 man to whose family I owe every thing, and in whose hands all my
 famille devoir 107 , main
 property is. They are people upon whose word one may depend.
 bien 65 gens 229 sur parole on peut compter.

(t) When a relative pronoun comes after two nouns, and relates only to one of them, if the noun to which it relates is not the last in french, *who, whom, that, which* must be expressed by *leQuel, laQuelle, lesQuels, lesQuelles* ; of *whom, of which*, by *duQuel, de laQuelle, desQuels, desQuelles* ; to *whom, to which*, by *auQuel, à laQuelle, auxQuels, auxQuelles*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun, to avoid the ambiguity that might arise from *qui, que, dont*, which are generally understood to relate to the last noun ; as,

This is that young man's sister *of whom* we were speaking.

Voici la sœur de ce jeune homme *de laquelle* nous parlions.

But this being done for the sole purpose of removing the ambiguity which would arise from *qui, que, dont* ; if a relative pronoun, coming after two nouns, was followed by a verb, or by an adjective that would sufficiently denote to which noun it refers, it would be better to use *qui, que, dont*, than *lequel, laquelle, &c.* which are rather formal expressions ; the following sentence, for example, would not be ambiguous ;

That young man's sister *who* is so handsome.

La sœur de ce jeune homme *qui* est si belle ; *qui* being determined by *belle*.

But, if these words can not be used without obscurity, the principal object of a language being to express our thoughts with precision, elegance must yield to perspicuity.

* Turn this sentence thus. There has been here a gentleman *who* wanted, &c.

76. After any preposition but *of*, or a preposition synonymous to it, *whom* is expressed by *qui*, for both genders and numbers ;

	Masc. Sing.	Fem.	Masc. Plur.	Fem.
Which	leQuel,	laQuelle,	lesQuels,	lesQuelles ;
From Which	duQuel,	de laQuelle,	desQuels,	desQuelles ;
To, at Which	auQuel,	à laQuelle,	auxQuels,	auxQuelles ;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates ; as,

The man <i>with whom</i>	} he is. (u)	L'homme <i>avec qui</i>	} il est.
The horse <i>on which</i>		Le cheval <i>sur lequel</i>	
The chaise <i>in which</i>		La chaise <i>dans laquelle</i>	
The man <i>from whom</i>	} comes. (v)	L'homme <i>de qui</i>	} il vient.
The horse <i>from which</i>		Le cheval <i>duquel</i>	
The chaise <i>from which</i>		La chaise <i>de laquelle</i>	
The man <i>to whom</i>	} goes. (x)	L'homme <i>à qui</i>	} il va.
The horse <i>to which</i>		Le cheval <i>auquel</i>	
The chaise <i>to which</i>		La chaise <i>à laquelle</i>	

EXERCISE.

You know the gentleman to whom I have spoken. It is he who
 parler. N.B. 52
 has brought the parcel in which your letter was. (This is) the car-
 apporter paquet 140 247 voi-
 riage in which he came. 136 Are these the horses to which he is so
 ture est venu. Sont-ce ici si
 much attached? They are not fit for the use which they are
 fort attaché? propre 200 usage les 92
 intended for. 203 Let us walk along the road in which we
 destine à. Se promener * le long de route (v) se

(u) After a preposition, *which*, relating to the word *Thing*, is expressed by *quoi* ; as,
 It is a thing *of which* I did not think. C'est une chose *à quoi* je ne pensais pas.
 I see nothing *to which* he can apply. Je ne vois rien *à quoi* il puisse s'appliquer.

(v) With a verb denoting dwelling or movement, even in a figurative sense, *which*, after a preposition, is generally expressed by *où* ; as,

The city *in which* I live. La ville *dans laquelle*, or *où* je demeure.
 The happiness *to which* I aspire. Le bonheur *auquel*, or *où* j'aspire.

But we could not say, Le bonheur *où* je pense, The happiness *on which* I think ; because *penser* does not denote movement ; we must say, Le bonheur *auquel* je pense.

In the same sense, *from which* is expressed by *d'où*, and *through which*, by *par où* ; as,

The country *from which* I come. Le pays *duquel*, or *d'où* je viens.
 The town *through which* I have passed. La ville *par laquelle*, or *par où* j'ai passé.

(x) The distinctive word *which* coming after an *Indefinite expression*, or after a *Noun without an article* in french, can not be rendered by any of the relative words which correspond with it in english ; so these sentences,

I have obtained leave, *which* was the only thing that I asked :

The earth is ravaged *through ambition which* is the scourge of mankind,
 can not be translated

J'ai obtenu permission *qui* or *laquelle* était la seule chose que je demandais ;

On ravage la terre *par ambition qui* or *laquelle* est le fléau du genre humain :

sày, J'ai obtenu permission, c'était la seule chose que je demandais.

On ravage la terre *par ambition*, et *l'ambition* est le fléau du genre humain.

* See *se* Elamer, page 100.

walked¹³⁷ yesterday. What is the name of the place in which we
 promener * hier. 82 endroit (v)
 are ? I like to know the name of the places through which I go.
 aimer 169 † (v) passer.
 Have²³⁷ you inquired for the town from which he comes ? I could
 Vous êtes-vous informé de (v) venir ? ai¹³⁶ pu
 not hear any thing on which I can rely.
 99 apprendre 99 (u) 145 compter.

77. *Who, whom* used *absolutely*, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned before, imply the word *person* understood, and are expressed by *qui* ; as,

Who has done that ?

i. e. *what person* has done that ? *Qui* a fait cela ?

I know *whom* you mean ;

i. e. *what person* you mean. Je sais *qui* vous voulez dire.

EXERCISE.

Whom did¹⁸⁶ you meet ? Whom were you with ? Whom did¹³⁶
 avez trouvé ? 140 138 203 avez
 you give it⁵⁵ to ? I do not know whom you mean.¹²⁵ I do not
 donné 203 — savoir vouloir dire. —
 know whom you are speaking of.
 — 155 203

78. *Whose* used *absolutely*, implies also the word *person* understood. If it can be changed into *of whom*, it is expressed by *de qui* ; as,

Whose daughter is she ?

i. e. *of whom* is she the daughter ? *De qui* est-elle fille ?

I know *whose* relation she is.

i. e. *of whom*, or *of what person*. Je sais *de qui* elle est parente.

If *whose* can be changed into *to whom*, it is expressed by *à qui* ; as,

Whose house is that ?

i. e. *to whom* does that house belong ? *À qui* est cette maison ?

I do not know *whose* it is. Je ne sais pas *à qui* elle est.

EXERCISE.

Whose son are you ? Whose daughter is she ? Whose relations
 138 parent
 are they ? Whose house is that, or whom does that house belong to ?
 cette, † — (bb) est 203
 Whose property is it, or whom does it belong to ? Whose children
 — 62, † — est 203
 are these, or whom do these children belong to ? Do you not know
 ces, † (bb) — 138
 whose they are ? They are my sister's.
 ‡

* See *se Blamer*, page 100.

† See p. 127 and 139, the distinction between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.

‡ These two modes of expression are generally rendered in the same manner in french.

§ See note (g) p. 72.

WHICH INTERROGATIVE.

In an *interrogative* sentence, *which* requires *three distinctions*.

Which interrogative is either joined to the noun like an adjective, i. e. without the help of a preposition ; as,

Which man ? *Which* carriage ? *Which* horses ?

Or like a substantive, it is joined to it by the preposition *of* ; as,

Which of the men ? *Which of* the carriages ? *Which of* my horses ?

Or like a pronoun, it is used absolutely after the noun ; as,

It is one of these men ;

Which is it ?

I came in one of these carriages ? In *which* did you come ?

79. *Which* interrogative joined like an adjective, i. e. without a preposition, to the noun to which it relates, is

	Masc. Sing.	Fem.	Masc. Plur.	Fem.
<i>Which</i> ;	Quel,	Quelle,	Quels,	Quelles ;
<i>Of, from Which</i> ;	de Quel,	de Quelle,	de Quels,	de Quelles ;
<i>To, at Which</i> ;	à Quel,	à Quelle,	à Quels,	à Quelles ;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

Which man

Which carriage

Which horses

} do you prefer?

Quel homme

Quelle voiture

Quels chevaux

} préférez-vous?

EXERCISE.

Which horse will you ride ? Which road shall we go by ?
 173* 133 monter ? route 133 aller par ?

Which inn shall we (put up) at ? Which is the best inn in this
 auberge 133 descendre 203 meilleur (bb)

town ? Which room will you sit in ? Which paper would you
 ville ? chambre 173 rester 203 papier

like to read ?

169 lire ?

80. *Which* interrogative joined by a preposition to the noun to which it relates, or coming after it absolutely, i. e. without a noun, is,

	Masc. Sing.	Fem.	Masc. Plur.	Fem.
<i>Which</i> ;	le Quel,	la Quelle,	les Quels,	les Quelles ;
<i>Of, from Which</i> ;	du Quel,	de la Quelle,	des Quels,	des Quelles ;
<i>To, at Which</i> ;	au Quel,	à la Quelle,	aux Quels,	aux Quelles ;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

Which of these men

Which of the coaches

Which of my horses

} do you
 } prefer ?

Lequel de ces hommes

Laquelle des voitures †

Lesquels de mes chevaux

} préférez-
 } vous ?

* See note * page 130.

† The pronoun may be either singular or plural, agreeably to the number that is meant ; for ex. *Which* of these horses will you ride ? may be translated

Lequel or *lesquels* de ces chevaux voulez-vous monter ?

lequel meaning *one* horse ; *lesquels* meaning that the person is to ride *more than one*.

Which is the tallest ?
Which is the finest ?
Which are the best ?

Lequel est le plus haut ?
Laquelle est la plus belle ?
Lesquels sont les meilleurs ?

EXERCISE.

Which of these horses will you ride ? Which is the easiest ?
 * 173 monter ? aisé44 ?
 Which of these two roads shall we go by203 ? Which is the
 138 par ?
 shortest44 ? Which of these rooms will you sit in ? Which has
 court29 ? 173 rester 203
 the finest view ?
 belle44 vue ?

81. *Which* sometimes implies the demonstrative pronoun *that* or *those* understood ; as,

Which of these horses shall I ride ?

You may ride *which* you will, i. e. *that which* you will.

This demonstrative word can *not* be omitted in french, and *which* as including the two words, is expressed by

<i>Celui</i> que, m. }	<i>that</i> which ;	<i>Ceux</i> que, m. }	<i>those</i> which.
<i>Celle</i> que, f. }		<i>Celles</i> que, f. }	

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates ; as,

Which of these horses shall I ride ?

Ride *which*, i. e. *that which* you will.

In which carriage will you go ?

I will go in *which* you please.

Lequel de ces chevaux monterai-je ?

Montez *celui* que vous voudrez.

Dans quelle voiture voulez-vous aller ?

J'irai dans *celle* qu'il vous plaira.

EXERCISE.

Which horse shall I ride ? You may ride which (i. e. *that which*)
 133 monter ? pouvez
 you please.142 Which of these roads shall we go by ? Go by
 il vous plaira. 133 aller 203
 which you like.142 In which room shall I put your luggage ? Put
 vouloir. 133 mettre bagage ? Mettre
 it56 in that which I told136 you. Put it in which you will.142
 62 88 ai dit 55 62 vouloir.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

What requires the same distinctions as *which*.

82. *What*, followed by a noun, or relating to a noun mentioned before, is expressed,

	<i>Masc. Sing. Fem.</i>	<i>Mase. Plur. Fem.</i>
<i>What</i> ;	Quel, Quelle,	Quels, Quelles ;
<i>Of, from What</i> ;	deQuel, deQuelle,	deQuels, deQuelles ;
<i>To, at What</i> ;	à Quel, à Quelle,	à Quels, à Quelles ;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

What man

What carriage } will you have ?

What horses

What are your reasons ?

Quel homme

Quelle voiture

Quels chevaux

Quelles sont vos raisons ?

} voulez-vous ?

EXERCISE.

What place do you come from ? Which road did¹³⁶ you come
 endroit — 133 venir 203 êtes²³³ venu
 by ? What inn will you go to²⁰⁶ ? Have you heard the report ?
 203 aller entendu bruit qui court ?
 No, what is it ?
 , 62

83. *What* used absolutely, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned, implies the word *thing* understood, and is expressed by *que* or by *quoi*.

What is expressed by *que*, when it is the *object* of a verb ; as,

What are you doing there ? *Que* faites-vous là ?
 I do not know *what* to say to her. Je ne sais *que* lui dire ? (*y*)

What is expressed by *quoi*, when it is governed by a *preposition*, or used as an *interjection* ; ex.

What do you meddle with ? *De quoi* vous mêlez-vous ?
What! you have not done yet ! *Quoi!* vous n'avez pas encore fini.

EXERCISE.

What do you think of this country ? What do you intend¹²⁵
 — 133 penser 230 — 133 avoir dessein
 to (do with yourself) ? What do you mean¹²⁵ ? What do you
 de devenir — 133 vouloir dire ! — 133
 want²⁶⁰ to do with that ? What is that to you ? What ! he is not
 vouloir 172 faire 200 89 (*y*) fait 89 (*o*) 54 !
 come yet.¹⁶³ What ! you do not answer me. Listen to me.
 venue encore.N.B. — répondre 54 Ecouter (*o*) 56
 Well ! what ? What are these people taking about ? What do you
 Eh bien ! — (*bb*) gens¹³⁴ parler¹⁵⁵ de²⁰³ —
 meddle with ?
 se mêler de²⁰³

84. *What* sometimes implies the demonstrative pronoun *that*, and the distinctive *which* ; it is then expressed,

Nom. *What, ce qui* ;
 Always do *what* is right ; i. e. *that which* is right.
 Faites toujours *ce qui* est juste.

Object. *What, ce que* ;
What I say is true ; i. e. *that which* I say is true.
Ce que je dis est vrai. (*z*)

(*y*) *What*, in this sense, used interrogatively, is generally expressed in conversation by *qu'est-ce que*, an idiomatical expression ; as,

What do you say ? *Que* dites-vous, or *qu'est-ce que* vous dites ?
What are you doing ? *Que* faites-vous, or *qu'est-ce que* vous faites ?

And with the verb *be*, it is always expressed, by *qu'est-ce que* ; as,

What is it ? *Qu'est-ce que* c'est ?
What is that to you ? *Qu'est-ce que* cela vous fait ?

(*z*) Though the words *ce qui*, *ce que*, being compounded of the pronoun substantive *ce*, and of the distinctive *qui*, *que*, should have two verbs either to govern or to be

But with the prepositions *of*, *to*, or any preposition that is synonymous to them, it is necessary to consider whether the preposition comes before or after *what*; for,

Of what is *de ce qui*, *de ce que* ;

I speak *of what* is true ; i. e. *of that which*, &c.

Je parle *de ce qui* est vrai.

What of is *ce dont* ; as,

What he speaks *of* is not true ; i. e. *that of which*.

Ce dont il parle n'est pas vrai.

To what is *à ce qui*, *à ce que* ;

Apply to *what* is useful ; i. e. *to that which* is, &c.

Appliquez-vous *à ce qui* est utile.

What to is *ce à quoi* ; as,

What you apply *to* is not useful ; i. e. *that to which*.

Ce à quoi vous vous appliquez n'est pas utile.

EXERCISE.

Do you know what (*that which*) makes her angry ? Do you hear
 — 133 — fâcher — entendre
 what she says ? I know what she wants. 260 You speak of
 vouloir. parler
 what will never happen. What you are speaking of will never
 196 arriver. 155 203
 happen. Are you sure of what you say ? It is what you may 178
 sûr (o) p. 66. dire ? 65 pouvez
 be sure of. Will you trust to what he proposes ? What you trust
 203 se fier proposer ?
 to is very uncertain.
 203 très incertain.

Recapitulatory exercise on the foregoing rules.*

What ! is it 62 you ? Where have you been since 196 I saw 186 you ?
 ! N.B. Où depuis que ai vu ? 55
 What country did you come from ? What ship did 136 you come
 pays 230 — 133 venir 203 navire êtes 238 venu
 in ? What news do you bring ? What do they 90 say in town ?
 203 nouvelles — 133 apporter ? — 133 N.B. à ville ?
 Read the papers, and you will see. Which paper must I read ?
 Lire papier, voir. 181 133
 Which of these papers do you advise me to read ? Which has the
 — 133 conseiller 54 168
 latest 44 news ? (There is) very little difference ; read which you
 fraîche 32 246 très peu
 can 142 get. Now, what do you think of the news ? I do not
 pourrez trouver. Maintenant, — 133 penser —

governed ; yet, when these words come before the verb *être* followed by another verb, or by a noun in the plural number, another *ce* must be put before *être* ; as,

What vexes me *is*, that he will not study.

Ce qui me fâche, c'est qu'il ne veut pas étudier.

What I detest most, are idle people. *Ce que* je déteste le plus, *ce* sont les oisifs.

* See * page 182.

believe a word of what that paper says. (There is) not a word of
croire mot (bb) 246
truth in what I have read. What shall we do now? Let us go
vrai * 186 — — aller
to the place in which we are to meet your cousin. What have you
endroit (v) 242 172 rencontrer 133
done with your stick? I do not know what I have done (with it). I
faire 200 bâton? — savoir en55
(am afraid) I have left it at the inn at which we have237 stopped
craindre (nn) laisser 55 à auberge (v) nous nous sommes arrêtés.
to dinner. If your father asks you what you have done (with it),
dîner. 54 en55
what will you answer202 him? Indeed, I shall not192 know what to
138 répondre lui54 Mû foi, N.B. 173
say. What would you advise me to say? I will tell you sincerely
dire. 133 conseiller 54 168 * dire 54 sincèrement
what I would say. Well! what? What would you say? I would
Eh bien! 133
tell him162 the truth. It62 is what I was thinking of. What is your
(1) p. 63. vérité. N.B. 155 à.206
reason for leaving this country? Because I see nothing here to which
raison de quitter (bb) 230† Parceque 99 ici (u)
I can145 apply. I want to go abroad. What country would you
puisse s'appliquer. 260 dans les pays étrangers. 260
like to go to? To France or Italy? Which country would you
aimer 169 203 Italie? 260 133
advise me54 to go to? Which of those countries is the most pleasant?
conseiller 168 203 plus agréable?
You have seen them both; which do you like best? If you will
voir 122 ; — 133 aimer le mieux? 144
come with me, I will go to which you like.142 I will consider (of it.)
58 , vouloir. penser y54
(That is) the gentleman whose75 house we have just244 passed by.203
247 monsieur N.B. venons de passer près de
It is the house in which we lived140 formerly. Is it65 the house which
65 (v) demeurer autrefois. 133
your father wanted260 to buy, and for which he offered136 (so much)
vouloir140 172 acheter, a offert tant
money? Yes, it is. Do you know that young lady? Yes, I do.70
argent? Oui, 70 — 133 † (bb) , N.B.
Who is she? Whose daughter is she? She is married.29 Whose
marié. N.B.
wife is she? Whom is she married to? She is the wife of that
femme 158 203 65 (bb)
gentleman whom we were speaking of. I know whose daughter she
155 203 †
is. I know whose relations they are. Whose handkerchief is this
† parent mouchoir

* When the French speak of an action which they are on the point of doing, they do not use the future as the English do; they express *Shall*, *Will* by the *present* tense of the verb *Aller*, to go; *je vais*, *tu vas*, *il va*, *nous allons*, &c. with the following verb in the infinitive; so turn this sentence thus, *What are we going*135 *to do now?*

† Turn; *What reason have you to leave this country?*

‡ See page 127, 139, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaître*.

which I have found on the staircase? I do not know whose it is.
 trouver sur escalier? — * 62
 I do not know whom it belongs to. What shall I do (with it)?
 — * appartenir 203 faire en 54
 Take it⁵⁶ back to the place in which you found¹³⁶ it. Which
 Remettre 62 — endroit (v) avez trouvé 55
 door must I go through? Which of these doors must I go through?
 porte 181 133 passer par 203 181 133 203
 Go through which you like¹⁴². Have you heard what I said¹³⁶
 Passer voudrez. entendre ai dit
 to you? No, what is it? The man you trust to deceives you. The
 (o) 55 191, (y) se fier † 203 tromper 54
 company he keeps, is not honest. You do not know all the harm he
 compagnie fréquenter, honnête. — * mal
 does you. I do not¹⁹² know what to do. I wish²²¹ you would tell
 faire 54 — N.B. * 172 faire. 180 vouloir
 me what I must do. You do not know what a disagreeable situation
 54 181 — * 20 désagréable
 I am in. What must I do? Do what I told you. I do not see what
 203 181 133 Faire 136 55 —
 you can do better. If you had believed me, what you complain of
 (kk) de mieux. aviez 55, se plaindre † 203
 would not have happened. I am sorry for what has happened to you.
 être²³⁸ arriver. fâché 200 238 (o)
 When was Rome built? what were the achievements of king Romu-
 quand bâtir exploit
 lus? how long did he reign? what is the history of Tarquinius
 combien de temps régner histoire Tarquin le
 Superbus? when, and (for what) was he expelled from Rome?
 Superbe quand pourquoi chasser
 what efforts did he make (in order to) be restored? what was the
 efforts faire pour rétablir
 number of the Roman kings, and how long did the regal authority
 nombre de Rome combien de temps royal autorité
 subsist? what kind of government succeeded at Rome? who were
 subsister sorte gouvernement succéder
 the first consuls? how did Brutus show his zeal for liberty? when
 premier comment montrer zèle liberté
 were the decemvirs created? why were they deposed? what kind
 décemvir créer pourquoi déposer
 of government followed? when were the military tribunes created
 suivre militaire tribun créer
 with consular authority at Rome? who were the first plebeian
 consulaire plébéen
 consuls? how was the first triumvirate formed? what provinces
 triumvirat formé
 were assigned to the triumvirs? what were the conquests of Julius
 assigner conquête Jules
 Cæsar in Great Britain? what (account have we) of Cæsar after the
 César dans la Bretagne rapporte-t-on après
 civil wars? when and by whom was he slain? How long,
 tuer Jusqu'à quand
 Catiline, wilt thou abuse our patience? How long shall thy frantic
 Catiline abuser de frénétique

* See pp. 127, 139, difference between *Savoir* & *Connaitre*. † See *reflective verbs*, p. 100.

rage baffle the efforts of justice? (To what height) meanest thou
 se jouer des jusqu'où avoir dessein
 to carry thy insolence? Seest thou not that the senators are apprised
 de porter voir que sénateur informer
 of thy conspiracy? Wast thou not last night in the house of Lucca,
 conspiration hier au soir
 with many other associates in guilt and madness? Darest thou
 plusieurs complices de ton crime folie oser
 deny this? Why art thou silent? Oh, immortal gods! what coun-
 nier le garder le silence immortel pays
 try do we inhabit? what city do we belong to? what government
 habiter ville appartenir
 do we live under? Hast thou not rendered thyself infamous by
 vivre être rendre te infâme
 every vice that can brand a private life? What guilt has not
 tout pouvoir déshonorer privé crime
 stained thy hands? What pollution has not defiled thy whole
 souiller infamie souiller
 body? &c.—*Cicero against Catiline.* (How many) years from
 corps combien années
 the creation to the deluge? in how many days did God
 création combien
 create the world? who were the first man and woman? who
 créer monde premier
 were their sons? what was their occupation? when did Enoch
 occupation
 flourish? what became of him? who was his son? (how long)
 fleurir que devint-il ~~qui~~ qui combien de temps
 did he live? what was the usual length of life at that time? by
 vivre ordinaire longueur époque
 whom was the tower of Babel founded? on what design, and
 tour bâtir à dessein
 when? why was the building (laid aside)? when was Abraham
 quand bâtitse abandonné
 called by God? what is the history of his life? (How many) years
 appeler de combien
 from the vocation of Abraham to the departure of the Israelites from
 départ Israélites
 Egypt? whose son was Isaac? when was he born? who was his
 Egypte de qui naître
 wife? who were his sons? when did Jacob live? (how many) sons
 femme vivre combien
 had he? what is the history of Joseph? when and upon whose
 histoire quand à
 invitation did Jacob and his family (go down) to Egypt? when was
 l'invitation de qui famille aller en
 Moses born? how was he educated? by whose assistance, and
 Moïse élevé par le secours de qui
 when did he bring the Israelites out of Egypt? what miracles
 quand emmener hors l'
 attended the Israelites at their departure from Egypt and through the
 accompagner sortie l' dans
 deserts? who was their high priest? when was the law given to
 déserts grand-prêtre loi donnée
 Moses? who was Moses' successor? What is the history of
 le successeur

Joshua, and what are his wars? when did he and the Israelites come
 Josué guerre entrer
 to the possession of Canaan? when came Saul to the throne? by
 en monter sur trône
 what means, and when, did David obtain the kingdom? how long
 moyen David obtenir royaume combien de temps
 did he reign? who were his sons? How long reigned Solomon?
 régner? Salomon?
 When did he dedicate the temple? what was his character? What
 dédier caractère? Que
 (is recorded) of Judith? What was the fate of Josiah? How long
 rapporte-t-on sorte Josias?
 did he reign? When and by whom was Jerusalem burned? What
 brûler?
 is said of Daniel? What is the history of his life? How long did
 dire
 he live? When was Jesus born? What was his mission? By
 vivre? naître?
 whom and when was he crucified?
 qui crucifier?

SECT. III.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

	<i>Masc. Sing.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc. Plur.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>Mine</i> ;	<i>le Mien,</i>	<i>la Mienne,</i>	<i>les Miens,</i>	<i>les Miennes.</i>
<i>Of, from Mine</i> ;	<i>du Mien,</i>	<i>de la Mienne,</i>	<i>des Miens,</i>	<i>des Miennes.</i>
<i>To, at Mine</i> ;	<i>au Mien,</i>	<i>à la Mienne,</i>	<i>aux Miens,</i>	<i>aux Miennes.</i>
<i>Thine</i> ;	<i>le Tien,</i>	<i>la Tienne,</i>	<i>les Tiens,</i>	<i>les Tiennes.</i>
<i>His</i> ;	<i>le Sien,</i>	<i>la Sienne,</i>	<i>les Siens,</i>	<i>les Siennes.</i>
<i>Hers</i> ;				
<i>Ours</i> ;	<i>le Nôtre,</i>	<i>la Nôtre,</i>	<i>les Nôtres,</i>	<i>les Nôtres.</i>
<i>Yours</i> ;	<i>le Vôtre,</i>	<i>la Vôtre,</i>	<i>les Vôtres,</i>	<i>les Vôtres.</i>
<i>Theirs</i> ;	<i>le Leur,</i>	<i>la Leur,</i>	<i>les Leurs,</i>	<i>les Leurs.</i>

85. The possessive pronouns *le mien, le tien, le sien, &c.* must be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent ; ex.

Your hat is better than *hers*, i. e. *her hat*.

Votre *chapeau* est meilleur que *le sien*.

My watch is not so fine as *his*, i. e. *his watch*.

Ma *montre* n'est pas si belle que *la sienne*.

EXERCISE.

Are our horses ready? Yours and mine are, ⁷⁰ but hers is ⁷⁰ not.
 134 prêt ²⁹ ? 72, 72

Get hers ready as soon as you can. ¹⁴² Have they ⁹⁰ cleaned our
 Apprêter * 43 tôt 43 pouvez. 133 N.B. décrotté
 boots? Yours are cleaned, ²⁹ but his and mine are ⁷⁰ not. He does
 botte? décrotté, N.B. 72 —

not want ²⁶⁰ his now. Clean mine. I want mine directly.
 avoir besoin de tout à l'heure.

* Ready is expressed in the word *Apprêter*.

86. The *possessive* words *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs* do not always represent a noun mentioned before them; they are often used instead of the *personal* pronouns *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*, with the verb *be*, meaning to *belong*; as for example, *This book is mine*, i. e. *belongs to me*; in this sense *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs* are expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, m. à elles, f.*; as,

This book is <i>mine</i> .	Ce livre est <i>à moi</i> ;	i. e. belongs to me.
is <i>thine</i> .	est <i>à toi</i> ;	to thee.
is <i>his</i> .	est <i>à lui</i> ;	to him.
is <i>hers</i> .	est <i>à elle</i> ;	to her.
is <i>ours</i> .	est <i>à nous</i> ;	to us.
is <i>yours</i> .	est <i>à vous</i> ;	to you.
is <i>theirs</i> .	est <i>à eux, m. à elles, f.</i>	to them. (aa)

EXERCISE.

Is not this fan¹³⁴ yours? No, sir; it is not mine. I think²²¹ it is
 éventail 191, ; 62 penser 62
 my sister's. Yes, it is hers. Are these horses yours or his? They
 * , 62 13 134 ou 62
 are not ours; they are my cousin's.
 ; 62 cousin.*

87. The *possessive* pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, by an idiom peculiar to the english language, are sometimes joined to the noun to which they relate by the preposition *of*; as, *A friend of mine*; *A book of yours*; this *possessive* pronoun can not be expressed by the *possessive* pronoun in french: it must be expressed by the *possessive* article *mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs* placed *before* the noun, which must always be *plural* in french; as,

A friend of <i>mine</i> .	Un de <i>mes</i> amis ;	i. e. one of <i>my</i>	} friends.
of <i>thine</i> .	Un de <i>tes</i> amis ;	one of <i>thy</i>	
of <i>his</i> .	Un de <i>ses</i> amis ;	one of <i>his</i>	
of <i>hers</i> .	Un de <i>ses</i> amis ;	one of <i>her</i>	
of <i>ours</i> .	Un de <i>nos</i> amis ;	one of <i>our</i>	
of <i>yours</i> .	Un de <i>vos</i> amis ;	one of <i>your</i>	
of <i>theirs</i> .	Un de <i>leurs</i> amis ;	one of <i>their</i>	

Never say ;

Un ami de *mes*, nor Un ami des *miens* ; Un ami de *tes* ; Un ami de *ses*, &c.

EXERCISE.

I (have just²⁴⁴) met an acquaintance of mine who told¹³⁶ me.
 venir de rencontrer connaissance a dit 55
 that a friend of ours is dead. Is not Mrs. A. a relation of
 (bb) N.B. mourir. Madame 134 parente
 yours? A son of hers is dead. A cousin of mine has married²⁶¹ a
 épouser N.B.

(aa) Yet when a question is asked with *est-ce*; as, *Est-ce là votre livre?* Is that your book? we may answer, *Oui, c'est le mien*, or *Il est à moi*; Yes, it is mine. *Est-ce là sa maison?* Is that his house? No, it is not *his*, it is his sister's; Non, ce n'est pas la *sienne*, c'est celle de sa sœur, or *Elle n'est pas à lui*, elle est à sa sœur.

* See note (q) page 72.

daughter of hers, but she is no relation of mine. They are neighbours
 190
 of ours. I am going to dine with an aunt of theirs.
 155 aller 172 tante

*Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing Rules.**

Your mother and mine are gone¹⁵⁸ to (take²⁶³ a walk) in our fields;
 aller 172 N.B. 213 champ;
 Let us go and (take a²⁶³ walk) in yours. Is not that house yours?
 — — (nn) N.B. (bb) 134
 No, it is not ours; it is my uncle's. I should have taken it⁵⁵ for
 191, 62 ; 62 oncle. † prise 62 pour
 yours. Ours is not so fine as his, and his is better situated than
 42 42 , (E) p. 56. situé 158
 ours. Let us go (this way); I want to call at a friend's of mine.
 — — par ici ; 260 266 208 une amie
 I think she is a friend of yours too. Who? Mrs. A. She is an
 221 65 aussi. Madame 65
 old acquaintance of ours, but she is no friend of mine. I do not
 ancienne[†] connaissance , 190 —
 like her. She is incessantly¹⁸⁴ talking of herself, or of some relation
 aimer 54 — sans cesse 155 elle-même, 95 parent
 of hers. Let us walk into this room. What a pretty work²⁶ bag
 — — entrer 213 (bb) 82 20 joli ouvrage sac²⁵
 you have got there. Is it yours? No, it is not mine; it is my
 170 là. 62 191, 62 ; 62
 sister's. This⁸⁸ is mine. Hers is (very much) like²⁰² yours. Hers
 † N.B. — fort 184 ressembler au
 is not so pretty as mine. How long¹⁸⁸ have you had yours?
 42 42 Combien y a-t-il que vous avez †
 I got¹³⁶ mine about the same time that my sister got hers. Yours
 ai eu vers tems 136
 looks²⁵³ better than hers. ' Yes, because I take more care of my
 avoir apparence 33 que , prendre soin
 clothes than she does of hers. (What is the matter with) your
 habit 47 faire Qu' est-ce qu' a 281 —
 neighbour? A sister of his is dead. She went¹³⁷ (a few days ago) to
 voisin? mort. 158 aller il y a quelques jours 172
 see a child of hers who is at a relation of ours in the country,
 208 230
 and she died¹³⁶ there. You have got a handkerchief of mine. A
 est mort 158 y 55 270 mouchoir
 handkerchief of yours! I have no handkerchief of yours. I have
 190 n'en 70
 none but what are¹⁴⁵ mine. What! is this¹³⁴ yours? Yes, it is mine.
 pas 199 soient 83 ! 88 N.B. , 62
 You are greatly mistaken: It is not yours; it is my mother's.
 — fort 184 se tromper: 62 62 †

* See note * page 182.

† See note (q) page 72.

‡ Put this adjective *before* the noun.

§ *Has been ill.* The English often use this *past* tense to express an action or a state of being which is still lasting; as, *I have been ill these six months*; the French cannot use it in this sense; so, *Has been ill* must be expressed by *Est malade*, if the person is *ill* still; by *A été malade*, if she *has ceased* to be so.

SECT. IV.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

Masc. Sing. Fem.		Masc. Plur. Fem.	
<i>This,</i> <i>That;</i>	} <i>Celui,</i> <i>Celle.</i>	<i>These,</i> <i>Those;</i>	} <i>Ceux,</i> <i>Celles.</i>

88. The *demonstrative* pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles* must be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; ex.

Bring my hat and *that* of my sister; i. e. the *hat* of &c.

Apportez mon chapeau et *celui* de ma sœur.

He has lost his watch and *that* of his brother; i. e. the *watch* of &c.

Il a perdu sa montre et *celle* de son frère.

Have you seen these (*bb*) gloves and *those* which I had on yesterday?

Avez-vous vu ces gants et *ceux* que j'avais hier?

N. B. The *demonstrative* words *this, these, that, those* imply a local distinction which *celui, celle, ceux, celles* do not express; therefore, when a distinction is to be made between two objects, the adverbial particle *ci*, here, to denote the nearest object, and *là*, there, to denote the remotest, must be added to these pronouns; as,

This hat is better than *that*.

Ce chapeau-*ci* est meilleur que *celui-là*; i. e. this hat *here*—that *there*.

That watch is not so fine as *this*.

Cette montre-*là* n'est pas si belle que *celle-ci*; i. e. as this *here*.

But the particles *ci, là*, being added merely to discriminate the objects, if the *demonstrative* pronoun is followed by a relative pronoun, or by a noun in the possessive state, which

(*bb*) It is not unnecessary perhaps to recall here the attention of the learner, that the words *This, that, these, those*, have already been seen in the chapter of articles, and he must take care not to confound them.

If *this, that, these, those*, are followed by a noun, they have the property of a demonstrative article, and are expressed by *ce, cette, ces*, as has been seen, rule 1.

Ce vin, cette gloire, ces plaisirs. This wine, that glory, those pleasures.

If *this, that, these, those* do not point out a noun after them, but represent one mentioned before, they are pronouns, and are expressed by *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which they represent; as, [brother

Il a perdu sa montre et *celle* de son frère. He has lost his watch and *that* of his

If *this, that* do not point out a noun after them, nor represent one mentioned before, they may be considered as substantives implying the word *thing*, and are expressed, *this*, by *ceci*; *that*, by *cela*; as,

Ceci est bon, mais *cela* est meilleur. i. e. This thing is good, but that thing is better.

N. B. *That*, joining two sentences, is a conjunction, and is always expressed by *que*; as,

I know that he is come.

Je sais *qu'il* est venu.

This conjunction is often understood in English, but it must always be expressed in French: Do you think he is come? Pensez-vous *qu'il* soit venu? [see conj'ns.

makes the distinction sufficiently clear, these particles would be useless, and they must be left out ; as,

This hat is better than *that* of your brother.

Ce chapeau-*ci* est meilleur qui *celui* de votre frère.

This watch is not so fine as *that* which you have lost.

Cette montre-*ci* n'est pas si belle que *celle* que vous avez perdue.

EXERCISE.

This steeple is not so high as that of St. Paul. This church is
(bb) clocher 42 haut 42 (bb) église
larger than that which we have just²⁴⁴ passed by²⁰³. These trees
grande⁴¹ 76 venons de passer près de (bb) arbre
are finer¹⁴ than those which are in your park. This¹³ steeple is not
beau 74 parc. N.B.
so high as that. That¹³ church is much larger than this. These¹³
42 N.B. beaucoup 41 N.B.
trees are finer than those. This gown is prettier⁴¹ than that of your
41 (bb) robe joli²⁹
sister. This is not so fine as that which I showed you.
42 belle 42 ai montrée. 55

89. If *this*, *that* are not followed by a noun, nor relate to a noun mentioned before, they imply the word *thing* understood, and are expressed,

<i>This</i> , by	Ceci ;	<i>That</i> , by	Cela ; as,
<i>This</i> is good ;	i. e. <i>this thing</i> is good.		<i>ceci</i> est bon.
<i>That</i> is better ;	i. e. <i>that thing</i> is better.		<i>cela</i> est meilleur.

EXERCISE.

Give me this. What will you do with that ? Take this. Let that
173 faire de Prendre Laisser
alone. I will take this.
— *

Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing rules.†

Do you hear that man ? He is scolding¹⁵⁵ that woman who has
— 136 entendre ‡ — gronder
been beating those children. Look at that house. Is not that a
155 battu Regarder 201 N'est-ce pas là
good house ? Yes, it is a good house, but this is a better²⁹ one. Nay !
29 65 (E) p. 56 § Oh non !
I think that is better. Those rooms seem to me to be larger⁴¹
penser 221 (E) p. 56 paraître (o) 54 — — grand²⁹
than these ; besides, that is much better situated than this. I do not
; outre cela, (E) p. 56 situé 158 —
see that. I think this is as pleasantly situated as that. Do you
voir 221 43 agréablement 158 43 — 133

* See note* page 228.

† See note * page 182.

‡ Read note (bb), p. 234, before you write this exercise.

§ If you express *This* by the pronoun, you must leave out *a* and *one* ; but you may express *This* by *Voici*, rule 247 ; then you express *a* by *une*, and *one* by *en*, before *Voici* ; thus, *En voici une &c.*

admire those flowers? What flowers? Those that⁷⁴ we see in that
 admirer fleur? 82 (o) p. 66
 garden before that house. How do you call this? This is a poppy,
 devant Comment — 133 appeler pavot,
 and that is a marigold. I do not like that kind of flowers; I like
 souci. — aimer sorte ;
 those that⁷⁴ have a pleasant smell. What do you think of these?
 (o) p. 66. agréable 32 odeur. 83 — penser
 Oh, I like these better than those. These smell sweet. The action
 Oh, (æ) p. 56. ont une douce odeur. action
 of Virginius sacrificing his daughter, is as strong and more pure than
 Virginius sacrifier , 43 fort 29 pure 29
 that of Brutus condemning his son; nevertheless this is glorious²⁹
 Brutus condamner ; néanmoins glorieux (g)
 and that is not. Virginius secured only the honour of his family;
 70 sauvait seulement 'honneur famille ;
 Brutus saved that of the laws and of the country. (There was) much
 sauvait loi patrie. Il y avait
 pride in the action of Brutus, perhaps there was nothing but pride;
 orgueil , peut-être n'y²⁴⁶ avait-il — que ;
 there was in that of Virginius only honesty and courage; but this
 'honnêteté ;
 did¹³⁷ (every thing) for his family, and did¹³⁷ every thing, or
 faire 107 pour , faire 107 , ou
 seemed¹³⁷ to do every thing for Rome, and Rome, which considered¹³⁶
 sembler 172 faire , a considéré
 the action of Virginius as that of an honest man and of a good father,
 comme honnête ,
 consecrated the action of Brutus as that of an hero; is not that just?
 a 136 consacré comme héros; 134 juste?

SECT. V.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.*

90. *One, we* } used in an *indefinite* sense, i. e. not relat-
they, people. } ing to any particular person, are express-
 ed by *on*.

N. B. *On* is always the nominative of a verb, and though it represents *we, they, people*, which are plural, it requires the verb in the 3rd person sing. ; as,

One says, } *On* dit ; i. e. *one* says, (see note ¶ p. 246.)
They say, *people* say. }

EXERCISE.

People are spreading¹⁵⁵ strange reports. They say that we have
 — faire¹²⁵ courir étrange bruit. dire (bb) N.B. nous

* Though in point of order, this is the proper place for these pronouns, yet as they are easy, and of less consequence than the other exercises which follow them ; not to break the chain of the most useful rules, I would advise the learner, after having read the rules on the *indefinite pronouns*, on this page and following, and written rules 90, 91 and 92, to pass over the rest of the rules and go to the exercise on the *verbs*, the knowledge of which is necessary to have a complete idea of the language. The rest of this exercise may be written after all the other exercises.

been beaten. Who says so? They say so. People say so. (You181
 battrel159 le54 54 Il N.B.
 must not) believe every thing that people say.
 ne faut pas croire tout ce que

91. The following and other like *indefinite* expressions, are also expressed in french by *on*, with the verb in its active sense ; as,

It was said. *On* disait ; i. e. *one* said.
It has been reported. *On* a rapporté ; *one* has reported.

EXERCISE.

It is thought that (there will be) a peace. It is said that the prelimi-
 penser (bb)N.B. il y aura — paix. (bb) N.B. prélimi-
 naries are signed. It will soon184 be known if it be true. It was asserted
 naire signer158. bientôt * si cela217 vrai. * assurait
 yesterday on the exchange.
 hier à bourse.

92. The english *passive* verbs used indefinitely, require the active signification in french, with *on* for nominative ; but by adding *on* to the sentence, the nominative of the verb in english, becomes its object in french ;

I have been told that news has been received. } i. e. *one* has told *me* that
On m'a dit qu'on a reçu des nouvelles ; } *one* has received *news*.

EXERCISE.

How can that be believed, when such great preparations for
 pouvoir 89 * croire, si 33 préparatif
 war (are going on)? I was told yesterday that it has been resolved
 guerre155 faire — * 137 (bb)N.B. * resolu
 to (carry on) the war. Do you know if the letters have been received
 168 continuer * reçu
 which (were expected) by the last29 mail? They have not been
 74 attendait140 dernier poste ? *
 received yet.183 They are expected to-day. Somebody has been
 reçues159 N.B. * attendre aujourd'hui. 95 *
 sent to know why they have not been brought sooner. We have
 envoyé pour pourquoi * apportées tôt.41
 been much deceived.
 * fort trompés.

93. *Oneself*,
Himself used indefinitely, } are expressed by *Soi* ; as,
Itself after a preposition }

Every one thinks well of *himself*. Chacun a bonne opinion de *soi*.
 Virtue is amiable of *itself*. La vertu est aimable de *soi*.

EXERCISE.

Let248 every one think of himself. Every one for himself, and God
 Que 105 penser 200

* A *Passive* verb is made *Active*, by leaving out the verb *be*, and making the past participle into a verb of the same tense and person as the auxiliary verb is ; as *It is thought* ; turn, *One thinks*. *It has been said* ; turn, *One has said*.

for all. That is harmless in itself, Vice is odious of itself. The
 tous 99 innocent de odieux
 earth contains all seeds in itself.
 terre contenir 29 s  mence en

94. *Some*, repeated in a sentence of two parts, is in the first part *Les uns*, in the second part *les autres* ; as,

Some laugh, *some* cry. *Les uns* rient, *les autres* pleurent.

EXERCISE.

Some like one thing, some like another. Some will have it one
 aimer , en aimer 174 54 d'une
 way, some will have it another.
 mani  re, 174 54 d'une autre.

95. *Somebody*, *some one* is *Quelqu'un* for both genders ; as,
Somebody has taken my book. *Quelqu'un* a pris mon livre.

EXERCISE.

Somebody has told me so. I heard it from somebody. I
 dit le entendre 55
 expect somebody. Somebody will call upon me soon. 183
 attendre 266 bient  t. N.B.

96. *Some*, *any*, *few* followed by a noun or a pronoun in the possessive state, are expressed by *Quelqu'un*, *quelques uns*, m. *quelqu'une*, *quelques unes*, f. agreeably to gender and number ; as,

Take *some* of these oranges. Prenez *Quelques unes* de ces oranges.
 Give me a *few* of them. Donnez-m'en *quelques unes*.

EXERCISE.

Have you seen any of my flowers ? Will you have some (of them) ?
 vu fleur ? 174 en 54
 I will take a few (of them.)
 * prendre

97. *Nobody*, *not any body*, *personne* ; } require *ne* before
Nobody *whatever*, *qui que ce soit* } the verb ;

Nobody loves that man. *Personne* n'aime cet homme.
 He trusts *nobody* *whatever*. Il ne se fie    *qui que ce soit*.

EXERCISE.

Nobody likes that woman. That woman likes nobody. Do not tell
 aimer (bb) (bb) — dire
 it to any body. Have you met nobody ? Has nobody met you ? I
 57 134 rencontr  
 have not met any body *whatever*.

98. *Something* is *Quelque chose* ; as,
 He gave me *something* good. Il me donna *quelque chose* de bon (cc)

* See note * p. 228.

(cc) *Quelqu'un*, *personne*, *quelque*, *chose*, *rien*, followed by an adjective or a past participle, require *de* after them ; as *Somebody* wounded. *Quelqu'un de bless  *. *Something* good. *Quelque chose de bon*. *Nobody* come. *Personne de venu*. *Nothing* new. *Rien de nouveau*.

EXERCISE.

I feel something that hurts me. I have something curious to tell
 74 blessé 54 (cc) curieux à
 you. Is not that something wonderful? Why do you not apply
 54 N'est-ce pas là (cc) étonnant? — 133 s'appliquer(ii)
 to something?
 *

99. *Nothing, not any thing, Rien*; } require *ne* before
Nothing whatever, Quoi que ce soit } the verb; as,
Nothing is more agreeable. *Rien n'est plus agréable.*
 He applies to *nothing whatever*. *Il ne s'applique à quoi que ce soit.*

EXERCISE.

I will give you nothing. You have not done any thing to-day. He
 donner 54 fait aujourd'hui.
 applies to nothing whatever. He does not mind any thing what-
 s'appliquer * faire attention à
 ever. I would not part (with it) for any thing. Somebody come.
 se défaire * en59 venu
 Something lost. Nobody hurt. Nothing done.
 perdu. blessé. fait.

100. *None, not any*, followed by a substantive in the pos-
 sessive state, are expressed by *Aucun*, m. *Aucune*, f. with *ne*
 before the verb; as,

None of your sisters is come. *Aucune*, de vos sœurs *n'est* venue.

EXERCISE.

None of the ladies whom we expected will come. We shall not
 † 74 attendions 173 venir
 see any (of them) to-day. Do you know any of them? No, I do not.
 voir en54 aujourd'hui. — 96 191, N.E.

101. *None, Nul*; } used absolutely, are synonymous to
Not one, Pas un } *personne*, and require *ne* before the
 } verb; as,

None are free from faults. *Nul n'est exempt de défauts.*
Not one believes it. *Pas un, or personne ne le croit (dd)*

EXERCISE.

None is sheltered from censure. None can boast (of it). Many
 à l'abri pouvoir se vanter en59
 people called themselves his friends, not one assisted him.
 229 disaient se54 , aider137 lui54

102. *Each*, joined to a noun, is expressed by *Chaque* for
 both genders; as,

Each boy had a shilling. *Chaque* garçon eut un shelin.
Each girl earned six pence. *Chaque* fille gagna six sous.

* See reflective verbs, page 100.

† Speaking of *young ladies*, we should say *demoiselles*; speaking of *married, or grown up ladies*, we should say *dames*.

(dd) *Rien, aucun, pas un, personne* followed by *qui, que, dont* require the following verb in the subjunctive; as,
 Have you found nothing that suits you? *N'avez vous trouvé rien qui vous convi-*
 I do not know any body who can do it. *Je ne connais personne qui puisse le faire.*

EXERCISE.

Each horse carried two men. Each woman had a bundle in each
 hand. porter 140 paquet dans
 main.

103. *Each*, followed by a noun in the possessive state, or relating to a noun already mentioned, is *Chacun*, m. *Chacune*, f. as,

Each of these books has its price. *Chacun* de ces livres a son prix.
 Put them *each* in *their* places. Mettez-les *chacun* à sa place.

EXERCISE.

Each of these men has a shilling a day; or these men have each a
(bb) shelin par jour ;
 shilling a day. Each of these women carried two bundles; or these
(bb) porter ;
 women carried two bundles each.

104. *Every*, followed by a noun, requires a distinction.

If *every* denotes individuality, it is expressed by *Chaque*, as,
Every language has its properties. *Chaque* langue a ses propriétés;
 i. e. *each* language has &c.

If *every* denotes a totality, it is expressed by *Tout*, m. *Toute*, f.

Every man is fallible, i. e. *all men*; *Tout* homme es faillible.

EXERCISE.

Every science (i. e. *each science*) has its principles. Every season
ses principe saison
 has its attractions. Every plant has its properties. Every man lies,
charme. plante propriété.
 (i. e. *all men lie*) but every man is not a liar. Every woman is
— menteur.
 frail, but every woman does not yield. I am found at every hour of
 fragile, — succomber, 92 à
 the day.
 233

105. *Every one* requires the same distinction as *every*.

Every one, implying every one taken individually, is *Chacun*;
Every one lives after his own way. *Chacun* vit à sa manière.
 i. e. *each person* lives, &c.

Every one, implying every one collectively, is *Touts*, m. *Toutes*, f.

Every one, of them were taken; } Ils furent *touts* pris, m.
 i. e. they were *all* taken. } Elles furent *toutes* prises, f.

EXERCISE.

Every one has a good opinion of himself, (i. e. *each person*.) Every
24 soi,
 one thinks himself to be ²³⁹ in the right. I have lost every one of my
 penser —† — avoir — 24 raison. perdre —

* This sentence can not be expressed literally.

books, (i. e. *all my books*.) I had won twenty guineas, and I lost
every one of them. Every one of the robbers were taken.

— 54. — voleur 137 prendre.

106. *Every body* is *Tout le monde*; as,

Every body speaks ill of her. *Tout le monde* parle mal d'elle.
She speaks ill of *every body*. Elle parle mal de *tout le monde*.

EXERCISE.

Every body says so. She speaks ill of every body. It is impossi-
 dire le54 dire du mal N.B.
 ble to please every body.
 168 plaire 202

107. *Every thing* is expressed by *Tout* ; as,

Every thing is right. *Tout* est bien.
She complains of *every thing*. Elle se plaint de *tout*.

EXERCISE.

Every thing is for the best. You complain of every thing. I am
 mieux. se plaindre*
 prepared against every thing.
 prêt à

108. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of *some body, some one*, are expressed by *Quelqu'un*; as,

Has *any body* asked for me? *Quelqu'un* m'a-t-il demandé?

EXERCISE.

Is any body come? Have you met any body? Can any body do
 134 venu? Pouvoir 134 faire
 what I do?
 84

109. *Any body, any one*, used in the sense of every body, are expressed by *Tout le monde*, or *il n'y a personne qui ne*; as,

Any body will tell you the same, i. e. *every body* will, &c.
Tout le monde vous dira la même chose;
 or, *Il n'y a personne qui ne* vous dise la même chose.

EXERCISE.

Any body (or *everybody*) may¹⁷⁸ do that. Any body will (or *there*
is nobody but will) show you the way.
 pouvoir faire 89
 montrer chemin.

110. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, or after a comparative, *any body* is expressed by *Personne*, but without *ne*, because *personne* attended by *ne*, signifies *nobody*; as,

Did ever *any body* see that! *Personne* a-t-il jamais vu cela!
He will do it better than *any body*. Il le fera mieux que *personne*.

* See reflective verb, page 100.

EXERCISE.

Did ever any body do such a thing! Yes; and you can do it as
 136 jamais 134 38 (kk) 54 43
 well as any body.
 48

111. *Any thing*, in the sense of something, is *Quelque chose*; as,

Has *any thing* happened? Est-il arrivé *quelque chose*?

EXERCISE.

(Is there) any thing in the bottle? Have you heard any thing?
 246 bouteille? apprendre
 (Is there) any thing new to-day?
 246 (cc) nouveau

112. *Any thing*, used in the sense of every thing, is expressed by *Tout*;

Do *any thing* you please. Faites *tout* ce qu'il vous plaira.

EXERCISE.

He is fit for any thing (or *every thing*.) I will do any thing to
 propre 200 faire 170
 serve him. I prefer this to any thing.
 servir préférer 89

113. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, *any thing* is expressed by *rien*, but without *ne*; for *rien* attended by *ne*, expresses *nothing*; as,

Is there *any thing* finer! Y a-t-il *rien* de plus beau!

EXERCISE.

(Is there) any thing finer⁴¹ than civility! I doubt that you will
 246 (cc) beau civilité? douter que
 make¹⁴⁵ any thing good (of it.)
 faire (cc) bon en⁵⁴.

114. *Whoever, whosoever* joined to a substantive, or relating to a substantive before mentioned, is expressed by *Quelque, Quelsque, m. Quelleque, Quellesque, f.* with the verb in the subjunctive; and if the nominative is a noun, it is placed after the verb; as,

Whoever that man is, I shall have him punished.

Quelque soit cet homme, je le ferai punir.

EXERCISE.

Whoever that man be, he is acting wrong; or that man is acting
 (bb) , agir¹⁵⁵ mal; 155
 wrong, *whoever* he be. *Whoever* those children be, they are ill¹⁸³
 , (bb) , — mal se
 behaved.
 comporter¹²⁵

115. *Whoever, whosoever, whomsoever*, meaning any person soever, is expressed by *Qui que ce soit*, with a relative pronoun after it, and the verb in the subjunctive; as,

Whoever has done it, he shall repent of it ; i. e. *whoever that person be* ;

Qui que ce soit qu'il l'ait fait, il s'en repentira.

Whomsoever you meet, do not stop ; i. e. *whosoever that person be* ;

Qui que ce soit que vous rencontriez, ne vous arrêtez pas.

EXERCISE.

Whoever speaks to you, you ought to answer civilly. Whomso-

(o) 54, devoir 172 répondre civilement.

ever you apply to, they⁹⁰ will tell you the same thing.

s'adresser 203, N. B. dire même chose.

116. *Whoever, whomsoever*, meaning every body, is *Touts ceux* ;

He stops *whomsoever* he meets. Il arrête *touts ceux* qu'il rencontre.

N. B. In proverbial sentences, *whoever* is *Quiconque* ; as,

Whoever is rich is every thing. *Quiconque* est riche est tout.

EXERCISE.

Whoever (or *every body who*) is found out at night is stopped.

92 trouver dehors la nuit 92 arrêter*

Bring with you *whomsoever* (or *every person*) you meet¹⁴².

Amener

rencontrerez.

117. *Whatever, whatsoever*, with a substantive, requires a distinction.

If the substantive to which *whatever, whatsoever* is joined, is the nominative of a verb, it is expressed by *Quelque, quelques*, m. *quelque, quellesque*, f. with the verb in the subjunctive, and if the nominative is a noun, it is placed after the verb ; as,

Whatever his reasons are, they will not be heard.

Quellesque soient ses raisons, elles ne seront pas écoutées.

If the substantive to which *whatever, whatsoever* is joined, is the object of a verb, *whatever, whatsoever* is expressed by *Quelque*, sing. *quelques*, plur. for both genders, with *que* after the substantive, and the verb in the subjunctive ; as,

Whatever reasons he gives, he will not be excused.

Quelques raisons qu'il donne, il ne sera pas excusé.

EXERCISE.

Whatever this work be, it is too dear. Whatever his terms be,

(bb) ouvrage, 62 trop

conditions,

I shall agree to them. Do not trust to their promises, *whatever*

accepter — 54 — se fier à

promesse,

they be. *Whatever* business you have, you should not neglect your

62

affaire

176

négliger

friends. *Whatever* terms they propose, I shall agree to

conditions

proposer,

accepter—

them.

54

* Turn : one stops *whomsoever* one finds out at night.

† See imperative of a reflective verb, page 100.

118. *Whatever, whatsoever*, implying whatever a thing may be, is expressed by *quoi que ce soit*, with a relative pronoun after it, and the verb in the subjunctive ; as.

Whatever happens let me know it ; i. e. *whatever the thing be &c.*
Quoi que ce soit qui arrive, faites-le-moi savoir.

EXERCISE.

Whatever I do, I am always scolded. *Whatever* he undertakes,
 faire, gronder. entreprendre,
 he never succeeds.
 190 réussir.

119. *Whatever, whatsoever*, implying any thing, or every thing, is expressed by *Tout ce qui*, nomin. *tout ce que*, object. as,

Whatever is right, is not always approved ; i. e. *every thing* that &c.
Tout ce qui est bien n'est pas toujours approuvé.
 Do *whatever* you will ; i. e. *any thing*, or *every thing* you will.
 Faites *tout ce que* vous voudrez.

EXERCISE.

Take *whatever* you think proper. He grants her *whatever*
 Prendre croirez à propos. accorder (i) 63
 she desires. He approves of *whatever* she does.
 désirer. approuver 201 faire.

120. *Other* is *Autre*, substantive and adjective, of both genders ; as,

Give me an *other* pen. Donnez-moi une *autre* plume.
Others think differently. *D'autres* pensent différemment.*

EXERCISE.

I see another man coming¹⁵³. I have found another flower.
 voir qui vient. N.B. trouver fleur.
 (Here is²⁴⁷) another. (There are) a great many others.
 En⁷⁰ voici En⁷⁰ 247 — beaucoup d'

121. *Each other, one another* ;

	masc.	SING.	fem.		masc.	PLURAL.	fem.	
	P'Un	P'Autre,	P'Une	P'Autre,	les Uns	les Autres,	les Unes	les Autres ;
of, from	One	another ;			les Uns	des Autres,	les Unes	des Autres ;
to, at,	One	another ;			les Uns	aux Autres,	les Unes	aux Autres ;
	P'Un	à P'Autre,	P'Une	à P'Autre,				

agreeably to gender and number ; but observe that the preposition which comes before *one another* in english, must be placed between the two words *l'un, l'autre* in french ; as,

They can not live *without* one another ; i. e. the one *without* the other.

Ils ne sauraient vivre l'un sans l'autre, m. l'une sans l'autre, f.

* In proverbial sentences, *others* after *of, to* is generally rendered by *autrui* ; as,
 Do not do *to others* what you would not like to be done to.
 Ne faites pas à *autrui* ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit.

EXERCISE.

Fire and water destroy each other. These women hate one
 Feu eau se détruire (bb) se hair
 another. See those two women; they are jealous of each other; yet
 ; jaloux29(g)
 they can not do280 without one another. These people have fallen
 se passer de (bb) gens 238 tombé158
 upon one another.

122. Both;

masc.	SING.	fem.	masc.	PLUR.	fem.	
PUn	et	PAutre,	PUne	et	PAutre,	Touts deux, Toutes deux ;
of, from Both ;						} Speaking of two indi- vidual ob- jects only ; as,
de PUn et de PAutre, de PUne et de PAutre, de Touts deux, de Toutes deux ;						
to, at Both ;						
à PUn et à PAutre. à PUne et à PAutre, à Touts deux à Toutes deux ;						

Your sisters are both right.

Vos sœurs ont raison l'une et l'autre, or ont toutes deux raison.

Both ; les Uns et les Autres, les Unes et les Autres ;	} Speaking of a greater number of individuals, but considered as two parties ; as,
of, from Both ; des Uns et des Autres, des Unes et des Autres ;	
to, at Both ; aux Uns et aux Autres, aux Unes et aux Autres ;	

The French and the Dutch are united, let us beat both.

Les Français et les Hollandais sont unis, battons les uns et les autres.

EXERCISE.

Your brothers are241 both very well. I saw them both last night.
 se porter voir 235
 You know my sisters; they will both be here to-night. In speaking
 ; être 235 En parler
 of a greater number of individuals. The Russians and the Prussians
 41 individu, Russe Prussien
 have declared war against us; but we will beat both. Both will
 déclarer guerre — 55; battre
 have reason to repent (of it.)
 lieu de se repentir en59.

123. Either;

masc.	SING.	fem.	masc.	PLURAL.	fem.
PUn	ou	PAutre,	PUne	ou	PAutre,
les Uns ou les Autres, les Unes ou les Autres ;					
of, from Either ; [tres ;					
de PUn ou de PAutre, de PUne ou de PAutre, des Uns ou des Autres, des Unes ou des Au- [tres ;					
to, at Either ;					
à PUn ou à PAutre, à PUne ou à PAutre, aux Uns ou aux Autres, aux Unes ou aux Au-					

Either of them will come.

L'un ou l'autre viendra, m. l'une ou l'autre viendra, f.

You may use either of them.

Vous pouvez vous servir de l'un ou de l'autre, m. de l'une ou de l'autre, f.

EXERCISE.

Either of these men will do it. You may178 speak to either.
 (bb) faire 54 pouvoir parler
 Take either of these flowers. You may178 have either of them.
 Prendre — (bb) fleur. pouvoir (kk) — —

124. *Neither not either ;*

masc. SING. fem.

masc. PLURAL. fem.

Ni l'Un ni l'Autre, Ni l'Une ni l'Autre ; Ni les Uns ni les Autres, [ni les Autres,
 of, from Neither ; Ni des Unes
 Ni de l'Un ni de l'Autre, Ni de l'Une ni de l'Autre ; Ni des Uns ni des Autres, [ni des Autres,
 to, at Neither ; Ni aux Unes
 Ni à l'Un ni à l'Autre, Ni à l'Une ni à l'Autre ; Ni aux Uns ni aux Autres, [ni aux Autres.

These words require *ne* before the verb which attends them ;
 as,

I care for *neither* of them.

Je ne me soucie ni de l'un ni de l'autre, m. ni de l'une ni de l'autre, f.

N. B. When these words are the nominative of a verb, they are generally placed after the verb, and *ils* or *elles* is added to the verb ; as,

Neither of them will come.

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendra ; or *ils* ne viendront ni l'un ni l'autre, m.
 Ni l'une ni l'autre ne viendra ; or *elles* ne viendront ni l'une ni l'autre, f

EXERCISE.

Neither of them will study. Neither of these men can do it. I will

— — 173 étudier.

(bb)

faire 54 173

not trust either of them.†

se fier à

—

*Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing rules.**

Do you know any of the ladies we have just passed ? No ? I

— connaître

† (s)

venir

de passer ?

;

know none (of them.) I have not seen any (of them) before.

en 54

en 55

206 N.B.

I should like to get acquainted with some of them. I know the two

169 faire connaissance

58†

last 29. Which of the two is the handsomest ? They are both very
 dernier. 80† belle 44† † très

handsome, and they have each a handsome fortune. You may 178

29

†

beau

bien.

pouvoir

get acquainted with either of them, or with both, if you like. They
 (kk) — — , , vouloir. †

come here every summer. Every body is fond of them. Every one

ici

été.

— aimer † 54

† When *on* comes after the conjunctions *et*, *si*, *ou*, or any word ending in *ou* or *on*, or between *que* and a verb beginning with *con* or *com*, the letter *L'* is generally placed before *on*, to soften the sound of these words which otherwise would be disagreeable ; so we say ; C'est un pays où l'on vit à bon marché ; it is a country where people live cheap ; On apprend plus facilement les choses que l'on comprend, que celles que l'on ne comprend pas ; people learn more easily the things which they understand, than those which they do not understand : où on vit, &c. *qu'on* comprend, &c. would be harsh to the ear. But if these words were followed by *le*, *la*, *les*, *L'* must not be added to *on*, as it would then cause the same discordance which it is intended to remove ; so we say ; Si on le savait, not, Si l'on le savait ; if people knew it. On estimerait davantage la science, si on la connaissait, not, si l'on la connaissait ; people would esteem learning more, if they were acquainted with it.

* See note * p. 162. † See note † p. 239.

† Mind the *gender* of the noun which this pronoun represents.

† We have no other word to express the words *be fond of*, in French, but the verb *Aimer*, to like.

Who knows them is fond of their company. They are very fond of
 each other. They are always with one another. Are they married?
 No, neither of them is married, but I think they are both promised.
 I would give any thing I possess to be acquainted with them. You
 may speak to either of them. Bring here every one of your books.
 Let every one of you shew me his exercise. Every one of you
 will be punished. Can I do any thing for you? Yes, you can.
 You can help me as well as any body. Nobody is more capable
 than you. I should like to buy something, but every thing is so
 dear now, that one can not get any thing. I should like to
 have some of these flowers. Which do you think are the finest?
 Some say that these are the finest; some give the preference to
 those. These men relate both the same story, but neither of them
 believes that it is true. I do not believe either of them. They are
 both wrong, whoever they be. Whosoever asks for me, tell him
 that I am not at home. Whatever he writes, let me know it.
 Whatever is right, is not always approved. Whatever good is said of
 us, we are not told any thing new. Whatever your rank and riches
 may be, or whatever rank and riches you have, do not be proud, if
 you will not (be disliked) by every body. No one ought to be a judge
 in his own cause. People often flatter themselves more than they should.
 Every one complains of his memory, but no one complains of his
 understanding. There would not be (so much) disorder seen in the
 world, if youth had a good impression given it at first, and if care
 was taken to form the mind of children as it ought to be. I have
 just been told that Mr. A. is dead. Indeed? Yes, they are so,
 En vérité?

* Turn this sentence thus: One would not see so much disorder in the world, if one gave at first a good impression to youth, and if one took care to form the mind of children as one should.

He was invited to supper yesterday at Mrs. B.'s. They waited¹³⁷
 140 inviter 169 souper hier 208 Madame attendre
 for him a long time, but seeing that he did not come, somebody was
 201 54 — tems, voir — 138 , —
 sent¹³⁷ to look for him; he could¹³⁷ not be found any where; they
 envoyer 172 chercher 201 54 ; pouvoir * — trouver nulle part ;
 have been seeking¹⁵⁵ for him all night, and this morning he was
 — chercher 201 55 nuit, (bb) 234 —
 found drowned in a pond, not far from Mrs. B.'s house. Every body
 136 noyer 213 étang, non loin de 25
 is sorry (for it.) Is it known how this accident happened¹³⁶? No,
 fâché en 55 — savoir comment (bb) arriver²³⁸? 191,
 nobody knows. It is supposed that he (lost his way) in the dark. He
 70 — s'imaginer s'égarer¹³⁷ 213 obscurité.
 is to be buried to-morrow. You will be expected at his funeral.
 242 enterrer demain. — attendre funérailles. (pl.)
 You will go; will you not? I will not go, unless²¹⁸ I am invited
 70 ; 252 70 , à moins que¹⁹⁵ — inviter
 (to it.) You may be sure that they will invite you.
 63 178 (kk) sûr (bb) N.B. 54.

CHAPTER VI.

VERB.

Agreement of the Verb with its Nominative.

A *verb* expressing either being or acting, necessarily implies a subject or agent, generally known in grammar by the name of *nominative*.

125. The *verb* must be of the same *number* and *person* as the agent, or nominative; this is called agreement of the verb with its *nominative*; as,

	Singular.	Plural.	
I speak.	Je parle.	Nous parlons.	we speak, &c.
Thou speakest.	Tu parles.	Vous parlez.	
He	Il } parle.	Ils } parlent.	
She	Elle } parle.	Elles } parlent.	
My brother	Mon frère } parle.	Mes frères } parlent.	
My sister	Ma sœur } parle.	Mes sœurs } parlent.	

EXERCISE.

I study; Thou studieth; He studies; My brother studies; We
 étudier ; ; ; ;
 study; You study; They study: My brothers study.
 ; ; ;

* Express *Not* by *Ne* only, before the verb, as *Nulle* which comes after, supplies the place of *Pas* or *Point*.

126. When *two* or more substantives in the singular are the *nominative* of the same *verb*, that verb must be in the *plural* number ; as,

My *sister* and *he* *speak* french. Ma sœur et lui *parlent* français.

EXERCISE.

My brother and sister study.

127. If the substantives which are the *nominative* of the verb, are of *different* persons,* the verb does not agree with either of them ; we add *nous* or *vous* to the sentence with which we make the verb agree.

We add *nous*, if there is in the sentence a substantive* of the first person ; as,

He and *I* *speak* french. Lui et moi *nous* parlons français ;
i. e. *he* and *I* *we* *speak* french.

We add *vous*, if there is in the sentence a substantive* of the second person, and none of the first ; as,

You and *they* *speak* french. Vous et eux *vous* parlez français ;
i. e. *you* and *they* *you* *speak* french.

EXERCISE.

You and I agree. My sister and I are fond of study. She and
52 être d'accord. 52 — aimer † étude.
I will learn together. We90 add *vous*, if there is in the sentence a
52 ensemble. N.B. ,
substantive of the second person, and219 there is none of the first ;
* 29 33 , 220 il n'y en ait pas 29 ;
You and your brother do not agree. You and he are continually183
— s'accorder. 52 — continuellement
quarrelling. You and your sister will learn together. You and they
se quereller155 52
are of the same opinion.

128. If the *nominative* of the verb is the *relative pronoun* *Qui*, the verb must be of the same *number* and *person* as the substantive* to which that pronoun relates ; as,

It is <i>I</i> who <i>speak</i> best.	C' est <i>moi</i> qui parle le mieux.
It is <i>thou</i> who <i>speakest</i> best.	C' est <i>toi</i> qui parles le mieux.
It is <i>he</i> who <i>speaks</i> best.	C' est <i>lui</i> qui parle le mieux.
It is <i>we</i> who <i>speak</i> best.	C' est <i>nous</i> qui parlons le mieux.
It is <i>you</i> who <i>speak</i> best.	C' est <i>vous</i> qui parlez le mieux.
It is <i>they</i> who <i>speak</i> best.	Ce sont <i>eux</i> qui parlent le mieux.

EXERCISE.

It62 is I who will say my lesson first. It62 is we who will say our
N.B. 52 dire leçon le premier. N.B.
lessons first. It62 is you who will say your lesson first. It62 is
les premiers. N.B. N.B.
they who will say their lessons first.
52

* See note * page 201.

† See note † page 246.

129. If *Qui* refers to several substantives of *different* persons,* it agrees with the *first* person in preference to the second, and with the *second* in preference to the third; as,
 It is *you* and *I* who *speak* best. *C' est vous et moi qui parlons le mieux.*
 It is *you* and *he* who *speak* best. *C' est vous et lui qui parlez le mieux.*

EXERCISE.

It62 is you and I who will begin. It62 is you and your brother
 N.B. 52 commencer. N.B.
 who will (go out) first.
 sortir les premiers.

130. The collective substantives *La plupart, infinité, nombre, quantité, troupe, multitude* followed by another substantive, require the verb of the same number as that second substantive; ex.

Most people are of that opinion.

La plupart du monde pense ainsi, or *La plupart des gens* pense ainsi.

EXERCISE.

A great number of men perished. Most of the cavalry
 périr.137 La plupart cavalerie
 deserted. A crowd of people229 came to see them.
 désertier137. foule gens venir 172

131. *Le quart, le tiers, la moitié* require the verb in the singular; as,

One *fourth* of my books are lost. *Le quart de mes livres est perdu.*

EXERCISE.

One fourth of the ships were taken or destroyed. One third of the
 Le quart navire 137 prendre détruire. Le tiers
 crews deserted. One half of men do not think, and the other half
 équipage 137 La moitié penser,
 know not192 what to think.
 ne savoir N.B. 83 172.

Placing of the Nominative with the Verb.

132. In a *declarative* sentence, i. e. when a question is not asked, the *nominative* of the verb is placed in french as in english, *before the verb*; ex.

I speak french well.

Je parle bien français.

He speaks french well.

Il parle bien français.

My brother speaks french well. *Mon frère* parle bien français.

My sister speaks french well. *Ma sœur* parle bien français. (ee)

* Seenote * page 201.

(ee) The nominative is generally placed after the verb in a declarative sentence.

1. When the verb is used as a *parenthesis*; ex.

You are wrong, said her mother to her. Vous avez tort, lui dit sa mère.

2. When the sentence begins with *tel*, or *ainsi*; as,

Such was his advice.

Tel était son avis.

Thus ended the business.

Ainsi se termina l'affaire.

EXERCISE.

I study well. He studies well. This boy studies well. You study
 étudier garçon
 well. They study well.
 (ee)

But when the sentence is *interrogative*, it is necessary to consider whether the *nominative* of the verb is a *noun* or a *pronoun*.

133. If, when you ask a *question*, the *nominative* of the verb is one of the *pronouns* *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, on, or ce*, this pronoun is placed in french, as the corresponding words are in english, *immediately after the verb*; ex.

Do I speak french well? Parle-je bien français? *
 Does he speak french well? Parle-t-il bien français?
 Does she speak french well? Parle-t-elle bien français?
 Do people speak french well? Parle-t-on bien français?

EXERCISE.

Do I study well? Does he study well? Do we study well? Do
 étudier
 you study well? Do they study?

134. If, when you ask a *question*, the *nominative* of the verb is a *noun*, that noun is placed *before the verb*, the same as in declarative sentences; but to show that a *question* is asked, one of the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun, must be placed *immediately after the verb*; as,

Does my brother speak french well? Mon frère parle-t-il bien français? (ff)
 Does my sister speak french well? Ma sœur parle-t-elle bien français?
 Do my brothers speak french well? Mes frères parlent-ils bien français?
 Do my sisters speak french well? Mes sœurs parlent-elles bien français?

3. When the *nominative* is attended by several words which can not be separated from it, or can not be placed before the verb, without suspending the sense of the sentence;

D'un côté on voyait une rivière où se formaient des îles bordées de tilleuls fleuris.
 On one side was seen a river from which sprung islands lined with lime trees in bloom.

Là coulent mille ruisseaux qui distribuent par tout une eau claire.

There a thousand rivulets run which carry every where a clear water. Fenelon.
 These sentences would not be so clear, if they were expressed thus:

D'un côté on voyait une rivière où des îles bordées de tilleuls fleuris se formaient.
 Là, mille ruisseaux, qui distribuent par tout une eau claire coulent.

4. When the verb is preceded by *que, se, or ou*; as,

The money which my father sent me. L'argent que m'envoya mon père.
 The field where the battle was fought. Le champ où se donna la bataille.

5. *Je, nous, tu, vous, il, ils, elle, elles, on, ce* are generally placed *after the verb*, when the sentence begins with one of these words, *ainsi, so, therefore; au moins, at last; en vain, in vain; à peine, hardly; peut-être, perhaps; as,*

You were hardly gone, when she came in. à peine étiez vous sorti qu'elle entra.

* Except the pronoun *Je*, when the verb to which it is joined ends with several consonants, so instead of saying; *cours-je?* do I run? *ments-je?* do I lie? *dors-je?* do I sleep? which are hard to pronounce, we say, *est-ce que je cours? est-ce que je ments?*

(ff) When an *interrogative* sentence begins with *que*, (what;) *où*, (where;) we generally place the noun after the verb, without adding a pronoun to it; as,

Où est votre frère?	Where is your brother?
Où est votre sœur?	Where is your sister?
Que fait votre frère?	What is your brother doing?
Que fait votre sœur?	What is your, &c.?

EXERCISE.

Does this boy study well? Does this girl study well? Do these
 (bb) garçon fille (bb)
 boys study well? Do these girls study well? Do any of them learn
 96 58
 french? Is not the french language very difficult? Are your
 français? 29 32 langue difficile?
 masters pleased²⁹ with you? Does your father often come to see
 content^{N.B.} 200 184 172
 you? Has your mother been here lately?
 ici depuis peu?

MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE MOOD OR MANNER.

When we declare that a thing *is*, or *is not*, or that it *is*, *was*,
will be, or *would be* in our power to have it so, this manner
 of expressing ourselves is called *indicative* or declarative.

Present Tense or Time.

J' Ai, I have, } now, to-day, this week, this month,
 Je Suis, I am, } this year, this age, in any period
 Je Parle,* I speak, or am speaking; } of time not entirely elapsed.†

135. The *present* tense in french does not differ from the
 same tense in english; it expresses the being or acting at the
 time in which we are; as,

I now have. I now am. I now speak, or am speaking.
 A présent j' ai. A présent je suis. A présent je parle.

EXERCISE.

I like study. Study is the food of the mind.
 étude aliment esprit.

PAST TENSES.

Compound of the Present.

J' Ai eu, I had, or have had, } lately, to-day, this week, &c. in any
 J' Ai été, I was, have been, } period of time, not entirely elapsed;
 } this is the nearest time to the present.
 J' Ai parlé, I spoke, did speak, have spoken.

* In order to render the elucidation of this interesting part of the language more obvious, I have laid down the two auxiliary verbs *avoir*, to Have; and *être*, to Be, which are generally found the most embarrassing, and the familiar verb *parler*, to Speak, which, may serve as a model for all the rest.

† A *period of time* is a certain *quantity* of time, the duration of which is *fixed* and *agreed* upon, and which being *elapsed*, that period ceases; such as *a Day, a Week, a Fortnight, a Month, a Year, an Age*, the four seasons of the year, *Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter*; or any other portion of time, the beginning and end of which can be ascertained.

136. If we speak of an *action* recently *past*, without mentioning the *time* in which it passed, or if we mention a *period** which is still lasting, such as, to-day, this *week*, this *month*, this *year*, &c. the *action* being past, and the period of time mentioned being still present, we make the verb partake of both the present and past tenses, by adding the *past participle* to the *present* tense of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* or *être*; ex.

NO TIME MENTIONED.

Were you ever at Paris?

turn, *Have you ever been at Paris?* Avez-vous jamais été à Paris?

No, I never *was* there;

turn, No, I *have never been* there. Non, je n'y ai jamais été.

I *have* no opportunity to go;

turn, I *have had* no opportunity &c. Je n'ai pas eu occasion d'y aller.

Did you ever see Buonaparte?

turn, *Have you ever seen B.?* *Avez-vous jamais vu Buonaparte?*

PERIOD MENTIONED, BUT NOT ELAPSED.

I *was* at your house this morning ;

turn, *I have been at your house &c.* J'ai été chez vous ce matin.

Did you find any body there? †

turn, *Have you found any body &c.* *Y avez-vous trouvé quelqu'un ?*

I *saw* your sister, and *spoke* to her;

turn, *I have seen your sister, and &c. J'ai vu votre sœur, et je lui ai par-*

Did you not see my mother ?

turn, *Have you not seen &c. ?* *N'avez-vous pas vu ma mère ?*

EXERCISE.

When did you see Mr. A.? I saw him this morning. I met him

Quand $\frac{1}{2}$

6

234

11

as he was coming to town. He told me he was going to 208 your

comme	138	155	direll	221	138	155	N.B.
-------	-----	-----	--------	-----	-----	-----	------

house. Did you not see him? No, I did not. He was at our

|| , N.E. ¶ N.B.

house, but I was not in. He only¹⁸⁴ found my sister there, and he

140 y 54 ** y 55,

would not stop. Did you hear that he was going to be married?
 complaint. " " 155 156 as married?

vouloir† rester. || 155 172 — se marier?

No, I did not: (1. e. *hear*70 it.) Who told you so? His cousin

told me so I heard that he was going abroad I shall

told me so. I heard that he was going abroad. I shall
 || 55 le59 || — 155 dans les pays étrangers

* See note† page 252.

† The french generally use the participle *été*, instead of the participle *allé*, to express that a person has gone to a place whence he is returned.

‡ Turn ; when *have* you *seen* &c.

♂ Turn ; I *have* seen him.

¶ Turn; he has been &c.

†† Turn; he *has not been willing.*

¶ See note * page 254.

** See note * page 173.

soon¹³⁴ known if it be true; for, when he called this morning, he
 bientôt 217 ; car, passer ,
 promised my sister that he would call again (as he goes back.)
 * 162 (bb) N.B. repasser — en s'en retournant.

PERFECT TENSE.

J' *Eus*, I *had*, } yesterday, last week, last month, last year, a fort-
 Je, *Fus*, I *was*, } night ago, in any period of time entirely past ;
 } *this is the remotest time from the present.*
 Je, *Parlai*, I *spoke*, *did speak* ;

137. If we speak of an action *past*, in a *period* of time which is also entirely *past* ; such as Yesterday, last week, a fortnight ago, last month, last year, any year previous to that in which we live, then both the time and action being past or accomplished, we use the *perfect* tense of the verb ; viz. *eus*, *fus*, *parlai* ; as,

I *called* at your house yesterday. Je *passai* hier chez vous.
 Did you *find* any body there ? Y *trouvâtes*-vous quelqu'un ?*
 I *saw* your sister and *spoke* to her. Je *vis* votre sœur et je lui *parlai*.
 Did you *go* to the ball with her ? Allâtes-vous au bal avec elle ?*
 No, I *did not* ; i. e. *go* there. 70 r. N.B. Non, je n'y *allai* pas. 70 r. N.B.
 Did you not *speak* to my mother ? Ne *parlâtes*-vous pas à ma mère ?
 Yes, I *did* ; i. e. *speak* to her. 70 r. N.B. Oui, je lui *parlai*. 70 r. N.B.

EXERCISE.

Where did you dine yesterday ? I dined at my mother's, and
 Où diner * 208
 supped at my sister's. Did you not go to the play ? Yes, I did 70.
 souper 208 * comédie ? , N.B.
 What play did they 90 act ? They 90 acted a new comedy. How
 82 pièce * N.B. jouer N.B. † nouvelle comédie. 185
 were you entertained ? I did not pay much attention to the play.
 * amuser 158 ? * faire N.B. pièce.
 I conversed all the while with a gentleman who sat 140 by me. Did
 parler * tems monsieur être près de 53.
 you not see me ? No ; I did 70 not. Where were you ? I was
 * 191 ; * N.B. Où 140 140
 (in the) pit. I did not stop long. I went home, where I read the
 au parlerre. rester * au logis, *
 play.
 pièce.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

J' *Avais*, I *had*, } then, at that time, when that happened, in a time
 J' *Étais*, I *was*, } *imperfect* or uncertain.
 Je *Parlais*, I *spoke*, *did speak* ;

* It is not necessary in order to use the past tenses, that every verb should be attended by an expression denoting a time past ; it is sufficient that the time be mentioned or alluded to at the beginning of the discourse, because the mind naturally goes back to the period which has either been mentioned or alluded to.

The *imperfect* is used in *three* different instances.

138. 1st. When we speak of an action that was passing, and consequently imperfect or incomplete at a time we allude to, though at the time in which we relate it, it is perfect or accomplished, we use the *imperfect* tense of the verb : viz. *avais, étais, parlais, &c.*

These instances are generally expressed in english by the *gerund* or present *participle* in *ing* added to *was* or *were* ; as,

What <i>were</i> you <i>doing</i> there ?	Que <i>faisiez</i> -vous là.
I <i>was writing</i> to a friend.	J' <i>écrivais</i> à un ami.
I <i>was getting</i> ready to go out.	Je m' <i>apprêtais</i> à sortir.
I <i>was going</i> to call upon you.	J' <i>allais</i> passer chez vous.
I <i>was talking</i> of you just now.	Je <i>parlais</i> de vous tout à l'heure.
I <i>was going out</i> , as you <i>came in</i> .	Je <i>sortais</i> , comme vous <i>entriez</i> .

EXERCISE.

What were you doing when I came in ? I was preparing myself to study a music lesson. I was going to play a tune. I was trying to tune my instrument. Stop. You were doing it (the wrong way.) You were spoiling it. They were making (a great deal) of noise at your house last night. Yes, we had some company. We were enjoying ourselves.

83	155	suis	136	entré ?	155	me	54
169	musique	25	155	172	air.	155	
168	accorder		155	54	à rebours.		
	gâter	155	62	N.B.	155	beaucoup	
208							
bruit	N.B.	235				compagnie.	
155	réjouir	nous	54				

139. 2nd. When we wish to denote that the action of which we speak was *habitual*, or has been *reiterated*, we must use the IMPERFECT.

In these instances, the English verb may be changed into the *infinitive*, with *did use*, or *used*, before it ; as,

Where <i>did</i> you <i>walk</i> in London	[Londres ?
viz. Where <i>did</i> you <i>use</i> to walk &c.	Où vous <i>promeniez</i> -vous à
I <i>generally walked</i> in the park.	[dans le parc.
or, I <i>used</i> to walk &c.	Je me <i>promenais</i> ordinairement
I <i>often met</i> Frenchmen there.	
or, I <i>used</i> to meet &c.	J'y <i>rencontrais</i> souvent des fran-
I <i>always spoke</i> French with them.	[çais.
or, I <i>used</i> to speak &c.	Je <i>parlais</i> toujours français avec
	[eux.

EXERCISE.

How did you spend your time, when you were in the country ? As soon as we were up, we walked in the garden till breakfast time ; after breakfast we (sat at our work) till (twelve o'clock), and then we studied till dinner time. How did you spend your evenings ?

185	271	le	tems,	140	à	230
140	levés,	se promener	jusqu'au	déjeuné	25 ;	
	travailler	jusqu'à	236		alors	
diné	25	185	271	les	234	

You had neither plays nor concerts to go to. Some ladies and gentlemen in our neighbourhood often called upon us, or we called upon
 224 * comédie * — où aller † times-
 sieurs voisinage 184 266 , 266
 them, and we sometimes made a little concert, or we played at
 58 , 184 faire petit , jouer à
 different games, but we generally 184 spent the evenings in reading
 29 32 jeux, ordinairement 271 234 169 lire
 or in conversing. We spent our time very agreeably. †
 169 converser. 271 le agréablement.

140. 3rd. Another very extensive use of the *imperfect* is in descriptions for whenever we describe the qualities of persons, or things, the *state, place, situation, order, disposition* in which they were in a time past, we use the *imperfect*; as,

Where <i>were</i> you yesterday ?	Où étiez-vous hier ?
I <i>was</i> in the country.	J'étais à la campagne.
I <i>was</i> 241 not well. §	Je ne me portais 241 pas bien.
I <i>had</i> a bad head-ache.	J'avais grand mal à la tête. §
<i>Was</i> the country pleasant ?	La campagne était-elle agréable ?
Yes; but it <i>was</i> 240 rather hot.	Oui; mais il faisait 240 un peu [chaud.

* Do not put any article before the noun which follows *NI*.

† See note † page 183.

‡ By using the *Perfect* instead of the *Imperfect* in these instances, the sentence would be equally grammatical, but the idea would be very different. This difference will appear obvious in the following examples composed of the same words;

Quand j'étais à Londres, j'allais à la comédie;

Quand je fus à Londres, j'allai à la comédie.

By the first of these expressions, people will understand that when I *was* in London, I *used* to go to the play; by the second they will understand that when I *arrived* at London, at a certain period either named or alluded to, I *went* to the play. Learners are very apt to confound these two tenses.

§ The greatest difficulty attending the past tenses is how to discriminate this last instance of the *imperfect* from the *perfect*, i. e. how to distinguish an *action* from a *state of being*, and indeed the distinction is sometimes so nice, that it is not surprising foreigners should err in the use of them; for example,

First instance.

Second instance.

I *was* very wet in going into the country. I *was* so wet that I could not stay.

He *was* killed in falling from his horse. He *was* dead when we found him.

He *had* his leg carried off by a cannon ball. He *had* also a wound in the breast.

Was and *had* in these various instances can not be expressed by the same tense in french.

When, in the first instance, I say; I *was* very wet in going into the country; He *was* killed in falling; He *had* his leg carried off, &c. I am relating facts, events which happened, of the end of which a perfect idea may be formed, and these must be expressed by the perfect.

But when, in the second instance, I say; I *was* so wet that I could not stay; He *was* dead when we found him; He *had* also a wound in his breast; I no longer express the facts themselves, of being wet, of being killed &c. but describe a state of being, i. e. I *was* in a wet state; He *was* in a dead state; He *was* in a wounded state, the duration of which is not limited to any time, and can not be ascertained, and these are expressed by the *imperfect*; thus,

First instance.

Second instance.

Je fus très mouillé en allant à la campagne. J'étais si mouillé que je ne pus pas rester.

Il fut tué en tombant de cheval.

Il était mort quand nous le trouvâmes.

Il eut la jambe emportée d'un coup de canon. Il avait aussi une blessure à la poitrine.

In order to elucidate this still more, and try the rules that have just been laid down, let us peruse a piece of history where the difference between a *narration* and a *description*, a *fact* and an *incident*, will appear obvious.

N. B. Observe however, that if the *duration* of the state, &c. which we wish to describe was *limited* to a *period* of which the *end* was *known*, we should not use the imperfect ; we should use either the *compound* of the *present* or the *perfect*, according

Calypso *could* not console herself for the departure of Ulysses. In her grief, she *considered* her immortality as a misfortune. Her grotto no longer *resounded* with the sweet harmony of her voice. The nymphs who *attended* her, *dared* not to speak to her. She often *walked* alone upon the flowery turf which an eternal spring *diffused* round her island ; but these charming abodes, far from assuaging her grief, *served* only to recall the sad remembrance of Ulysses, whom she *had* so many times seen by her side. Frequently she *stood* motionless on the beach of the sea, which she *watered* with her tears, and she was incessantly *turned* towards that quarter where the ship of Ulysses, plowing the waves, had disappeared from her eyes. All on a sudden, she *perceived* pieces of a ship which *had* just been wrecked ; then she *descried* two men at a distance, one of whom *was* seemingly in years ; the other, though a youth, *resembled* Ulysses. He *had* his sweet and lofty look, with his size and majestic deportment. The goddess *understood* that it *was* Telemachus the son of that hero, but she *could* not find out who that venerable man *was* by whom Telemachus *was* accompanied.

Calypso ne *pouvait* se consoler du départ d'Ulysse. Dans sa douleur, elle se *trouvait* malheureuse d'être immortelle. Sa grotte ne *resonnait* plus du doux chant de sa voix. Les nymphes qui la *servaient* n'*osaient* lui parler. Elle se *promenait* souvent seule sur les gazons fleuris dont un printemps éternel *bordait* son île ; mais ces beaux lieux, loin de modérer sa douleur ne *faisaient* que lui rappeler le triste souvenir d'Ulysse qu'*elle y avait* vu tant de fois auprès d'elle. Souvent elle *demeurait* immobile sur le rivage de la mer qu'elle *arrosait* de ses larmes, et elle *était* sans cesse tournée vers le côté où le vaisseau d'Ulysse, fendait les ondes, *avait* disparu à ses yeux. Tout à coup, elle *aperçut* les débris d'un navire qui *venait* de faire naufrage ; puis elle *découvrit* de loin deux hommes dont l'un *paraissait* âgé ; l'autre, quoique jeune, *ressemblait* à Ulysse. Il *avait* sa douceur et sa fierté, avec sa taille et sa démarche majestueuse. La déesse *comprit* que c'*était* Télémaque fils de ce héros, mais elle ne *put* découvrir qui *était* cet homme vénérable dont Télémaque *était* accompagné.

Now, if we select from the above passage the *facts* that constitute the ground of the *narration*, we shall find them to be these :

Calypso, standing on her island, *perceived* the wreck of a ship ; then she *descried* two men, the one young and the other old. She *understood* the young one to be Telemachus, but she *could* not recognise the other. And the verbs expressing these *facts* are in the *perfect*. The verbs which form only *incidents*, such as the *description* of Calypso and her island, of Telemachus and his shipwreck, and which might be left out of the *narration*, without impairing it, but not without stripping it of its beauties, are in the *imperfect*.

Let us examine another piece of the same author, in which there will be more *narration*, and less *description*, or more *facts* and fewer *incidents*.

Telemachus, relating the manner in which he escaped the danger of being taken by the Trojan fleet, says :

The affinity and the courage of the sage Mentor *charmed* me ; but I *was* still more surprised, when I *saw* with what address he *delivered* us from the Trojans. At the moment when the skies *began* to clear, and the Trojans, having a nearer view of us, would infallibly have known us ; he *observed* one of their ships that was almost similar to ours, which the storm *had* separated from the rest. Her poop *was* adorned with particular flowers. He *hastened* to put upon our poop garlands of flowers similar to theirs. He *fastened* them himself with fillets of the same colour as those of the Trojans. He *ordered* all our rowers to stoop as much as they could along their benches, that they might not be known by the enemy. In this manner we *passed* through the middle of their fleet, and whilst they *were* driven by the impet-

La douceur et le courage du sage Mentor me *charmèrent* ; mais je *fus* encore bien plus surpris, quand je *vis* avec quelle adresse il nous *délivra* des Troyens. Dans le moment où le ciel *commençait* à s'éclaircir et que les Troyens, nous voyant de plus près, n'auraient pas manqué de nous reconnaître ; il *remarqua* un de leurs vaisseaux qui *était* presque semblable au nôtre, et que la tempête *avait* écarté. La poupe *était* couronnée de certaines fleurs. Il se *hâta* de mettre sur notre poupe des couronnes de fleurs semblables. Il les *attacha* lui même avec des bandelettes de la même couleur que celles des Troyens. Il *ordonna* à tous nos rameurs de se baisser le plus qu'ils pourraient le long de leurs bancs, pour n'être point reconnus des ennemis.

to the period mentioned, or alluded to ; for though I should say,

J'étais malade ce matin.

I was ill this morning.

J'avais hier grand mal à la tête. *I had a bad head-ache yesterday.*

I would not say,

J'étais malade, but *j'ai été malade toute la matinée ;*

J'avais mal à la tête, but *j'eus mal à la tête toute la journée ;*

Because the state which I describe is known to have ended with the period mentioned, viz. *la matinée, la journée.*

EXERCISE.

Where were you yesterday? I called¹³⁷ at²⁰⁸ your house, but
 Où hier? 266 N.B.,
 you were not in. I was not well. I had a head-ache; and as I
 y⁵⁴ 241 24 mal à la tête; comme
 could not study, I went¹³⁷ to walk in the fields. There had been a
 , aller 172 263 213 Il 240 un
 little rain. The plants were so fresh, the trees were so green, and
 peu pluie. si fraîche²⁹, vert²⁹,
 formed such an agreeable shade, and the flowers spread so sweet³² a
 former si * 32 ombrage, repandre douce 38
 smell, that I could not be tired with admiring the beautiful landscape
 odeur, — se lasser 168 admirer 154 beau³³ paysage
 which surrounded me. I wished to stay longer⁴¹; but it was late, I
 entourer 172 rester long-tems; tard,
 was tired, and I had a long way to go.
 lasser, chemin à faire.

Future Positive.

J'Aurai, I shall, will have, } soon, by and by, to-morrow, next
Je Serai, I shall, will be, } week, next month, next year,
Je Parlerai, I shall, will speak; } &c. in any time to come.

141. The *future tense* is used in french as in english, to express what is to happen in a *time to come*; as,

I will call upon you by and by. Je passerai tantôt chez vous.

osity of the winds towards Africa, we made all our endeavours to reach the neighbouring coast of Sicily. There indeed we arrived; but, &c.

En cet état nous passâmes¹³⁷ au milieu de leur flotte, et pendant que les vents impétueux les poussaient¹³⁸ vers l'Afrique, nous fîmes¹³⁷ les derniers efforts pour arriver sur la côte voisine de Sicile. Nous y arrivâmes¹³⁷ en effet; mais, &c.

FENELON.

The narrative part of this history is; the affability, &c. of the sage Mentor charmed me, but I was still more surprised when I saw with what address he delivered us from the Trojans. He observed one of their ships with flowers on her poop. He hastened to put similar flowers upon ours. He fastened them himself with fillets of the same colour as those of the Trojans. He ordered all our rowers to stoop along their benches, that we might not be known by the enemy. In this manner we passed through the middle of their fleet, and made all our efforts to reach the coast of Sicily, where we arrived, &c. by which you see that all the verbs which are necessary to the train of the narration, because they declare facts, are in the *perfect tense*, those which denote only incidents, are in the *imperfect*.

* Turn; a shade so agreeable.

EXERCISE.

When will you call upon me ? I will call to-night. I shall not be
 Quand 266 58 235
 in. I shall be in the country. I will (set out) after dinner.
 y 54 230 partir diné.

142. The *present tense* is sometimes used in both languages, instead of the *future* ; so we say,

Où allez-vous ce soir ? Where do you go this evening ?
 for, Où irez-vous ce soir ? Where shall you go this evening ?

N. B. But if *two* verbs denoting *futurity* come in the same sentence, the *second* verb can *not* be put in the *present* tense in french, as it is sometimes in english, it must be put in the *future* ; as,

Call upon me, when you are ready ;
 the time for calling and for being ready, having yet to come,
 I would not say in french,

Passez chez moi, quand vous êtes prêt,
 which would denote that the person *is* ready at the time I am speaking ; I must say,

Passez chez moi, quand vous serez prêt, i. e. when you *will be*
 I will call as soon as I have dined. [ready.]

Je passerai aussi tôt que j'aurai diné ; not, aussi tôt que j'ai diné,
 which would denote that the person *had dined* at the time he is speaking.

This generally happens after the words *when, as soon as, as long, as after.*

EXERCISE.

Where do you dine to-day ? Do you go to the play to-night ?
 Où dîner comédie 235
 No, we go to a ball. Call upon me as soon as you can. We shall
 191, bal. 266 43 tôt 43 pouvoir.
 begin as43 soon as you are come. When you are ready, we will
 commencer 43 arrivé. prêt,
 go and take a walk.263 You shall not (go out) till after we have
 — (nn) N.B. ne sortir que après que
 done. We will go as soon as you will. I hope we shall see you
 finir. partir 43 tôt 43 221
 oftener,41 when we are in the country. Come as often as you can.
 souvent à 230 43 43
 I will call upon you every time that I go (that way).
 266 104 fois 74 par là.

Future Conditional.

J'Aurais, I should, would have, } if I could, if I would, if I
 Serais, I should, would be, } had time, if such a
 Parlerais, I should, would speak ; } thing happened.

143. The *conditional* has also the same properties in french

learn it. I would teach you french, if you would learn it. How
 apprendre * , *
 long do you think that I should be in learning it, if I should begin
 186 penser à apprendre , 144N.B. commencer
 now ? You may learn it in six months, if you will take pains. You
 178 215 , * prendre de la peine.
 might learn it in six months, if you would take pains. I will be obliged
 178 215 * obligé
 to you, if you will call upon me to-morrow. 183 I would be (very
 (o) 54 , * 266 demain. N.B. très
 much) obliged to you, if you would call upon me.
 — (o) , * 265

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

It has been said, (p. 252,) that when we *declare* that a thing *is* or *is not*, or that it *is in our power* to have it so, that mode of expression is called *indicative*, or *declarative* ; but if the thing spoken of *is not* asserted to be or not to be ; if it is mentioned only as a thing which *may* or *may not be*, and is not to be depended upon, this mode of expression is called *potential*, *conjunctive*, or *subjunctive*.†

* See note † page 260.

† A few examples will make the difference between the *indicative* and *subjunctive* moods more obvious :

They say that peace *is* made.

I believe that peace *is* made.

By these expressions I declare, in a *positive manner*, that, in the opinion of some person, the thing of which I am speaking (peace) *does* or *does not exist*, and this positive assertion must be made with the *indicative* ; thus,

On dit que la paix *est* faite.

Je crois que la paix *est* faite.

But by these expressions,

Do they say that peace *is* made ?

I do not believe that peace *is* made ;

I do not assert that peace *does* or *does not exist* ; I either declare that I am *ignorant* of it, or that I *doubt* its existence ; but a thing may exist, though I am ignorant of it ; it may exist, though I am not convinced of its existence, and this *uncertainty*, whether the thing is or is not, is imparted to the hearer by means of the *subjunctive* mood :

Dit-on que la paix *soit* faite ?

Je ne crois pas que la paix *soit* faite.

Again,

I know somebody who *will lend* me money. He promised that he *would lend* me some.

These are *positive* assertions, and they must be made with the *indicative* ;

Je connais quelqu'un qui me *prêtera* de l'argent.

Il a promis qu'il m'en *prêterait*.

But in these other instances ;

I seek for somebody who *will lend* me money ;

Do you know any body who *would lend* me money ?

it is not asserted whether the thing I am speaking of, *will*, or *will not be*, i. e. whether the money *will be lent* or *not* ; the event remains uncertain, and this uncertainty must be expressed by the *subjunctive* ;

Je cherche quelqu'un qui me *prête*, or qui *veuille* me prêter de l'argent.

Connaissez-vous quelqu'un qui *voulût* me prêter de l'argent ?

The *indicative* mood (says Harris) which, in all grammars, is the first in order, is also the first, both in dignity and use ; it is this which publishes our sublimest perceptions, which exhibits the soul in her purest energies, superior to the imperfections of desires and wants, which includes the whole of time and its minutest distinctions.

As to the potential (*subjunctive*) mood, it is only of a subordinate nature, and it implies but a *dubious* and *conjunctural* assertion ; whereas that of the *indicative* is *absolute*, and without reserve. (HERMES, page 153, 159.)

145. If we speak of an action the event of which is uncertain, which is generally the case when, in a sentence of *two parts* connected by the conjunction *que*, the first part is either *interrogative* or *negative*, or is attended by some expression denoting *doubt*; as for example when I say;

Do you think your sister will come?

I do not think she will come to-day.

If I hear that she comes, I will let you know;

I which instances it remains uncertain whether the person will come or not; this uncertainty is imparted in french, by putting the verb in the second part of the sentence in the *subjunctive*; thus,

Pensez-vous que votre sœur vienne? not, *viendra.*

Je ne pense pas qu'elle vienne aujourd'hui; not, *viendra.*

Si j'apprends qu'elle vienne, je vous le ferai savoir.

Viendra and *vient* would assert as a fact, what the first part of the sentence shows to be doubtful.

N. B. With respect to *interrogative* sentences, it must be observed, that it is only when we wish to impart ignorance or doubt of the thing inquired after, that the subjunctive is required after them; for if we knew that a thing is or will be, and only enquired whether the person to whom we speak knows it likewise, we should use the *indicative*; as,

Do you not believe that she will come?

Ne croyez-vous pas qu'elle viendra?

Do not you know that she is married?

Ne savez-vous pas qu'elle est mariée?

which sentences express the same idea as these;

She will come, do you not believe it?

She is married, do not you know it?

EXERCISE.

I think it will rain soon? Do not you think it will? It will

221 pleuvoir bientôt.

221 N.B.

perhaps rain a little, but I do not think that it will rain much. If

183 un peu,

(bb) N.B.

I thought that it would not rain, I would stop, but there is no appear-

140 — 140,

rester, 246 190

ance that it will be fine to-day. I will (come again), if I find that it

240

revenir,

trouver

does not rain. Do you not think that I did well to go before the

(bb) N.B. 136 de s'en aller 218

rain came? Do not you think that I should have been wet, if

pluie venir?

(bb) N.B.

mouillé,

I had stayed longer?

140 rester 41

146. The *subjunctive* mood is required after all verbs and adjectives, denoting *will*, *wish*, *desire*, *command*, *fear*, *wonder*, *surprise*, *astonishment*, *joy*, *gladness*, *grief*, *sorrow*, in short, after all expressions which denote any passion or emotion of the mind; * as,

* The ingenious Mr. Harris, (*Hermes*, pages 15, 16,) gives the following defini-

I <i>will</i> have you do that.	Je <i>veux</i> que vous <i>fassiez</i> cela.
I <i>wish</i> you <i>may</i> succeed.	Je <i>souhaite</i> que vous <i>réussissiez</i> .
I <i>desired</i> it to be got ready.	J'ai <i>ordonné</i> qu'on le <i>prépare</i> .
I am <i>afraid</i> he <i>will</i> spoil it.	Je <i>crains</i> qu'il ne le <i>gâte</i> .
I am <i>surprised</i> he is not here.	Je suis <i>surpris</i> qu'il ne <i>soit</i> pas ici.
I am <i>glad</i> you <i>are</i> come.	Je suis <i>bien aise</i> que vous <i>soyez</i> venu.
I am <i>sorry</i> he <i>has</i> not seen it.	Je suis <i>fâché</i> qu'il ne l' <i>ait</i> pas vu.

EXERCISE.

I am glad ²²¹ you are here.	I wish ²²¹ my brother would come.	I
bien aise	ici.	180
wonder that he is not yet arrived.	I am afraid ²²¹ some misfor-	
s'étonner (bb) N.B.	encore	— craindre quelque
tune has ¹⁹⁵ befallen him.	It ⁶² is a pity	that somebody did ¹³⁶
238 arrivé lui ⁵⁵ N.B.	24 dommage (bb) N.B.	95 238
not go with him.	I am surprised that he has not written to me.	I am
allé 58	surpris	(o) 55
sorry that he went ¹³⁶ there without my knowing it.	I would have	
fâché 238 y 55 218	je susse ¹⁵⁶ 54	
taken care that he should be treated as	he deserves.	
soin	— 92 traiter ¹⁴⁹ comme mériter.	

147. The *subjunctive* mood is also required in french after the following verbs and adjectives, though they neither denote doubt nor passion ;

Il <i>faut</i> que je le <i>voie</i> .	I <i>must</i> see him.
Il est <i>tems</i> que je le <i>voie</i> .	It is <i>time</i> that I <i>should</i> see him.
C'est le <i>seul</i> ami que j' <i>aie</i> .	He is the <i>only</i> friend I <i>have</i> .
Il <i>convient</i>	It is <i>becoming</i>
Il <i>importe</i>	It is <i>material</i>
Il <i>vaut</i> mieux	It is <i>better</i>
Il <i>suffit</i>	It is <i>sufficient</i>
Il est <i>à propos</i>	It is <i>fit</i>
Il est <i>nécessaire</i>	It is <i>necessary</i>
Il est <i>indifférent</i>	It is <i>indifferent</i>
Il est <i>cruel</i>	It is <i>cruel</i>
Il est <i>honteux</i>	It is <i>shameful</i>

tion of the powers of the soul, which may throw some light upon this intricate subject.

The powers of the soul may be included in those of *perception*, and those of *volition*. By the powers of perception, I mean the *sense* and the *intellect*. By the powers of volition, I mean not only the *will*, but the several *passions* and *appetites* ; in short, *all that moves to action*, whether *rational* or *irrational*.

If the leading powers of the soul be these two, it is plain that every speech or sentence, as far as it exhibits the soul, must of course respect one or other of these.

If we *assert*, then it is a sentence which respects the powers of *perception* ; for what, indeed, is it to assert, but to publish some *perception*, either of the senses, or of the intellect ?

If we *interrogate*, if we *command*, if we *pray*, if we *wish*, what do we but publish so many different *volitions* ? for, Who is it that *questions* ? He who has a *desire* to be informed. Who is it that *commands* ? He who has a *will*, which he would have obeyed. What are those beings who either *wish* or *pray* ? Those who feel certain *wants*, either for themselves or for others.

If then the *soul's* leading powers be the two above mentioned, and if it be true that *all speech is a publication of these powers*, it will follow, that every sentence will be either a sentence of *assertion*, or a sentence of *volition*.

To this may be added that sentences of *assertion* require the *indicative*, and sentences of *volition* require the *subjunctive* mood after them.

Il est <i>juste</i>	} qu'il le fasse.	It is <i>just</i>	} that he should
Il est <i>injuste</i>		It is <i>unjust</i>	
Il est <i>possible</i>		It is <i>possible</i>	
Il est <i>impossible</i>		It is <i>impossible</i>	

After an *adjective* in the superlative degree, (see 50 rule.)

After *rien, aucun, pas un, personne*, (note *dd*, p. 239.)

After *quelque, qui que ce soit, quoi que ce soit*, (114, 115, 117, 118 rules.)

After the conjunctions *afinque, quoique, &c.* (see 218 rule.)

EXERCISE.

It is time that we should go. 148 I must be ready to-night. I must
 s'en aller.* 181 prêt 235
 (set out) to-morrow. It62 is fit that I should see in what state
 partir N.B. à propos 148 82 état
 my affairs are. It62 is impossible that they should be so bad as I am
 affaires N.B. 62 148 mal que 92
 told. It62 is shameful that my partner does not write to me. Is it62
 dire. N.B. honteux associé (o) N.B.
 necessary that you should go yourself? Is it62 not enough that you
 148 (m) N.B. — N.B. suffire
 write to him? I think it would be better that you should send 149
 (o) 221 valoir mieux y 70 envoyer
 somebody. I do not know any body whom I can send. I must either
 95 97 145 y 70 181 ou
 go myself, or I must send my brother. He is the only man whom I
 y 70 (m) N.B., f y 70 65 seul
 can trust. 202 It62 is indifferent whether I go or not.
 me fier à 203 N.B. que y 70 non.

Tenses of the Subjunctive.

The *subjunctive* mood being always subordinate to a verb that precedes it,† its tenses are regulated by this foregoing verb.

Present Tense.

J' Aie,	I have, may have,	} used after the present and future of the indicative.
Je Sois,	I be, may be,	
Je Parle,	I speak, may speak;	

148. The *present* of the *subjunctive* is used, when the verb which requires the *subjunctive* after it, is in the present or future of the *indicative*; as.

Pres't.	Do you think	{ I shall have time ? I shall be ready ? I shall speak to her ?	Pensez-vous	{ que j'aie le tems ? que je sois prêt ? que je lui parle ?
---------	--------------	---	-------------	---

* See the reflexive verb *s'en Aller*, page 103.

† Except in some sentences of *wish*, where the verb *wish* is understood; as,

God be blessed !

Dieu soit béni !

May you be happy !

Puissiez-vous être heureux !

Would to God I had never seen him ! Plût à dieu que je ne l'eusse jamais vu !

Futur.	He will wait.	{	till I <i>have</i> time ;	Il attendra	{	que j' <i>aie</i> le tems ;
			till I <i>am</i> ready ;			que je <i>sois</i> prêt ;
			till I <i>speak</i> to her.			que je lui <i>parle</i> .

EXERCISE.

Do you think your sister will come ? I (am afraid) she will not be here to-day. Somebody must go and fetch her. He will be back before we begin. It is fit that somebody should go for her before it is too late.

221 145 craindre 221 146
 ici 95 181 (nn) chercher de retour
 218 N.B. à propos 95 147 * 54 218
 trop

Perfect Tense.

J' Eusse, I had, *might* have, { used after the *perfect*,
 Je Fusses, I were, *might* be, { *imperfect*, and *condi-*
 Je Parlasse, I spoke, *might* speak ; { *tional* tenses.

149. The *perfect* of the *subjunctive* is used, when the verb which requires the *subjunctive* after it, is in the *perfect*, *imperfect*, or *conditional* ; as,

Perf. Imper. Condi.	He waited.	{	till I <i>had</i> time ;	Il attendit	{	que j' <i>eusse</i> le tems ;
			till I <i>was</i> ready ;			que je <i>fusse</i> prêt ;
			till I <i>spoke</i> to her.			que je lui <i>parlasse</i> .
	He was waiting.	{	till I <i>had</i> time ;	Il attendait	{	que j' <i>eusse</i> le tems ;
			till I <i>should</i> be ready ;			que je <i>fusse</i> prêt ;
			till I <i>sh'd sp'k</i> to her.			que je lui <i>parlasse</i> .
	Would he wait	{	till I <i>had</i> time ?	Attendrait il	{	que j' <i>eusse</i> le tems ?
			till I <i>sh'd</i> be ready ?			que je <i>fusse</i> prêt ?
			till I <i>sh'd sp'k</i> to her ?			que je lui <i>parlasse</i> ?

EXERCISE.

I did not think my sister would come. I (was afraid) she would not be here in time. It was that which made me wish that somebody would go for her. He might have returned before the play began. It would be a pity she should not see it after waiting so long.

140 238 156 craindre 221
 146 à tems. N.B. 140 89 74 faisait
 (bb) N.B. 95 146 * 54 179 265 218
 N.B. — dommage 146
 avoir attendu

150. N.B. The *perfect* of the *subjunctive* is also used, though the foregoing verb is in the present of the indicative, if after the *subjunctive* there is another verb in the *imperfect*, or some conditional expression ; as,

Do you think I *might speak* to her, if I *went* now ?
 Pensez-vous que je *pusse* lui parler, si j'y *allais* à présent ?

* Go for is expressed by *Aller chercher*, not *Aller pour*.

I do not think I *should have* succeeded *without* your assistance.

Je ne pense pas que j'*eusse* réussi *sans* votre secours ;

i. e. if you *had not* assisted me.

And also when the action expressed by the verb is past ; as,

It is no wonder that he *was* wicked.

Il n'est pas étonnant qu'il *fût* méchant.

EXERCISE.

Do you think your sister would come, if I went for her now ? It62

221 145 aller * † 54 N.B.

is not probable that she would have145 gone there, if she had not been

288 158 y 55, * 92

invited.159 I do not think we should have seen her, if it had not
inviter. 221 145 159 55, ce *

been for you. I do not think we should.

à cause de 58 †

151. If, after a verb in the *subjunctive*, there is another verb, preceded by the conjunction *que*, that verb must also be in the *subjunctive* ; as,

Dou you think she *expects* that I *shall come* ?

Pensez-vous qu'elle *s'attende* que je *vienn*e ?

EXERCISE.

Do you think she expects145 that I shall see her again ? I wonder

221 s'attendre revoir † s'étonner221

she could179 have thought that I was capable (of it.)

ait 146 pu penser en 54

GERUND OR PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Ayant, *having*, } N. B. *Ayant*, *étant*, never change their
Etant, *being*, } termination.

Parlant, *speaking* ;

152. The *gerund* or *present participle*, joined to a noun, generally denotes quality, and, like an adjective, agrees with it in gender and number ;

She is a *charming* woman.

C'est une femme *charmante*.

She has *engaging* manners.

Elle a des manières *engageantes*.

EXERCISE.

A charming girl, with a moving voice, singing her growing
charmant 32 , de touchant 32 , 153 naissant 32

love, in seeking153 her wandering sheep, heard some threatening
amours, f. en chercher errant 32 brébis entendre menaçant 32

words followed by piercing cries. I heard her trembling steps.

parole suivi 157 200 perçant 32 cri. tremblant 32 pas.

153. But the *gerund* expressing the action, and not the

* Was, Were, Had, Did, or any other *past tense* that comes after *if*, *si*, must be in the *imperfect*.

† Go for is expressed by *Aller chercher*, not *Aller pour*.

‡ Instead of repeating the verb, the french would say ; *Je ne le pense pas non plus*.

§ Again is expressed by *re* before *voir*.

quality of the substantive to which it refers, does not require any agreement with it; as,

I saw her *in coming* home. Je la vis *en venant* au logis. (hh)
I found them *in walking* here. Je les trouvai *en me promenant* ici.

N. B. If the substantive to which the *gerund* refers is the object of the verb, it is better to express it with the indicative; thus,

I found her *coming* here. Je la trouvai *qui venait* ici.
I saw them *walking*. Je les vis *qui se promenaient*.

EXERCISE.

A woman wandering through the country, 280 (lost her way.) Some
errant à travers compagne, s'égarer.
men piercing through the crowd and threatening to kill her, she
perçant — foule menaçant 168 tuer ,
fled trembling. We met a woman wandering through the country.
s'enfuir en errer à travers 230
We heard a man threatening to kill her. We saw some huntsmen
menacer 168 chasseur
seeking for a hare.
chercher — lièvre.

154. The english *gerund* governed by a verb, or the prepositions *of, from, at, for, after, with, without*, is expressed by the infinitive in french;

I see him *coming*. Je le vois *venir* or *qui vient*.
Without bringing his book. *Sans apporter* son livre.
I was prevented *from doing* it. On m'a empêché *de le faire*.
I was tired *with waiting*. J'étais las *d'attendre*.
After having stayed so long. *Après avoir* resté si long tems.
I was afraid *of being* too late. Je craignais *d'y être* trop tard.

EXERCISE.

I saw you doing it, without taking any pains. I was afraid
136 , de la peine. craindre 140
of spoiling it. I blame him for going away, after having promised to
gâter 200 s'en être allé, 168
wait for me. Be contented with telling him 162 so. There is no
201 54 — se contenter 200 (t) p. 63. le 59 246 190
occasion for (using him ill.)
lien de maltraiter 54 —

155. The *gerund*, so often used in english with the auxiliary verb *be*, to render an action more definite, can not be expressed by the *gerund* in french; the auxiliary verb must be left out and the *gerund* be made into a *verb*, in the same tense and person as the auxiliary verb is; as,

(hh) *En* is the only preposition which the *gerund* admits before it in french, therefore the preposition *by*, which is often prefixed to it in english, must be expressed by *en*; as,

They saved the city *by* surrendering. Ils sauvèrent la ville *en* se rendant.
You gained his esteem *by* forgiving him. Vous avez gagné son estime *en* lui pardonnant.

I am speaking.	Je parle ; never,	Je suis	} <i>Parlant.</i> See the conjugations, p. 98.
Thou art speaking.	Tu parles ;	Tu es	
He is speaking.	Il parle ;	Il est	
I was speaking.	Je parlais ;	J'étais	
I shall be speaking.	Je parlerai ;	Je serai	

EXERCISE.

What are you doing there ? I am reading a novel. You are losing
 83 là ? roman. perdre
 (a deal) of time. What have you been doing, whilst I was dressing
 beaucoup — , pendant que habiller
 myself ? I was waiting for my sister. I am going to dress myself
 me 54 201 178 54
 too. I (am afraid) 221 they will be going 146 before I am ready.
 aussi. craindre 195 — partir 218 prêt.
 Make haste, for they are going to (set off) just now.
 se dépêcher, * car aller 172 partir tout à l'heure.

156. The *gerund*, when used as a substantive in english, i. e. preceded by an article, can not be expressed by the *gerund* in french ; it must be expressed by a *noun*, if a noun synonymous to the verb can be found ; as,

Let us go *a walking*. Allons à la promenade.
Her singing was much admired. Son chant fut fort admiré.
 He gives all his time *to gaming*. Il donne tout son tems au jeu.
 That is the cause of *his being* poor. C'est là la cause de sa pauvreté.

If a *noun* synonymous to the verb can not readily be found, give another turn to the sentence ; as,

What is the reason of *your coming* so late ?
 Quelle est la raison que vous venez si tard ? i. e. that you come, &c.
The impoverishing of some is the *enriching* of others.
 Ce qui appauvrit les uns enrichit les autres ; i. e. what impoverishes.

EXERCISE.

The reading of good books forms the mind. His having been in-
 lecture 38 former esprit.
 structed (turn ; *his instruction*) was of great service to him. If a
 ; 136 d'un grand (o) 55
 noun synonymous to the verb does not readily 183 occur to the
 aisément se présenter
 mind, you 181 must give another turn to the sentence ; as, I should
 , il n.B. faut tour phrase ;
 have caught that bird, if it had not been for your making a noise ;
 attraper oiseau, du bruit ;
 (turn ; if you had not made, &c.) You are the cause of his having
 ; fait, &c.
 been punished ; (turn ; *that he has been punished*.) What is the reason
 ; ; 82 raison
 for your being so angry with him ? turn ; *that you are* so angry.
 fâché 200 ? ;

* See the Imperative of a reflexive verb, page 100.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Eu, *had,*
 Eté, *been,* } N. B. *Eté* never varies its termination.
 Parlé, *spoken ;*

157. The past *participle* joined to a noun, has the property of an *adjective*, and agrees in gender and number with that noun ;

A well *made* man.

Un homme bien *fait*.

A well *made* woman.

Une femme bien faite.

After the auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être*, a distinction must be made.

EXERCISE.

A married29 man. A married woman. Well brought up children.
marier N.E. 32 bien élever 32 —

Well written letters. New built 32 houses. Roasted potatoes.
 écrire 32 nouvellement bâtir rôti 32 pommes de terre.

158. After *être*, *to be*, the past *participle* must be of the same gender and number as the *nominative* of the verb ; ex.

Il est bien fait.

Ils sont bien faits.

Elle est bien faite.

Elles sont bien faites.

EXERCISE.

That man is married. That woman is married. Those children
marier. (bb)

are well brought up. These letters are well written. The potatoes

are not done enough. Those houses are very well built.
cuire 163 très bâtir.

159. After *avoir, to have*, the past *participle* does not agree with the *nominative* of the verb ; so we say,

Il a bien fait.

Ils ont bien fait.

Elle a bien fait.

Elles ont bien fait.

In these instances you must consider whether the *participle* has an *object*, and whether this *object* comes before or after the *participle*.

If the *participle* comes *before* its *object*, it does not require any agreement with it ; but if it comes *after* the *object*, it must agree like an *adjective* in gender and number with that *object* ;
ex.

Participle before its object.

My brother has *made* a *mistake*. Mon frère a *fait* une *faute*.

My sister has *made a mistake*.
Ma sœur a *fait une faute*.

My brothers have *made* a mistake. Mes frères ont *fait* une *faute*.

Participle after its object.

Here is the *mistake* he has *made*. Voici la *faute* qu'il a *faite*.

Here is the *mistake* he has *made*. Voici la *faute* qu'il a *faite*.
Here is the *mistake* she has *made*. Voici la *faute* qu'elle a *faite*.

Here is the *mistake* they have made. Voici la *faute* qu'ils ont *faite*.

N. B. Observe that the participle agrees only with its direct object (see 162 rule) ; for if the object is governed by a preposition expressed or understood, the participle does not agree with that object ; so, though we say, *Il nous a vus*, *He has seen us* ; we could not say, *Il nous a dits des nouvelles*, *He has told us news* ; we must say, *Il nous a dit* ; because *nous* is here used for *à nous*, *to us*.

EXERCISE.

My mother has *invited* your sisters. Your sisters have *invited* my mother ; the participle *invité* must not change its masculine termination ; except when the past participle comes after the participle *été*, *been*, serving with *avoir*, to form a compound tense ; for then it agrees with the nominative of *avoir* ; as, My sister has been invited. My brothers have been invited. My sisters have been invited. I have lost my watch. I have not found it. I have found a watch. It is not that which I have lost. I have sent you a letter. I have not received it. Have you not received the letter which I have sent you ? We have sold our house, but we have bought another. (That is) the house which we have sold, and (this is) the other which we have bought. We have gained a complete victory. Have you heard of the victory which we have gained ? We have destroyed or taken all the enemy's ships. (Here are) the frigates which we have taken. (Here is) the person to whom I have written the letter of which I have spoken to you. It mentions a victory to which we have not contributed a little. Over 200 (how many) powerful enemies have we not triumphed !

perdre *montrer*. *trouver* 55 65
 88 *envoyer* 55 *lettre*
recevoir 55 55
vendre *maison*, *en* 70 *acheter* une autre. 247
 247
reimporter *complet* 29 *victoire*. *entendu parler*
détruire *prendre*
ennemi *vaisseau*. 247 *frégate*
 247 *personne* 76 74
 (o) 55 62 *faire mention d'* 76
 183 *De* *combien* *puissant* 29
trionpher !

160. Sometimes after the *participle* preceded by an *object*, there is a verb in the *infinitive*, then it is necessary to consider whether the *object* is governed by the participle, or by the infinitive which follows it.

If the *object* is governed by the participle, the participle must be of the same gender and number as that object ; ex.

The letter I have given him to copy.
 La lettre que je lui ai donnée à copier.

If the *object* is governed by the *infinitive* which follows the participle, the participle has no agreement with the object ; as,

The letter I have told him to copy.
La lettre que je lui ai dit de copier.*

EXERCISE.

Have you finished the letter which I had given you to write? Have
140 55 169
you finished the letter which you had begun to write? Have you
140 * 168
read the books which I had lent you to read? Have you read the
140 *préter* * 55 169
books which I had advised you to read? Is that the actress
conseiller * 55 166 *Est-ce là* *actrice*
whom we heard sing? Sing the song which we heard her sing.
entendre * *chanter*? *chanson* 136 * *lui*
(These are) the figures which I have lately learned to draw. I
247 *dernièrement* * 169 *dessiner*.
still see the same faults which you had resolved to avoid.
encore *faute* 140 *résoudre* * 168 *éviter*.

161. The participles *plu*, *pleased*; *dû*, *owed*, *ought*; *pu*, *been able*; and *voulu*, *been willing*; do not agree with the object that precedes them, because the infinitive of the foregoing verb is understood after them; ex.

Je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai pu, lui rendre understood.
I have done him all the services that I have been able, to do understood.

EXERCISE.

You have not written this letter so well as you ought. You have
42 42 177
had all the time and all the assistance that you wished. I have
tems *secours* 74 *vouloir*,
taken all the pains that I could. 136
29 *peine* 74 *pouvoir*.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

A word is said to govern another, when the word governing obliges the governed to conform to certain rules.

162. When a verb governs two substantives (see note † page 201) one of them is the direct object of the verb, and does not require any preposition; the other is an indirect object, and requires a preposition, expressed before a noun, and generally implied in the pronoun ‡; as,

I gave her a nosegay. Je lui ai donné un bouquet.
Q. I gave what? A. a nosegay. To whom? to her.
Nosegay is the direct object of the verb; to her is the indirect.

* If you are uncertain whether the object is governed by the participle, or by the infinitive which follows it, transpose the words, and see after which the object may more properly be placed.

† If the object can be placed after the participle, as in the first instance, *The letter I have given him to copy*, which may be turned, *I have given him the letter to copy*; the participle *given* governs the object *letter*, and it must agree with it.

‡ If the object comes more properly after the infinitive, as in the second instance, *The letter I have told him to copy*, which might be turned *I have told him to copy the letter*, (not, *the letter to copy*,) the object *letter* is governed by the infinitive *to copy*, and the participle has no agreement with it.

† See a table of the pronouns, page 58.

Do not tell your *mother* of it. Ne le dites pas à votre *mère*.
 Do not tell *what*? do not tell it. To *whom*? to your *mother* ;
 For it is the *thing* you tell, not the *person* you tell it to, which is the *object* of the verb.

EXERCISE.

Has your sister given my brother any money? (turn; *given money*
 134 ;
 to my brother.) Yes, she has lent him 55 some; (i. e. *some to him.*)
 , prêter (1) p. 63 (p); (o)
 Did he ask her for it? (turn; *did he ask it to her*?) No, it 62 was
 136 55 * 59 ; (o) * 191, N.B. 140
 she who offered it 55 him; (i. e. *it to him.*) They have requested me
 offrir 136 (1) p. 63; (o) prier
 to buy them books, (*to buy books to them,*) and to send them to
 168 (1) p. 63, , (o) 168 (o)
 them; but I will not send them any; (*any to them.*) Have they
 ; (1) p. 63, (p);
 returned your sister (*to your sister*) those which she had lent them 55?
 265 N.B. (bb) 140 159 (1) p. 63
 No, they have 70 not; i. e. *returned them to her.*
 , N.B. ; (o)

163. When a verb governs *two objects*, the *direct object* is generally placed *before* the *indirect*; as,

I gave your *sister* a *nosegay*. J' ai donné un *bouquet* à votre *sœur*.

Yet the *indirect object* must be placed first, if by placing it last, it made the meaning equivocal; for example, we say,

Elle a jeté son *bouquet* dans la *rue*.

She has thrown her *nosegay* into the *street*; but we do not say:

Elle a jeté le *bouquet* que vous lui aviez donné dans la *rue*.

She has thrown the *nosegay* which you had given her into the *street*; because, dans la *rue*, after donné, might be understood that the *nosegay* was given in the *street*, not that it was thrown into the *street*; we say:

Elle a jeté dans la *rue*, le *bouquet* que vous lui aviez donné.

She has thrown into the *street*, the *nosegay* which you had given her.†

EXERCISE.

I have brought your brother a very entertaining book. He must
 162 amusant 32 181
 dedicate all the time that he can spare to study. How can he expect
 donner 74 pouvoir — étude 185 s'attendre
 to learn unless 195 he pays all the attention he can to his books?
 168 218 N.B. faire 29 (s)
 Have you lent my sister any money? She intends to present
 162 avoir 125 dessein de faire présent
 your brother with a book. He gives his friends (a great deal) of
 162 de 162 — beaucoup
 trouble. Tell her 162 that I will send her children some fruit.
 peine. (1) p. 63. (bb) N.B. 162

* See note || page 207.

† The English should pay particular attention to this rule; they are very apt to act contrary to it, both in speaking and writing.

Take the parcel which I have brought into the parlour. Have you
 256 paquet 136 55 sent the letter which I gave you to the (post office ?)
 salon poste

164. The same *noun* may be governed by *two verbs* which are both used without a *preposition*, or which require both the same *preposition* ; as,

They *attacked* and *took* the place. Ils *attaquèrent* et *prirent* la place.

But if one of the verbs requires a *preposition* after it, and the other does not, or if the two verbs require different *prepositions*, the noun must be made the object of the *first* verb, and an objective pronoun must be added for an object to the *second* verb ; so we could not say :

Ils *attaquèrent* et se *rendirent* maîtres de la place.

They *attacked* and *made* themselves *masters* of the place ; because *Rendre maître* requires a *preposition* after it, and *Attaquer* does not ; we say :

Ils *attaquèrent* la place, et s'en *rendirent* maîtres.

They *attacked* the place, and *made* themselves masters of it.

EXERCISE.

I hate and despise that young man. He is always talking and
 hair mépriser (bb) 184* parler 155
 boasting 155 of what he does. He is always opposing and (finding
 se vanter 84 faire. 184* s'opposer 155 trouver 125
 fault) with what other people do. I hate that young man, and I
 à redire à les autres — 39 faire. (bb) , se
 mistrust him. He is always talking about what other people do,
 méfier de 56 184 155 200 les autres — 39 ,
 and finding fault (with it.)
 155 à redire y 54

165. The same *verb* may likewise govern several *parts* of a sentence, provided they are used in the same *sense* ; as,

I *expect much* from him, but *still more* from you.

J'*attends beaucoup* de lui, mais *encore plus* de vous.

But if one of the parts is *affirmative*, and the other *negative*, the verb must be *repeated* in the *second* part ; as,

I *expect every thing* from you, and *nothing* from him.

J'*attends tout* de vous, et je *n'attends rien* de lui.

EXERCISE.

As our reputation depends much (upon 200 the) caprice of men, but
 dépendre du
 still more upon our actions. Our reputation does not depend (upon 200
 encore de du
 the) caprice of men, but it depends upon our good or our bad actions.
 , 62 200

* Put this adverb after the second verb.

All man are equal; it⁶² is not brith, (*it⁶² is virtue alone*) which makes
 égaux; N.B. naissance, N.B. 74
 the difference.

166. Some verbs govern indifferently the infinitive or the subjunctive mood; but if they govern *two verbs*, they must be both in the same mood; as,

I will prevent him from *going out*, and from *doing* you any harm.
 Je l'empêcherai de *sortir*, et de vous *faire* du mal; or
 J'empêcherai qu'il ne *sorte*, et qu'il ne vous *fasse* du mal.

EXERCISE.

I am glad to see you, and to have an opportunity to tell you so;
 bien aise de , 24 occasion 168 59 le 54;
 I have ordered the coach to be got ready, and to be brought here; I
 168 — apprêter,* 168 — 256 ;
 have ordered that the coach be got ready, and that they⁹⁰ bring it
 92 , N.B. 256 54
 here.

167. *Passive verbs* require *de* or *par* before the noun which they govern. They require *de*, when the verb expresses an action wholly of the mind; as,

Your brother *is loved* and *esteemed* by all who know him.
 Votre frère est *aimé* et *estimé* de tous ceux qui le connaissent.

They require *par*, when the bodily faculties participate in the action; as,

He *was beaten* by a sailor, and *robbed* by a soldier.
 Il a été *battu* par un matelot, et *volé* par un soldat.

But instead of these *passive* expressions, it is better in french to use the *active sense* of the verb, and say:

Tous ceux qui connaissent votre frère *l'aiment* et *l'estiment*.
 All those who know your brother *love* and *esteem* him. (ii)

* Turn; to *get ready* the coach, and to *bring* &c.

(ii) Grammarians distinguish three sorts of verbs, which they call *active*, *passive*, and *neuter*.

Active, when the action of the verb passes from the agent to some object; as,
 I *teach* your sister.

Passive, when the receiver of the action is made the leading power of the verb; this is done by adding the past participle to the auxiliary verb *be*; as,
 Your sister is *taught* by me.

Neuter, i. e. neither active nor passive, when the whole energy of the verb remains in the agent, and is not communicated to any object; as,

I *think*, I *walk*, I *stand*, I *sit*, I *sleep*, &c.

These distinctions are common to all languages.

But the English have a facility of changing *active* verbs into *neuter* verbs, which the French have not; for example, when I say;

We *met* your brothers quarrelling; we *parted* them.

Here *met* and *parted* are active, because the energy of the verbs *met*, *parted* passes from the agent we, to an object brothers; if I take away the object, and say; we *met*, we *parted*; then *met* and *parted* are neuter, because the whole energy of the verb remains in the agent we.

Again; I *opened* the door; here *opened* is *active*, because it has an object, door.

The door *opened*; here *opened* is *neuter*, because the action remains in the door itself.

To leave out this object would not render the verb neuter in French, it would only make the sentence incomplete.

To answer the same end, and give to the verb a neuter signification, the French

When *two verbs* come together, without being joined by a *conjunction*, the latter is governed by the former in the *infinitive*, sometimes with, and sometimes without a *preposition*.

EXERCISE.

He is blamed by all his friends, and despised by all his neighbours.
 She is commended and esteemed by every body. The town was
 loué¹⁵⁸ mépriser¹⁰⁶ voisin.^{237*}
 besieged by the Austrians, and afterwards taken¹⁵⁸ by the French.
 assiéger¹⁵⁸ Autrichiens, ensuite prendre
 The houses were plundered by the mob. This news was sent¹⁵⁸
 piller^{137*} populace. nouvelle¹³⁶ envoyer
 to us by my correspondent. The letter is written by a man who was
 (o) correspondant. 158 140
 upon the spot. All his friends blame him, and all his neighbours
 place
 despise him. Every body commends and esteems her. The Austrians,
 mépriser¹⁰⁶ louer⁶⁸
 &c. When two verbs occur in²¹³ the same part of a sentence the
 se rencontrer^{partie}
 latter is governed by the former in the infinitive mood, sometimes
 dernier régir par premier à infinitif — ,
 (by the) means of a preposition, and sometimes without it.†
 au moyen , préposition.

The preposition *to*, the sign of the infinitive mood in english, is expressed by *de*, *à*, *pour*, in french, but not indiscriminately. (*kk*)

168. To, before an *infinitive*, is expressed by *de*, when it can be changed into *of* or *from*, and the infinitive into the *gerund* or present participle;

add to it an objective *pronoun* of the same *person* as the agent or nominative, by which means the whole energy of the verb remains in the same being; hence the number of reflective verbs with which the french language abounds: so in the first instance,

We met your brothers, we parted them; the French say:

Nous rencontrâmes vos frères, nous les séparâmes.

In the second,

We met; we parted. Nous nous rencontrâmes; Nous nous séparâmes; i. e. we ourselves met; we ourselves parted.

They stopped me; Ils m'arrêtèrent. They stopped; Ils s'arrêtèrent; i. e. they stopped themselves.

He opened the door; Il ouvrit la porte. The door opened; La porte s'ouvrit; i. e. the door opened itself.

N. B. The genius of the french language requires also that some verbs which have a kind of passive or neuter signification in english, should be made reflective, when we wish to show that the action expressed by the verb is not limited to the instance of which we speak, but is applicable to all instances of the same kind; for example:

Ce mot n'est pas bien placé; This word is not rightly placed; i. e. in this instance, it is placed ordinarily before the verb; It is generally placed before the verb; i. e. its usual place is before the verb. These instances may also be expressed by *on*; on le place ordinairement avant le verbe. See 92 rule.

* See note § p. 256. † Here the noun must be repeated in the place of the pronoun, because the personal pronouns after a preposition, can not be used to represent things. See 64 rule.

(*kk*) When two verbs come together, without a conjunction between them, the latter is governed by the former in the *infinitive*, whether the sign *to* be expressed or not.

N. B. This commonly happens after nouns used in a *definite* sense ; as,

He has the pleasure *of seeing* her. Il a le plaisir *de la voir*.

She has the vanity *to think* so. Elle a la vanité *de le penser*.*

* As this rule does not apply to all instances in which *to* is expressed by *de*, here is a list of the verbs and adjectives which require *de* before the infinitive which follows them :

s' Abstenir <i>de</i> ,	Abstain from.	se Garder <i>de</i> ,	Take care to.
Accuser <i>de</i> ,	Accuse of.	Gronder <i>de</i> ,	Scold for.
Achever <i>de</i> ,	Finish to.	se Hâter <i>de</i> ,	Haste to.
Affecter <i>de</i>	Affect to.	Heureux <i>de</i> ,	Happy to.
Affligé <i>de</i> ,	Afflicted to.	Impossible <i>de</i> ,	Impossible to.
Aise <i>de</i> ,	Glad to.	Incapable <i>de</i> ,	Incapable of.
Appréhender <i>de</i> ,	Fear to.	Inspirer <i>de</i> ,	Inspire to.
s' Attendre, <i>de</i> , à, †	Expect to.	Juger à propos <i>de</i> ,	Think proper to.
Avertir <i>de</i> ,	Warn to.	Juger <i>de</i> ,	Swear to.
s' Aviser <i>de</i> ,	Bethink to.	Juste <i>de</i> ,	Just to.
Blâmer <i>de</i> ,	Blame to.	Lassé <i>de</i> ,	Tired of, with.
Capable <i>de</i> ,	Capable of, to.	Libre <i>de</i> ,	At liberty to.
Cesser <i>de</i> ,	Cease to.	Mander <i>de</i> ,	Send word to.
Charger <i>de</i> ,	Charge to.	Manquer <i>de</i> ,	Fail to.
Charné <i>de</i> , Ravi <i>de</i> ,	Delighted with.	Menacer <i>de</i> ,	Threaten to.
Commander <i>de</i> ,	Command to.	Mériter <i>de</i> ,	Deserve to.
Commencer <i>de</i> , à, †	Begin to.	Nécessaire <i>de</i> ,	Necessary to.
Conjurer <i>de</i> ,	Entreat to.	Négliger <i>de</i> ,	Neglect to.
Conseiller <i>de</i> ,	Advise to.	Offrir <i>de</i> ,	Offer to.
Consoler <i>de</i> ,	Console for.	Omettre <i>de</i> ,	Omit to.
Content <i>de</i> ,	Content to.	Ordonner <i>de</i> ,	Order to.
Continuer <i>de</i> , à, †	Continue to.	Oublier <i>de</i> ,	Forget to.
Convaincre <i>de</i> ,	Convince to.	Pardonner <i>de</i> ,	Forgive for.
Convenir <i>de</i> ,	Agree to.	Permettre <i>de</i> ,	Permit to.
Craindre <i>de</i> ,	Fear to.	Persuader <i>de</i> ,	Persuade to.
Curieux <i>de</i> ,	Curious to.	se Piquer <i>de</i> ,	Pretend to.
Décourager <i>de</i> ,	Discourage with.	Plaindre <i>de</i> ,	Pity to, for.
Défendre <i>de</i> ,	Forbid to.	Possible <i>de</i> ,	Possible to.
se Dépêcher <i>de</i> .	Make haste to.	Prescrire <i>de</i> ,	Prescribe to.
Désespérer <i>de</i> ,	Despair to.	Presser <i>de</i> ,	Press to.
Désirer <i>de</i> ,	Wish to.	Prier <i>de</i> ,	Request to.
Déterminer <i>de</i> ,	Determine to.	Promettre <i>de</i> ,	Promise to.
Détourner <i>de</i> ,	Divert from.	Proposer <i>de</i> ,	Propose to.
Différer <i>de</i> ,	Defer to, Delay to.	Recommander <i>de</i> ,	Recommend to.
Dire <i>de</i> ,	Tell to.	Refuser <i>de</i> ,	Refuse to.
Discontinuer <i>de</i> ,	Discontinue to.	Regretter <i>de</i> ,	Regret to.
Disconvenir <i>de</i> ,	Disown to.	se Réjouir <i>de</i> ,	Rejoice to.
Dispenser <i>de</i> ,	Dispense with.	Remercier <i>de</i> ,	Thank for.
Dissuader <i>de</i> ,	Dissuade from.	se Repentir <i>de</i> ,	Repent of, to.
Doux <i>de</i> ,	Pleasant to.	Reprocher <i>de</i> ,	Reproach for.
Ecrire <i>de</i> ,	Write to.	Résoudre <i>de</i> ,	Resolve to.
s' Efforcer <i>de</i> ,	Endeavour to.	Risquer <i>de</i> ,	Risk to.
Enjoindre <i>de</i> ,	Enjoin to.	Rougir <i>de</i> ,	Blush to.
Empêcher <i>de</i> ,	Prevent to.	Satisfait <i>de</i> ,	Satisfied to, with.
s' Empresser <i>de</i> ,	Eager to.	Solliciter <i>de</i> ,	Solicit to.
Ennuyé <i>de</i> ,	Tired of.	Sommer <i>de</i> ,	Summon to.
Enragé <i>de</i>	Enraged at.	se Soucier <i>de</i> ,	Care to.
Entreprendre <i>de</i> ,	Undertake to.	Souhaiter <i>de</i> ,	Wish to.
Essayer <i>de</i> , à, †	Try to.	Soupçonner <i>de</i> ,	Suspect to.
Etonné <i>de</i> ,	Astonished at.	se Souvenir <i>de</i> ,	Remember to.
Eviter <i>de</i> ,	Avoid to.	Suffire <i>de</i> ,	Sufficient to.
Excuser <i>de</i> ,	Excuse to.	Suggerer <i>de</i> ,	Suggest to.
Exempter <i>de</i> ,	Exempt from.	Supplier <i>de</i> ,	Entreat to.
Exorter <i>de</i> , à, †	Exhort to.	Sûr <i>de</i> ,	Sure to.
Fâché <i>de</i> ,	Sorry to.	Surpris <i>de</i> ,	Surprised to.
Feindre <i>de</i> ,	Feign to.	Tâcher <i>de</i> ,	Endeavour to.
Finir <i>de</i> ,	Finish to.	Tarder <i>de</i> ,	Long to.
se Flatter <i>de</i> ,	Flatter to.	se Vanter <i>de</i> ,	Boast of.

† As it sounds best, i. e. *de* to avoid the sound of several *a*, and *a* to avoid the sound of several *de*.

EXERCISE.

You shall have the trouble to do it, or (*of doing it*) over again:
 peine refaire ,
Will you have the goodness to help, or (*of helping*) me? If you
 bonté aider,
have any desire to serve me, you have now a fine opportunity to
24 envie servir , à présent occasion
do it. Have the complaisance to wait for me. I have not time to
201

stay. It is time to go. I do not hinder you from going. See, rule 168,
 rester. Il partir. empêcher vous en aller. , règle ,
 a list of the verbs and adjectives which require *de* before the infinitive
 liste demander 206 infinitif
 that follows them.

74

169 *To*, before an *infinitive*, is expressed by *à*, when it can be changed into *in*, and the english infinitive into the *gerund* or present participle ;

N. B. This is generally the case after nouns used in a *partitive* sense ; as,

He has pleasure *in seeing* her. Il a du plaisir à la voir.
Is there vanity *to think* so? Y a-t-il de la vanité à le penser ?

* *Over again* is expressed by *re* before *faire*.

† As this rule is not applicable to all instances in which *to* is expressed by *à*, here is a list of the verbs and adjectives which require *à* before the infinitive which follows them :

s' Abaisser à,	Stoop to.	Contraindre à, de,†	Compel to.
Accoutumer à,	Accustom to.	Contribuer à,	Contribute to.
Admettre à,	Admit to.	Demander à,	Ask to.
Admirable à, de,†	Wonderful to.	Dépenser à,	Spend to, in.
Affreux à, de,†	Dreadful to.	Dernier à,	Last to.
Agréable à, de,†	Agreeable to.	Désagréable à, de,†	Disagreeable to.
Aider à,	Help to.	Destiner à,	Destine to.
Aimer à,	Like to.	Déterminer à,	Resolve upon.
Aisé à,	Easy to.	Difficile à, de,†	Difficult to.
Amuser à,	Amuse to, with.	Diligent à,	Diligent to.
Animer à,	Animate to.	Disposer à,	Dispose to.
s' Appliquer à,	Apply to.	Donner à,	Give to.
Apprendre à,	Learn to.	s' Echauffer à,	Heat to.
s' Apprêter à,	Get ready to.	s' Efforcer à,	Spend oneself to, in.
Aspirer à,	Aspire to.	Effroyable à, de,†	Frightful to.
Assidu à,	Assiduous to.	Employer à,	Employ to, Use to.
s' Attacher à,	Stick to.	Encourager à,	Encourage to.
Autoriser à,	Authorise to.	Enclin à,	Inclined to.
Avoir à,	Have to.	Engager à,	Induce to.
Beau à, de,†	Fine to.	Enhardir à,	Embolden to.
Bon à, de,†	Good to.	Enseigner à,	Teach to.
Charmant à,	Charming to.	s' Etudier à,	Study to.
Chercher à,	Seek to.	Etre à,	Be to.
Condamner à,	Condemn to.	Exact à,	Exact to.
Condescendre à,	Condescend to.	Exercer à,	Exercise to.
Consister à,	Consist to in.	Exciter à,	Excite to.

‡ These adjectives require *à*, when the verb which precedes them has a *personal* nominative ; they require *de*, when the nominative is *impersonal* ; ex.

Cela est agréable, bon, beau, à voir, à dire, à faire, That is agreeable, fine to see, &c.
Il est agréable, bon, beau, de voir, de dire, de faire, It is agreeable, fine to see, &c.

§ De or à, as it sounds best in the *active* sense ; always *de* in the *passive* ; as,
On m'a obligé de or à le faire ; They have obliged me to do it.
J'ai été obligé de le faire ; I have been obliged to do it.

EXERCISE.

He will have some trouble to do it (*or in doing it*) over again.

He perhaps¹⁸⁴ will have somebody to help him. Is there no risk to
 peut-être⁹⁵ aider lui⁵⁴ 246 risque
 go (this way ?) A virtuous man takes pleasure to do good. Amuse
 par ici ?¹ vertueux² bien Amuser
 yourself with reading some instructive book, instead of spending¹⁵⁴
 vous⁵⁶ 154 quelque instructif³² , au lieu²⁷¹
 your time in playing.
 jouer.

170. *To*, before an *infinitive*, is expressed by *pour*, when the words in order, or with an intention, may be prefixed to it ; as,

I did it *to* (in order to) oblige you. Je l'ai fait *pour* vous obliger.

We went there *to* see you. Nous y allâmes *pour* vous voir.

N. B. The english *gerund* preceded by the preposition *for*, explaining why a thing is done, is also expressed by the *infinitive* with *pour* ;

He was hanged *for having* robbed. Il a été pendu *pour avoir* volé.

He was flogged for telling lies. Il a été fouetté *pour avoir menti*.

EXERCISE.

I was going to write to you to beg, a favour of you. You are too
155 aller 172 (o) demander grâce — 54 trop
civil to refuse me. (I will do any thing) to oblige you. I want money
refuser . Il n'est rien que je ne fasse 260
to buy a horse. I have not money enough to buy one. It is not enough
acheter assez en 70 un. — suffire
to have money to get a horse, one must 181 have money to keep it.
168 se procurer , N.B. — maintenir
He wants to have a horse, in order to make (people believe) that he is
260 croire aux gens

Exposer à,	Expose to.	Perdre à,	Lose in.
Facile à, de, †	Easy to.	Persister à,	Persist in.
se Fatiguer à,	Get tired with.	Pleire à,	Delight in.
Forcer à, de, †	Force to.	Porter à,	Induce to.
Gagner à,	Gain to.	Premier à,	First to.
Habile à,	Clever to.	Préparer à,	Prepare to.
Habituer à,	Accustom to.	Prét à,	Ready to.
Hésiter à,	Hesitate to.	Prompt à,	Quick to.
Horrible à, de, †	Horrid to.	Propre à,	Fit to.
Inciter à,	Incite to.	Recommencer à,	Begin again to.
Ingenieux à,	Ingenious to.	Renoncer à,	Renounce to.
Inviter à,	Invite to.	Résoudre à,	Resolve to.
Laid à,	Ugly to.	Rester à,	Stay to.
Lent à,	Slow to.	Réussir à,	Succeed to, in.
Manquer à,	Omit to.	Servir à,	Serve to.
se Mettre à,	Set about to.	Soigneux à,	Careful to.
Montrer à,	Shew to.	Songer à,	Think of.
Obliger à, de, †	Oblige to.	Sujet à,	Subject to, apt to.
s' Obstiner à,	Obstinate to.	Tacher à,	Aim at.
Occupé à,	Busy to.	Tarder à,	Delay to.
s' Opiniâtrer à,	Obstinate to.	Tendre à,	Tend to.
Parvenir à.	Arrive to.	Terrible à, de, †	Terrible to.
Passer à,	Spend in.	Travailler à,	Work to.
Penser à,	Think of.	Venir à,	Come to.

† § See notes, page 277.

rich. He has been taken up for having fought a duel. Is that sufficient
 arrêter — s'être 237 battre en duel. — 89 suffire 125
 for arresting a man? He was not arrested for fighting, but for rob-
 136 s'être battu, avoir
 bing and ill using the man whom he had fought with.
 volé maltraité 76 s'était 203

171. The *infinitive* is used without a *preposition* in french, when it is the nominative of another verb; as,

To be rich is nothing; *Etre riche n'est rien*;
 To be happy is every thing. *Le tout est d'être heureux*.

EXERCISE.

To love and to be loved are the greatest pleasures in life. To love
 aimer 44 49 vie.
 without measure is a folly, not to love at all, is insensibility. To
 mesure folie, N.B. du tout, insensibilité.
 do to others as we would wish (to be done to), is to follow the law
 à autrui ce que vouloir qu'on nous fit, c'est — loi
 of reason.
 raison.

172. The *infinitive* is also used without a *preposition* in french, after the following verbs; viz.

Aimer mieux;	J'aime mieux le faire. (ll)	I would rather do it.
Aller;	Allons nous promener.	Let us go to take a walk.
Appercevoir;	Je l'aperçois mouvoir.	I perceive it move.
Assurer;	Il assure l'avoir fait.	He asserts to have done it.
Croire;	Il croit me tromper.	He thinks to deceive me.
Compter;	Il compte partir en peu.	He purposes to go soon.
Daigner;	Daignez me dire quand.	Deign to tell me when.
Déclarer;	Il déclare le savoir.	He declares to know it.
Devoir;	Il doit me l'envoyer.	He is to send it me.
Entendre;	Je l'entends parler.	I hear him speak.
Envoyer;	Envoyez le chercher.	Send for it, or to fetch it.
Espérer;	J'espère le rencontrer.	I expect to meet him.
Falloir;	Il faut lui aider.	It is necessary to help him.
s' Imaginer;	Je m'imagine y être.	I fancy myself to be there.
Laisser;	Laissez-le dire et faire.	Let him say and do.
Oser;	Il n'ose l'avouer.	He dares not confess it.
Paraître;	Il paraît l'entendre.	He seems to understand it.
Penser;	Il a pensé tomber.	He had like to have fallen.
Prétendre;	Prétend-il le faire?	Does he pretend to do it?
Pouvoir;	Il n'a pas pu me le dire.	He could not tell it me.
Reconnaître;	Je reconnais l'avoir dit.	I acknowledge to have said it.
Regarder;	Je vous regarde faire.	I am looking at you doing it.
Retourner;	Elle retourna la voir.	She returned to see him.
Savoir;	Il sait où la trouver.	He knows where to find her.
Sembler;	Elle semble avoir peur.	She seems to be afraid.
Souhaiter;	Je souhaite la voir.*	I wish to see her.
Soutenir;	Il soutient l'avoir vu.	He maintains to have seen it.
Valoir mieux;	Il vaut mieux lui écrire. (ll)	It is better to write to her.
Venir;	Viendrez-vous me voir? (mm)	Will you come to see me?
Voir;	Je vois venir votre sœur.	I see your sister coming.
Vouloir;	Elle ne veut pas rester.	She will not stay.

(ll) *Aimer mieux, valoir mieux*, followed by another verb in the infinitive, require *de* before the second infinitive; as,

I would rather stay than go; *J'aimerais mieux rester que d'y aller.*
 It is better to go than stay alone; *Il vaut mieux y aller que de rester seul.*

* *Souhaiter* may also be used with *de*; as, *Je souhaite de voir, or de le voir*; I wish to see him.

(mm) *Venir* used for *to be just, to have just*, requires *de* before the following infinitive; and in the sense of *to happen*, it requires *à*; as,

I have just seen her; *Je viens de la voir.*
 If she should happen to know it; *Si elle venait à le savoir.*

EXERCISE.

I am going to embark for America. When do you intend to go ?
 m'embarquer Amérique. compter partir ?

I want²⁶⁰ to (set out) as soon as I can. I hope you will come to see us be-
 souhaiter partir 142 221

fore you go. I do not think I shall (be able) to call²⁶⁶ before I go ;
 218 partir 221 pouvoir 145 passer 218 partir ;

but I expect to see you often when I have¹⁴² returned. You seem to
 espérer 238 265

have a great desire to¹⁶⁸ go. No ; I would rather stay than go ; but
 envie y 70 aller. ; aimer mieux rester (ll) y aller ;

I do not¹⁹² know what to do here. It is better to gain a little
 N.B. savoir 83 Il vaut mieux gagner — peu

than to gain nothing. I would rather gain nothing than to toil
 (ll) 99 aimer mieux (ll) tourmenter

myself for so little.
 me 54 si peu de chose.

WILL, WOULD.

173. If, by *will*, *would*, you wish to denote *will*, *wish*, *desire*, you must express them by the corresponding tenses of the verb *vouloir*, with the following verb in the infinitive ; if you wish to express a determination, to make a positive assertion, *will* must be considered as the sign of the future, and *would* as the sign of the conditional of the following verb ; ex.

My brother <i>will</i> not stay ;	} Mon frère ne <i>veut</i> pas rester.
viz. <i>Is</i> not <i>willing</i> to stay ;	
He <i>positively will</i> not stay.	Mon frère ne <i>restera</i> pas. s. n. * p. 130.
My brother <i>would</i> not stay ;	} Mon frère ne <i>voulait</i> pas rester.
viz. <i>Had</i> no <i>desire</i> to stay.	
<i>Would</i> he not stay, if I asked him ? Ne <i>resterait-il</i> pas, si je l'en priais ?	

EXERCISE.

Will you do me the favour to call²⁶⁶ upon me ? I will call, if I
 * faire grâce 168 58 ,

can. Would you do me the favour to call upon me ? I would call,
 pouvoir. * 266

if I could. Will you bring your sister with you ? I will bring her,
 pouvoir. * amener avec ,

if she will come. Would you bring your sister with you ? I would
 144 256

bring her, if she would come. My sister will not come ; she will
 amener , 144 ;

stay at home. May sister would not come ; she would stay at home.
 rester au logis.

* These sentences may be expressed two ways, but each way denotes a different idea, and this idea can be determined only by the speaker or writer. See the examples under rules 173, 174. See also the different notes on *Will*, *Would*, page 130 and 260.

WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE.

174. If *will have*, *would have* are used to denote the *wish*, the *desire* to possess an object, they are expressed by the corresponding tenses of *vouloir* as above, and *have* is left out; if they are used to denote not the *wish* to possess, but an assurance of the possession itself, they are expressed by the future or by the conditional of *avoir*; ex.

My brother *will have* this book; } Mon frère *veut* ce livre.
 viz. My brother *wishes* to have &c. }
 He *will have* it, if he behaves well. Il l'*aura*, s'il se comporte bien.
 My brother *would have* this book; } Mon frère *voulait* ce livre.
 viz. My brother *wished* to have &c. }
 He *would have* it, if he behaved well. Il l'*aurait*, s'il se comportait bien.

N. B. If *will have*, *would have*, in the sense of *wish*, *choose*, are followed by another *verb*, the object of *have* becomes the nominative of the following *verb*, which must be in the subjunctive in french; as,

He *will have* his sister go with him; } Il *veut* que sa sœur aille avec lui.
 i. e. He *wishes* that his sister *should go*. }
 He *will not have* her stay alone. Il ne *veut* pas qu' elle reste seule.*

EXERCISE.

My brother will have a horse. He will have one (cost what it will.)
 † en70 † un coûte qui coûte.
 My brother would have a horse. He would have one (at any rate.)
 † † à quelque prix que ce fût.
 He will have a watch too. He would have a watch too. He will
 † montre aussi. † en 70
 have one, if he learns well. He would have one, if he learned well.
 , apprendre en 70 ,
 He will have none, if he will not have this88. He would have none,
 n'en 70 pas, 144 N.B. n'en 70 pas,
 if he would not have this. He will have one like yours.
 144 en 70† une 85
 What will you have me do? What will you have my brother do?
 83 † faire? † faire?
 I will have you learn Italian, and I will have him learn French.
 † Italien. † Français.
 Would you have us do149 nothing but study? Must we never play?
 † faire 99 qu' étudier? 181 133 190 jouer

* When you say *I will have you*, or *I would have you do such a thing*, it is not the *person* that you wish to have, but you wish that the *person would do the thing* you mention; so we could not say, *je vous veux*, nor *je veux vous avoir*, nor *je vous aurai*, which would mean that you want the *person*, not that you want the *thing* to be done; we must say, *je veux que vous fassiez telle chose*.

† See note * page 280.

‡ Turn, What *will* you that *I do*? What *will* you that my brother *do*? for it is not the *person* whom you *wish*, but you *wish* that the *person* should *perform* some action.

§ Turn, *I will* that you *learn* Italian, and *I will* that he *learn* french. *Would* you that we *should do* nothing but study? and so on with other sentences of this kind.

Yes, I would have you learn your lessons first, and I would
 , 149 leçon premièrement,
 have you play afterwards. I will not have any of you be idle. I
 149 ensuite 100 oisif.
 will have every one of you do his duty before he does any thing else.
 105 devoir 213 111 autre chose.

175. *Would have* in the sense of *chosen, wished, been willing*, followed by a past *participle*, is expressed by the imperfect or by the conditional of *avoir* with the participle *voulu*, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive in french; as,

If you *would have told* him of it. Si vous *aviez voulu* le lui dire.
 He *would not have* believed me. Il n'*aurait pas voulu* me croire.

EXERCISE.

If you would have let me go, I should have been back long
 , laisser , de retour il y a long tems.
 since. This would have been done in time, if he would have helped
 89 finir à tems, aider
 me. I asked 136 him to help me, and he would not. I would not have
 prier 55 , 136
 helped you for ever so much. Why did you not tell me so before
 rien au monde. 136 55 cela 218
 I began? If I had told you so, you would not have come. If any
 * 55 le 59, tout
 body but you had told me so, I certainly would not have believed him.
 autre que * 59 le 55, 184

SHOULD.

176. *Should*, which is generally a sign of the conditional tense, is sometimes used in the sense of *ought*, i. e. denoting duty or necessity, and is then expressed by the conditional tense of the verb *devoir*; as,

You *should* go and see him (*ought*). Vous *devriez* aller le voir.
 He *should* let me know it. Il *devrait* me le faire savoir.

EXERCISE.

You should take more pains than you do. Children should learn,
 peine 47 faire.
 every day, something by heart. They should (get up) (sooner in the
 tous les jours, 98 par cœur. se lever plus —
 morning) than they do.
 matin. 47

SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT TO HAVE.

177. *Should have*, and *ought to have*, followed by a past *participle*, are expressed by the conditional of *avoir*, with the

participle *dû*, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive in french ; as,

You *ought to have seen* him. Vous *auriez dû le voir*.
He *should have let* me know of it. Il *aurait dû me le faire savoir*.

EXERCISE.

You should have gone with your brothers. You should not have
aller
let them go alone. They ought not to have gone without leave.
laisser seul 29. y 70 permission
They should not have stayed so long. You ought to have told
rester si long tems. dire
them 54 so. You have not acted as you should.
(1) p. 63. le 59 agir

MAY, MIGHT.

178. If *may*, *might* are used to denote "power, *may* is expressed by the present of the verb *pouvoir*, viz. *puis* ; and *might* by the conditional *pourrais*, with the following verb in the infinitive ; as,

I *may* or *can* see it, if I choose ; } Je *puis* le voir, si je veux.
i. e. It is in my *power* to see it, if &c. } [See note* page 125.]
I *might* or *could* see it, if I chose ; } Je *pourrais* le voir, si je voulais.
i. e. It *would be* in my *power* to &c. }

If *may*, *might* denote a mere possibility, they may be expressed by the subjunctive of *pouvoir*, or the subjunctive of the following verb ; as,

Bring it, that I *may* see it ; } Apportez-le, afin que je le *voie* ;
i. e. That it *may be* in my *power* to see } or, afin que je *puisse* le voir.
He brought it, that I *might* see it ; } Il l'apporta, afin que je le *visse* ;
i. e. That it *might be* in my *power* &c. } or, afin que je *pusse* le voir.

EXERCISE.

Any body *may* do that ; (i. e. *can* or *is able*) to do that. You *may*
109 * (bb) ; 172 faire
do it, (i. e. (You *can* or *are able*) to do it, if you like. I will shew
vouloir. † montrer
you how it *may be* done ; (i. e. how one *can*, or *is able* to do it.) Leave
92 ; Laisser
it here, that I *may* try ; (i. e. that it *may be possible* for me to
56 , afinque essayer ; 172
try.) I will lend it 54 you, that you *may* learn ; (i. e. that it *may*
prêter 59, afinque ;
be possible for you to learn.) Any body *might* do that ; (i. e.
109 ;
would be able) to do that. You *might* do it, (i. e. you *could* or
faire †
would be able) to do it, if you had 140 a mind. I will shew you how
, en 70 24 envie. †

* See note * page 125, N. B. p. 126.

† See note * page 228.

‡ See the different use of *Could*, page 125.

it *might* be done; (i. e. how one *could* do it.) I left ¹³⁶ it here that ⁹² ; ^{laisser} 55 ^{afinque}
 you *might* try; (i. e. that it *might be possible* for you to try.)

COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE.

179. *Could have, might have* followed by a past *participle* are expressed by the imperfect or the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *pu*, and the english participle is made by the *infinitive* in french; as,

If he *could have come* sooner. S'il *avait pu venir* plutôt.
 He *might have seen* it too. Il *aurait pu le voir* aussi.

EXERCISE.

If I *could have* done it, (i. e. it I *had (been able)* to do it,) I would
 * faire , 140 pu 172 ,
 not have asked ²⁵² you to help me. You *might have* done it (i. e. you
 prier 168 aider
would have been able to do it) as well as I ⁵². I *could* not *have* done it
 43 43 *
 so soon; (i. e. I *should* not *have been able* to do it so soon.) You
 ; si tôt.
 perhaps ¹⁸⁴ *could* not, (or *would* not *have been able* to do it) but you
 peut-être ,
might have tried; (i. e. you *would have been able* to try.) I *might have*
 essayeur ;
 tried, (i. e. I *should have been able* to try) as you say; but I am
 essayeur ; comme ;
 sure that I *could* not *have succeeded*; (i. e. that I *should* not *have been*
 sûr réussir ;
able to succeed.)

WISH.

180. The present tense of the verb *wish*, followed by another verb in the imperfect, or in the conditional, is expressed by the conditional of *souhaiter*, and the verb which is in the imperfect, or in the conditional in english, must be in the perfect of the *subjunctive* in french; as,

I *wish* she *had* seen it. Je *souhaiterais* qu'elle l'eût vu.
 I *wish* he *would* come. Je *souhaiterais* qu'il voulût venir.
 I *wish* I *had* done it. Je *souhaiterais* l'avoir fait. (nn)

EXERCISE.

I *wish* that was done. I *wish* your sister would come. I *wish*
 221 (bb) 221 221
 somebody would help me. I *wish* I had never attempted it. I am
 95 aider — (nn) entreprendre 55
 glad that I have done (with it.)
 168 — — (nn) être débarrassé en 55

* See the different use of *Could*, page 125.

(nn) When two verbs in the same sentence have the same person for their nominative, the French generally put the second verb in the *infinitive*; as,
 I am afraid I *shall* spoil it; Je crains de le gâter.
 I *wish* I *could* do it; Je *souhaiterais* pouvoir le faire.

MUST, NECESSARY.

181. *Must* is conjugated through its different persons, but its representative *falloir* has only the third *person* singular of each tense, with *il* for nominative ; then the nominative of *must* becomes the nominative of the following *verb*, which must be in the *subjunctive* in french ; as,

I must do it.	Il faut que je le fasse.
You must do it.	Il faut que vous le fassiez.
My brother must do it.	Il faut que mon frère le fasse.
It was necessary for me to do it.	Il fallait que je le fisse, &c.*

N, B. When the nominative of *must* is indefinite, the French leave it out, and put the following verb in the *infinitive* ; as,
One *must* be mad to think so. Il faut être fou pour le penser.

EXERCISE.

I must see (turn; *it must that I see*) that man. Thou must not go
alone. He must come himself. Your brother must go with you. You
seul. (m) N.B. 58
must not stay long. Must we not speak to him? Must not his friends
† long tems. † (o) 54 †
know it? How many times must one tell you the same thing? We
savoir ? 232 dire
must employ our time usefully. People must never be idle. They
le uitement. oisif.
must help one another.
s'aider 121

MUST HAVE.

182. *Must have*, meaning need to have, is also expressed by *falloir*, and the nominative of *must have* is made the object of *falloir* ; as,

I <i>must</i> have money.	Il <i>me</i> faut de l'argent.
He <i>must</i> have books.	Il <i>lui</i> faut des livres.
My brother <i>must</i> have a horse.	Il faut un cheval à mon frère.†

EXERCISE.

I must have a horse. He must have a saddle. My brother must
 have a wife. My sister must have a husband. These children must
 have clothes.

Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing rules.

I have done. Have you done? Has your brother done? Has
finir. your sister done? My brother has sung a song. My sister has sung
chanter chanson.

* See the different modifications of *falloir*, p. 162.

‡ See *falloir*, p. 163.

† See *must* used negatively, p. 162.

§ See *must have*, p. 163.

|| See note * page 182, and add to it that the whole of this exercise on the verbs must be well understood before the exercise is left off.

a song. My brothers have sung a song. My sisters have sung
 a song. Have you heard the song which my brother has sung? Have
 you heard the song which my sister has sung? Have you heard the
 song which my brothers have sung? Have you heard the song which
 my sisters have sung? They are gone. Are they gone? Are your
 brothers gone? Are your sisters gone? How do they do? How
 does your mother do? Is all your family well? Is your sister
 returned from Bath? Have the baths been of service to her? I
 think they have. She looks much better than she did before
 she went. I am glad you are come; I wanted to see you. If
 you had not come, I would have called upon you. I have some
 news to tell you. Do you know that Mrs. B. is here? No,
 nouvelles plur. I did not know it. When did she come? She came this morning.
 I have just received this note from her. I am glad she is come
 (at last), for I longed much to see her. I will wait upon her
 to-morrow morning. Will you come with me? I do not think I
 shall (be able) to go. I (am afraid) my mother will not be able to
 spare me. Since she has been ill, she wishes me to be always
 with her. She will not let me (go out) for fear I should stay too
 long. Do you wish me to go? Yes, I do. Well; I will call,
 long-tems. if I can. You may call, if you will; it is not so far. I do not think
 your mother will refuse you to (go out) for such a short time. I will
 ask her. Do; i. e. ask her. I wish you would lend me the book which

* You may express, I think they have, by *je pense qu'oui*; or if you express have, you must add the rest of the sentence and say; *je pense qu'ils lui en ont fait*.

† Turn this sentence, *She has much better look than she had &c.*

‡ See note § page 233.

§ Turn, *she wishes that I be &c.* see note * p. 281, which is also applicable to *wish*.

|| Turn; *do you wish that I go?* see * p. 281, which is also applicable to *wish*.

** The verb *Aller*, to go, requires a place mentioned after it; if the place has been mentioned before we always add to *Aller* the adverbial pronoun *Y*, there; see note (H) page 58.

†† Add here, in french, the pronoun *Le*, it.

you promised me the last time I was at²⁰⁸ your house. I promised
 to send it to my cousin after^(s) I have read it. She has nothing to
 do now, and it is^{f. après que} better she should do that than do nothing.
 à présent, valoir mieux²²¹ 89 (ll)
 I will lend it you now. I wish you (very much) to read it. I did
 * 62 59 † fort
 not lend it you then, for fear²¹⁸ you would not return²⁶⁵ it to me
 62 59 alors, de peur que — N.B.
 in time. I (was afraid) that you would keep it too long. I have long
 à tems. craindre¹²⁵ —195 garder 62 long-tems.
 wished to read it. I could not lend it you, before you asked me for
 † 62 pouvoir 62 59, 218 59 201
 it. Here²⁴⁷ it is. I wish²²¹ it may amuse you (as much) as it has
 62 N.B. 62 amuser autant que 62
 amused me. Do you think your cousin would come, if I sent for
 55 221 cousine, ; envoyer chercher
 her? I do not think she can. She told me that she expects a friend
 221 70 attendre
 who promised to call upon her this afternoon. Did she tell you that
 266 après midi.
 I drank tea with her yesterday¹⁸³? Yes, she did.⁷⁰ I wish²²¹ you
 prendre thé hier N.B. N.B. 180
 had been there. I wish I had. She is coming to spend the evening
 y55 (H) p. 58. † 271 234
 with me (to-morrow,¹⁸³) will you come with her? I wish I could;
 demain, N.B. (kk) 180 (nn) 70 ;
 but I can not. I am engaged at Mrs. A's. We will meet some
 70 203 se rencontrer quelque
 other day. I have just heard that Miss B. is very ill. Who told
 120 venir de 244 apprendre malade. dire
 you so? Miss C. told me so. How²⁴⁶ long has she been ill? She was
 59 le54 le 54 Combien y a-t-il que. ||
 taken ill this morning. They⁹⁰ say she is very ill. I must send to in-
 prendre de mal 234 N.B. 221 m'in-
 quire how she is now. I think it is better that I go myself. It (is
 former 241 221 valoir mieux (m) N.B.
 necessary) that I should see her. It (is becoming) that I pay her a visit.
 falloir¹²⁵ convenir¹²⁵ rendre¹⁶² 24 visite.
 Did you hear that Mrs C. is dead? Indeed! When did she die?
 entendre(bb) N.B. mourir? ! 238
 I was with her last night. She seemed (well enough) when I left
 235 paraître en assez bonne santé quitter
 her. She was taken ill suddenly in the night, and she died this
 prendre de mal subitement , 238
 morning. I am very sorry she is dead. She was the most estimable
 fâché²²¹ 65 32

* See note * page 228.

† Turn; I wish much that you read it; see note * p. 281, which is also applicable to wish.

‡ Turn; it is long since I wish &c. see note † page 233.

§ Instead of repeating this verb in french we should say, je le souhaite aussi.

|| See note † p. 233.

woman that I knew⁵⁰. I had invited her daughter to come and spend
connaître. (nn) 271
 (a few) days with me, but I do not think she will come now that
quelques 58, 221
 her mother is dead. Were you at the play lately? Yes, my sister
comédie depuis peu?
 and I went there (the night before last), to see a new actress. We
127 y54 avant hier au soir, nouvelle actrice.
 had expected some amusement, but we were greatly disappointed. The
attendre bien tromper.
 players were very bad. I never saw a worst⁴¹ set. Was it a good
comédiens mauvais. mauvais troupe. Y avait-il beaucoup
 house? Yes, the house was pretty full²⁹. The lower²⁹ boxes
de monde?*, salle passablement plein. premier loge
 were not full, but the upper boxes and the pit were very full.
29, † parterre 31
 Was my cousin there? I do not know. I did not see her. I met
f. y 54
 her yesterday, as I was going to take²⁶³ a walk, and I went to drink
hier, N.B. †
 tea with her. After we had drunk tea, we went into the fields, and
58 † 213
 we picked several curious³² flowers which I intend to draw, and
cueillir curieux(g) avoir dessein dessiner,
 send to you. I must make you some little present that²¹⁸ you may
(o) quelque afinque
 remember me. Do you think I need any think to make me
se souvenir 202 58 221 avoir besoin de 111 170
 remember you? I will not forget you (as long) as I live. I was
202 58 oublier tant que
 in²¹¹ London since I saw you. Did you see the curiosities? I saw
N.B. Londres depuis que 196 curiosité?
 the Tower, St. Paul's, and the Museum, but I did not find (so many)
Tour, Muséum, tant N.B.
 curiosities as I had expected. Did you ever see the Museum? Yes;
que 237 s'y attendre.
 I have seen it several times. Did you hear that my brother is gone
55 232 entendre
 to France? No, I did not⁷⁰. When did he go? He (set out) this
191, N.B. 238 partir? 238 partir
 morning. Were you ever in France? No, I never was there. I
, 190 y55 (H) p.58.
 never had an opportunity to go I should like to see that country of
24 occasion y 70 † (bb) 230
 which I have heard (so much). I will go the first opportunity
74 entendre parler tant 183 y70 † a (s)
 I can find. And you, were you ever there? I lived in France
, y 55 demeurer

* This sentence can not be expressed in french according to its literal sense; it must be expressed as if the words were, *Were there many people?*

† The different sets of boxes are distinguished in french by the names of *premières, secondes, troisièmes, &c. loges.*

‡ Speaking of *drinking* tea, coffee, &c. as a meal, we use *Prendre* instead of *Boire*.

§ See note ** p. 286.

several years. I have been nearly all over the country. Was
 plusieurs * presque * 36 230 Y avait-il
 any body with you ? Yes, Mr. B. was with me. How did you travel ?
 108 , 58 185 voyageur ?
 We travelled sometimes in a coach, sometimes in a gig, and some-
 quelquefois en — carrosse, — cabriolet,
 times on (horseback), as it suited us. When did you return ? I
 à cheval, comme cela convenir 54 238 265
 returned about three weeks or a month ago. Which way did you
 265 il y a 246 environ 246— Par 79 route
 (come back) ? I came through Havre de Grace and Southampton.
 revenir ? par (b)
 Did you speak french when you went to France ? I spoke it a little.
 † français m. † 62 un peu.
 I spoke it enough to make myself understood. But I knew grammar
 † 63 assez 170 entendre. savoir grammaire
 pretty well 183, and I soon learned to speak it well. I now speak it
 assez bien N.B., 184 62 184
 as fluently as my native 32 language. Did you never meet with
 43 coulaissent 43 natal 29 langue 190 rencontrer 201
 people who spoke english ? Yes, sometimes, but not so often as I
 229 , 191 que
 wished. Were you in France when the revolution began ? No, I
 commencer ? ,
 was in Holland. Were the Dutch glad 29 (of it) ? Some were glad
 Hollande. Hollandais bien aise en 54 94 29
 (of it), and some 70 were not. Some (were of opinion) that it would do
 en 54, 94 72 94 penser 62
 a (great deal) of good, others thought that it would do a great deal of
 — beaucoup bien, 120 penser 62 —
 harm. I did not stay long in Holland ; I went to Germany and Italy.
 mal. rester ; Allemagne 204
 I have been to Ireland too, since 196 I saw you. Well ; how do you like
 Irlande aussi, depuis que Eh bien ; 268
 that country ? I like it (very much) ; it is a very fine country ; but I
 230 268 62 beaucoup ; 65 ;
 will not (go again,) unless, as the Irishman in London says, I can 195
 y retourner, 213 , comme Irlandais à Londres † N.B.
 go by land. I was 140 very sick. I never was so sick in my life.
 (kk) y 70 par terre. N.B. malade. 136 de vie.
 Indeed, every body on board was sick. It 62 is true that it blew
 à la vérité, 106 à bord N.B. vrai faire
 a tempest. One of our masts fell over board, and we lost almost
 tempête. mât tomber par-dessus , perdre
 all our sails. We expected every moment that we should go and
 voile. attendre à tout —(nn)

* Express *been over* by the verb *parcourir*.

† *Did speak* and *spoke* require here an explanation. For instance, if I were to say, I met a gentleman in the street yesterday and I spoke french to him ; I should say, *je rencontrai hier un monsieur dans la rue, et je lui parlai français*, because I then wish to express what I did, viz. that I spoke french. But in the example here given, I do not want to know whether the person spoke french or not, but whether he *knew the language*, which being mere *knowledge* or a *description* of the mind, must, agreeably to 140th rule, be expressed by the imperfect *parlais*, &c.

‡ In a parenthesis, the French generally put the nominative after the verb ; so, turn this sentence thus, as *says the Irishman in London*.

sup with the god of the waves. However after a deal of toil
 souper dieu flot. Cependant — beaucoup peine
 and fatigue, we arrived at Cork 25harbour. We landed as soon as
 204 , havre. débarquer43 43
 we could, and we were very well received by our friends who were
 pouvoir, recevoir
 waiting for us. We soon forgot the perils of the sea, and we began
 201 184 oublier ,
 to divert ourselves (in the best manner) we could. (Next day) I went
 divertir du mieux que Lendemain
 to my friend Mr. D.'s (country seat.) The weather was240 bad for
 25 château 140 N.B. 205
 some days, but one morning it grew fine. I (got up) early, and
 , 234 62 devenir se lever de bonne heure,
 I went by myself to take263 a walk in the fields, while the family
 207 N.B. N.B. , pendant que
 (were sleep.) I never saw nature more sublime than it62 was at that
 dormir.125 * le70 dans
 moment. The sun had just risen, and the dew which was on the grass
 244 se lever, rosée 'herbe
 appeared like pearls. I advanced a little into the country, but the
 ressembler à perle. s'avancer un peu 230 , 45
 more I advanced, the more I felt inclined to advance. I saw on all
 , 45 se sentir porté de
 sides trees loaded with fruit which was beginning to ripen ; an in-
 côté 200 commencer mûrir, in-
 finite number of birds singing153 and warbling on the branches ;
 fini 32 oiseau N.B. gazouiller138 ;
 cattle grazing153, or wandering through the meadows; hills and dales co-
 bétail paitre, N.B. errer à travers prairie; colline vallée
 vered with corn which began to (turn yellow); in short every thing in-
 200 blé jaunir ; en un mot 107 an-
 dicated abundance and prosperity. I was140 so delighted with my walk,
 noncer abondance é é N.B. charmé 200 ,
 that I (went again) every morning that the weather was fine. I stayed
 y70 retourner tous les matins 240 rester
 there six weeks, and I do not think it62 is possible to spend six weeks
 y 54 , 221 N.B. 271
 more agreeably than I did. Did you see Mr. A. lately? I saw him
 47 le 70 faire. depuis peu ?
 this morning. I met him as I was going along the street. He
 rencontrer comme passer le long de
 told me that he had called upon you, but that you were not in. He
 266 , y 54
 desired me to tell you that he wanted to see you. If you see him
 252 260 revoir
 again, tell him that I will call upon him as soon as I have dined.
 — , 56 266 58 43 43
 I will70. Did you not go a shooting together yesterday? Yes, we
 N.B. à la chasse au fusil ensemble 183 N.B. ,
 did.70 Was your excursion successful 29? Not very. The ground
 N.B. chasse heureux(g)? Pas beaucoup. terre
 was wet, and the game was very wild. We killed only six brace of
 humide, gibier sauvage. tuer couple

* Family being singular, the verb can not be plural in french.

partridges, two hares and four woodcocks. Were there no pheasants?
 perdrix, lièvre bécasse. 246 faisan!
 There were plenty; but they were in some gentleman's 25 plantations,
 246 abondance; 62 * messieurs
 and we dared not touch them. Did you walk or ride? We
 oser (kk) toucher y 54 aller à pied ou à cheval?
 rode as far as R. where we left our horses at a small inn there,
 aller à cheval jusqu'à où laisser à auberge qui y est,
 and after we had refreshed ourselves a little, we began our excursion.
 après que rafraichir un peu, chasse.
 We (went over) I do not know 192 (how many) heaths, fields and cop-
 parcourir N.B. combien bruyère, 204
 pices. I dare say we walked 20 miles. When we arrived at the inn, we
 taillis. pouvoir 221 263 mille.
 were so tired that we could not return home that night. We slept there,
 lasser (kk) 265 au logis 13 soir-là. coucher y 54,
 and we (came home) this morning. We intend to try again to-mor-
 revenir essayer encore demain.
 row. Will you come with us, if we go? I will go, if you will promise
 y 70 †
 me to return in time for dinner. If we find that it is too late, we
 265 à tems diner. trop
 may dine in the country. I can not stay. We shall have company
 pouvoir † 230 (kk) rester.
 to dinner, and I must be there. Then I think it is better for
 y 54 Donc 184 221 il vaut mieux que
 us to go after dinner. We may set out as soon as the dinner is
 † y 70 † pouvoir † 43 43
 over. We generally 184 dine late; I am afraid it 62 will be too late to
 fini. ordinairement tard; 221 N.B. 195 170
 go then. I think the best thing we can do, is to (put it 54 off)
 y 70 alors. 221 (s) 50 , c'est de remettre
 till after to-morrow. We may then take our own time. We shall
 jusqu' à après † alors —
 (set out) as early as you please. I wish your cousin would come
 partir d'aussi bonne heure qu'il plairait. 221
 with us. I wish you would send somebody to let 248 him know. I do
 221 95 N.B. ¶
 not know a man whose company is more pleasant. Bring him with
 74 agréable. 256 56
 you, if he will come. I see him coming, I will ask him 54. Your
 , ** ¶
 cousin and I go a shooting the day after to-morrow, will you be one
 52 127 à la chasse au fusil — — (kk) —
 of the party? I should be very happy to accompany you, but I do
 partie? bien aise accompagner ,
 not think that I can. We shall not go further than you like. You
 70 loin 41 47 vouloir.

* See note † page 183.

† See note ** p. 286.

‡ The french would here use the future.

‡ Turn; *It is better that we go.*¶ Make the verb *Please* impersonal, and express *You please*, as if the english was, *it will please you.*¶ Add here the pronoun *Le*, and say *Le lui*. 70 rule.

** See note * p. 228.

may come, if you will. You might come, if you would. I will
 pouvoir , pouvoir
 consider (of it). I should like to go (very much) 183. I will let 248 you
 penser y 54 * fort N.B. † N.B.
 know to-night, if I can go. Why did you not call yesterday? I could
 235 , * 266
 not. I went a hunting. Who was with you? (Was there) any body
 à la chasse. 246 108
 (that I knew?) Yes, (there were) several of our friends. What time
 de ma connaissance? , 246 plusieurs à 82 heure
 did you go? We (set out) at six o'clock. Did you catch any thing?
 partir? partir à prendre 111
 We caught a fox. Had you a (great deal) of sport? Yes, we had 70.
 renard. — beaucoup plaisir! , N.B. †
 I wish I had been with you. If I had known it. I would have gone.
 (nn) ô savoir , 233 * 70
 Why did you not let 248 me know? I did not know that you could go.
 N.B. le 70 pouvoir * 70
 I was 140 at home the whole day, and I had nothing to do. The next
 N.B. au logis 38 , 140 99 prochaine
 time you go, do not fail to let 248 me know. I will not; i.e. fail 70.
 232 (s) * , manquer N.B. le 70 y 70 N.B.
 I have got a new horse. When did you buy it? I bought it this
 270 nouveau|| acheter
 morning. (How much) did you give (for it)? I gave a hundred
 combien en 54 en 70 21
 guineas. It 62 is a (great deal) of money. How old is 289 it? It is 289
 guinée, N.B. — beaucoup N.B. N.B.
 four years old. Will you come to look at it? Now; what do you
 voir 201 ; 83
 think (of it)? Do you not think that I got it cheap? I do not
 en 54 avoir à bon marché?
 think it is dear. It is a very good horse. I wish it may answer 208
 221 65 221 répondre à
 your expectation. I will buy one too, as soon as I have a little
 attente. en 70 un aussi, 43 tôt 43 un peu
 more money. Do you think I can get a good one for fifty guineas?
 221 (kk) avoir 54 en 70 guinée?
 I think you may. When I have one, I will lend it you when you
 221 70 en 70 un , prêter 54 59
 want 260 it. Will you take 263 a walk when your letter is finished?
 avoir besoin en 54 N.B.
 I can not; I must take it to the (post office) as fast as I can. It
 70 ; 256 62 poste 43 vite 43
 must go to-night. I am afraid it will be too late when I am
 partir 235 221 195 tard
 there. I will go with you, if you will wait for me. I can not wait;
 y 54 aller , 201 (kk) ;
 I must go directly. Will you call upon me when you (come back)?
 y 70 tout à l'heure. 266 revenir?
 I do not think I can. My sisters go to the play; they will have 174 me
 221 70 comédie; N.B.

* See note ** p. 286.

† See note * p. 266.

† See note * p. 300.

|| Put this adjective before the noun.

† Add, a good deal of it.

go with them, and I must go. Will you call when you come back
 56 , 70 passer
 from the play? I will see. I will call, if it is not too late when the
 de 266 ,
 play is over. Why did you not call in (coming back) from hunting?
 finie. * 566 en revenir de chasse?
 I could not. It was late, the weather was bad, and I was tired.
 70 N.B. tard, tems 240 , lassé.
 I am tired of those violent exercises. I must get a wife. Marry, 261
 ennuyé† 29 exercice. prendre se marier, ‡
 says a proverb, you will do well; do not marry, you will do better
 proverbe, ‡ , (E) p. 56.
 I do not care for your proverbs. I must have a wife. I will have
 se soucier 200 182 ||
 one who is tolerably handsome, who has some common sense and a
 passablement , commun 32 un
 little fortune. Do you think you can find a woman who is so
 peu bien. 221 trouver
 accomplished? If I thought that I could not find one, I would never
 accomplir? ¶ pouvoir en 70 une,
 be married. I like your sister. Do you think she will go to the
 — se marier. 261 221
 assembly-to-night? If I hear that she goes, I will send you word.
 assemblée 235 apprendre ** 70, le faire 54 savoir.
 I do not think she will 70. She has not been well for some time,
 221 ** N.B. 237 241 depuis quelque,
 and she (is afraid) of (going out), for fear of (catching cold). I am
 craindre sortir, de peur de s'enrhumer.
 sorry 221 she does not come, for I intended to dance with her. She is
 fâché , avoir dessein 58 65
 the most agreeable woman that I ever 50 knew. When did you see her?
 44 32 jamais 136
 I saw her this morning. She called at 208 our house, but she did not
 234 266 †† N.B. , ††
 stop. Did she give you the book which I sent you? Yes, she did 70;
 rester. 74 , N.B.
 i. e. give it me 70. Did you read it? Yes, I read a good part (of it).
 N.B. , partie en 55
 How do you like it? Did it entertain you? I like it very well;
 185 268 62 amuser 63 ;
 it entertained me (very much). I never read a book which entertained
 62 fort. 183 74

* Did refers here to the period of hunting, which was yesterday.

† Tired—*Lassé, Ennuyé*. *Lassé* is said of the *body*; *Ennuyé* is said of the *mind*.

‡ See the imperative of a *reflective* verb, p. 100.

|| *Will have* may here be expressed two ways, agreeably to the idea which you wish to express.

If you wish to denote that you know the person you describe, and are certain to have her, you express *Will have one* by *J'en aurai une* &c. with the following verbs in the *indicative*.

If you want to denote that you wish to find such a person as you describe, you must express *Will have one* by *J'en veux une*, with the following verbs in the *subjunctive*. See 174 rule.

¶ See note * p. 266.

** See note ** p. 296.

†† See note * p. 254.

me more. Do you think the foreign³² mail will arrive to-day? It
 183 221 étranger²⁹ malle aujourd'hui? 62
 is arrived. It arrived early this morning. I wonder that (there
 62 238 de bonne heure 234 s'étonner 246
 is) no letter for me. I am afraid my friends have forgotten me. I wrote
 58 221 195 oublier 55
 to them (long ago). It is time that I should hear from them. I
 (o) (il y a long-tems). Il tems 275 *
 wish they would write to me. I will not write to them again,
 221 (o) récrire (o) — ,
 until²¹⁸ I have heard from them. I think they do not wish me to
 jusqu' à ce que 275 * 221 +
 know what is passing at home. I am afraid they will think that I
 savoir 84 — se passer au logis. 221 195
 stay here too long. I suppose they wish me to come²⁶⁴ home, but
 rester ici long-tems. 254 221 † s'en retourner, 265
 I do not intend to go back yet. I will stay here as long as I can.
 avoir dessein s'en retourner encore. 43 43
 We are going to drink tea, will you take a cup with us? I do not
 prendre thé, 70 tasse Je le veux
 care. I was going to Mrs. D.'s, but I (may as well) stay here. I
 bien. Il 208 , (ferai aussi bien) de
 can not be in better company. What were you looking for when
 (kk) en 83 201
 I met you? I was looking for my little boy who has been wander-
 201 garçon errer
 ing about all the afternoon. I saw him playing with the other
 ça et là après midi. 120
 children, as I was passing by your house. Your house is well built,
 , comme 207 bâtir,
 but it is not well situated. It is (too much) exposed to the wind.
 62 situer. 62 trop exposer vent.
 We had planted a great number of trees round it, but the drought
 planter autour 64, sécheresse
 has nearly killed them all. Is it⁶² the house which your father
 presque faire mourir 55 N.B. 74
 got built? No, it⁶² is not; he has sold it⁶², and has bought this⁸⁸.
 faire bâtir? , N.B. 70 ; vendre 55, acheter N.B.
 Have you seen (the one) which he has begun to build? No, I have
 celle 74 commencer ,
 not⁷⁰. You have a nice⁸³ library; may I look at it⁵⁴? Surely,
 N.B. joli²⁹ bibliothèque; pouvoir voir — 62 Assurément,
 you may. These books are well bound, but they are very badly
 70 relier, mal.
 printed. I have lately read some very entertaining ones. I will
 imprimer. depuis peu ** amusant en 55 ††
 shew you the books which I have read. I have also bought several
 74 plusieurs
 curious³² things. See the fine things which I have bought. I want
 curieux²⁹(g) belle 260

* Express from them by *de leurs nouvelles*, or by *des nouvelles d'eux*.

† Turn; they do not wish that I know, &c. ‡ See note * page 281, which is also applicable to *wish*.

|| We could not say in this sense, *je ne m'en soucie pas*, for I do not care.

¶ We could not say *l'une* for *the one*. ** See note * p. 300. †† See note * p. 228.

to shew them to your sister. How long is it since you saw her ?
 I saw her as she was coming to town. I am glad you are come,
 and that your sister is coming too. I am surprized she has written
 to you, and has not mentioned it. Have you sent the books which
 you were speaking of into the country ? No, I have not sent them
 yet. I will send them this evening. Did you lend your cousin
 those which he asked you for ? Yes, I did ; i. e. *lend them to him*.
 Did you hear that my uncle B. has given my brother a horse ? He
 has lent him money to buy one, and I am sure he never will ask
 him for it again. He has also made my eldest sister a present of a
 watch. Did he ever give your other sister any thing ? No, he
 never did. He often promised her something, but he never gave her
 any thing. She should try to please him. She should pay more
 attention than she does to what she is told. She says she pays all
 the attention she can to every thing she does. Sometimes, not
 always. Take the books which I gave you into the (school room).
 with you. Now, I must go. Will you come with me ? I can not.
 You might come, if you would. I might go (to be sure ;) but then
 I must neglect business which ought not to be neglected. Come,
 that we may divert ourselves a little. You must have a little diver-
 sion. You must not always be (shut up) in the house. Send me my
 servant, that I may tell him to get our horses ready. If you
 would have (set out) a little sooner, we might have diverted ourselves
 (very much.) If I could have got my horse when I ordered it, I
 might have been ready as soon as you. I should have had it sooner,
 if my brother could have spared it. I wish my father had bought

* See note || page 207.

† Again is expressed by *re* prefixed to *demander*.

‡ Ready is expressed in the word *Apprêter*.

(the one) which you recommended to him. I wish you would sell
celui * (o) 221
him yours. I would have sold mine (long 246 ago,) if I could have found
162 85 85 il y a long-tems,
any body who would have bought it. I will have one like yours.
108 semblable au 85
If I had known that you wished to sell yours, I might have found
↑ vouloir
somebody who would have bought it. You should have told me 59 so
95 le 54
then; I might have bought it myself. I may perhaps find somebody
alors (m) N.B. peut-être (kk) 95
yet 183. I wish you could. I could have sold it myself long ago.
encore. N.B. 221 70 55 (m) N.B. il y a long-tems,
If I could have done without it then. Can you do without it now?
280 en alors. 280 en
I think I can. My sisters wish you to come and spend an evening
221 70 † (nn) 271 234
with us. When will you come? I can not tell. I will come as soon
Quand 70 264 34
as I can. You must bring your sister with you. Oh! we can not
43 256 !
come both at the (same time). Somebody must stay at home. The
122 à la, fois. 95 rester au logis.
house can not be left (to itself). Come; you are rather too hard
92 92 laisser seule. Allons; un peu sévère
upon her. She must have a little amusement too. You should have
envers 58 un peu aussi.
brought her with you to-day. Why did you not bring her? I did
256 256
not know that you wanted 260 so much to see her, or else I would
avoir si grande envie , autrement
have brought her. I will bring her the next time I come. Do.
256 256 232(s) 70 N.B.
I will 70. Did my sister tell you that I have been in the country?
N.B. à 230
No, she did not 70. When did you go? I think I saw you (at the)
, N.B. y 70 221 au
beginning of the week. You could 136 not see me this week, for
commencement semaine. pouvoir , car
I went last 32 week. When did you return? I returned this
70 238 265 238
afternoon. Did you call upon our friends? I just 184 saw them,
266 seulement ,
as I was passing by the house. How were they? They seemed
207 185 241 paraître
very well. Did you come (that way) (on purpose)? Yes!
en très bonne santé. 238 par là exprès?
did 70. I wonder at your going there again so soon. Will you
N.B. s'étonner ‡ retourner y 55. — si

* We could not say *l'un* for *the one*.

† See p. 127 and 139 the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaître*.

‡ Turn; wish that you come &c. see note * p. 231, which is also applicable to *wish*.

§ Turn; that you have 238 gone there again so soon, see 165 rule.

never cease doing what you are desired not¹⁹⁰ to do ? I should not
 cesser 84 92 dire²⁵² N.B.
 find fault with your calling sometimes, when you happen to be
 trouver mauvais * passer il vous arrive de —
 going (that way), but I wonder at your going there purposely, after
 par là, s'étonner † y 54 exprès
 having promised me that you would not go again without asking me
 55 ne plus
 leave. You are too¹⁸³ fond of rambling; are you²⁸² not? How
 permission. — trop aimer à roder; n'est-ce pas? 185
 could I help it⁵⁴? I was accused of neglecting people who have
 s'empêcher en 59 92 négliger 229
 been kind to me; can I be blamed for endeavouring to justify
 en des bontés pour 58; 92 de chercher
 myself? I do not blame you for justifying yourself; I only wish you
 me 54 de vous 54; 184 †
 not to do things which may be disagreeable to your friends. Come,
 désagréable 29 Allons,
 ladies, amuse yourselves with reading this pretty tale, instead of losing
 mesdemoiselles, 56 169 conte, au lieu
 your time in playing. You should abstain from looking about you,
 s'abstenir autour de ,
 whilst you are learning your lessons. That is not the way to
 pendant que Ce n'est pas là moyen
 improve yourselves. You are very¹⁸³ fond of scolding. What plea-
 perfectionner vous 54 — beaucoup aimer à gronder.
 sure can you have in vexing people so¹⁸³? You are always
 chagriner 229 ainsi N.B.? — 184
 finding fault with every thing one does. I am quite tired with
 trouver à redire à tout ce (s) 90 189 ennuyé 200
 always hearing the same thing. If you paid attention to what you
 184 chose. faire 84
 are told, there would not be occasion for repeating it so often. You
 92 , il besoin de
 never do things (at a proper time). How can I help it? I never
 190 à propos Que faire? y 54
 know the (time of the day). You should have a watch. Yes; I
 'heure qu'il est. montre. ;
 ought to have a watch. I want²⁶⁰ a watch (very much). When
 avoir besoin grand. ||
 shall I have one? You shall have one as soon as you behave well.
 en 70 70 se comporter
 Will you have mine? No, I do not like yours. It is an old one.
 85 62 — vieille —
 I will have a new one, or I will have none. Then¹⁸⁴ you must
 en 70 une neuve, — en 70 † Donc
 wait till²¹⁸ you can buy one yourself. What will you have us do
 attendre que en 70 (m) N.B. 83 faire

* Turn; that you should call¹⁴⁹ sometimes &c. see 156 rule.

† Turn; that you have²³⁸ gone there purposely &c. see 156 rule.

‡ Turn; I only wish that you do not things &c. see note * p. 281.

§ Help, in the sense of to avoid, is expressed by Faire, Eviter, Empêcher, never by Aider.

|| Turn; I have great need of a watch. ¶ Express None by Pas, with Ne before the verb.

now ? I would have you go and take a walk²⁶³ till dinner²⁵ time ;
 (nn) N.B. jusqu'au ;
 and when you have (eaten your dinner), I would have you go to your
 diné, prendre —
 books. What ! so soon. Must we have no play ? No, you shall
 83 ! si tôt * jouer ?
 not play before²¹⁸ you have said your lessons. May we play then ?
 avant que alors ?
 Yes, you may play, if you say them well. You should (get up)
 se lever
 sooner ; then you would have plenty of time to play. If you would
 41 ; alors tout le tems
 have got up when I called you, you might have played as long as
 se lever appeter 43 long-tems 43
 you would. I wonder that the people whom we expected are not come
 175 s'étonner 229 attendre
 yet¹⁸³. Is it¹⁶² not astonishing that they should keep us waiting so
 encore. N.B. étonnant faire attendre si
 long ? They should not have promised, if they found that they
 long-tems ? promettre, prévoir
 could not come. I might have asked somebody else. We might
 prier quelqu' autre personne.
 have taken²⁶³ a walk before we sat at table. For the future I will¹⁷⁴
 N.B. avant de nous mettre à venir N.B.
 have my orders punctually attended⁹² to. You should not have relied
 ‡ exactement qu'on suive — compter
 upon people you did not know. If you would have followed my advice,
 229 (s) suivre avis,
 this would not have happened. You see ; we can not console our-
 89 238 arriver. ; nous⁵⁴
 selves for being deceived by our enemies, and betrayed by our friends ;
 de tromper par ennemis, trahir ;
 and we are often satisfied with being so by ourselves. I have received
 satisfaire 200 le 54 (m) N.B. recevoir
 the letters which you have written to me respecting the affair which
 (o) 55 au sujet de
 I have proposed to you, and after having read them attentively, I have
 proposer (o) 55 , 55 avec attention,
 found that, if I had undertaken it, I should have met with
 reconnaître , ‡ entreprendre 55 trouver 201
 obstacles which I had not foreseen. I am very glad you have
 prévoir, bien 221
 not⁷⁰.
 N.B.

* Express this sentence as if it were, *Must we not play ?*

† See note * p. 266.

‡ See * page 281.

CHAPTER VII.

ADVERB.

An *adverb* is to a verb what an adjective is to a noun ; it is a word added to the verb, to denote some *circumstance* belonging to it, or the *manner* in which an action is done ; as,

I walk *fast*. You walk *slowly*. He *often* reads. She *seldom* writes.

There are adverbs of *time*, of *place*, of *order*, of *quality*, *affirmative*, and *negative*, but their properties being the same in both languages, it is needless to enumerate them here.*

183. *Adverbs* in general keep the same place with the verb in french as in english ; they are placed *after* the verb, when the tense is simple, and *between* the auxiliary and the participle when the tense is compound ; as,

I *always* esteem him *much*. Je l'estime *toujours fort*.

I have *always* esteemed him *much*. Je l'ai *toujours fort* estimé.†

N. B. The *adverb* expressing some circumstance of the verb, must be placed as near to the verb which it modifies, as can be done without infringing upon other rules ; ex.

* Most of the adverbs are formed from the *adjectives* ; in english by adding *ly* ; in french by adding *ment* ; as,

ADJECTIVE.			ADVERB.	
Wise,		Sage.	Wisely,	Sagement.
Assured,		Assuré.	Assuredly,	Assurément.
Polite,		Poli.	Politely,	Poliment.
Assiduous,		Assidu.	Assiduously,	Assidument.
But observe that <i>ment</i> requires a vowel before it ; so that, if the adjective ends with a consonant in the masculine, the adverb must be formed by adding <i>ment</i> to the feminine ; as,				
	Masc.	Fem.		
Frank,	Franc,	Franche.	Frankly.	Franchement.
Public,	Public,	Publique.	Publicly,	Publiquement.
Real,	Réel,	Réelle.	Really,	Réellement.
Good,	Bon,	Bonne.	Goodly,	Bonnement.
Soft,	Doux,	Douce.	Softly,	Doucement.
Generous,	Généreux,	Généreuse.	Generously,	Généreusement.
Ex. Gentil,	Pretty, which makes		Prettily.	Gentiment.

Except also the adjectives ending in *nt*, which require *nt* to be changed into *ment*, as,

Constant,	Constant.	Constantly,	Constamment.
Decent,	Décent.	Decently,	Décemment.
Diligent,	Diligent.	Diligently,	Diligemment.

Ex. *Présentement*, *Presently* ; *Lentement*, *Slowly*, which follow the general rule.

† Observe only that the adverbs compounded of several words generally come *after* the participle, so we say, *Je l'ai vu très souvent*. *Je lui ai parlé depuis peu*. *Vous êtes venu à propos*. Not, *Je l'ai très souvent vu*. *Je lui ai depuis peu parlé*. *Vous êtes à propos venu*. Yet, in some instances, the ear alone is consulted ; or we say, *je l'avais tout à fait oublié* ; I had quite forgotten it. *Je ne me suis jamais si bien diverti* ; I never diverted myself so well. These variations must be noticed in reading.

I saw your sister *yesterday*.
 She speaks french *very well*.
 She likes reading *very much*.

Je vis hier votre sœur.
 Elle parle *très bien* français.
 Elle aime *fort* la lecture.*

EXERCISE.

I understand french pretty well, 183 but I have not yet learned it
 entendre assez bien, N.B. encore
 long enough to speak it fluently. You pronounce french very
 long-temps assez † 170 62 coulamment. prononcer. très
 well. I wish to learn it (very much.) You must take more pains in
 fort. 181 peine à
 future than you do. I will do every thing that you have recommended
 l'avenir 47 tout ce que recommandé
 to me carefully. Do you not go into the country to-morrow ?
 (o) 55 soigneusement. à demain ?

184. Some *adverbs* may be placed in english, either before or after the verb which they modify ; as, *I often see him*, or *I see him often* ; but the corresponding adverbs must always be placed *after* the verb in french ; as,

I *often* walk alone. Je me promène *souvent* seul.
 I *seldom* go to town. Je vais *rarement* à la ville.
 I *always* go into the country. Je vais *toujours* à la campagne.

EXERCISE.

What is the reason that you so seldom come to see me ? (say, *that*
 82 raison si rarement
you come so seldom, &c.) I sometimes think that you never will come
 quelquefois 190 revenir
 again. You certainly have no reason to think so. I very seldom
 — certainement sujet le 54 rarement
 (go out,) and when I go, my sisters generally come with me, and I
 sortir, sortir, ordinairement 53,
 never can bring them so far as your 208 house ; but I very often think
 190 amener jusque chez N.B. ;
 of you.
 200 58

* The perspicuity of a sentence depends often upon the right placing of the adverbs ; for example, *J'aime beaucoup à marcher*. *J'aime à marcher beaucoup*.

These two sentences, though they are formed with the same words, by changing the place of the adverb *beaucoup*, express two different ideas. *J'aime beaucoup à marcher*, means, I am fond of walking ; *J'aime à marcher beaucoup*, means, I like to walk a great deal.

Again ; *Je ne l'ai pas fait pour vous déplaire* ; and, *Je l'ai fait pour ne pas vous déplaire*, express also different ideas ; the first implies no design ; the second implies one, that of not displeasing. The English, in general, do not pay sufficient attention to the placing of the adverbs.

† The adverb *Assez*, like the other adverbs, is always placed before the adjective or adverb which it modifies ; so say, *enough long*.

REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.*

HOW; QUE, COMBIEN, COMMENT.

185. *How*, denoting admiration, is expressed by *que*, and the adjective or adverb which follows *how*, must be placed after the verb in french; as,

How pretty this is!

Que ceci est joli!

How well it is done!

Qu'il est bien fait!

* A list of adverbial expressions, which can not be expressed literally, as learners are apt to do, some of which are not to be found in the dictionaries;

<i>About,</i>	Environ.	On the ground,	Par terre.
There <i>abouts,</i>	A peu près.	Hand over head,	A corps perdu.
Here <i>abouts,</i>	Ici autour.	Hard by,	Ici près.
Round <i>about,</i>	A l'entour.	Hardly ever,	Presque jamais.
<i>Aloud,</i>	A haute voix.	In haste,	A la hâte.
<i>Amicably,</i>	A l'amiable.	Heartily,	De bon cœur.
<i>Aside,</i>	A côté, à part.	Here and there,	Par ci par là.
On an <i>average,</i>	L'un dans l'autre.	Helter skelter,	Pêle mêle.
<i>Backwards,</i>	En arrière. (falling)	Hitherto,	Jusqu' ici.
<i>Backwards,</i>	A reculons. (walking)	Hourly,	D'heure en heure.
Into the <i>bargain,</i>	Par dessus le marché.	Every hour,	A toute heure.
<i>Betimes,</i>	De bonne heure.	Inadvertently,	Par mégarde.
<i>Better and better,</i>	De mieux en mieux.	Inconsiderately,	Sans y faire attention.
So much the <i>better,</i>	Tant mieux.	To all intents and } purposes,	De fond encomble.
<i>Abreast,</i>	De front.	Largely,	A pleines mains.
<i>By and by,</i>	Tantôt.	Lately,	Depuis peu.
<i>By chance,</i>	Par cas fortuit.	At last;	Enfin.
<i>Cheap,</i>	A bon marché.	At least,	Au moins.
Most <i>commonly.</i>	Presque toujours.	For less,	A moins.
In <i>day time,</i>	De jour.	So much the less,	D'autant moins.
In <i>open day,</i>	En plein jour.	By little and little,	Peu à peu.
<i>Every day,</i>	Touts les jours.	Ever so little,	Tant soit peu.
From <i>day to day.</i>	De jour en jour.	How long,	Jusqu' à quand?
<i>Every other day,</i>	De deux jours l'un.	As long as,	Tant que.
This <i>day week,</i>	Il y a aujourd'hui 8 jours. [huit.	In the same manner,	De même.
This <i>day se'night,</i>	D'aujourd'hui en 15 jours. [quinze.	Through mistake,	Par mégarde.
This <i>day fortnight,</i>	Il y a aujourd'hui 15 jours. [quinze.	More than is necessary.	Plus qu'il n'en faut.
This <i>day month,</i>	D'aujourd'hui en un mois. [mois.	Neither more nor less,	Ni plus ni moins.
<i>Deservedly,</i>	A bon droit.	More and more,	De plus en plus.
<i>Directly,</i>	Tout à l'heure.	Much more so,	A plus forte raison.
In <i>disorder,</i>	A l'abandon.	So much the more,	D'autant plus.
<i>By drops,</i>	Goute à goutte.	At most,	Tout au plus.
<i>Early,</i>	De bon matin.	How much?	Combien?
In <i>good earnest,</i>	Tout de bon.	As much,	Autant.
<i>Empty,</i>	A vide.	So much,	Tant.
In <i>emulation,</i>	A l'envi.	Through ill nature,	Par malice.
That <i>excepted,</i>	A cela près.	Nothing near,	A beaucoup près.
<i>Fairly,</i>	De bonne foi.	Just now,	Tout de suite.
<i>How far,</i>	Jusqu' où.	Now and then,	De tems en tems.
As <i>far as here,</i>	Jusqu' ici.	All at once,	Tout d'un coup.
As <i>far as there,</i>	Jusqu' là.	Opposite,	Vis-à-vis.
<i>Afar off,</i>	De loin.	Purposely,	A dessein, Exprès.
After the <i>fashion,</i>	A la mode.	On purpose,	De propos délibéré.
After the <i>french,</i>	A la française.	To what purpose?	A quoi bon?
The <i>english fashion,</i>	A l' Anglaise.	At random,	A tort et à travers.
<i>At first,</i>	D'abord.	In every respect,	A tous égards.
On the same <i>floor,</i>	De plein pied.	Seasonably,	A propos.
Within a <i>fortnight,</i>	Dans quinze jours.	On both sides,	De part et d'autre.
For <i>fun,</i>	En badinant.	The wrong side out,	A l'envers.
For the <i>future,</i>	A l'avenir.	The wrong side up,	A rebours.
<i>Groping,</i>	A tâtons.	Sooner or later,	Tôt ou tard.
		Soundly,	Comme il faut.
		With all speed,	Au plus vite.

In asking a question, *how* is expressed by *comment*, to denote the manner, and by *combien*, to denote number or quantity ; as,

How will you do that ?

Comment ferez-vous cela ?

How often have you done it ? *Combien* de fois l'avez-vous fait ?

EXERCISE.

How long you have been! How late you come! How glad I
 long terns tard aise
 am to see you! How heartily I thank you! How sweet those
 de bon cœur bon (bb)
 flowers smell! How beautiful those roses are! How shall we go?
 sentir! (bb) !
 How shall we carry our luggage? How shall we know where you
 porter bagage? savoir où
 are? How many people shall we be? How much money have
 229 argent
 you got?
 270

HOW LONG.

COMBIEN, COMBIEN DE TEMS, JUSQU'A QUAND.

186. *How long*, referring to the beginning of time, is expressed by *combien*; referring to the duration, it is expressed by *combien de tems*; and referring to the end, it is expressed by *jusqu'à quand*; as,

How long have you been in France? *Combien* y a-t-il que vous êtes en France?
 Or *Combien de tems* avez-vous été en France?

N. E. Few learners make a distinction between these two ways of expression; yet the ideas which they express are quite different. By the first, *vous êtes en France*, it is understood that the person *is* in France *still*; by the second, *vous avez été en France*, it is understood that the person is *no longer* there.

How long will } *Combien de tems* resterez-vous? i. e. *what length* of time?
 you stay? } *Jusqu'à quand* resterez-vous? i. e. *until what time*?

EXERCISE.

How long have you been learning french? or, how long is
 155

At full speed, :	{ A bride abattue.	Upwards,	En haut.
On a sudden,	{ Ventre à terre.	Unseasonably,	A contre tems.
Step by step,	Tout à coup.	Visibly,	A vue d'œil.
Straight on,	Pas à pas.	With a low voice,	Tout bas.
Thoroughly,	Tout droit.	The wrong way,	A contre sens.
This long time,	A fond.	In a week, [day.	Dans huit jours.
For a long time,	{ De long tems.	It was a week yester-	Il y eut hier 8 jours.
From time to time,	{ Depuis long tems.	It will be a week to-	Il y aura demain 8
One time or other,	De tems en tems.	morrow,	} jours.
To and fro,	Tôt ou tard.	Wherever,	Par tout où.
From top to bottom,	Cà et là.	In no wise,	En nulle manière.
Topsy turvy,	De fond en comble.	Worse and worse,	De pis en pis.
In a trice,	Sens dessus dessous.	So much the worse,	Tant pis.
By turns,	En moins de rien.	A year hence,	Il y a un an. [an.
At every turn, [eye,	Tout à tour.	This day 12 months,	Il y a aujour d'hui un
In the twinkling of an	At tout bout de champ.	Against one's will,	A contre cœur.
Unawares,	En un clin d'œil.	Whether one will or	Bon gré mal gré.
Up and down,	Sans y penser.	Yonder,	[not, Là bas.
	De côté et d'autre.		

it246 since you learn french ? How long do you intend to learn ?
 y a-t-il que ~~246~~ * avoir 125 dessein
 How long will you abuse202 my patience ?
 abuser de

HOW FAR ; COMBIEN, JUSQU'OU.

187. *How far*, meaning *what distance*, is expressed by *combien* ; and when used for *to what distance*, it is expressed by *jusqu'ou* ; as,

How far is it from here ? *Combien y a-t-il d'ici ?*
How far shall we go ? *Jusqu'ou irons-nous ?*

EXERCISE.

How far is your house from here ? or how far is246 it from here to
 your house ? How far is Windsor from London ? How far do you
 intend to go ? How far shall we go to meet263 you ?
 avoir dessein au devant de

HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, LET ; QUELQUE.

188. *However*, *howsoever*, before an adjective, a participle, or an adverb, is expressed by *quelque* with *que*, after the adjective, participle, or adverb, and the following verb in the *subjunctive* ;

However rich she is ; } *Quelque* riche qu'elle soit.
 or *Let* her be ever so rich.

N. B. If the nominative is a noun, it is generally placed after the verb ; as,

However rich her sister is ; } *Quelque* riche que soit sa sœur.
 or *Let* her sister be ever so rich.

EXERCISE.

However learned you are. However diligent she is. However
 learned your master is, &c.
 savant maître ,

QUITE, ENTIRELY ; TOUT.

189. *Quite*, *entirely*, before an adjective, or a participle, are generally expressed by *tout* ; as,

* These two ways of expression are rendered by the latter way in french. By this expression, *Have been learning*, is meant that the person *continues* to learn ; so to express the same idea in french, you must use the present of the verb, and say ; *Vous apprenez*, not *Vous avez appris*, which would mean that the person has *ceased* to learn. Again, *How long have you been in England ?* may be expressed by *Combien de tems avez-vous été en Angleterre ?* or by *Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes en Angleterre ?* The former of these expressions meaning that the person has left England ; the latter meaning that the person is still in England. Learners are very apt to confound these two ideas. See note δ p. 233.

† These two ways of expression must be rendered by the latter way in french,

Those men are *quite* astonished. Ces hommes sont *tout* étonnés.
 Those women are *quite* astonished. Ces femmes sont *tout* étonnées.

EXERCISE.

My shoes are quite (worn out.) My boots are quite worn out. My
 soulier usé 158 botte
 mother is quite astonished (at it.) My boots are quite new. My sis-
 étonné 158 en 55 * neuve.
 ters are quite tired. 158 They are quite ill.
 fatigué. malade.

NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

NO, NOT;	NE—PAS, NE—POINT.†
NO MORE,	} NE—PLUS.
NOT ANY MORE;	
NEVER;	NE—JAMAIS.
BUT LITTLE,	} NE—GUERE.
VERY LITTLE;	
BY NO MEANS;	NE—NULLEMENT.‡

190. The *negative* expressions *ne—pas, ne—point, &c.* form only one negation ; *ne* is always placed *before* the verb, and *pas, point, &c.* like the other adverbs, are placed *after* the verb, when the tense is simple, and *between* the auxiliary and the participle, when it is compound ; as,

I do <i>not</i> like her.	Je <i>ne</i> l'aime <i>pas</i> , or <i>point</i> .
I will <i>not</i> see her <i>any more</i> .	Je <i>ne</i> veux <i>plus</i> la voir.
I will <i>never</i> speak to her again.	Je <i>ne</i> lui reparlerai <i>jamaïs</i> .
You have thought of it <i>but little</i> .	Vous <i>n'y</i> avez <i>guère</i> pensé.

N. B. If the verb which follows *not* is in the infinitive, the

* When the adjective which follows *tout* is feminine, and begins with a consonant, we make it agree in gender and number with the noun ; as,

This house is <i>quite</i> new,	Cette maison est <i>toute</i> neuve.
These women are <i>quite</i> ugly.	Ces femmes sont <i>toutes</i> laides.

But, as this is done solely for the sake of melody, it would be better, especially when the noun is plural, to make use of *Tout à fait*, since the hearer is sometimes at a loss, whether *toutes* means *quite* or *all*.

† *Pas, point*, are used indiscriminately, except in sentences of interrogation, when, according to the french academy, *point* intimates a *doubt*, and *pas* a kind of *affirmation* ; as,

N'avez-vous point pris mon livre ? means, Have *not* you taken my book ? And
N'avez-vous pas pris mon livre ? means, You have taken my book, have *not* you ?

Perhaps it would be better to give another turn to the sentence than to give these different properties to two monosyllables which may be so easily mistaken one for the other.

Some grammarians, and even the french academy, make several other distinctions between *pas, point* ; viz. that *point* means *not at all, never*, and denies more strongly than *pas* ; that *pas* is said of something momentary, and *point* of things that are permanent ; so *Il ne lit pas*, means, He does not read now ; and *Il ne lit point*, means, He never reads ; these distinctions seem to me merely ideal ; I have endeavoured to ascertain them, and I have not found any author who has observed them ; the ear alone is consulted. There are in our language, as well as in our manners, trifles which reason does not scruple to overlook.

‡ *Mot* and *goute* are also *negative* expressions, but used only with the verb *dire* and *voir* ; as,

Il ne dit mot ; He did *not* say a word. *Il ne voit goutte* ; He does *not* see at all.

two negative words *ne—pas*, or *point*, *ne—plus*, *ne—jamais*, may be, and are generally placed *together* before the verb ; as,

I am determined *not* to see her. J'ai résolu de *ne pas* la voir.
Not to speak to her *any more*. De *ne plus* lui parler.
Never to write to her again. De *ne jamais* lui récrire.

EXERCISE.

I do not like that man. I never found so much deceit. He never
 aimer 136 tant tromperie.
 keeps his word. I know him but little. I will not deal any
 tenir parole. faire d'affaires
 more with him. I would advise you not to deal with that
 58 conseiller faire d'affaires
 man. He is accused of never keeping his word. I think you will do
 92 accuser tenir 221 faire
 well not to trust 202 him any more.
 vous fier à 58

191. Without a verb, *no* is expressed by *non*, and *not* by *non pas* ; as,

Will you go to town to-morrow ? Irez-vous demain à la ville ?
No ; I will go, but *not* to-morrow. *Non* ; j'y irai, mais *non pas* demain.

EXERCISE.

Do you not believe what he says ? No, I do not 70 ; not that the
 croire 81 , N.B. ;
 thing is 145 impossible, but because it is not likely. Will you not
 chose soit , 62 vraisemblable.
 speak to him any more ? No ; not before I know whether that is true
 (o) 54 ; 218 savoir 225 89 vrai
 or not.

*

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

192. With the verb *can*, rendered by the conditional tense of *savoir*, instead of the present of *pouvoir*,† and with *why*, rendered by *que*, instead of *pour quoi*, *not* is expressed by *ne* only before the verb ; as,

I can *not* do it. Je *ne puis pas*, or je *ne saurais* le faire.
Why does he *not* do it himself ? Que *ne* le fait-il lui même ?

N. B. We also generally suppress *pas*, *point*, with the verbs *oser*, *to dare* ; *cesser*, *to cease* ; and with *savoir*, *to know* ; when it is followed by *si*, *où*, *que*, *quand*, *quel*, *combien*, *comment* ; as,

* At the end of a sentence, *not* must be expressed by *non*, without *pas*.

† The present tense of the verb *can* used negatively, may be expressed two ways ;

I can *not*, Je *ne puis pas*, more frequently, Je *ne saurais*.
 He can *not*, Il *ne peut pas*, Il *ne saurait*, &c.

Why may also be expressed by *que* or *pourquoi*, in the following way :

Que *ne* venez-vous à tems ?
 or Pourquoi *ne* venez-vous *pas* à tems ? Why do *not* you come in time ?

I dare not do it. Je n'ose le faire.
 I do not know what to say to her. Je ne sais que lui dire.
 She is incessantly plaguing me. Elle ne cesse de me tourmenter.

EXERCISE.

Why does he not do like other people? Why does he not pay
 Que faire les autres — 39 Que payer
 what he owes when he has money? He spends his money, and then
 81 devoir 271 pu:s
 he says that he can not pay other people. I can not pay other people, if
 saurait 120 — 39 saurais 120 — 39,
 other people do not pay me. I dare not speak to her. She does not
 120 — 39 oser (o) 54
 cease scolding 154 me. I dare not (go out) for fear of displeasing
 gronder sortir
 her 54. I do not know what to do. (There are) I do not know how
 lui. 83 faire. 246 combien
 many people at the door.
 229 à

193. *Not*, after the verb take care, *prendre garde*, is not expressed in french, when the verb which follows it is in the infinitive, and it is expressed by *ne*, if the following verb is in any other mood; as,

Take care of falling, or *not* to fall. Prenez garde de tomber.
 Take care that he does *not* fall. Prenez garde qu'il ne tombe.

EXERCISE.

Take care not to spoil it. Take care that he does not spoil it.
 Prenez garde de * gâter
 I will take care not to let him (go out). I will take care that he
 * laisser sortir.
 does not go out. Take care not to let yourself (be cheated) by
 * laisser vous 54 tromper
 those people. Take care that those people do not cheat you.
 (bb) 229 229 tromper .

194. The verb *empêcher*, to hinder, prevent, keep from, requires *ne* before the following verb, if that verb is not in the infinitive; so we say;

Je l'empêcherai de jouer; } I will hinder him from playing.
 or J'empêcherai qu'il ne joue. }

EXERCISE.

I will hinder him from (going out.) That will not prevent me from
 sortir 154 (bb)
 seeing him. I can hinder you both 222 from going out, and from
 154 N.E.
 seeing each other, if I choose.
 vous voir 121 , vouloir.

* *Prendre garde*, in this sense, meaning to *Guard from or against*, if the negative NOT were expressed in french, it would be the same as if you said in english; *Guard from not spoiling it*. As for the *ne* which is used after *Prendre garde*, *Empêcher*, *Craindre*, *Avoir peur*, &c. when we put the following verb in the subjunctive, it seems to be the *ne* or *quin* which the Latins used in similar instances, and which, without any apparent reason for it, has been introduced into the french language.

195. The verbs *craindre*, *avoir peur*, *appréhender*; to fear, to be afraid; the conjunctions *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, *lest*, for fear that, require *ne* before the following verb, if we fear that the action will happen* then the verb has no negation in english; as,

I am afraid that he will come. Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne.

Come in, lest he should see you. Entrez, de peur qu'il *ne* vous voie.

But *ne* is left out, if the following verb is in the infinitive; as,

I am afraid of spoiling it. Je crains, or j'ai peur de le gâter.

If we fear that the action *will not happen*, there is a negation in english, and it must be expressed by the corresponding negation in french; as,

I fear he will come *no more*. Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne *plus*.

I am afraid he *has not* seen me. J'ai peur qu'il *ne* m'ait *pas* vu.

N. B. The verbs *nier*, to deny, and *douter*, to doubt, used negatively, the conjunction *à moins que*, unless, and *Si* in the sense of *à moins que*, require also *ne* before the following verb; as,

He does not deny having seen her. Il *ne* nie pas qu'il *ne* l'ait vue.

I do not doubt but she will come. Je *ne* doute pas qu'elle *ne* vienne.

EXERCISE.

I (am afraid) somebody has seen us⁵⁵. Let us not stay here for
 craindre 221 95 146 vu¹⁵⁹ — — rester
 fear some misfortune should happen to us. Go with that lady lest²¹⁸
 218 quelque 148 54 Aller de peur que
 she should (lose her way). She is afraid that her mother should find
 s'égarer 143 146 148
 her here. I was afraid of hurting¹⁵⁴ you. I did not do it, for fear
 140 blesser 136 faire, de peur
 of displeasing¹⁵⁴ your mother. We were afraid of doing wrong. I
 de déplaire 202 mal.
 am afraid nobody will come. I am afraid they have not seen us. Let
 221 97 146 221 146 55 —
 us not go further⁴¹, for fear we should not have time to (come back)
 — loin, 218 — 148 revenir.
 for dinner. I do not deny that I have been there sometimes. He
 145 y 55 quelquefois.
 does not deny that he has asked your cousin. He does not doubt but
 145 cousine. que
 he will obtain her. I have no doubt but they will be married²⁶¹
 obtenir 145 doute que 145 N.B.
 soon. I will not (go out) unless²¹⁸ it be fine. I will not go, unless
 135 sortir à moins que 240 70, 218
 you come with me.
 58.

* We fear that an action *will happen*, when we *do not wish* for that action; and we fear that it *will not happen*, when we *wish* for it; so when I say;

I am afraid it will rain, I mean that I *do not wish* for rain.

I am afraid it will not rain, I mean that I *wish* that there should be rain.

196. *Il y a—que, It is—since; de puis que, since*, require *ne* before the verb which follows them, when we wish to denote that no action has taken place since the period we mention* then the verb may also have a negation in english;

It is long since I have seen him; } Il y a long tems que je ne l'ai vu.
 or I have *not* seen him this long while.

But *ne* is not required, if there has been an action, and no negation could be used in english; as,

It is not long since I have seen him; } Il n'y a pas long tems que je
 or I *have seen* him not long since. *l'ai vu.*

EXERCISE.

It is long since I have met you. It is more than three months
 † rencontrer 55 plus 48 moins
 since I saw you. How have you been 241 since I had the pleasure to
 † 136 55. 185 237 se porter 136 plaisir
 see you? It is a month since he is gone. Have you seen him since
 246 mois † partir.
 he is returned? He has been at home this fortnight †
 265 au logis 246 quinze jours.

197. The *negative* particle *ne* is required before the verb which follows *autre*, other; *autrement*, otherwise; as,

He is quite *another* than I thought. Il est tout autre que je *ne* pensais.
 He speaks *otherwise* than he thinks. Il parle autrement qu'il *ne* pense.

After the comparative words *plus, mieux, meilleur, moins*, see 47 rule; as also with *personne, qui que ce soit*, see 97 rule; *rien, quoi que ce soit*, 99; *aucun*, 100; *nul, pas un*, 101; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, 124.

N. B. *Ne* is also used after the comparative adjective *meilleur*, and the adverbs *plus, moins, mieux*, see rule 47; and with several other words mentioned under their respective heads, viz. *personne, qui que ce soit*, rule 97; *rien, quoi que ce soit*, rule 99; *aucun*, rule 100; *nul, pas un*, rule 101; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, rule 124.

EXERCISE.

These things are quite different from what you say. Do you
 18 189 autres — que

* The reason of this difference is that the English speak with reference to the *last action* that passed; the French, on the contrary, speak with reference to the time in which there has not been *any action*, and the idea is the same as the English would express by these words; *I have not met you for this long time. I have not seen you for more than three months.*

† Observe that *Since* after *Il y a*, is expressed by *Que* only, not by *Depuis que*.

† Turn; *It is a fortnight since he is at home*; see note * page 303.

never speak otherwise than you think? I know people who often
 act otherwise than they say.
 agir

198. *But*, used in the sense of the adverb *only*, in expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after it; as,

She is *but* fifteen (i. e. *only* 15). Elle n'a *que* quinze ans.
 I have seen her *but* once. Je ne l'ai vue *qu'*une fois.

EXERCISE.

We were but six people, or only six people²²⁹ at table. We
 drank but four bottles, or only four bottles of wine. We were but a
 few miles, or only a few miles from (the place). We met nobody
 but a woman, or only a woman.

199. *But* is sometimes used in the sense of a relative pronoun, and is then expressed by *qui ne*, with the following verb in the *subjunctive*; as,

There are few people *but* can do it, i. e. *who* can not do it.
 Il y a peu de gens *qui ne* puissent le faire.

EXERCISE.

(There is) no body but derives, or who does not derive some
 advantage from study. I have not found a man but thinks so, or
 who does not think so. There is no man but regrets the loss of
 time, or who does not regret the loss of time.

*Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing Rules.**

Now, I am ready. Let us (set out) immediately. Let us walk
 gently. (What is the use) of walking so fast? I came here to
 enjoy a pleasant walk, not to tire myself. I have no more desire
 to tire myself than you have; only I (am afraid) that we shall
 be there too late. We are never there in time. We generally come
 either too soon or too late. It is very unpleasant to keep people
 waiting§ (in that way.) Do they live still in that house where

* See note *, p. 182.

† Turn; *Why to walk so fast?*

‡ *No more*, meaning *No longer*, is expressed by *Ne* before the verb, and by *Plus* after; but when *More* is used as an adverb of quantity, meaning *Greater*, the negative *Pas* must be added to the sentence, and we say *Pas plus*.

§ Turn; *To keep waiting in that way people*, because *Keep* and *Waiting* expressing together only one idea, they can not be separated.

we saw them last? No, they have removed to another house
 la dernière fois? , 238 aller demeurer
 a little further in the country. How far shall we go? How far
 un peu plus loin 230
 is it from our house? 209? How long shall we stay? How you like to
 N.B. rester
 ask useless³² questions! Do you not know it, as well as I do? Take
 faire inutile savoir 43 43 52 —
 care not to fall into this ditch. Take care lest this post falls upon
 tomber fossé. que poteau
 you. Do not go (so near) lest²¹⁸ somebody should see you.
 approcher tant de peur que 95 148
 I only (am afraid) that something⁹⁸ bad should happen to you. Will
 craindre (cc) mal 146 arriver 148 54
 your cousin be there? I do not think he will¹⁴⁵. He dares not
 134 y 54 221 y 70 soit. oser
 come near the house. He fears that they⁹⁰ would turn him out.
 (approcher de) 146 N.B. mettre à la porte.
 It is near two years since they⁹⁰ have (heard²⁷⁵ from him.) Is he not
 246 près de 233 que N.B. reçu de ses nouvelles.
 returned yet from his journey? No, he is not⁷⁰. It is feared that
 265 encore voyage? , 91
 some misfortune has¹⁴⁶ happened to him. I (am afraid) he will never
 quelque 238 arriver 55 craindre 221
 return²³⁵. I fear the report of his death will (prove true.) Never
 146 221 bruit se vérifier 146
 believe such reports. I (dare say)²² he is²⁴¹ well enough. I do not
 croire de tels bruit je ne doute pas 145 *
 doubt but he will be here (very soon.) If you will come with me,
 douter qu' 145 bientôt. 144
 we shall go and meet him. Go that way, and I will go this,
 (nn) 273 par là, par ici,
 for fear²¹⁸ we should miss¹⁴⁸ him on the road. I long to see him.
 de peur que perdre en — chemin. see p. 163.
 It is long since I have seen him. I told you right. There he is²⁴⁷.
 246 que 136 bien. N.B.
 So¹⁸⁴ you are returned (at last.) How happy I am to see you again!
 Donc 265 enfin. ravi revoir —
 How have you been since I saw you? We (were afraid) you
 237 241 depuis que 136 craindre 221
 were lost. I began to fear that we should never see¹⁴⁶ you again.
 146 perdre. 138 149 —
 Why did you not write to us? Why did you not let us know²⁴⁸ where
 136 136 N.B. où
 you were, and how you were? I (was afraid²²¹) you would be offended
 , 241 140 146 fâché
 at me. What! offended at you? How could you think so? How
 200 83 ! pouvoir le 54
 often have I told you how glad we were to see you, or to hear²⁷⁵
 de fois † 55 , entendre
 from you? We were every day talking of you. We never met
 de vos nouvelles? — tous les jours 155 58 139
 with a traveller, without enquiring¹⁵⁴ after you. You certainly have
 201 voyageur, s'informer 200

* See note † page 300.

† Turn; *How many times &c.*

always been (very kind) to me, and I sincerely thank you (for it.)
 eu bien des bontés pour 58, en 54.

How long is it since you left this country? How long have you
 246 * 136 230

been absent? How far have you been? How long do you intend
 absent? avoir dessein

to stop? I have only been absent about two years, and I have not
 rester? environ ,

been so far as you imagine. How fast the time goes! Methinks 22
 loin 42 s'imaginer. vite passer Il me semble

it is only the other day that we were at R. together. Are you going
 ce 140

to leave us already? Can not you stay a little longer? It is so
 quitter déjà rester plus long tems? 246

long since we have had the pleasure of your company. I should like
 que

to stay (very much,) but I am afraid my horse will not stand still.
 beaucoup, 221 146 rester tranquille.

(Take hold of) the bridle, lest 218 it should go 148. Take care not
 Tenir — bride, de peur que s'en aller, † garde

to go (too near.) Take care that it does not kick you. Do not
 en approcher trop. (bb) N.B. frapper.

go (so near,) lest it should bite you. Would it not be better
 approcher tant, 218 mordre valoir mieux

to put it into the stable? It is not worth while. I can not stop.
 213 écurie? Cela — en valoir la peine. rester.

Our friends want to go to the play to-night, and they will not go,
 200 comédie † 235 , ϕ ,

unless I go with them. You perhaps can come with us. I would
 218 58 peut-être 58

go, if I was not afraid that it will be too late, when the play is over.
 ϕ, 146 , 142 finie.

You need not stay till the end of the play. You may go as
 avoir besoin de rester jusqu'à fin 178 s'en aller † 43

soon as you like 142. Come; (make up your mind); for, unless we
 43 vouloir. Allons; se déterminer; 140 car, 218

go immediately, I am almost sure we shall be too late to see the
 partir tout à l'heure, presque 221 arriver 170

beginning of the play. Go: I will follow you. Take care not to
 commencement ; || suivre

stop. Take care that he does not stop. We are just in time. Now,
 s'arrêter. à ,

what do you think of the players? They are better than I thought.
 comédien? (E) p. 56

They have acted better than I expected. I hope you will come
 jouer (E) p. 56 221 y revenir

again soon. I do not think I shall 70. I have but a short time to stay,
 — bientôt. 145 N.B. — peu de 169 rester,

and have a (great many) things to do. How impatient you seem
 53 — beaucoup 169

to go! Can not you stay (a few days longer?) No, I can not. Now,
 s'en aller † encore quelques jours? , 70 ,

I want to find my sister, and I do not know where to look for her.
 200 , où 201

* See note † p. 303. † See N. B. p. 102. ‡ See note † p. 216. ϕ See note ** p. 286.

‡ See note * page 228.

I am afraid she is gone¹⁵⁸. I am afraid she has not seen me. If you
 221 146 partir. 221 146 55
 go (that way,) I do not doubt but you will find her. There are few
 par là, que, 246 peu
 people here but know her. I think I see her. Yes; here²⁴⁷ she is.
 229 199 221 ; N.B.

CHAPTER VIII.

PREPOSITION.

Prepositions are certain monosyllables added to *nouns*, *verbs*, and adjectives in order to extend their meaning to the word which follows them; as,

I came *from* Paris, *through* Canterbury, *to* London.

The words *from*, *through*, *to*, which express a relation between the verb came and the substantives which follow it, are called *prepositions*.

The *prepositions** are in french;

A	At, To.	Excepté,	} Save, But, Except.
Après,	After.	Hormis,	
Avec,	With.	Moyennant,	For, By the Means of.
Avant,	Before.	Malgré,	Against, In Spite of.
Chez,	At the House of.	Nonobstant,	Notwithstanding.
Contre,	Against.	Outre,	Besides.
Dans,	In, Into.	Par,	By, Through.
De,	Of, From, By.	Parmi,	Among, Amongst.
Dès,	From.	Pendant,	During, For,
Depuis,	Since, From, For	Pour,	For, In Order to.
Devant,	Before.	Sans,	Without.
Derrière,	Behind.	Selon,	} According to.
Durant,	During, For.	Suivant,	
En,	In, Into.	Sous,	Under, Beneath.
Entre,	Between, Betwixt.	Sur,	On, Upon, Over.
Envers,	To, Towards.	Touchant,	Concerning, About.
Environ,	About.	Vers,	Towards, About.

* The following expressions are found in several french grammars, and even in the dictionary of the french academy, in the class of prepositions:

<i>Auprès de,</i>	Near, by, close to.	à	<i>Force de,</i>	By dint of.
<i>Autour de,</i>	Round.		<i>Jusqu'à,</i>	To, till, until.
à <i>Cause de,</i>	On account of.		<i>Hors de,</i>	Out of.
à <i>Côté de,</i>	By, by the side of.	au	<i>Lieu de,</i>	Instead of, in the place
en <i>Deça de,</i>	On this side of.		<i>Loin de,</i>	Far from. [of.
au <i>Dela de,</i>	On that side of.	le	<i>Long de,</i>	Along.
au <i>Dessous de,</i>	} Under, below,	à	<i>Moins de,</i>	Under, for less.
par <i>Dessous,</i>		au	<i>Moyen de,</i>	By the means of.
au <i>Dessus de,</i>	} Above, over, upon.		<i>Près de,</i>	} Near to, nigh, by.
par <i>Dessus,</i>			<i>Proche de,</i>	
au <i>Devant de,</i>	} Before, in the fore part of.	par	<i>Rapport à,</i>	} With respect to.
par <i>Devant,</i>			à	
au <i>Derrière de</i>	Behind, in the back of.	au	<i>Travers de,</i>	} Across, through.
à <i>l'égard de,</i>	As to, with respect to.		<i>Vis à vis de,</i>	

And a few others which I have not thought proper to notice, because they cer-

Difference between the french and english prepositions.

200. The greatest difficulty attending the prepositions, is, that they are not always expressed by the words which correspond to each other in both languages; *i. e. of, from*, the corresponding preposition of which is *de*, are sometimes expressed by *à*; *at, to*, the corresponding preposition of which is *à*, are sometimes expressed by *de*; *by, for*, sometimes expressed by *de*, and sometimes by *à*, &c. which no rule can sufficiently explain; therefore, having found it impossible to make rules sufficiently explicit for the use of the prepositions, I have subjoined a list of all the *verbs* and *adjectives* which require a preposition different from the preposition which generally corresponds with it in english, by means of which the learner may always remove any doubt he may have respecting the prepositions.*

Agree	<i>about,</i>	Convenir	<i>de</i> ;	Nous sommes convenus <i>de</i> ceci.
Carry	<i>about,</i>	Porter	<i>sur</i> ;	Je ne porte pas d'argent <i>sur</i> moi.
Concerned	<i>about,</i>	Inquiet	<i>de</i> ;	Je suis inquiet <i>de</i> sa santé.
Uneasy	<i>about,</i>			
Discourse	<i>about,</i>	Discourir	<i>de</i> ;	Nous discourons <i>de</i> nos affaires.
Easy	<i>about,</i>	s' Informer	<i>sur</i> ;	Je suis tranquille <i>sur</i> cela.
Inquire	<i>about,</i>		<i>de</i> ;	Informez-vous <i>de</i> son retour.
Talk	<i>about,</i>	Parler	<i>de</i> ;	Parlons d'autres choses.
Greedy	<i>after,</i>	Avide	<i>de</i> ;	Il est trop avide <i>de</i> richesses.
Inquire	<i>after,</i>	s' Informer	<i>de</i> ;	Il s'informe souvent <i>de</i> vous.
Thirst	<i>after,</i>	Altéré	<i>de</i> ;	Il est altéré <i>de</i> sang.
Angry	<i>at</i>	Fâche		<i>contre</i> ; Etre fâché <i>contre</i> quelqu'un.
Offended	<i>at</i>			
Vexed	<i>at</i>			
Angry	<i>at</i>	Fâché	<i>de</i> ;	Etre fâché <i>de</i> quelque chose.
Offended	<i>at</i>			
Vexed	<i>at</i>			

tainly do not belong to this class. But these words are so far from being prepositions, that it is only by the means of the preposition *de* or *à*, that they can be connected with the word which follows them. It is evident that they are Nouns, preceded and followed as you see, by an Article, or by a Preposition, and coming under the rules that have been given on nouns. According to the french academy, some of these words are both Prepositions and Adverbs. They are Prepositions when they govern a substantive after them, and they are Adverbs when they are used absolutely without a substantive. This distinction is right, but its application is not always so; for example, *J'étais à côté de la porte*, I was by the side of the door; here *à côté* is a Preposition. *Il était sur la porte*, et *j'étais à côté*; He was on the door, and I was by the side of it; here *à côté*, is an Adverb. With due respect to the french academy, I must say that *à côté*, in these instances, seems to me of the same nature as the substantive *side*, which represents it in english. Certain it is, that these words called Prepositions are all derived from Nouns or Verbs. If then our poverty of expression obliged us to have recourse to this benevolent family, I think their generosity should not be abused, and their nature changed without a necessity which, in these instances, does not seem to exist.

* Some grammarians have endeavoured to analyze the different relations which the prepositions have with the words which they connect: so, according to them, all verbs and adjectives expressing *desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, forgetfulness, care, fear, guilt, innocence, fulness, emptiness, plenty, want, measure, dimension*, require *DE*; the verbs and adjectives which express *submission, relation, pleasure, displeasure, duty, resistance, opposition, facility, difficulty, likeness, inclination, aptness, fitness, advantage, profit*, require *A*; but these terms are so indefinite, and notwithstanding their latitude, they leave so great a chasm in the field of prepositions, that I have not met with any person who has derived the least advantage from them.

Astonished	at,	Etonné	de ;	as Je ne suis pas étonné <i>de cela</i> .
Blush	at,	Rougir	de ;	Elle rougit <i>de sa folie</i> .
Exasperated	at,	Outré	de ;	Il fut outré <i>de ce discours</i> .
Grieve	at,	s' Affliger	de ;	Il s'afflige <i>de sa perte</i> .
Laugh	at,	Rire	de ;	Il rit <i>or se moque de tout</i> .
Laugh	at,	se Moquer	de ;	Il se moque <i>de tout le monde</i> .
Rejoice	at,	s' Réjouir	de ;	Je me réjouis <i>de votre succès</i> .
Scandalised	at,	Scandaliser	de ;	Je fus scandalisé <i>de son action</i> .
Smile	at,	Sourire	de ;	Elle sourit <i>de ma confusion</i> .
Surprised	at,	Surpris	de ;	Je ne suis pas surpris <i>de cela</i> .
Wonder	at,	Etonné	de ;	Je n' <i>en</i> suis pas étonné.
Followed	by,	Suivi	de ;	Il était suivi <i>de ses gens</i> .
Gain	by, }	Gagner	à ;	Il n' a rien gagné <i>à cela</i> .
Get	by, }			
Preceded	by,	Précédé	de ;	Le souper fut précédé <i>d'un bal</i> .
Profit	by,	Profiter	de ;	Il n'a pas profité <i>de vos leçons</i> .
Answer	for,	Répondre	de ;	Repondez-vous <i>de lui ? de cela ?</i>
Blame	for,	Blâmer	de ;	Je le blâme <i>de ses défauts</i> .
Bless	for,	Bénir	de ;	Béniſſons-le <i>de sa bonté</i> .
Care	for,	se Soucier	de ;	Je ne me soucie pas <i>de lui</i> .
Chastise	for,	Châtier	de ;	Il sera châtié <i>de sa malice</i> .
Console	for,	Consoler	de ;	Consolez-le <i>de sa perte</i> .
Design	for,	Destiner	à ;	A quoi le destinez-vous ?
Fit	for,	Propre	à ;	A quoi cela est-il propre ?
Good	for,	Bon	à ;	Cela n'est bon <i>à rien</i> .
Grieve	for,	s' Affliger	de ;	Il est affligé <i>de ses fautes</i> .
Obliged	for,	Obligé	de ;	Je lui suis obligé <i>de sa lettre</i> .
Pity	for,	Plaindre	de ;	Je le plains <i>de sa faiblesse</i> .
Praise	for,	Louer	de ;	On le loua <i>de sa candeur</i> .
Provide	for,	Pourvoir	à ;	Qui pourvoie <i>à ses besoins ?</i>
Punish	for,	Punir	de ;	Il sera puni <i>de sa témérité</i> .
Sorry	for,	Fâché	de ;	Je suis fâché <i>de son malheur</i> .
Sufficient	for,	Suffire	à ;	Cela ne <i>lui*</i> suffit pas.
Thank	for,	Remercier	de ;	Remerciez-le <i>de ses bontés</i> .
Borrow	from,	Emprunter	à ;	Il l'a emprunté <i>à votre père</i> .
Conceal	from,	Cacher	à ;	Né le cachez pas <i>à votre ami</i> .
Escape	from,	Echapper	de ;	Echapper <i>d'un endroit</i> .
Escape	from,	Echapper	à ;	Echapper <i>à une personne</i> .
Hear	from,	Ouir dire	à ;	Je l'ai oui dire <i>à mon père</i> .
Take	from,	Oter	à ;	Ne l'ôtez pas <i>à cet enfant</i> .
Take	from,	Prendre	à ;	Il le <i>lui*</i> a pris <i>or ôté</i> .
Acquiesce	in,	Acquiescer	à ;	J'acquiesce <i>à votre demande</i> .
Interested	in,	s' Intéresser	à ;	Je m'intéresse <i>à son bien-être</i> .
Delight	in,	se Plaire	à ;	Il se plaît <i>au jardinage</i> .
Dexterous	in,	Adroit	à ;	Il est adroit <i>aux exercices</i> .
Glorify	in,	se Glorifier	de ;	Il se glorifie <i>de ses richesses</i> .
Pride	in,	s' Enorgueillir	de ;	Il s'enorgueillit <i>de sa naissance</i> .
Ask	of,	Demander	à ;	Demandez-le <i>à cet homme</i> .
Sensible	of,	Sensible	à ;	Il est très sensible <i>au froid</i> .
Think	of,†	Penser	à ;	Avez-vous pensé <i>à moi ?</i>
Think	of,	Songer	à ;	Vous ne songez <i>à rien</i> .
Think	on,	Penser	à ;	Avez-vous pensé <i>à mon affaire ?</i>
Have pity	on,	Avoir pitié	de ;	Vous n'avez pitié <i>de personne</i> .
Play	on,	Jouer	de ;	Joue-t-il <i>de quelqu'instrument</i> .
Triumph	over,	Triompher	de ;	Il a triomphé <i>de ses ennemis</i> .
Pretend	to,	se Piquer	de ;	Il se pique <i>de générosité</i> .
Agree	upon,	Convenir	de ;	Convenons <i>de quelque chose</i> .
Call	upon,	Passer	chez ;	Quand passerez-vous <i>chez moi ?</i>
Congratulate	upon,	Féliciter	de ;	Je vous félicite <i>de votre retour</i> .
Depend	upon,	Dépendre	de ;	Vous ne dépendez pas <i>de lui</i> .
Feed	upon,	se Nourrir	de ;	Il se nourrit <i>de pain et de lait</i> .
Impose	upon,	en Imposer	à ;	Il en impose <i>aux gens</i> .
Live	upon,	Vivre	de ;	Il vit <i>de fruit et de légumes</i> .

* Observe that the *preposition à* is implied in *LUI*, which means *to him*. See table of the pronouns, page 60.

† When *think* is used in the sense of *to have an opinion*, *of* is expressed by *de*, not by *à*; as,

What do you think *of* that ? *Que pensez-vous de cela ?* not, *à cela ?*

Prevail	upon,	Persuader	à ;	as Je lui* persuadai de s'en aller.
Seize	upon,	se Saisir	de ;	On se saisit aussitôt de lui.
Smile	upon,	Sourire	à ;	Il souriait à ses amis.
Take	upon,	se Charger	de ;	Il s'est chargé de cette affaire.
Abound	with,	Abonder	en ;	La France abonde en fruit.
Acquainted	with,	Connu	de ;	Je ne suis pas connu de lui.
Adorn	with,	Orner	de ;	Une chambre ornée de tableaux.
Angry	with,	Fâché	contre ;	Il est très fâché contre vous.
Amuse	with,	Amuser	de ;	Il l'amusait de promesses.
Animated	with,	Animé	de ;	Il est animé de zèle.
Armed	with,	Armé	de ;	Il était armé d'un pistolet.
Bathe	with,	Baigner	de ;	Elle le baigna de ses larmes.
Charge	with,	Accuser	de ;	On l'accuse de trahison.
Charmed	with,	Charmé	de ;	Il est charmé de ses manières.
Compare	with,	Comparer	à ;	Comparez-vous ceci à cela ?
Comply	with,	Condescendre	à ;	Il condescend à ses caprices.
Contented	with,	Content	de ;	Je ne suis pas content de cela.
Cover	with,	Couvrir	de ;	Il est couvert de poussière.
Delighted	with,	Charmé	de ;	Il fut charmé de son esprit.
Die	with,	Mourir	de ;	Je meurs de faim, de soif.
Disgusted	with,	Dégoûté	de ;	Je suis dégoûté du monde.
Dispense	with,	Dispenser	de ;	Dispensez-moi de cela.
Displeased	with,	Mécontent	de ;	Je suis mécontent de lui.
Do	with,	Faire	de ;	Que fera-t-on de cet homme ?
Embellish	with,	Embellir	de ;	Un jardin embelli de fleurs.
Endue	with,	Douer	de ;	Il n'est doué d'aucun esprit.
Enflame	with,	Enflamer	de ;	Il était enflammé de colère.
Feed	with,	Nourrir	de ;	On le nourrit de pain et d'eau.
Fill	with,	Emplir	de ;	Emplissez votre verre de vin.
Glut	with,	Assouvir	de ;	Il est assouvi de carnage.
In love	with,	Amoureux	de ;	Il est amoureux de cette fille.
Load	with,	Charger	de ;	Il est chargé de butin.
Meddle	with,	se Mêler	de ;	Mélez-vous de vos affaires.
Moved	with,	Touché	de ;	Il fut touché de compassion.
Overjoyed	with,	Ravi	de ;	Il fut ravi de cette nouvelle.
Overwhelm	with,	Accabler	de ;	Il est accablé de chagrin.
Part	with,	se Défaire	de ;	Il s'est défait de son cheval.
Perish	with,	Périr	de ;	Il périt de faim et de misère.
Pleased	with,	Content	de ;	Elle n'est pas contente de lui.
Prevail	with,	Persuader	à ;	Persuadez-lui de le faire.
Provide	with,	Fournir	de ;	Ils fournissent l'armée de blé.
Provided	with,	Pourvu	de ;	Il est bien pourvu d'habits.
Puffed up	with,	Enflé	de ;	Il est tout enflé d'orgueil.
Refresh	with,	se Rafraichir	de ;	Se rafraichir d'un verre de vin.
Satiated	with,	Rassasié	de ;	Il est rassasié de plaisirs.
Satisfied	with,	Satisfait	de ;	Il n'est pas satisfait de cela.
Set	with,	Garnir	de ;	Une boîte garnie de diamants.
Sport	with,	se Jouer	de ;	Elle se joue de sa crédulité.
Store	with,	Munir	de ;	La place est munie de provisions.
Struck	with,	Frappé	de ;	Il fut frappé d'étonnement.
Surrounded	with,	Entouré	de ;	Il était entouré de flatteurs.
Swarm	with,	Fourmiller	de ;	Le pays fourmille de voleurs.
Taken up	with,	Occupé	de ;	Il est trop occupé de lui-même.
Tax	with,	Taxer	de ;	On le taxe de sédition.
Threaten	with,	Menacer	de ;	On le menaça de la mort.
Tire	with,	Ennuyer	de ;	Il est ennuyé de ces choses.
Tormented	with,	Tourmenté	de ;	Il est tourmenté de remords.
Transported	with,	Transporté	de ;	Elle est transportée de joie.
Do	without,	se Passer	de ;	Il ne peut pas se passer d'elle.

* See note * page 314.

201. Sometimes a verb requires a *preposition* after it in english, and will not admit of it in french; such are,

Look	<i>at</i> ;	Look at that man ;	Regardez cet homme.
Ask	<i>for</i> ;	He asks for you ;	Il vous demande.
Buy	<i>for</i> ;	I bought this for a penny ;	J'ai acheté ceci un sou.
Go	<i>for</i> ;	Go for your book ;	Allez chercher votre livre.
Look	<i>for</i> ;	Look for it ;	Cherchez-le, <i>not</i> , pour lui.
Sell	<i>for</i> ;	I have sold it for two pence ;	Je l'ai vendu deux sous.
Stay	<i>for</i> ;	Stay for me ;	Attendez-moi, <i>not</i> , pour moi.
Wait	<i>for</i> ;	Do not wait for me ;	Ne m'attendez pas.
Wish	<i>for</i> ;	I wish for your company ;	Je souhaite votre compagnie.
Accept	<i>of</i> ;	Please to accept of this ;	Daignez accepter ceci.
Admit	<i>of</i> ;	He will not admit of that ;	Il n'admettra pas cela.
Approve	<i>of</i> ;	Do you approve of it ?	L'approuvez-vous ?
Beg	<i>of</i> ;	I beg of you to see her ;	Je vous prie de la voir.
Ignorant	<i>of</i> ;	She was quite ignorant of it ;	Elle l'ignorait tout à fait.
Tyrannise	<i>over</i> ;	She tyrannises over me ;	Elle me tyrannise.
Listen	<i>to</i> ;	Listen to me ;	Ecoutez-moi, <i>not</i> à moi.
Look	<i>upon</i> ;	Look upon me as a friend ;	Regardez-moi comme ami.
Prevail	<i>upon</i> ;	Prevail upon her to stay ;	Engagez-la à rester.
Prevail	<i>with</i> ;	Prevail with him to come ;	Engagez-le à venir.
Resolve	<i>upon</i> ;	Has he resolved upon any thing ?	A-t-il résolu quelque chose ?
Bear	<i>with</i> ;	I bear with his importunities ;	J'endure ses importunités.
Meet	<i>with</i> ;	I met with a robber ;	Je rencontraï un voleur.
Put up	<i>with</i> ;	I put up with his impertinence ;	Je souffris son impertinence.

202. In other instances it is the reverse, and the verb which has no *preposition* in english, must have a *preposition* after it in french; such are,

Abuser	<i>de</i> ;	Il abuse <i>de</i> ma patience ;	He abuses my patience.
s' Appercevoir	<i>de</i> ;	Je m'apperçois <i>de</i> cela ;	I perceive that.
Avoir besoin	<i>de</i> ;	J'ai besoin <i>d'</i> argent ;	I want money.
Avoir pitié	<i>de</i> ;	Il n'a pas pitié <i>de</i> moi ;	He does not pity me.
Changer	<i>de</i> ;	Il a changé <i>de</i> dessein ;	He has changed his design.
se Défier	<i>de</i> ;	Vous défiez-vous <i>de</i> lui ?	Do you mistrust him ?
se Démettre	<i>de</i> ;	Il s'est démis <i>de</i> sa place ;	He has given up his place.
Disconvenir	<i>de</i> ;	Il n'en* disconvient pas ;	He does not disown it.
Douter	<i>de</i> ;	Il doute <i>de</i> tout ;	He doubts every thing.
s' Embarrasser	<i>de</i> ;	Il ne s'embarrasse <i>de</i> rien ;	He minds nothing.
Gémir	<i>de</i> ;	Il gémit <i>de</i> ses fautes ;	He laments his errors.
Hériter	<i>de</i> ;	Il a hérité <i>d'</i> un gros bien ;	He inherited a large estate.
Jouir	<i>de</i> ;	Il jouit <i>d'</i> une bonne santé ;	He enjoys good health.
Manquer	<i>de</i> ;	Il ne manque <i>de</i> rien ;	He wants nothing.
Médire	<i>de</i> ;	Il médit <i>des</i> gens ;	He slanders people.
se Méfier	<i>de</i> ;	Il se méfie <i>des</i> ses amis ;	He mistrusts his friends.
se Méprendre	<i>de</i> ;	Il s'est mépris <i>de</i> chemin ;	He has mistaken his way.
se Moquer	<i>de</i> ;	Il se moque <i>des</i> sages ;	He mocks wise people.
se Passer	<i>de</i> ;	Il ne peut pas s'en* passer ;	He can not spare it.
se Servir	<i>de</i> ;	Il se sert <i>de</i> mon nom ;	He uses my name.
se Souvenir	<i>de</i> ;	Je me souviens <i>de</i> cela ;	I remember that.
User	<i>de</i> ;	Il a usé <i>de</i> violence ;	He has used violence.
se Venger	<i>de</i> ;	Je m'en* vengerai ;	I will revenge it.
Attenter	<i>à</i> ;	Il a attenté <i>à</i> ma vie ;	He has attempted my life.
Commander	<i>à</i> ;	Commandez-lui* d'y aller ;	Bid him to go there.
Compatir	<i>à</i> ;	Je compatiss <i>à</i> sa peine ;	I compassionate his pain.
Convenir	<i>à</i> ;	Cela lui* convient, or	That suits or becomes him
Seoir	<i>à</i> ;	Cela lui* sied <i>à</i> merveille ; }	wonderfully.
Défendre	<i>à</i> ;	Défendez-lui* de le dire ;	Forbid him to tell it.
Déplaire	<i>à</i> ;	Il déplaît <i>à</i> son père ;	He displeases his father.
Désobéir	<i>à</i> ;	Il désobéit <i>à</i> sa mère ;	He disobey his mother.
se Fier	<i>à</i> ;	Il ne se fie <i>à</i> personne ;	He trusts nobody.
Manquer	<i>à</i> ;	Il manque <i>à</i> sa parole ;	He breaks his word.
Importer	<i>à</i> ;	Il lui* importe de le voir ;	It concerns her to see it.
Nuire	<i>à</i> ;	Ne nuisez <i>à</i> personne ;	Do not injure any body.
Obéir	<i>à</i> ;	Obéissez <i>à</i> vos parents ;	Obeey your parents.

* The preposition *de* is implied in the pronoun EN, which means *of it* ; see a table of the pronouns page 60.

† See note * page 317.

Obvier	à ;	Il n'a pu obvier à cela ;	He could not prevent that.
s' Opposer	à ;	Opposez-vous à l'injustice ;	Oppose injustice.
Ordonner	à ;	Ordonnez-lui* de le faire ;	Order him to do it.
Pardonner	à ;	Pardonnez à vos ennemis ;	Forgive your enemies.
Permettre	à ;	Permettez-lui* de s'en aller ;	Permit her to go.
Persuader	à ;	Persuadez-lui* de la voir ;	Persuade him to see her.
Plaire	à ;	Elle plait à tout le monde ;	She pleases every body.
Prend garde	à ;	Il prend garde à tout ;	He minds every thing.
Promettre	à ;	Il lui* a promis de venir ;	He promised her to come.
Renoncer	à ;	Il a renoncé au jeu ;	He has given up gaming.
Repondre	à ;	Répondez à ma question ;	Answer my question.
Résister	à ;	Résistez à la tentation ;	Resist temptation.
Ressembler	à ;	Elle ressemble à sa mère ;	She resembles her mother.
Subvenir	à ;	Il subvient à ses besoins ;	He supplies her wants.
Succéder	à ;	Il succédera à son oncle ;	He will succeed his uncle.
Survivre	à ;	Elle ne lui* survivra pas ;	She will not outlive him.
Toucher	à ;	Ne touchez pas à ce livre ;	Do not touch that book.

203. In some instances the *preposition* may be placed in english, either before or after the substantive which it governs ; but in french, the *preposition* must always be placed immediately *before* its object ; as,

With whom were you ?	}	Avec qui étiez-vous ?
or Whom were you with ?		
To whom shall I give this ?	}	A qui donnerai-je ceci ?
or Whom shall I give this to ?		

EXERCISE.

Whom does this house belong to ? What house are you speaking of ?
 77 134 appartenir 82 — 155
 That house which we just 244 passed by. It belongs to that gentle-
 76 venir de passer 207 62 monsieur
 man's father whom we are going to dine with. I know whom it
 25 76 — 155 172 diner. 76 62
 belongs to.

204. The *prepositions* must be repeated in french before *every* word which they govern, though these words are in the same sentence, and the preposition is not repeated in english ; as,

I come *from* France and Italy ; Je viens *de* France et *d'* Italie.
 I have been *to* Paris and Rome ; J'ai été *à* Paris et *à* Rome.†

EXERCISE.

Mr. A. has invited me to take a walk and dine with him. We
 inviter 55 263 N.B. 58
 shall walk into his park and gardens. We are going to France and
 213 155
 Germany. Do not go without calling 154 on me, or writing to me.
 Allemagne. partir 266 , (o)

* The preposition *à* is implied in the pronoun *lui*, which expresses *to him, to her*. See a table of the pronouns, p. 60.

† This repetition is not always necessary, but the surest way for a foreigner is to make it a general rule, until he has learned by reading when the preposition may be left out.

*Remarks on the Prepositions.***FOR ; DEPUIS, PENDANT, DURANT, POUR.**

205. *For*, before a period of time, is expressed by *depuis*, to denote the two extremes of the period ; by *pendant*, or *durant*, to denote its duration ; and by *pour*, to denote the end ;*

- as,
 I have not seen him *for* a month ;
 i. e. a month *since*. Je ne l'ai pas vu *depuis* un mois.
 They fought *for* two days ;
 i. e. *during* two days. Ils se batirent *pendant* deux jours.
 They have provisions *for* a year ;
 i. e. *to last* a year. Ils ont des provisions *pour* un an.

EXERCISE.

What dreadful weather it has been for some time past.
 82 affreux tems il fait quelque tems —
 We have not had a (fine day) for these three weeks. It has
 (jour de beau tems) — semaine.
 rained for two whole days. If this weather lasts, we shall not
 plu entier 29 durer, N.B.
 (be able) to get provisions for the winter.
 pouvoir 172 se procurer 'hiver.

BEFORE ; AVANT, DEVANT.

206. Speaking of time, or order, *before* is expressed by *avant*, the opposite of which is *après*, after ; speaking of place or in presence, it is expressed by *devant*, the opposite of which is *derrière*, behind ; as,

- Do not walk *before* me. Ne marchez pas *devant* moi.
 I want to arrive *before* you. Je veux arriver *avant* vous.
 N. B. Without an object after it, *before* is *auparavant* ; as,
 I had seen it *before*. Je l'avais vu *auparavant*.

EXERCISE.

You shall not (go out) before dinner, because you have spoken before your turn. Do not walk before me, stay behind. I want to arrive before you. (Walk in) or (go away), and do not stay so before the door.
 sortir ,
 tour. marcher , rester 260
 Entrer s'en aller, ainsi

BY ; PRES DE, A COTE DE.

207. *By*, used in the sense of *near*, is *près de*, or *à côté de* ; as,

- He was sitting *by* or *near* me. Il était assis *à côté de* moi.
 He passed *by* or *near* us. Il passa *près de* nous, *à côté de* nous.

N. B. With the words *myself*, *thysself*, *himself*, &c., *by* is

* Observe that when *for* comes between two sentences, it cannot be expressed by any of the above words, as it is not a preposition ; it is then a conjunction, and is expressed by *car* ; as, I can not go with you, *for* I am very busy ; *Je ne puis pas aller avec vous, car je suis très affairé*. See 217 rule.

often used in the sense of alone, and is expressed by the adjective *seul*; as,

I like to be *by myself*, i. e. *alone*. J'aime à être *seul*; not; *par moi-même*.
She was *by herself* all the day. Elle a été *seule* toute la journée.

EXERCISE.

Come and sit by me. I would rather stand by the door. How
(*m*) vous asseoir 56 aimer mieux me tenir
can you sit by the fire (in such weather as this?) I was by my-
rester feu du tems qu'il fait? 136
self all the morning. Are you fond of being by yourself? What a
234 — aimer à 154 82 20
pleasure (it is) to be by oneself. My sister can not 192 be a moment
plaisir il y a à saurait
by herself.

AT, TO; CHEZ.

208. *At, to*, denoting being *at*, or going *to* a person's house, are expressed by *chez*, and the word house is left out in french; as,

I must go to my sister's; } Il faut que j'aille *chez* ma sœur.
or to my sister's house. }
She is *at* your mother's. Elle est *chez* votre mère.

N. B. If the word house, instead of being preceded by a noun, is preceded by one of the possessive *pronominal* articles *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, the word house is also omitted, and the possessive *article* is changed into a personal *pronoun*, thus;

At <i>my</i> house;	Chez <i>moi</i> .	At <i>our</i> house;	Chez <i>nous</i> .
At <i>thy</i> house;	Chez <i>toi</i> .	At <i>your</i> house;	Chez <i>vous</i> .
At <i>his</i> house;	Chez <i>lui</i> .	At <i>their</i> house;	Chez <i>eux</i> . m.
At <i>her</i> house;	Chez <i>elle</i> .	At <i>their</i> house;	Chez <i>elles</i> . f.

EXERCISE.

Will you come with me to my mother's? She is not at home; She is
* — 58 elle;
at your sister's house. (Then I must) go to my sister's, for I must see
Il faut donc que 181 , † 181
her. Perhaps she is not there now, for she had to call at a
Peut-être que y 54 à présent, † à 266
friend's house. Come to my house. I will not go to your house. I
Venir *
will go to his. Let us go to her house. She is not at home. She is at
* — — elle
our house or at theirs.

FROM; DE CHEZ.

209. *From*, with verbs denoting coming or going *from* a person's house, is expressed by *de chez*, and the word house is left out; as,

* See note * page 130.

† See note * page 213.

I come *from* my sister's ; } Je viens de *chez* ma sœur.
 or *from* my sister's house.
 Is she returned *from* my mother's ? Est-elle revenue de *chez* ma mère ?

N. B. If the word house is preceded by the possessive pronominal article *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, that article is changed into a personal pronoun, as follows ;

From *my* house ; De chez *moi*. From *our* house ; De chez *nous*.
 From *thy* house ; De chez *toi*. From *your* house ; De chez *vous*.
 From *his* house ; De chez *lui*. From *their* house ; De chez *eux*. m.
 From *her* house ; De chez *elle*. From *their* house ; De chez *elles*. f.

EXERCISE.

I come from my sister's. You did not find your mother there,
 136 trouver y 55 ,
 for I saw her (going 154 out) of your brother's house. I met 136 her com-
 * 136 55 sortir rencontrer
 ing from my grandmother's. What do you want here ? (Get out) of my
 153 N.B. grand'mère. chercher Sortir
 house. You come from our house, and I come from yours. I met
 , (m) 136
 your father (coming 153 out) of his house, and going 153 to ours.
 sortir N.B. N.B.

FROM; DE LA PART.

210. *From*, with the verbs to *go*, to *come*, not from the house of a person, but from the person himself, is expressed by *de la part* ; as,

Go *from me* to my daughter's. Allez de *ma part* chez ma fille.
 Whom do you come *from* ? De la *part* de qui venez-vous ?

EXERCISE.

Whom do you come from ? I come from your mother. Go from
 77 venir
 me to my sister's, and tell her that I will come and drink tea at her
 , (1) p. 63. 264 (nn) † thé
 house.

IN, INTO ; DANS, EN.

211. Before the names of persons and places, *in, into* are expressed by *dans* ; as,

I have read that *in* Voltaire. J'ai lu cela *dans* Voltaire.

Are there fine streets *in* Paris ? Y a-t-il de belles rues *dans* Paris ?

N. B. Observe only with respect to *places*, that after verbs denoting residence, *in* is expressed by *à* ; as,

My brother lives *in* Paris. Mon frère demeure *à* Paris.

EXERCISE.

There are great beauties *in* Thompson. Are there (as many)
 246 beauté 246 autant

* See note * page 318.

† See note † page 288.

inhabitants in Paris as in London ? My brother is in Paris, and my
'habitants que Londres ? ,
sister in London.

212. Before the names of *countries*, with verbs denoting going or residing, *in, into* are expressed by *en* ; as,

My brother lives *in* France. Mon frère demeure *en* France ?
Has he ever been *into* Italy ? A-t-il jamais été *en* Italie ?

N. B. In other instances, *in, into* before the names of *countries*, may be expressed by *en* or by *dans* ; observing only that after *dans*, the noun must have an article, and after *en*, it must be without ; as,

There is some *in* France. Il y en a *en* France, *dans* la France.
Is there any *in* Italy ? Y en a-t-il *en* Italie, or *dans* l'Italie ?

EXERCISE.

My father is in Russia, my brother in Switzerland, and my sister
Russie, Suisse,
in France. Are there as many people²²⁹ in France as in Germany ?
246 autant monde que Allemagne ?

213. Before *common* names used in a *limited* sense ; i. e. preceded by any of the signs which have been called article, *in, into* are expressed by *dans* ;

In the last peace. *Dans* la dernière paix.
In this unfortunate war. *Dans* cette guerre malheureuse.
There are charms *in* society. Il y a des charmes *dans* la société.

EXERCISE.

Put this wine in a bottle. If you will be diligent, we will take
Mettre bouteille. 144 prendre
you in our partnership. Put these papers into that parcel. Put them
société. papier (bb) paquet.
in the same order in which you found them. I never saw my papers
même ordre 76 136 136
in such a confusion before. Let every thing be in the state it ought
telle 38 — 248 107 état (s) devoir
to be. (There must be) some order and economy in a house.
172 Il faut économie

214. But when the same *common* names are used in an *unlimited* sense, in which sense they generally have no article, *in, into* are expressed by *en* ;

I like to live *in* peace. J'aime à vivre *en* paix.*

* If in some instances *in, into* are expressed by *en*, without an article in french, before nouns which in english have the article *a, an* ; as,

I came *in* a coach ; Je vins *en* carrosse. She fell *into* a passion ; Elle se mit *en* colère ;

It is because in these instances the noun serves less to name the thing itself, than the manner of being or acting of the agent of the verb, and these words *En carrosse, En colère*, may be considered as adverbial expressions ; but if we add to the same nouns some word which will render their meaning definite, *in, into* must be expressed by *dans* ; as,

I came *in* a fine coach ;
She fell *into* a great passion ;

Je vins *dans* un beau carrosse.
Elle se mit *dans* une grande colère.

We are always *in* broils. Nous sommes toujours *en* querelle.
 It is better to live *in* society. Il vaut mieux vivre *en* société.*

EXERCISE.

I must put this wine into bottles; (i. e. *bottle it*.) I am going to
 181 mettre ; 155 172
 enter into partnership with my uncle. I will put these papers in par-
 entrer société oncle. pa-
 cels. Every thing here is in confusion. I will put every thing in
 107 184 107
 order, if you will not put yourself in a passion.
 144 vous 54 — colère.

215. Speaking of *time*, *in* is expressed by *dans*, to denote the time after which an action will be performed, and by *en*, to denote the time that will be employed in performing it; as,

I shall go to Paris *in* three days.

J'irai à Paris *dans* trois jours; viz. *after* three days.

J'irai à Paris *en* trois jours; i. e. I shall be three days *in going*.

EXERCISE.

Do you think that I can learn french in six months? You may 178
 145 français mois? pouvoir
 learn it in less time. I intend to begin in a month. I shall be
 moins avoir dessein 168
 with you in an hour. I can walk there in less than half an hour.
 heure. aller y 54 48 demi 38

216. Before nouns denoting any part of the day, *in* is not expressed in french;

In the morning—*In* the evening.

Le matin—Le soir.

In the afternoon.

Après midi, or Après dîné.

N. B. Observe the same rule with *on*, before the days of the week; as,

On Sunday—*On* Monday.

Dimanche—Lundi; not, *sur* Lundi.

On the day he came.

Le jour qu'il est venu.

EXERCISE.

I will come and see you on sunday or monday. Will you come in
 (nn) dimanche lundi.
 the morning or in the afternoon. I will come on monday in the
 matin après midi ?
 afternoon.

* *Société*, in these two instances, is used in a different sense; in the first instance, it means that particular state of being called *society*; in the second, it is rather an adverbial expression, and means *sociably*.

*Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing rules.**

I am very uneasy *about* this business. Have you enquired *about*
 inquiet 200 affaire. 237 s'informer
 what people⁹⁰ say (of it)? Your friends are very angry *at* you. They
 84 N.E. en 54 fâché 58
 laughed¹³⁶ *at* what you desired¹³² me to tell them. I do not wonder
 se moquer²³⁷ 84 252 (1) p. 63. s'étonner
at that. They laugh *at* every thing. They blame you *for* your
 (bb) se moquer 107 blâmer
 rashness. They will not believe that you are sorry *for* what you
 témérité. 173 145 fâché 84
 have done. They will get nothing *by* that. I neither care
 gagner 99 (bb) 224 se soucier
for them, nor *for* what they say. I will punish them *for* their
 58 , 84 punir
 ingratitude. I will take my property (*from* them.) I do not depend
 ôter bien † leur 54 dépendre
upon them. I need²⁰² nothing. I am abundantly provided *with*
 58 avoir besoin 99 abondamment pourvu
 every thing. I congratulate you *upon* your (good fortune.) I
 107 féliciter bonheur.
 think you have reason to be contented *with* your lot. Look²⁰¹ *at*
 221 lieu content sort. Regarder
 that woman. See how she laughs *at* us. She is waiting¹⁵⁵ *for* us.
 (bb) comme se rire 58 — attendre 201
 Do not look *at* her. I am angry *with* her. I do not approve
 201 fâché approuver.
of her behaviour. She imposes *upon* her friends, and she slanders
 conduite. en imposer , médire²⁰²
 every body she knows. She has met *with* several misfortunes,
 tous ceux que éprouver plusieurs disgrâce,
 but she has not profited (*by* them.) I think she delights *in* mischief.
 profiter † en 55 221 se plaisir faire le mal.
 She tyrannizes *over* all her house, and does not mind²⁰² what the
 tyranniser , s'embarrasser
 world says. She is very much like²⁰² her mother ; a haughty, im-
 — ressembler ; hautain, im-
 perious woman whom nobody could please. I wonder how you
 périeux (g) 76 97 pouvoir plaire. 202 s'étonner que
 trust²⁰² her brother. He is not fit *for* (any thing.) He has inherit-
 se fier propre 99 hériter
 ed a large estate, but that will not (be sufficient) *for* his expenses.
 202 gros bien, suffire dépense.
 Do you remember what I told you one day? No, what is it?
 se souvenir²⁰² , (y)
 That he would abuse²⁰² his fortune, and perish some day *with* misery
 (bb) N.E. abuser , périr quelque misère,
 unless¹⁹⁵ somebody would provide¹⁴⁹ *for* his wants. He will never
 218 N.E. 95 pourvoir besoin.
 give up²⁰² gaming and drinking. He is surrounded *with* flatterers
 renoncer jeu boisson entouré flatteur

* See note * page 182.

† The preposition is implied in this pronoun.

who do nothing but sport *with* his credulity. He had promised
 faire * se jouer crédulité. 140 promettre²⁰²
 his father that he would (give up) the company which displeases him,
 renoncer²⁰² déplaître²⁰² lui, †
 but there is no trusting his promises. He never keeps them. He
 se fier †²⁰² tenir
 knows he is despised by every body, but he does not care *for* that.
 221 mépriser 167 106 se soucier (bb)
 He does not care *for* any body. Tell him¹⁶² that if he does not
 97 (1) p. 63.
 alter²⁰² his conduct soon, ¹⁸³ he will be punished *for* his obstinacy.
 changer — conduite bientôt, N.B. opiniâtreté.
 What a difference between him and your brother. This⁸⁸ is a young
 20 entre 58 N.B.
 man who pleases every body. Every body wishes him¹⁶² well, and
 202 106 (1) p. 63. du bien,
 rejoices *at* his prosperity. All who know him, wish *for* his com-
 se rejouir Touts ceux
 pany. I met *with* him the other day at a friend's of mine, and I was
 87 137
 delighted *with* his conversation. I was struck *with* astonishment *at*
 charmer frapper
 seeing so young a man enjoying¹⁵⁴ his reputation with (so much)
 154 38 jouir 202 tant
 modesty ; sensible *of* praises, without seeming¹⁵⁴ to wish *for* them,
 ; louange, paraître 172 désirer
 and satisfied *with* the pleasure of having done his duty. His
 satisfaire 154 devoir.
 friends were transported *with* joy *at* seeing him covered *with* glory,
 transporté¹⁵⁸ 154 couvrir
 and animated *with* the desire of pleasing¹⁵⁴ them. He is a young
 animer 202 leur, † 65
 man for whom I feel a particular esteem. (Young as) he is, I would
 particulier 32 Tout jeune que
 trust²⁰² him sooner than any body that I know. I would answer *for*
 se fier (o) tout autre répondre
 him as *for* myself. I am much obliged to you *for* the good opinion
 comme (m) N.B. bien (o) (s)
 you have of him, and I thank you (*for* it.) Look *at* those flowers.
 , remercier † 54 en fleur.
 How beautiful they are ! Do not touch²⁰² them.⁶³ They are not
 185 belle 62 toucher y. † 62
 mine. If you wish *for* one, ask that gentleman *for* it. No, indeed.
 86 , monsieur † , vraiment ;
 I will not ask him *for* any. I would rather look *for* one myself ;
 (1) p. 63. (p) aimer mieux en 70 chercher (m) N.B.
 I do not like to ask *for* flowers from a stranger. If he offered you
 169 à étranger. †
 one, would you not accept *of* it ? Perhaps I might.⁷⁰ I do not
 en 70 , N.B.
 care *for* flowers. I do not know what I was thinking *of*, when I
 83 155 ,

* Express *Nothing but* by *Ne* before the verb, and *Que* after.

† The *preposition* is implied in this pronoun. † Turn, *One can not trust, &c.*

‡ See note † p. 207.

‡ See note * p. 266.

mentioned flowers. I beg *of* you, Madam, that you will accept *of*
parler de 136 prier , *

this.⁸⁶ Sir, you are very kind. I am much obliged to you (*for it*).
N.B. , avoir bien de la bonté. bien 158 (o) † 55 en.

This gentleman has asked your sister a question, and she has not
† faire 162 163 ,

answered him. Sister, why do not you answer that gentleman? I
repondre 202 lui. † 18 , 202 †

beg the gentleman's pardon. I did not know that you were talking
demander 25 § 155

about me. I was thinking of something that (just occurred to my mind.)
155 98 vient de me venir à — l'esprit.

What does he want of me? I do not know; ask him. He seems
83 vouloir — 54 ; † (1) p. 63.

(very much) taken up *with* you. I think he is (in love) *with* you.
très occupé — 221 amoureux

What! in love *with* me? You surely¹⁸⁴ do not mind what you
83 certainement penser à 84

say. I only said so in joke. He wants to know if you can spare²⁰²
184 136 cela pour rire. 260 se passer

the book which you have promised him.¹⁶² I can not spare it now.
(1) p. 63. 202 en †

I am using¹⁵⁵ it myself. When I have done (*with it*.) (he shall
se servir 202 en 59 † (m) N.B. 142 † 55 en, il

be very welcome to it.) What does he want to do *with* that book?
l'aura, s'il le veut. ¶ 83 260

It is not good *for* any thing. It is not fit *for* the use to which it is
62 99 propre usage 76 92

intended. I did not think *of* that, (or else) I would not have asked
destiner. , autrement

you *for it*. Since you have (such a desire) (*for it*.) you may have it,
Puisque si grande envie † 54 en, 178 ,

if you will accept *of it*. No, I thank you. I do not want²⁶⁰ it
144 , avoir besoin en 54

now. It⁶² was not for me; it⁶² was for my sister who wanted¹⁴⁰ to
N.B. 140 ; N.B. avoir envie 168

see it, and I (was afraid) of displeasing her, if I did not ask you *for it*.
, craindre 154 202 lui, † **

I was afraid she would think¹⁴⁹ that I had not thought *of* her, or that
221 146 140 ,

I was angry *with* her. I do not think she cares much (*for it*).
140 fâché 221 se soucier † en

When do you (set out) upon your journey? I do not know yet. I
partir pour voyage? encore.

intend to set out in about a month or six weeks. What country
avoir dessein environ mois semaine. 82 230

do you go to? I (am ignorant) *of* it yet. They⁹⁰ want to persuade
ignorer N.B. 260 persuader 202

* *That you will accept*; turn, to *accept*.

† The *preposition* is implied in this pronoun.

‡ See note * page 220.

§ Turn; I beg pardon to monsieur.

‖ Add here the pronoun *Le* in french.

¶ We say in french *Etre bien venu*, to be welcome, i. e. *well received*, but we do not say, *Etre bien venu à une chose*, to be welcome to a thing.

** See note * page 266.

my father to send me to Russia, but I will not go, if I can help it.
envoyer Russie, éviter

I would rather remain here, than live in a country, and amongst a
aimer mieux rester, (ll) demeurer 230, parmi

people whose manners do not suit mine. I should like to go
228 manière convenir 85 169

first to France, to see my brother who is in Paris; then to go to
premièrement, 172; puis

Switzerland, from Switzerland to Italy and Greece, from Greece to
Suisse, Italie Grèce.

pass into Spain and Portugal, and then to return to England. You
passer Espagne, alors 265

could not do that in less than two years. I think I could do it in
pouvoir (bb) moins 48 • 221

(twelve months.) I do not think you could. 145 Do not you think
un an. * 221 70 150

that I can 145 go to Paris in four days? I think you may. 178 I
N.B. 221 le 70 pouvoir.

shall be there before you, for I shall set out either on Monday or
y 54, † — Lundi

Tuesday. Will you set out in the morning or in the evening? I
Mardi. 234 234

intend to (set out) about twelve o'clock. I wish I could go with
avoir dessein 168 partir vers 236 180 (nn)

you. I wish you 70 could. I shall drink tea at your sister's this
221 146 ‡

afternoon. Shall you be there? No, I am engaged at Mrs. B.'s.
après midi. y 54,

(There is) a ball at your aunt's on Friday. 183 Will not you go? I
246 tante Vendredi, N.B. † 70

do not think 221 I shall 70; I have been ill for several days. I did not
145 N.B.; malade 136

rest for three days and three nights. Come and sit by the fire,
reposer (nn) vous asseoir feu.

Do not stand by the door. As it is cold, and you are not well, you
se tenir 240, 219 241,

would be in danger of (catching cold.) I called at your house on
vous enrhumer. 266

Wednesday in the morning, but (there was) nobody in. I was not
Mercredi, 246 97 — 140.

(far off.) I was at my uncle's. I had been by myself all the morning.
loin. oncle. 140 234

I went into the fields to take a walk 263 before dinner, and in coming
172 N.B. dîné, en revenir

home, I called at my uncle's. He had some company at dinner, and
au logis, 266

he prevailed upon me to stay with him. After dinner we played
engager — rester jouer à ||

different games. Some played at cards, some at chess, some at
jeux. 94 || carte, échecs, 94

* See note † page 341,

† See note * page 318.

‡ See note † page 288.

§ See note * page 300.

|| The verb *Play*, speaking of *games*, requires *à* before the noun which follows it; speaking of *instruments*, it requires *de*.

draughts, and some at (backgammon.) After tea we made a little
 dames, tritrac. thé petit
 concert. I played on the flute, my (brother-in-law) played on the
 jouer de* , beau-frère
 violin, my sister played on the harpsicord, and my cousin on the harp ;
 violon, clavecin, cousine harpe ;
 and some ladies and gentlemen entertained us with several good
 † régaler de
 songs. We parted at (twelve o'clock,) (very well) pleased with the
 chanson. se séparer 236 , très content
 manner (in which) we had spent the evening. We shall meet
 manière dont 140 271 234 s'assembler
 again on Saturday evening, 234 at our house, and have another
 encore Samedi au soir , 53
 concert.

CHAPTER IX.

CONJUNCTION.

Conjunctions are certain words, and sometimes short phrases that serve to express the relation which several sentences have together ; as,

Will you come, *if* I go ? I will not go, *unless* you come.

The words *if*, *unless*, which denote a relation between the verbs *come* and *go*, are called *conjunctions*.

The Conjunctions are in french ;

<i>Afin</i> que,	} That, To the	<i>Et</i> ,	And, Both.
<i>Pour</i> que,	} end that.	<i>Mais</i> ,	But.
<i>A Moins</i> que,	Unless.	<i>Ni</i> ,	Neither, Nor.
<i>Avant</i> que,	Before.	<i>Ou</i> ,	Either, Or.
<i>Aussi</i> ,	So, Therefore.	<i>Parce</i> que,	Because.
<i>Bien</i> que,	} Though,	<i>Pourtant</i> ,	Yet, However.
<i>Quoique</i> ,	} Although.	<i>Pourvu</i> que,	Provided.
<i>Car</i> ,	For, Because.	<i>Puisque</i> ,	Since.
<i>En Cas</i> que,	If, In case that.	<i>Que</i> ,	That.
<i>Cependant</i> ,	Yet, However.	<i>Quand</i> ,	} When.
<i>Comme</i> ,	As, Since.	<i>Lorsque</i> ,	
<i>De Crainte</i> que,	} Lest, For fear	<i>Quand</i> ,	Though, If even.
<i>De Peur</i> que,		<i>Sans</i> que,	Without.
<i>Jusqu'à ce</i> que,	Till, Until.	<i>Si</i> ,	If, Whether.
<i>Néanmoins</i> ,	Nevertheless.	<i>Soit</i> que,	Whether.†

* See note || page 326.

† See note † page 183.

‡ Several grammarians reckon above one hundred conjunctions, which they call

<i>Declarative</i> , viz.	<i>Suspensive</i> , viz.	<i>Disjunctive</i> , viz.	<i>Copulative</i> , viz.
Savoir,	Si.	Ou.	Et.
Comme.	Savoir <i>si</i> .	Ou <i>bien</i> .	Aussi.
<i>C'est à dire</i> .	<i>C'est à savoir si</i> .	Soit.	Ni.
<i>Par exemple</i> .	Quoi <i>qu'il en soit</i> .	Soit <i>que</i> .	Non <i>plus</i> .

The *conjunctions* in french affect the verbs which follow them, so as to require some particular *mood*.

217. The following *conjunctions* require the *indicative* mood after them ;

<i>Aussi,</i>	So, therefore.	<i>Ou,</i>	Either, or.
<i>Car,</i>	For, because,	<i>Parce que,</i>	Because.
<i>Cependant,</i>	} Yet, however.	<i>Puisque,</i>	Since.
<i>Pourtant,</i>		<i>Quand,</i>	} When.
<i>Comme,</i>	As, since.	<i>Lorsque,</i>	
<i>Mais,</i>	But.	<i>Quand,</i>	Tho', if even.
<i>Néanmoins,</i>	Nevertheless.	<i>Que,</i>	That.
<i>Ni,</i>	Neither, nor.	<i>Si,</i>	If, whether.

218. The following *conjunctions* require the *subjunctive* mood after them ;

<i>Afin que,</i>	} That.	<i>Decrainte que,*</i>	} Lest, for
<i>Pour que,</i>		<i>Depeur que,*</i>	
<i>A moins que,*</i>	Unless.	<i>Jusqu'à ce que,</i>	Till, until.
<i>Avant que,</i>	Before.	<i>Pourvu que,</i>	Provided.
<i>Bien que,</i>	} Though, although.	<i>Que,†</i>	That.
<i>Quoique,</i>		<i>Sans que,</i>	Without.
<i>Encas que,</i>	If, in case that.	<i>Soit que,</i>	Whether.

<i>Augmentative, viz.</i>	<i>Diminutive, viz.</i>	<i>Transitive, viz.</i>	<i>Concessive, viz.</i>
D'Ailleurs.	Encore.	En effet.	Quoi que.
Outre.	Au Moins.	Au reste.	A la vérité.
De plus.	Du Moins.	A propos.	Quand, quand même.
Au surplus.	Pour le Moins.	Après tout.	Non que, Non pas que.
<i>Restrictive, viz.</i>	<i>Adversative, viz.</i>	<i>Conclusive viz.</i>	
Sinon.	Mais.	Or, donc.	
Si ce n'est que.	Cependant.	Ainsi.	
Quoique.	Néanmoins.	Par Conséquent.	
Pour, viz. quoique.	Pourtant.	C'est pour quoi.	
Encore que.	Toute fois.	Tellement que.	
A moins que.	Bien que.	De sorte que. De manière que.	
<i>Causative, viz.</i>	<i>Comparative, viz.</i>	<i>Conditional, viz.</i>	<i>Time and Order, viz.</i>
Car.	Comme.	Si.	Quand, lorsque.
Comme.	Ainsi.	Sinon.	Pendant que.
Parce que.	De même.	Quand, quand même.	Tandis que
A cause que.	Ainsi que.	Quand bien même.	Tant que.
Vu que.	Aussi bien que.	A moins que.	Avant que.
Attendu que.	Aussi peu que,	Pourvu que.	Depuis que.
Puis que.	Autant que.	Supposé que.	Dès que.
Pour quoi.	Non plus que.	Au cas que.	Aussi tôt que.
Afin que.	Ni plus ni moins q.	En cas que.	Après que.
De peur que.	Si que.	A condition que.	Cependant.
De crainte que.	En, viz. comme.	Bien entendu que.	A peine, enfin.

Which, except those mentioned in the table above, are either *nouns* or *adverbs*, with puzzling and useless denominations, since their properties are the same in both languages.

Some grammarians add to these *Afin de* ; *à moins que de* ; *avant de* ; *avant que de* ; *au lieu de* ; *de crainte de* ; *de peur de* ; *faute de* ; *loin de* ; *plutôt que de* ; *jusqu'à* ; but the only connective part of these words being *de* or *à*, which are *prepositions*, they can hardly be said to belong to the conjunctions.

* The conjunction *à moins que, de crainte que, de peur que*, require *NE* before the verb which follows them ; see 195 rule.

† Learners are often mistaken, by considering *que* as requiring always the subjunctive mood after it ; but *que* does not govern any particular mood ; its power depends on the verb or conjunction that precedes it,

219. When a *conjunction* governs *several verbs*, it is expressed before the first verb only, and *que* is added to the other verbs, with the *same mood* after it, as if the conjunction itself was repeated; ex.

As he is diligent, and takes pains.

Comme il est diligent, et qu'il prend de la peine.

He learns well, *because* he is diligent, and takes pains.

Il apprend bien, *parce qu'il est* diligent, et *qu'il prend de la peine.*

Unless he is diligent, and takes pains.

A moins qu'il ne soit diligent, et *qu'il ne prenne de la peine.*

EXERCISE.

Since you are busy, and you can not come with me, I will go.

Puisque occupé, , vais * m'en aller.†

I will never forgive you, unless¹⁹⁵ you come back (this way) and dine

pardonner N.B. revenir par ici

with me. Bring my horse, that I may go now, and be back

²⁵⁶ , afin que ¹⁷⁸ partir , de retour

in time¹⁵⁸. Let us go now, for fear it should rain¹⁴⁸, and we should

à tems. — — partir , ²¹⁸ pleuvoir,

be wet¹⁵⁸. Though it is hot, and the sky is cloudy, I do not think it

mouillé. ²⁴⁰ chaud, ciel nuageux, ²²¹

will rain. Unless¹⁹⁵ we go now, and (make haste,) we shall be wet.

¹⁴⁵ N.B. partir , se dépêcher,

220. When *Si, if*, governs *two verbs*, instead of repeating *si* before the *second verb*, we use *que*; and the verb which follows this *que*, must be in the *subjunctive*, though the verb which follows *si* is in the *indicative*;

You will learn, *if* you are diligent, and take pains.

Vous apprendrez, *si vous êtes* diligent, et *que vous preniez* de la peine.

If you come, and I am not at home, you will wait for me.

Si vous venez, et *que je ne sois* pas au logis, vous m'attendrez. (oo)

EXERCISE.

If you walk so fast, and will not wait for us, we will go back.

marcher vite, ¹⁷³ ²⁰¹ , s'en retourner.

If you go back, and find nobody at home what will you do? If the

, ⁹⁷ au logis,

doors are locked,¹⁵⁸ and I can not (get in), I will go to the play.

fermé à clef, entrer ,

You might follow us, if you would walk a little faster, and you did

¹⁷⁸ , ¹⁴⁴ peu ,

not look so often behind you.

derrière.

221. The idiom of the english language often admits an *ellipsis*, i. e. an omission of the conjunction *that*; as,

I think my sister will come; for, I think *that* my sister will come.

* See note * page 228. † See N. B. page 102.

(oo) The conjunction *if* is often suppressed, and the nominative transposed after the verb; as,

If you should come, or should you come, or were you to come, and I was not at home, you will wait for me, which turn of expression must be rendered in french by *si* before the verb; thus, *si vous veniez, et que je ne fusse pas au logis, vous m'attendrez.*

But the corresponding conjunction must always *be expressed* in french; as,

I think my sister will come.	Je pense <i>que</i> ma sœur viendra.
I know she intends to come.	Je sais <i>qu'</i> elle a dessein de venir.
I hope she will soon be here.	J'espère <i>qu'</i> elle sera bientôt ici.

EXERCISE.

Do you think we shall arrive in time to-day ?	I (am afraid) it
145 à aujourd'hui !	craindre 146
will be rather late.	
195 un peu tard.	

REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

BOTH; ET, TANT.

222. *Both*, a conjunction of emphasis, is expressed by *et* before an adjective, by *et* or *tant* before a substantive; but observe, that when we use *tant* before the first substantive, we put *que* instead of *et* before the second;

She is <i>both</i> rich and handsome.	Elle est <i>et</i> riche et belle.
<i>Both</i> summer and winter.	<i>Tant</i> en été <i>qu'</i> en hiver.

N. B. This conjunction in *familiar* writing and in *conversation* is generally *left out* in french; thus,

Elle est riche et belle.	En été et en hiver.
--------------------------	---------------------

EXERCISE.

Our general is both prudent and courageous. Both in the cabinet and in the field. We shall beat our enemies both by sea and land.

armée.	battre	ennemi	par	204
--------	--------	--------	-----	-----

This conjunction is generally 183 omitted in french, in the familiar style. — ordinairement s'omettre (ii) N.B. , familier 32 style.

EITHER, OR; OU, SOIT.

223. *Either, or*, are generally expressed by *ou*; as,

<i>That</i> is either good or bad.	Cela est <i>ou</i> bon <i>ou</i> mauvais.
<i>Either</i> he is rich, <i>or</i> he is poor.	<i>Où</i> il est riche, <i>ou</i> il est pauvre.

N. B. *Either, or*, followed by a *noun*, may be expressed by *soit*; as,

<i>Either</i> through love or caprice, she has married him.
<i>Soit</i> par amour <i>ou</i> par caprice, or <i>soit</i> par caprice, elle l'a épousé.

EXERCISE.

Either that is true or it is not.	I will see you either in going or in
89 70	en
(coming back.)	Either through fear or respect, he remained silent.
revenir.	par 204 garder silence.

NEITHER, NOR; NE NI, NI NE.

224. *Neither, nor*, followed by a verb in the indicative or subjunctive mood, are expressed, *neither* by *ne*, and *nor* by *ni ne*; as,

I <i>neither</i> love <i>nor</i> hate her.	Je <i>ne</i> l'aime <i>ni ne</i> la hais.
I <i>neither</i> see her <i>nor</i> speak to her.	Je <i>ne</i> la vois <i>ni ne</i> lui parle.

If, after *neither*, *nor*, there is a verb in the infinitive, an adjective, a noun, or a pronoun, *neither* is expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *ni* after it, and *nor* is expressed by *ni*; as,

I care *neither* for him *nor* for her. Je *ne* me soucie *ni* de lui *ni* d'elle.

She is *neither* rich *nor* handsome. Elle *n'est ni* riche *ni* belle.

She has *neither* beauty *nor* riches. Elle *n'a ni* beauté *ni* richesses.

I can *neither* see her, *nor* speak to her. Je *ne* puis *ni* la voir, *ni* lui parler.

EXERCISE.

I neither know that man, nor want²⁶⁰ to know him. I nei-
ther love nor esteem him. I neither care for him, nor for all that he
can say or do. He can neither read nor write. He is neither rich
nor poor. He is useful neither to himself nor to others.

WHETHER; SI, QUE, SOIT QUE.

225. *Whether*, used in the sense of *if*, is expressed by *Si*, with the following verb in the *indicative*; as,

Do you know *whether* she will come? Savez-vous *si* elle viendra?

I want to know *whether* she will come. J'ai envie de savoir *si* elle viendra.

Whether, used in the sense of *let*, is expressed by *que*, or *soit que*, with the following verb in the *subjunctive*; as,

Come yourself, *whether* she comes or not; or let her come or not.

Venez vous-même, *qu'elle* vienne ou non; or *qu'elle* vienne ou *qu'elle* ne vienne pas.

Whether she comes or not; or let her come or not, we will go.

Soit *qu'elle* vienne ou non; or *qu'elle* vienne ou *qu'elle* ne vienne pas, nous y irons.

EXERCISE.

Do you know whether we shall have peace or war? I want to
know whether that news is true or not. I must go and inquire
whether there has been any news to-day. Whether, or, let that news
be true or not, I do not care. Whether we have peace or war, I
will go to France. I will go, whether you come with me or not.

THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN; QUAND.

226. *Though*, *although*, *if even*, followed by a conditional tense, are generally expressed by *quand*; as,

Though she should come,	} Quand elle viendrait, elle n'irait
or Even if she should come,	
She would not go with us.	

(pp) These conjunctions are often *left out* in English, and the *nominative* is *put after* the verb, which mode of expression is also rendered in French by *QUAND*; as,

Were *she* to come, or, should *she* come now, she would not go with us;

Quand elle viendrait à présent, elle n'irait pas avec nous.

EXERCISE.

Though that news were true, I would go. We would go, though
 serait , 70 70 ,
 we were sure that we should never return. If even I had said
 serions 29 (nn) N.B. 265 aurais dit
 so, you ought not to have (taken advantage of it.)
 cela, 177 vous en prévaloir.

BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, &c. SANS.

227. *But for, if it were not for, if it had not been for, had it not been for*, are generally expressed by *sans*; as,

But for you, I should have starved. *Sans* vous, je serais mort de faim.
But for his friends,
 or *If it were not for* his friends, } *Sans* ses amis, il aurait été puni.
 or *Had it not been for* his friends, }
 he would have been punished.

EXERCISE.

But for your father, or if it had not been for your father, I should
 ,
 have lost my (law suit.) Had it not been for him, I should have been
 perdre procès, ,
 ruined. If it had not been for this gentleman, we should have been
 ruiner. monsieur,
 all lost 158.
 perdre.

Recapitulatory Exercise on the foregoing rules.*

As it is late, and you are not ready, I will go. Since they are
 tard, prêt, vaist m'en aller. Puisque
 all gone, and you will not stop any longer, I will go too. Stay
 partir 158, rester plus long tems, † aussi. Attendre
 till 218 I am ready, that we may go together. You know we have a
 que , afin que 178 ensemble.
 long way to go before we can stop. I do not think I can go with you
 chemin à faire, nous arrêter. 145
 now; it is too late. I shall not go, unless 195 you come with me. I have
 ; tard. †, N.B.
 neither horse nor money to go. I can not go before my farther has
 170 † 268
 returned. If you have a mind to go, and you want 260 a horse, I
 265 24 envie 168 †, avoir besoin de ,
 will lend you mine. If you want money, and your father is not at
 260 ,
 home, I will let you have whatever money (s) you want. You will
 , donner, — tout l' dont 260
 be too late, unless 195 you go immediately, and make all the haste(s)
 arriver , N.B. partir tout à l'heure, diligence
 you can. If your cousin is there, and you have an opportunity to
 142 cousine y 54, 24 occasion
 speak to her, remember me to her. Is she not very handsome? Yes;
 (o) , rappeler 56 à son souvenir. belle? ;

* See note * page 182.

† Note * page 228.

‡ Note ** page 286.

she is both rich and handsome; but I neither value beauty nor riches;
 I only value the qualities of the heart. Though she is amiable, and
 has a handsome fortune, I do not hear that any body proposes to
 marry her. There is no time lost yet. Shall you (come back) this
 way, if it is fine, and it is not too late? I will call, if nothing de-
 tains me, and you will promise to come and sup- with me. But if it
 was too late, and I could not come, what must I do? Will you go,
 whether I call or not? I do not know yet. Either you intend to
 go, or you do not. If you will (walk in) till the rain is over, and
 the weather is clear, I will tell you whether I can go or not.
 I will wait as long as you please, provided you come and bring
 your sister with you. If you go now, and ride gently, I think we
 shall (be able) to overtake you. Do not set out before I call, or you
 hear from me, for I shall not go unless the weather is fine,
 and my cousin comes with us. Do not you know whether he intends
 to go or not? No, I do not, but I will send to inquire. If it had
 not been for him, we should have been back before now. What is it
 to us whether he comes or not? Though he should not come with us,
 that would not prevent us going. But if he should call, and you
 were not at home, what must I say to him? Tell him that if he does
 not keep his word better, and he disappoints people so, nobody
 will trust him. Do you know whether Mr. A. will be at your
 house? I dare say he will. He is a strange man. Whether he
 wins or loses, he is always the same. I wanted to speak to him the

* See note ** page 286.

† Turn; *Either you have intention to go there, or you have not it.*

‡ Note * page 379.

§ Note * page 228.

|| Dare say. *Dare* in this sense cannot be rendered by *Oser*, which expresses boldness, audacity; *I dare say* must be expressed by *Je pense, Je m'imagine, Je puis dire, Sans doute, je ne doute pas* or some similar expression.

other night, but he (went away) without my seeing¹⁵⁶ him. If it
²³⁵ , ^{s'en aller} ^{sans que} ²¹⁸ *
 had not been for him, I should have won the game. Speak low for
^{gagner} ^{partie.} ^{bas}
 fear somebody should hear¹⁴⁸ us, and they might report it to him.
¹⁹⁵ on ^{entendre} , ⁹⁰ — ¹⁹⁵ rapporter (o)
 Unless¹⁹⁵ you are very attentive, and take your measures well¹⁸³, you
^{N.B.} ^{attentif,} ¹⁹⁵ ^{mesure} ^{N.B. ,}
 will never succeed. You should watch both²²² your cards and ²⁰⁴ those
^{réussir} ¹⁷⁶ ^{veiller sur} ^{N.B.} ^{carte} ^{sur (bb)}
 of other people. Neither grandeur nor riches can make man happy.
^{des autres} — ³⁹ ^{richesses} ²⁴⁹ ^{heureux.}
 I would not have that place, though it were offered to me.
¹⁷⁴ — , ²²⁶ ⁹² (o)

CHAPTER X.

INTERJECTION.

Interjections are *natural sounds* caused by some sudden emotion of *joy, grief, pain, aversion, disgust, fright, surprise, astonishment, &c.*

The sounds most commonly used in french as *interjections* are;†

For Joy.

O!	O!	O! si je pouvais le voir.
Ah!	Ah!	Ah! que je serais aise!
Ha ha!	}	Sounds caused by bursts of laughter.
Hi hi!		
Ho ho!		

For pain and grief;

O!	O!	O! que je suis à plaindre!
Ah!	Ah!	Ah! que je suis malheureux!
Hé!	Ho!	Hé! vous me faites mal.
Aie!	Ay!	Aie! vous me bléssez.
Ouf!	Oh!	Ouf! que je souffre!
Hélas!	Alas!	Hélas! j'ai tout perdu.
Mon Dieu!	O dear!	Mon Dieu! que ferai-je?

* Turn, Without that I should see him. }

† The number of interjections cannot be ascertained, because any sound which expresses a sudden emotion of the soul may be called an interjection. Some of these sounds called interjections express even different sensations, according to the inflexion which the voice takes, either of joy or grief, of pleasure or pain. The soul is then the only syntax for interjections, and they can never embarrass the learner, since they do not require any rules.

For aversion, disgust ;

Fie ! Fie upon ! Fi ! n'avez-vous pas de honte ?

For fright, surprise, astonishment ;

Ha ! Ay ! Ha ! vous voilà.

Eh ! Hah ! Eh ! que vous êtes alerte !

Oh oh ! Oh ! Oh oh ! je vous y prends.

O ciel ! Heavens ! O ciel ! qu'allons-nous devenir ?

Bon dieu ! Mercy on us ! Bon dieu ! que vous êtes impatient !

For calling ;

*Ho !
Hoh !
Hem !* } Sounds used when *we call out* to people.

For silence ;

*St !
Chut !
Paix !* } Sounds used when *we call for a sudden silence.*

CHAPTER XI.

IDIOMS.

Remarks on some idiomatical expressions, and words having different meanings, in which learners are apt to be mistaken.

PEOPLE ; PEUPLE, GENS, PERSONNES, MONDE.

228. *People*, meaning that aggregate body of human beings that compose a nation, a government, is expressed by *peuple* ; as,

The french people. *Le peuple français.*
The will of the people. *La volonté du peuple.*

N. B. *Peuple* is also said of that number of persons without dignity, who compose the multitude ; as,

An insurrection of the *people*. *Un soulèvement du peuple.*

229. *People*, used to denote a certain number of *individuals*, is expressed by *gens, personne, monde* ; as,

Were there many *people*, i. e. *persons*, at the play ?
Y avait-il beaucoup de gens, beaucoup de monde à la comédie ?
There is a great number of *people* in the street.

Il y a un grand nombre de monde, de gens, de personnes, dans la rue.

But observe that *gens*, is not used after a *definite number* ; so we do not say,

Deux ou trois gens ; two or three *people* ; we say, *Deux ou trois personnes*,

Except when *gens* is attended by an *adjective* ; as

Deux ou trois honnêtes gens. Two or three *honest people*.

Cinq ou six jeunes gens. Five or six *young people*.

Observe also that when *gens* is attended by an *adjective*, this adjective must be *feminine* if it comes *before gens*, and it must be *masculine* if it comes *after* ; as,

Good people, *civil people*. De bonnes gens, des gens civils.

Old people are *suspicious*. Les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux.

COUNTRY; PAYS, CAMPAGNE.

230. Pays is said of a *large extent* of country, such as the *dominions* of a government, a *country*, a *province* ; campagne is said of a certain extent of *fields*, and is the opposite of *ville*, *town* ; as,

France is a fine *country*. La France est un beau pays.

I prefer the *country* to the town. Je préfère la campagne à la ville.

MOUTH; BOUCHE, GUEULE.

231. Speaking of *men*, *horses*, *mules*, *asses*, we express *mouth* by *bouche* ;

The *mouth* of a horse, of an ass. La bouche d'un cheval, d'un âne.

Speaking of other *animals*, we express *mouth* by *gueule* ;

The *mouth* of an ox, of a dog, &c. La gueule d'un bœuf, d'un chien.

The *mouth* of a pike, of a trout. La gueule d'un brochet, d'une truite.

TIME ; TEMS, FOIS.

232. The word *time*, denoting any *period*, or *space*, is expressed by *tems* ;

It is *time* to set out.

Il est tems de partir.

We shall not be there in *time*.

Nous n'y serons pas à tems.

But the word *time* is sometimes used to *limit* the action of the verb, or to denote a *repetition* of the action ; as, the *first time* ; *this time* ; *another time* ; *several times*, and is then expressed by *fois* ; as,

Pardon me for *this time*.

Pardonnez-moi pour cette fois.

I will do it better *next time*.

Je le ferai mieux la prochaine fois.

How *many times* have you done it. Combien de fois l'avez-vous fait?

YEAR ; AN, ANNEE.

DAY ; JOUR, JOURNEE.

233. *An* and *jour* are *indefinite* expressions which serve more to denote the *periods* of time than its duration ; they are chiefly used after the cardinal or primitive numbers *un*, *deux*, *trois*, *quatre*, &c ; as,

Un *an*, deux *ans*, trois *ans*, &c. A year, two years, three years, &c.

Un *jour*, deux *jours*, trois *jours*. One day, two days, three days. &c.

Année, on the contrary, implies *duration*, and will admit of different modifications ; so when *year* is attended by an *article*,

or by an *adjective*, or by another *noun*, you must express it by *année*; as,

This *year*, last *year*.

Cette *année*, l'*année* dernière.

A good, a happy *year*.

Une bonne, une heureuse *année*.

A great number of *years*.

Un grand nombre d'*années*.

Journée is generally understood of the time which people employ in their occupations from their *rising* to their *going to bed*; as,

I spent the *day* very well.

J'ai bien employé la *journée*.

I have studied the whole *day*.

J'ai étudié toute la *journée*.

MORNING; MATIN, MATINEE.

EVENING; SOIR, SOIREE.

234. It is the same with *matin*, *matinée*; *soir*, *soirée*, as it is with *jour*, *journée*. *Matin* is said of the *first*, and *soir* of the *last* part of the day, but they do not imply any idea of duration. *Matinée*, on the contrary, implies the *whole time* from *day light* till *noon*; but is generally understood to be from the time that people get up till *twelve o'clock* at noon; and *soirée* implies the whole time of *darkness* till *twelve o'clock* at night, or till people retire; as,

It was fine this *morning*.

Il faisait beau ce *matin*.

I have studied all the *morning*.

J'ai étudié toute la *matinée*.

Shall we see you this *evening*?

Vous verrons-nous ce *soir*?

I shall spend the *evening* with you.

Je passerai la *soirée* avec vous.

N. B. Saluting people, for *good morning*, we say *bon jour*, not *bon matin*; and for *good night*, we say *bon soir*, in the *early part* of the night, and *bonne nuit*, when the night is *far advanced*.

NIGHT; NUIT, SOIR.

235. If, by *night*, you mean the *whole time of darkness* on that part of the earth which we inhabit, you express it in french by *nuît*; as,

Where did he sleep last *night*?

Où coucha-t-il la *nuît* dernière?

He spent the whole *night* at the ball.

Il passa toute la *nuît* au bal.

If, by *night*, you mean only the *first part of darkness* which is otherwise called *evening*, you express it by *soir*; as,

Will you go to the play to-*night*?

Irez-vous à la comédie ce *soir*?

Were you at the ball last *night*?

Etiez-vous au bal hier au *soir*?

236 TWELVE O'CLOCK; MIDI, MINUIT.

It is *twelve o'clock*. Il est *midi* (in the day.) Il est *minuit* (at night.)

It is a *quarter past 12*. Il est *midi* et un quart. Il est *minuit* et un quart.

It is *half past twelve*. Il est *midi* et demi. Il est *minuit* et demi.

It is *three quarters past twelve*.

} Il est une heure moins un quart.

It wants a *quarter* to one.

It is *one o'clock*.

Il est une heure.

It is a *quarter past one*.

Il est une heure et un quart, &c.

To HAVE, expressed by ÊTRE.

237. The auxiliary verb *have* is expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary *être*, to form the compound tenses of *reflective verbs*; as,

I <i>have</i> hurt myself.	Je <i>me suis</i> blessé.
He <i>has</i> gone away.	Il <i>s'en est</i> allé.
We <i>have</i> sat down.	Nous <i>nous sommes</i> assis.
You <i>have</i> walked.	Vous <i>vous êtes</i> promenés.
They <i>have</i> diverted themselves.	Ils <i>se sont</i> divertis. [see p. 101.]

238. The auxiliary *have* is also expressed by the same tense and person of *être*, when it comes before any of the following participles;

Agreed, <i>convenu</i> .	Come, <i>venu</i> .	Fallen, <i>tombé</i> .
Arrived, <i>arrivé</i> .	Come in, <i>entré</i> .	Gone, <i>allé</i> .
Become, <i>dévenu</i> .	Dead, <i>mort</i> .	Returned, <i>revenu</i> .
Befallen, <i>survenu</i> .	Deceased, <i>décédé</i> .	Set out, <i>parti</i> .
Born, <i>né</i> .	Disagreed, <i>disconvenu</i> .	Succeeded, <i>parvenu</i> .
I <i>have set out</i> early.	Je <i>suis parti</i> de bonne heure.	
He <i>has agreed</i> to do it.	Il <i>est convenu</i> de le faire.*	
We <i>have arrived</i> in time.	Nous <i>sommes arrivés</i> à tems.	
You <i>have returned</i> too soon.	Vous <i>êtes revenus</i> trop tôt.	
They <i>have gone</i> too far.	Ils <i>sont allés</i> trop loin.	

To BE, expressed by AVOIR.

239. The auxiliary verb *be* is expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary *avoir*, when it is followed by the adjectives *hungry, thirsty, cold, warm, hot* denoting the natural feelings; *right, wrong, ashamed*; because these *adjectives* are expressed by a *substantive* in french; as

I <i>am</i> hungry.	J' <i>ai</i> faim.
He <i>is</i> thirsty.	Il <i>a</i> soif.
His feet <i>are</i> cold.	Il <i>a</i> froid aux pieds.
She <i>is</i> warm or hot.	Elle <i>a</i> chaud; not, elle <i>est</i> chaude.
Her hands <i>are</i> warm.	Elle <i>a</i> chaud aux mains.
We <i>are</i> right.	Nous <i>avons</i> raison.
They <i>are</i> wrong, ashamed.	Ils <i>ont</i> tort; ils <i>ont</i> honte.

N. B. The verb *be* is also expressed by *avoir*, in speaking of the *age* of beings, because in these instances, as in the

* When the participle *convenu* means suited, it requires *avoir*; as, Cela m'*aurait* fort bien *convenu*; That *would have suited* me very well.

N. B. The participles *sorti*, gone out; beeⁿ out; *passé*, gone by; *monté*, gone up, ascended; *descendu*, come down, require *avoir* or *être*, agreeably to the sense in which they are used; but the same distinction, I think, is observed in english;

Mon père <i>a</i> sorti;	My father <i>has</i> been out.	Il <i>était</i> sorti;	He <i>was</i> gone out.
Il <i>a</i> passé près d'ici;	He <i>has</i> passed just by.	Il <i>est</i> passé;	He <i>is</i> gone by.
Il <i>a</i> monté la coline;	He <i>has</i> ascended the hill.	Il <i>est</i> monté;	He <i>is</i> gone up.
Il <i>a</i> descendu l'esca-	He <i>has</i> come down the	Il <i>est</i> descendu;	He <i>is</i> come down.
lier;	stairs.		

Demeuré, used for lived, dwelt, requires *avoir*; and for remained, staid, it requires *être*; as,

Il *a* demeuré à Paris; He *has* lived in Paris. Il *est* demeuré à P.; He *has* staid in P.

Accouru, run to; *Péri*, perished; *apparu*, *comparu*, appeared; *Disparu*, disappeared; *cro*, grown; *décro*, grown less; *recru*, grown again, take indifferently *avoir* or *être*.

above, the French use a *substantive* instead of an adjective ; as,

How old <i>are</i> you?	Quel âge <i>avez-vous</i> ? i. e. What age <i>have</i>
I <i>am</i> sixteen.	J'ai seize ans; not, Je suis seize. [you ?
How old <i>is</i> your horse?	Quel âge <i>a</i> votre cheval?

To *BE*, expressed by FAIRE.

240. The verb *be*, attended by an *adjective* or a *substantive* denoting the *state* of the *weather*, or of the *atmosphere*, is expressed in french by the same tense of the verb *faire*, with *Il* for its *nominative* ; as,

How <i>is</i> the weather?	Quel tems <i>fait-il</i> ?
<i>Is</i> the weather fine?	<i>Fait-il</i> beau tems?
Yes, the weather <i>is</i> very fine.	Oui, il <i>fait</i> très beau tems.
<i>It</i> is rather warm.	Il <i>fait</i> un peu chaud.
<i>It</i> is very cold.	Il <i>fait</i> très froid, or grand froid.
The weather <i>has been</i> bad lately.	Il <i>a fait</i> mauvais tems depuis peu.

To *BE*, To *DO*, expressed by *Se PORTER*.

241. The verbs *be* and *do*, used to denote the *state* of the *body*, are expressed by the same tense and person of the reflective verb *Se porter* ; as,

How <i>are</i> you? how <i>do</i> you <i>do</i> ?	Comment vous <i>portez-vous</i> ?
I <i>am</i> pretty well, I thank you.	Je me <i>porte</i> assez bien, dieu merci.*
I have not <i>been</i> well.	Je ne me suis pas bien <i>porté</i> .
How <i>is</i> you mother?	} Comment se <i>porte</i> madamet votre
How <i>does</i> your mother <i>do</i> ?	

To *BE*, expressed by DEVOIR.

242. The present tense of the verb *be*, *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, and the imperfect *was*, *were*, followed by another verb in the *infinitive*, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb *devoir* ; as,

I <i>am</i> to go there to-night.	Je <i>dois</i> y aller ce soir.
He <i>is</i> to come to-morrow.	Il <i>doit</i> venir demain ; not, <i>il est</i> &c.
He <i>was</i> to bring it to-day.	Il <i>devait</i> l'apporter aujourd'hui.

To *BE*, not expressed in FRENCH.

243. The *infinitive* words *to be*, followed by a *past participle*, is not expressed, but the english *participle* takes the place of

* The French do not, as the English do, *thank* those who inquire after their health. Instead of *Je vous remercie* ; they say, *Dieu merci* ; *A votre service* ; *Vous êtes bien, bon, or bien civil* ; *Vous avez bien de la bonté*, or they return the compliment after the answer by saying, *Et vous ?* and *you ?*

† It is customary with the French, in mentioning the relations of the people to whom they are speaking, to add the words *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle* ; as,

Comment se porte *monsieur* votre père, *monsieur* votre frère ?
J'ai rencontré *madame* votre mère, *mademoiselle* votre sœur ; these words can not be expressed in english.

the *infinitive be*, and is expressed by the *infinitive* in french ; as,

There is nothing *to be seen*. Il n'y a rien à voir.

He caused his head *to be cut off*. Il lui fit couper la tête.

This house is *to be let, to be sold*. Cette maison est à louer, à vendre.

To BE JUST, To HAVE JUST; VENIR DE, ne FAIRE Que DE.

244. The verbs *have* and *be* followed by the adverb *Just*, to denote an action past at the moment we are speaking, are expressed by *venir de*, or *ne faire que de*, in the same tense and person as *have* or *be* are, and the english *participle* is expressed by the *infinitive* in french ; thus,

I am *just* come.

{ Je viens d'arriver ; or,
{ Je ne fais que d'arriver.

My brother *had just* done.

{ Mon frère venait de finir ; or,
{ Mon frère ne faisait que de finir.*

WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR, HAD LIKE; PENSER.

245. *Was near, were near* followed by a present *participle*, and *had like* followed by an *infinitive*, denote an action which was on the point of being effected, and are expressed by the *perfect* tense, or the *present compound*† of the verb *penser* ; as,

I *was near* dying ;

or I *had like* to have died,

You *were near* falling ;

or Your *had like* to have fallen.

He *was near* being killed ;

or He *had like* to have been killed.

{ J'ai pensé, or je pensait mourir.

{ Vous avez pensé tomber.

{ Il a pensé, or il pensait être tué.

THERE IS, THERE ARE, IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG, AGO, IT IS SINCE, THIS, THESE; IL Y A; IL Y AVAIT, &c.

246. *There is, there are, it is far, it is long, it is since, ago*, and the demonstrative words *this, these*, pointing out a period of time, are expressed by the impersonal verb *il y a; il y avait, &c.* ;‡ as,

Is there any news to-day ? Y a-t-il des nouvelles aujourd'hui ?

Are there flowers in his garden ? Y a-t-il des fleurs dans son jardin ?

How far is it from Calais to Paris ? } Combien y a-t-il de Calais à
or *How far is* Calais from Paris ? } Paris ?

It is a hundred and fifty miles. Il y a cent cinquante milles.

Calais *is* 150 miles from Paris. Il y a cent cinquante milles de C. à P.

How long has he lived here ? Combien y a-t-il qu'il demeure ici ?

He has been here *these* six months. Il y a six mois qu'il est ici.

* Do not confound *ne faire que DE*, *To be just, To have just*, with *ne faire que*, which expressed another idea, viz. *To do nothing but*; *DE* added to the first makes the difference between these two expressions.

† Agreeably to 136, 137 rules.

‡ See the conjugation of the impersonal verb *y avoir*, page 161.

It is 10 years since he was in France. } *Il y a dix ans qu'il était en*
or He was in France 10 years ago. } *France; or, Il était en France*
il y a dix ans.

It is long since I have seen him. } *Il y a long tems que je ne**
or I have not seen him this long while } *l'ai vu.*

It was 12 months since I saw him. } *Il y avait un an que je ne*
or I had not seen him these 12 months. } *l'avais vu. †*

HERE IS, HERE ARE ; THIS IS, THESE ARE ; VOICI.
THERE IS, THERE ARE ; THAT IS, THOSE ARE ; VOILA.

247. *Here is, here are, this is, these are*, pointing out any object, are expressed by *voici* ; *there is, there are, that is, those are*, also pointing out an object, are expressed by *voilà* ; as,

Here is, or this is your horse. *Voici votre cheval.*

Here are, or these are your boots. *Voici vos bottes.*

There is, that is a man who says. *Voilà un homme qui dit.*

N. B. It is to be observed that, when the *nominative* of the verb which attends *here, there*, in the above sense, *i. e.* pointing out an object, is a *personal pronoun*, this *nominative* pronoun is changed into an *objective pronoun* in french, and placed *before voici, voilà* ; thus,

Here I am. *Me voici.* *Here we are.* *Nous voici.*

Here he is. *Le voici.* *There she is.* *La voilà.*

Here they are. *Les voici.* *There they are.* *Les voilà.*

LET ; QUE, LAISSEZ.

248. *Let*, implying command or permission to a *third person*, is expressed by *que*, and the *object* of *let* is made the *nominative* of the following verb, which must be in the *subjunctive* in french ; as,

Let him do it himself. *Qu'il le fasse lui même.*

Let her go, if she likes. *Qu'elle y aille, si elle veut.*

Let them go too. *Qu'ils, or qu'elles y aillent aussi.*

Let my brother go alone. *Que mon frère y aille seul.*

Let, commanding or entreating a *second person*, is expressed by the second person of the *imperative* of the verb *laisser*, with the following verb in the *infinitive* ; as,

Let him go ; permit him to go. *Laissez-le aller.*

Let her go ; permit her to go. *Laissez-la aller.*

Let them go ; permit them to go. *Laissez-les aller.*

Let my brother go ; suffer him to go. *Laissez aller mon frère.*

N. B. *Let know*, meaning to *inform*, is expressed by *faire savoir*, agreeably to tense and person ; as,

* See the 196 rule.

† The French do not give to the different periods of time names which correspond with the English. For a week, they say, *huit jours* ; for two weeks, or a fortnight, they say, *quinze jours* ; three weeks, *trois semaines* ; four weeks, *un mois* ; for a quarter of a year, they say, *trois mois* ; half a year, *six mois* ; three quarters of a year, *neuf mois* ; twelve months, *un an*.

Let him know that I will come. Faites lui savoir que je viendrai.
I will let him know it to-night. Je le lui ferai savoir ce soir.

To MAKE ; FAIRE, RENDRE.

249. *To make*, meaning to perform some work, or some action, is expressed by *faire* ; as,

To make a book ; to make a noise. Faire un livre ; faire un bruit.

To make great progress. Faire de grands progrès.

But *to make*, expressing not the performance of an action, but the *moral* or *natural effects* of one being on another, is expressed by *rendre* ; as,

Exercise makes the body healthy. L'exercice rend le corps sain.

Vice makes men unhappy. Le vice rend les hommes malheureux.

Misfortune has made him wise. Le malheur l'a rendu sage.

To CAUSE, To HAVE, To GET ; FAIRE.

250. The verbs *cause*, and *have* ; and *get*, in the sense of *cause*, meaning to order, or procure a thing to be done, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb *faire* ; and the english *participle* which follows *have*, or *get*, is expressed by the *infinitive* in french ; as,

I had him arrested ; } *Je l'ai fait arrêter.*
or I have caused him to be arrested.

I shall have him punished ; } *Je le ferai punir.*
or I shall cause him to be punished.

Get your watch mended. Faites raccommoder votre montre.

To CAUSE To BE DONE or MADE, To } *FAIRE FAIRE.*
HAVE or GET DONE or MADE, To
ORDER, To BESPEAK ;

251. *To cause to be done* or *made*, *To have* or *get done* or *made*, *To order*, *To bespeak*, are expressed by the verb *faire* repeated ; i. e. the first verb in the same tense and person as *cause*, *have*, *get*, *order*, or *bespeak* is, and the second verb in the *infinitive* ; as,

I am going to get a watch made. Je vais faire faire une montre.

Where will you have it made ? } *Où la ferez-vous faire ?*
or Where will you get it done ?

I shall have it made in Paris ; } *Je la ferai faire à Paris.*
or I shall get it done in Paris.

To ASK, To DESIRE ; DIRE, PRIER, CHARGER.

252. We say in french as in english, *demandeur une chose*, to ask for a thing ; *désirer une chose*, to wish for a thing ; but we do not say ; *demandeur de faire une chose*, to ask to do a thing ; nor *désirer une personne de faire une chose*, to desire a person to do a thing ; therefore, when *ask* or *desire* are followed by another verb in the *infinitive*, *ask* must be expressed by *dire* or *prier* ; and *desire* by *prier* or *charger* ; as,

He asked me to do it. Il me *dit*, or il me *pria* de le faire.
He desired me to tell you so. Il m'a *prié*, or *chargé* de vous le dire.

To LOOK; REGARDER, PARAÎTRE, AVOIR LA MINE.

253. To look, meaning to view, to consider, is expressed by *regarder* ;

Look at this man, at that horse. *Regardez* cet homme, ce cheval.

To look, meaning to seem, to appear, is *paraître*, *avoir l'air*, *avoir la mine*, *avoir apparence* ; as,

That men looks very proud. Cet homme a l'air bien fier.

You look very well to-day. Vous avez bonne mine aujourd'hui.

This bread looks well. Ce pain paraît bon, or a bonne mine.*

How does the country look. Quelle apparence a la campagne ?

To SUPPOSE ; SUPPOSER, PENSER, S'IMAGINER.

254. The French say as well as the English, *supposer une chose*, to suppose a thing, i. e. to take it as granted for the sake of argument ; as

You suppose (i. e. you take for granted) a thing which is not probable.
Vous supposez une chose qui n'est pas probable.

But the verb *suppose*, so often used in english in the sense of to think, to fancy, to imagine, can not be expressed by the verb *supposer* in french ; it must be expressed by *penser* or *s'imaginer* ; as

I suppose you know the news, i. e. I think, I imagine, &c.

Je m'imagine que vous savez les nouvelles ; not, Je suppose, &c.

It is supposed that there has been a battle ; i. e. it is thought, &c.

On pense, on s' imagine qu'il y a eu bataille ; never, On suppose.

To HOPE ; ESPERER.

To HOPE ; Se FLATTER, AIMER à CROIRE, Se PLAIRE à CROIRE.

255. The verb *hope* followed by a future tense, is expressed by *espérer* ;

I hope you will be well by and by, to-morrow, &c.

J'espère que vous vous porterez bien tantôt, demain, &c.

N. B. *Hope*, being the expectation of something to come, can never be said in french of what is past or present ; so when the verb *hope* is followed by the present or perfect tense of another verb, it can not be expressed by *Espérer* ; it must be expressed by *Se Flatter*, *Aimer à Croire*, *Se Plaire à Croire* ; as,

I hope you are well.

Je me flatte, or J'aime à croire, or

Je me plais à croire que vous vous portez bien ; never, J'espère.

I hope that I have not kept you waiting.

Je me flatte que je ne vous ai pas fait attendre ; never, J'espère.

* MINE is said of the look of persons, and of things that are eatable, such as bread, meat, fruit, &c. but it cannot be said of other things.

† Je me FLATTE, in this sense, does not mean I flatter myself ; it means, I like to think to persuade myself.

Yet, in these instances, we may also use the verb *espérer*, if we transpose it in *parenthesis* at the end of the sentence ; thus,

Vous vous portez bien, j'*espère*.

You are well, *I hope*.

Je ne vous ai pas fait attendre, j'*espère*. I have not kept you, *I hope*.

To TAKE ; MENER, PORTER.

To BRING ; AMENER, APPORTER

256. *Mener*, to take, is said of beings that have the *natural faculty of walking* ; *porter* is said of the same beings when they have *lost*, or are *not able* to use that faculty ; and of things ; as,

Take my horse to the stable.

Menez mon cheval à l'écurie.

Take the saddle to the saddler.

Portez la selle au sellier.

Amener and *apporter* are used in the same sense as *mener* and *porter*, but they imply a relation to the *place* in which we are ; as,

Bring me my horse.

Amenez-moi mon cheval.

Bring me my whip.

Apportez-moi mon fouet.

To USE ; } *Se SERVIR de*, USER *de*, En USER,
TRAITER, AGIR, AVOIR COUTUME.

257. To use, meaning to *make use of things*, is expressed by the reflective verb *se servir de* ; as,

I am *using* my knife, my pen, my book, my horse, &c. [val ;

Je me *sers* de mon couteau, de ma plume, de mon livre, de mon cheval. *J'use* mon couteau, ma plume, &c.

Because *user une chose*, means, to wear out a thing, not to make use of a thing.

Yet speaking of moral or intellectual objects, we express *use* by *user de* ;

To use patience, violence, reprisals, precaution.

User de patience, de violence, de représailles, de précaution.

To use, speaking of the *manner of acting towards persons*, is expressed by *traiter*, *en user avec*, *agir avec* ; as,

He *uses* me well.

Il me *traite* bien ; Il *en use* bien avec moi ; Il *agit* bien avec moi.

He has not *used* me well.

Il ne m'a pas bien *traité*.

To use, meaning to be *accustomed to*, is expressed by *avoir coutume*, or *être accoutumé* ; as,

You are *used* to it.

Vous y êtes *accoutumé*.

He was not *used* to do so.

Il n'avait pas *coutume* d'agir ainsi.

To HELP ; AIDER, SERVIR.

258. To help, viz. to assist a person to do a thing, is expressed by *aider* ;

Shall I *help* you to do it ?

Vous *aiderei*-je à le faire ?

My brother will not *help* me.

Mon frère ne veut pas m'*aider*.

But *to help* is often used in the sense of *to take*, *to offer*, *to present* a thing to a person ; *help* is then expressed by *servir*, not the *person* to the *thing*, but the *thing* to the *person* ; as, Shall I *help* you to a glass of wine ? Vous *servirai*-je un verre de vin ? i. e. shall I *help* a glass of wine *to* you ?

Help that gentleman *to* a glass ; *Servez* un verre à ce monsieur ; not, *servez* ce monsieur à un verre ; for it is the glass that you *help* or *present* to the gentleman, not the *gentleman* to the glass.

To ATTEND.

259. *Explained in the following examples ;*

To attend a meeting.	<i>Aller or assister à une assemblée.</i>
To attend to one's duty.	<i>Faire or remplir son devoir.</i>
To attend to what is said.	<i>Faire attention à ce qu'on dit.</i>
To attend to business.	<i>S'appliquer aux affaires.</i>
To attend a sick person.	<i>Garder or soigner un malade.</i>
To attend a patient viz. to visit.	<i>Voir or visiter un malade.</i>
To attend a master, to wait upon.	<i>Servir un maître.</i>
To attend a master, to be taught.	<i>Prendre leçon d'un maître.</i>
To attend a pupil, to give lessons.	<i>Donner leçon à un écolier.</i>

To WANT ; } AVOIR BESOIN, AVOIR ENVIE, DESIRER,
 } SOUHAITER, VOULOIR, DEMANDER.

260. *To want*, meaning to be in need of a thing, or under the necessity of doing a thing, is expressed by *avoir besoin* ; as,

I want money, clothes ; am in need.	J'ai besoin d'argent, d'habits.
I do not want him ; have no need.	Je n'ai pas besoin de lui.
I want to go to town ; i. e. must go.	J'ai besoin d'aller à la ville.

But *want* is often used to denote merely *wish* or *desire* ; it is then expressed by *avoir envie*, *désirer*, *souhaiter*, *vouloir* ; as,

I want to see him ; i. e. I wish.	Je désire or souhaite de le voir.
I want to speak to him ; (wish)	J'ai envie de lui parler.
I want him to learn french.	Je veux qu'il apprenne le français.

To want a person or a thing, in the sense of *wish*, is *demand*er ;

Whom or what do you want ?	Qui or que demandez-vous ?
You are wanted ; He wants you.	On vous demande ; Il vous demande.

To MARRY ; MARIER, Se MARIER, EPOUSER.

261. If, by *marry*, you mean to give a person in marriage, or to perform what is called the ceremony, you must make use of the verb *marier*. If, by *marry*, you mean to take a person in marriage, you use *épouser* ;

My father has married his niece.	
Mon père a marié sa nièce ; i. e. has given her in marriage.	
Mon père a épousé sa nièce ; i. e. has taken her for his wife.	
That parson has married my sister.	
Ce prêtre a marié ma sœur ; i. e. has performed the ceremony.	
Ce prêtre a épousé ma sœur i. e. has taken her for his wife.	

N. B. *Married*, in the sense of *taking a wife*, is expressed by *épousé* after the auxiliary *have*, and by *marié*, after the auxiliary *be*; as,

I *have married* his sister. J'ai *épousé* sa sœur; not *marié*.
I *am married* to his sister. Je suis *marié* à sa sœur; not *épousé*.

To *marry*, in a *neuter sense*, i. e. *without an object* added to it, is expressed by the reflective verb *se marier*; as,

When do you *marry*? Quand vous *mariez-vous*?
I will never be *married*. Je ne me *mariérai* jamais.

To RIDE.

262. Explained in the following examples;

To <i>ride</i> well.	Se <i>tenir</i> bien à cheval.
To <i>ride</i> in a coach, on horseback.	Aller en carosse, aller à cheval.
To <i>take a ride</i> in a coach.	{ <i>Faire un tour</i> en carosse; or
	{ se <i>promener</i> en carosse.
To <i>take a ride</i> on horseback.	{ <i>Faire un tour</i> à cheval; or
	{ se <i>promener</i> à cheval.

N. B. To *ride*, attended by any particular *object*, i. e. an *object* determined by any of the signs called *article*, is expressed by *aller*; as,

I will *ride* your horse, and you will *ride* in my coach.
J'*irai* sur votre cheval, et vous *irez* dans mon carosse.

To WALK; MARCHER, Se PROMENER.

263. If, by *walk*, you mean the action of going from place to place, either for *business* or *exercise*, you must use *marcher*; as,

Walk a little faster. *Marchez* un peu plus vite.
I can not *walk* any more. Je ne puis plus *marcher*.
I have *walked* too much to-day. J'ai trop *marché* aujourd'hui.

If, by *walk*, you mean that exercise which is taken for *diversion*, you must use the reflective verb *se promener*; as,

Let us *walk* a little. *Promenons-nous* un peu. [d'hui.
I have not *walked* to-day. Je ne me suis pas *promené* aujourd'hui.

N. B. To *take a walk* is expressed by *faire un tour*, or by *faire une promenade*, *faire un tour de promenade*; as,*

Let us go and *take a walk*. Allons *faire un tour de promenade*.
Go and *take a walk* in the garden. Allez *faire un tour* dans le jardin.*

To COME; ALLER, VENIR.

264. The English often use the verb *come*, with reference to the *person* to whom they speak; so speaking to a person in the street, they will say:

* *Faire un tour* is generally understood of a *short walk*; and *Faire une promenade*, *Faire un tour de promenade* means to take a walk, without any limitation as to time, but *rather long* than *short*.

I will *come* and see you to-morrow, meaning, at the person's house ;
The French, on the contrary, speak with reference to the *place*, and not to the person ; so this sentence :

I will *come* and see you to-morrow,
may be expressed two ways ;

Je viendrai vous voir demain,
being then at the place in which you are *to come* to see the person.

J'irai vous voir demain,
meaning the place where you are *to go* to see the person ; for, *venir* means to *move* from a *place* in which we are not at the time we are speaking, to a *place* in which we are ; *aller* means to move from a *place* in which we are, to a *place* in which we are not.

In asking a question, *come* is expressed by *venir* ; but in the answer, the verb must be determined by the *place*, not by the *person* you are to go to.

To RETURN ; RETOURNER, REVENIR.

265. The English use the verb *return* both for to *go back*, and to *come back* ; but in french you must make a distinction.

If, by *return*, you mean to *go back*, you must use *retourner* ; as,
I come from *Paris*, and I will *return* to-morrow ; i.e. will *go back*.
Je viens de Paris, et j'y retournerai demain.

If, by *return*, you mean to *come back*, you must use *revenir* ; as,

I am going to *Paris*, and I will *return* next week ; i.e. will *come*
Je vais à Paris, et je reviendrai la semaine prochaine. [back.

N. B. *To return*, meaning to *give back*, to *restore*, to *repay*, is expressed by *rendre* ; as,

Return me my money. *Rendez-moi mon argent.*
Have I not returned it to you ? *Ne vous l'ai-je pas rendu ?*

To CALL ; PASSER CHEZ.

266. *To call* a person, is *appeler quelqu'un* ; but *to call* at a person's, or *upon* a person, is *passer chez quelqu'un* ; as,

When will you *call upon* me ? *Quand passerez-vous chez moi ?*
I will *call upon* you to-morrow. *Je passerai demain chez vous.*

Never say,

Appelez sur moi, call upon me ; J'appèlerai sur vous, &c.

To BREAK ; ROMPRE, CASSER.

267. *Rompre* is said of things which require some *effort* to break them, such as *wood* and *metals* ; as,

You have *broken my stick.* *Vous avez rompu mon bâton.*

Casser is said of things that are *frail*, such as *glass* and *earthenware*.

He has *broken* the plates.

Il a *cassé* les assiettes.

The glass and bottle are *broken*. Le verre et la bouteille sont *cassés*.

N. B. In speaking of *bones*, we use indifferently *rompre* or *casser* ;

He has *broken* his leg.

Il s'est *cassé* or *rompu* la jambe.

Without specifying any particular object, we use *casser* ; as,

They *break* every thing in this house. On *casse* tout dans cette maison.

And for *break to pieces*, we say *briser* ; as,

The ship was *broken* to pieces. La navire fut tout *brisé*.

To LIKE ; AIMER, TROUVER.

268. To *like*, meaning to be *fond* of, to have a *liking* for a person or a thing, is expressed by *aimer* ; as,

I *like* wine, money, pleasure, France, the country, &c.

J'*aime* le vin, l'argent, le plaisir, la France, la campagne, &c.

But *like* is often used, especially in asking questions, for to *think*, to *have an opinion*, and is then expressed by *penser* or *trouver* ;

How do you *like* this country ?

i. e. What *think* you, what is your *opinion* of this country ?

Que *pensez-vous* de ce pays ? or comment *trouvez-vous* ce pays ?

Yet in the answer we use *aimer* ; as,

Je l'*aime* beaucoup.

Je l'*aime* assez bien.

Je ne l'*aime* pas du tout.

I *like* it much.

I *like* it well enough.

I do not *like* it at all.

To KEEP ; GARDER, TENIR, AVOIR.

269. To *keep*, meaning to *preserve*, to *watch*, to *guard*, to *look after*, is expressed by *garder* ; as,

Keep it for my sake ; i. e. *preserve*. Gardez-le pour l'amour de moi.

This dog *keeps* the house ; *watches*. Ce chien *garde* la maison.

This boy *keeps* the flocks ; *looks after*. Ce garçon *garde* les troupeaux.

These instances excepted, to *keep* is generally expressed by *tenir* ;

She *keeps* a house, a school.

Elle *tient* maison, école.

He *keeps* an inn, boarders.

Il *tient* auberge, des pensionnaires.

To *keep* in prison, in the house.

Tenir en prison, dans la maison.

To *keep* clean, to *keep* ready.

Tenir propre, *tenir* prêt.

To *keep* cows, horses, a coach.

Avoir des vaches, des chevaux, un

Familiarly we say ; *Rouler* carrosse ; to *keep* a coach. [carrosse.

To GET ; GAGNER ; GOT not expressed in french.

270. The verb *get*, meaning to *gain*, to *win*, to *earn*, to *acquire*, is expressed by *gagner* ; as,

He *gets* or *earns* five shillings a day. Il *gagne* cinq shélins par jour.

He has *got* or *won* a deal of money. Il a *gagné* beaucoup d'argent.

But the participle *got*, so often added to the verb *have*, to denote *possession*, is *not expressed* in french, and is perhaps *useless* in english ; as,

He has *got* a deal of money.

Il a beaucoup d'argent.

Have you *got* any money about you ? *Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous ?*

You have *got* a new hat.

Vous avez un chapeau neuf ;

Not,

Vous avez *gagné*, which means, you have *won, gained, earned, &c.*

To SPEND ; DEPENSER, PASSER.

271. Speaking of *money, property*, to *spend* is expressed by *dépenser* ; speaking of *time*, *spend* is expressed by *passer* ; as,

He *spends* all his money in gaming. Il *dépense* tout son argent à jouer.

He *spends* all his time in hunting. Il *passe* tout son tems à la chasse.

To CHARGE ; PRENDRE, FAIRE PAYER, PRIX.

272. The verb *charge*, so often used in speaking of the *price* of things, can not be expressed in french by *charger*, which means to *load*, or to *give in charge* : it must be expressed by *prendre, faire payer*, or by *prix*, with some other verb ; as,

How much do you *charge* a day for a horse ? i. e. do you *require* ?

Combien *prenez-vous* par jour pour un cheval ?

How much do you *charge* for a saddle ? what is the *price* of a saddle ?

Combien *prenez-vous* pour une selle ? or quel est le *prix* d'une selle ?

You *charge* too much ; i. e. the *price* is too high.

C'est *trop, c'est trop cher*, vous *prenez trop*, vous *faites payer trop* ;

Néver, Vous *chargez trop* ; vous avez *chargé trop*.

273. *To GO to MEET.* { ALLER au DEVANT de,
ALLER à la RENCONTRE de.

Let us *go* and *meet* your sister. Allons au devant de votre sœur.

We were *going to meet* you. { Nous *allions à* votre rencontre ;
Nous *allions au* devant de vous.

To BRING NEAR,

} APPROCHER,

To GO NEAR, To COME NEAR ; } S'APPROCHER de.

274. *Approcher* means to *bring* an object *near*, and *s'approcher de* means to *go*, or *come near* an object ; for ex. I shall say :

Approchez la table.

Bring the table *near*.

But if I said to a person *come near* or *go near* the table ; I should not say, *Approchez la table* ; I must say, *Approchez-vous de la table* ; for it is the *person* who is to *approach* the table, not the table to *approach* the person.

I *brought* my sister *near* me.

J'*approchai* ma sœur de moi.

I *went near* my sister.

Je m'*approchais* de ma sœur.

To HEAR; ENTENDRE, ENTENDRE des NOUVELLES, &c.

275. To hear a person is *entendre quelqu'un*; as,

I hear your sister coming, J'entends venir votre sœur.

But to hear from a person, is not *entendre de quelqu'un*; hear is then expressed by *entendre des nouvelles*, *apprendre des nouvelles*, *recevoir des nouvelles*; as,

Do you hear from your sister often?

Entendez-vous, or apprenez-vous, or recevez-vous souvent des nouvelles de votre sœur?

Not, Entendez-vous souvent de votre sœur?

I hear from her almost every day.

J'entends, or j'apprends, or je reçois presque tous les jours de ses nouvelles, or des nouvelles d'elle;

Not, J'entends d'elle, &c.

IT IS WITH; IL EN EST DE.

276. It is with, denoting a similarity between two objects, is expressed by *il en est de*; as,

It is with you as with me. Il en est de vous comme de moi.

It is with a state as with a family. Il en est d'un état comme d'une [famille.]

WHATEVER, IN VAIN, TO NO PURPOSE; AVOIR BEAU.

277. Avoir beau is an expression very prevalent in conversation, instead of *en vain*, *inutilement*; so, instead of saying;

C'est en vain que je lui dis d'étudier, il n'en fait rien;

It is in vain that I tell him to study, he does not do it;

we say; J'ai beau lui dire d'étudier, il n'en fait rien.

278. To FIND FAULT WITH; TROUVER à REDIRE à; ex.

He finds fault with every thing. Il trouve à redire à tout.

What fault can be found with it. Que peut-on y trouver à redire.

279. To TAKE IT KINDLY; SAVOIR BON GRÉ.

To TAKE IT UNKINDLY; SAVOIR MAUVAIS GRÉ.

If he comes, I will take it kindly. S'il vient, je lui en saurai bon gré.

He would take it unkindly of me. Il m'en saurait mauvais gré.

Take it kindly or unkindly. Sachez-m'en bon gré ou mauvais [gré.]

280. To DO WITHOUT, To BE EASY WITHOUT;

Se PASSER de; ex.

Can you do without a horse? Pouvez-vous vous passer de cheval?

I can not do without one.

I am not easy without it.

} Je ne puis pas m'en passer.

281. WHAT IS THE MATTER,

WHAT IS IT ABOUT,

WHAT IS IT?

[QU'IL Y A,

QU'YA-T-IL, QU'EST-CÉ

QU'EST-CE QUE,

QU'EST-CE QUE C'EST?

What is the matter there?

Qu'y a-t-il là; qu'est-ce qu'il y a là?

What is the matter with you?

Qu'est-ce que vous avez?

What is the matter with your hand? Qu'est-ce que vous avez à la main?

N. B. *Qu'est-ce que* is very prevalent in conversation, instead of *que* ; so instead of saying :

<i>Que dites-vous ?</i>	<i>What do you say ?</i>
<i>Que faites-vous ?</i>	<i>What are you doing ?</i>
we say: <i>Qu'est-ce que vous dites ?</i>	<i>Qu'est-ce que vous faites ?</i>

282. *IS IT, IS IT NOT, DOES IT, DOES IT NOT, HAVE I, HAVE I NOT?* } *EST-CE QUE, N'EST-CE PAS QUE, N'EST-CE PAS ?*

These expressions are often used to ask questions ; but they serve less to require information, than to show a kind of *fear* or *surprise*, that the thing about which we inquire should be different from what we thought or wished it to be ; the difference will be made obvious in the following examples ;

<i>Vous en allez-vous ?</i>	<i>Are you going ?</i>
<i>Est-ce que vous vous en allez ?</i>	<i>You are not going, are you ?</i>
<i>Ne sortirons-nous pas ?</i>	<i>Shall we not go out ?</i>
<i>N'est-ce pas que nous sortirons,</i>	} <i>We shall go out, shall we not ?</i>
or <i>Nous sortirons, n'est-ce pas ?</i>	

It seems to me, however it may seem to other people, that these two ways of asking a question, imply different ideas.*

Promiscuous Exercises on the Idioms.

Good morning, ^{N.B.}234 sir. This is [†]240 a fine morning. How do you do ¹⁸⁵ this morning ? I hope you are very well. Very well, sir, I thank you. ²⁵⁵ How does all your family do ? How are your wife and children ? ²⁴¹ They are better, I thank you. And you ; how do you do ? Tolerably ^{241 (E) p. 56., †} well for an (old man.) Do not talk of being old yet ²⁴¹183 ; it will be ^{vieillard. parler vieux déjà N.B. ;} time enough twenty years hence. How old do you think I am ²²¹239 ? I ^{N.B.} should take you to be ^{pour N.B. entre}239 between thirty and forty. I am ^{ans. ¶ en'0 N.B. près de}239 near ²⁵³ fifty. You do not look so old. You look very well for your age. I ²⁵³ am very glad you think so. You have been in the country, ²²¹230

* These are the words which, I have remarked, generally embarrass the learner ; but he will find in the course of his studies, several other idiomatical expressions of less importance and too numerous to be explained in a grammar ; they are found in the dictionaries, and will be learned by taking notice of them in reading.

† Turn ; *It is fine this morning.* ‡ See note * page 339.

§ As we have several words in french for this expression, we *vary* them as often as we can ; see note * page 339.

|| Turn ; *Enough time* ; see note * page 303.

¶ We always add *An* to the number in french.

(I understand.) Yes, I have, 70 (i. e. *been there*.) I am just returned
à ce que j'entends. , N.B. 244 265
thence. How do you like it? I like it (very much.) It is a beautiful
(H) p. 58. 185 268 62 beaucoup. 65
country; and the people are uncommonly civil and obliging. I am
230 ; 229 extrêmement obligeant.
fond of industrious people. I like those good country people. They
* 229 25
look so cheerful and happy. I am going there to-night; will you come
253 gai 46 y 54 235 ;
with me? How long do you intend 168 to stop? I will sleep
186 avoir dessein rester? †
there, and return in the morning. But you have no occasion to
y 54, (H) p. 58. 265 216 234 besoin 168
return so soon. You may 178 stay there all the morning. You may
265 pouvoir rester 234 178
stay till twelve o'clock. Nay, 184 you may spend the whole day
jusqu'à 236 même, 271 233
there, if you like. Our people will be glad of your company.
y 54, vouloir. 229 bien aise
We will endeavour to make you as happy as we can. What time do
tâcher 249 43 43 142 A 82 heure
you (go to bed)? We generally go about twelve o'clock. If
se coucher ordinairement se coucher vers 336
you do not like to stop, you may 178 return at night. It will be moon 25
rester, pouvoir 265 le 235 faire lune
light, and the roads are very good. The weather is so fine, that it 62
clair, chemin 240 , N.B.,
is a pity to remain (shut up) in a town. How does the country
— dommage 168 rester renfermé
look? It looks 253 very well, indeed. I never saw it look 253 better.
253 62 † 136 ‡
Are the crops 134 promising 155? Very. If this weather lasts, there
— récolte promettre. Beaucoup. durer, 246
will be abundance of (every thing.) I should like to go (very well) 183,
167 ‖ fort, ¶ N.B.;
but it is rather too far for a walk. You have no occasion to walk;
246 un peu pour ** besoin **
you may 178 ride, if you will. You will ride 262 my horse, I will ride
pouvoir **, N.B.,
that of my servant and he will walk. If you would rather ride 262 in
88 domestique, **, aimer mieux N.B.
the carriage, it will be here (by and by); you may ride 262 in it. 64
voiture, 62 tantôt; 178 N.B. dedans —
No; I would rather ride on horseback. Come; the country air will
aimer mieux 262 ; 25
do you good. I hope it will 70; for I am not well. What
bien. 221 (i. e. do me some ;) 241

* See note † page 246.

† The verb *Sleep*, so often used in english in the sense of *Lie*, is not expressed in french by *Dormir*, but by *Coucher*; because a person may *lie* abed, and not *sleep*.

‡ Turn; *It has a very fine appearance*.

‡ Turn; *I have never seen it finer*.

¶ See note ** page 286.

¶ See note * page 330.

** When *Walk* is used by opposition to *Ride*, it is expressed by *Aller à pied*, and *Ride* by *Aller à cheval*.

is the matter with you ? You look very well. I do not know
 281 253

how I look, but I am not well. I am always cold. My feet are
 quelle mine j'ai, 241 239 froid. 239

always cold. The weather is so bad that I (am afraid) of going
 240 craindre 154

out for fear of (catching cold.) The weather has been very bad
 de peur de m'enrhumer. 240

lately. Is the weather always so bad in this country ? Is it
 depuis quelque tems. 230 240

always so damp and so cold ? It is never very warm. However,
 humide 240 chaud. Cependant,

(it is to be expected) that it will be finer in a short time. The
 il faut 172 espérer 240 — peu de.

weather ought to be fine at this season ; it is near midsummer.
 devoir 240 ; * près de la St. Jean.

Our spring generally comes late. We never have it here so early
 printemps ordinairement tard. 190 de si (bonne

as you have it in your own country. (How many) years have
 (heure) que — 230 Combien 233

you been in this country ? I have been about two years. I did
 † † environ

not think it was so long. Do you like it ? I like the people well
 140 246 long tems. 268 228 assez

enough, but I do not like the climate It does not agree with me ;
 bien, N.B., climat. convenir — 54 ;

the weather is so cold and so changeable. If I cannot accustom myself
 variable. accoutumer me 54

to it this year, I will not stay another year. You should walk out
 63 233, rester 233 176 263 à l'air

oftener than you do. I cannot walk. I have hurt my foot. I am
 47 faire 237 se blesser 15 pied.

afraid I have put my ankle out of joint. Come ; do not afflict
 (nn) 237 se démettre cheville. — — || Allons ;

yourself ; I dare say you will be well in (a few) days. Here is Mr.
 57 ; See || p. 333 241 quelques 247

B. How long have you been in town ? I am just come. I have just
 186 6 en 244 arriver. 244

alighted from my horse. Are you come to stop any time ? No,
 descendre — venir 170 rester quelque ,

I shall (go back) to-night. (How many) times a week do you
 s'en retourner 235 232 12

come to town ? Sometimes twice, sometimes three times. You
 deux fois, 232

should come oftener. You should come every day. You should
 176 y 70 41 y 70 tous les jours.

bring your wife with you. I wish I could bring her ; but we
 256 (nn) ;

can not well leave the house both (at the) same time. Sir, you are
 quitter 122 en , 92

* Turn ; *We are near, &c.*

† Turn, *How many years is it since 246 you are, &c.* see note * page 303.

‡ Turn, *It is 246 about two years ;* see note * page 303. § See note * page 300.

|| Two words *Out of joint*, are all expressed by the verb *Démétte*.

¶ Turn, *How long is it since you are, &c.* see note * page 303.

wanted²⁶⁰. Who wants²⁶⁰ me ? A gentleman is in the street who
N.B. N.B. See * p. 220 * 7/ *
 wants to speak to you. Tell him to (walk in). He says he can
²⁶⁰ (o) 54 (1) p. 63. entrer. ²²¹
 not stop. Tell him that I will go and speak to him. Will you
 s'arrêter. † — (o) 54
 excuse me whilst I go and see what that gentleman wants ? I am
 pendant que (nn) 84 ²⁶⁰
 going to leave you. No ; Sit down ; Do not go yet ; do not go
¹⁵⁵ quitter ; s'asseoir ; † encore ; s'en aller ‡
 before I return. I hope²²¹ you do not intend to leave us so soon.
²¹⁸ ‡ ²⁶⁵ ²⁵⁵ avoir dessein ¹⁶⁸ tôt.
 Yes, I must go ; but I will (call again) before I leave town. Take
 , 181 s'en aller ‡ ; repasser avant de (nn) ²⁵⁶
 this letter to my sister. Take the children with you. If you can
²⁵⁶
 not bring my sister, bring me the book which she has promised me.
²⁵⁶ , ²⁵⁶ ⁵⁵
 Why did you not bring my sister ? Why did you not bring me the
¹³⁶ ¹³⁶
 book which I desired¹³⁶ you to bring ? I could not bring it ; she is
²⁵² ¹³⁶ ;
 using¹⁵⁵ it herself. My sister used¹⁴⁰ to be very fond of reading. She
²⁵⁷ (m) N.B. ²⁵⁷ ‡ ¹⁶⁹ ¹⁵⁴
 did not used to be so long in reading a book. I think she does not
²⁵⁷ longtemps ¹⁶⁹ ¹⁵⁴ ²²¹
 use me well. I do not like to be used so. I suppose she has not
²⁵⁷ ⁹² ainsi. ²⁵⁴ ²²¹
 had time. I want to see my father. Where is he ? I want money.
²⁶⁰
 I want a wife. I want to be married. You want (so many) things
²⁶¹ tant
 at once, that I (am afraid)²²¹ you will not get¹⁴⁶ one half (of them.)
 a la fois, craindre ¹⁹⁵ avoir la moitié en ⁵⁴
 You are yet too young to marry. You should get a little money
 encore ¹⁷⁶ ²⁶¹ ¹⁷⁰ ²⁷⁰ un peu
 first. ¹⁸³ You do not know what it costs to keep a house.
 premièrement. N.B. ⁸⁴ il en coûter à ²⁶⁹ —
 I suppose²²¹ you would like to keep a horse too. I dare say you
²⁵⁴ ²⁶⁹ aussi. ¶
 would have no objection) to have a ride now and then. I do not
 ne seriez pas fâché** de ²⁶² de tems en tems.

* Turn, There is²⁴⁶ in the street a gentleman who⁷⁵ &c. † See note * p. 228.

‡ See N. B. under *Aller*, page 102.

¶ Turn ; Before I have²³³ returned.

¶ See note ‡ page 246.

¶ See note ¶ page 333.

** The word *Objection*, so frequently used in english to denote that a person does or does not assent to what another person proposes, can not be expressed in french by *Objection* which means a *difficulty* which we oppose to an *argument* or a *proposition* in order to refute it. You must use some other equivalent expression, agreeably to the idea which you wish to denote ; such as, *Vouloir*, *Aimer*, *Etre fâché*, *se Soucier*, *Avoir à redire*, *Trouver à redire*, or such like ; as,

Have you any *objection* to take a walk ? *Voulez-vous faire*, or *Aimeriez-vous à faire*,
ne seriez-vous pas bien aise de faire une promenade ?

No ; I have no *objection* to it ; oui ; *Je le veux bien*, or *Je ne m'en soucie pas*, or
Comme vous voudrez, &c.

What *objection* have you to that ? *Qu'avez-vous à redire*, or *Que trouvez-vous à redire à cela ?*

I have no *objection* to it. *Je n'ai rien à y redire*, or *Je n'y trouve rien à redire*.

mind riding¹⁵⁴. I would sooner walk than ride. I can easily walk
 se soucier ²⁶² aimer mieux ²⁶³ ²⁶²
 twenty miles a-day, without being tired. Since you are such a
¹² , ¹⁵⁴ fatiguer. Puisque ^{si *}
 great walker, I wonder ²²¹ you do not come to see us oftener than
 marcheur, s'étonner ¹⁷² ⁴¹
 you do. Every morning when the weather is fine, you should walk
⁴⁷ Touts les que ²⁴⁰ , ¹⁷⁶ ²⁶³
 (as far as) our²⁰⁸ house; we will give you some breakfast, and after
 jusque N.B. ; à , aprèsque
 you have¹⁴² rested yourself, you may either walk back or ride in our
²³⁷ N.B. reposer vous⁵⁵, ¹⁴² — † —
 carriage, as (you like best). I intend to come and see you soon.¹⁸³
 voiture, comme il vous plaira. ²⁶⁴ (nn) ^{bientôt.} N.B.
 Does your brother return to the university this year? I suppose²²¹ he
²⁶⁵ ²³³ ²⁵⁴
 will⁷⁰; but I do not think he will go⁷⁰ for some time, for he is just
 † B.N. ; ²²¹ ¹⁴⁵ de quelque , † ²⁴⁴
 returned thence. Has he returned²⁶⁵ you the money which you had
²⁶⁵ en ⁵⁴ (H) p. 58. N.B.
 lent him¹⁶²? Yes, he has⁷⁰. I am glad (of it); for I
 (I) p. 63. , N.B. i. e. returned it me. bien aise en ⁵⁴; †
 (was afraid)²²¹ he would never return²⁶⁵ it you. He is so forgetful.
 craindre ¹⁴⁶ N.B. sujet à oublier.
 I heard that your sister was to¹⁷² be married. She is married¹⁵⁸. She
¹³⁶ ²⁴² ²⁴³ se marier. ²⁶¹
 was married last week. She has married¹⁵⁹ Mr. Goodhusband. They
¹³⁷ ¹⁵⁸ ²⁶¹
 were married at our church. It⁶² was my brother who married them.
¹³⁷ à église. N.B.
 How old is²³⁹ she? She is²³⁹ two and twenty. How old is²³⁹ Mr.
 N.B. N.B. † ** N.B.
 G.? He is²³⁹ about thirty. They are a young couple. I hope²²¹ they
 N.B. environ ** ⁶⁵ est ²⁵⁵
 are happy. I hope they will be so long. She desired¹³⁶ me to give her
²²¹ le ⁵⁴ long tems. ²⁵² faire ses
 love to you. Please to¹⁶⁸ let her know²⁴⁸ that I will call and
 amitiés (o) ⁵⁴ Avoir la bonté lui N.B. ²⁶⁶ (nn)
 pay my respects to her at the first opportunity. How far is their²⁰⁸
 pour rendre (o) ⁵⁴ à occasion. ²⁴⁶ N.B.
 house from here? About seven or eight miles. It⁶² is a (long way).
 †† Environ N.B. †† loin.
 Yes, it⁶² is rather far. I suppose²²¹ they keep a coach. No, they have
 , N.B. †† un peu loin. ²⁵⁴ ²⁶⁹ ¹⁹¹,
 no coach. They keep horses. (How many) servants do they keep?
²⁶⁹ domestiques ²⁶⁹

* Put *Si* after the article *à*, because *si* being here an adverb, can not be separated from the adjective which it modifies.

† Walk back, *Revenir à pied*, or *Retourner à pied*, see 265 rule. ‡ See note * p. 300.

§ Instead of repeating the verb agreeably to the 70 rule, you may express *He will* by *Qu'oui*.

|| Note * page 318. ¶ Say *twenty-two*; the French always put the highest number first.

** In speaking of age, we always add *An* to the number in french.

†† Turn; *How far is it from here to their house?* ‡‡ You may express *it is*, by *c'est*, or *il y a*.

Let me see. There is the butler, a footman, a groom, a gardener,
 Attendez que je voie. 246 maître d'hôtel, laquais, palefrenier,
 a cook, and a chambermaid. These are many servants for such a
 cuisinière, chambre * fille. Ce (e) si †
 small family. They hope that in time it will increase. Was not
 avec le tems augmenter. 140
 your country house advertised to be sold? No; my father had
 134 afficher 153 à 243 ; 140
 some thought of selling it, but he has altered his mind. He is going
 quelque envie 154 62, changer — d'idée. 155
 to let his town house, and live in the country (altogether.)
 louer à la ville , demeurer à entièrement. N.B.
 Trade is so bad now, that he says he spends more than he gets.
 Commerce mauvais , 221 271 47 270
 How do you spend your time in the country? We generally spend
 185 271 † à ordinairement 271
 the mornings in walking and 204 practising music, and we
 234 263 étudier ,
 spend the evenings in reading and in amusing ourselves. (That is the
 271 234 169 154 amuser nous 54 C' est ainsi que
 way) we generally spend ours. Does Mr. A. often call upon you?
 184 271 85 134 184 266
 Sometimes, not often. Here he is. How do you do? I hope you
 , pas N.B. 241 255
 are (very well.) Very well, I thank you. What is the matter with your
 241 bien. Très , 6 281 à la
 hand? It is all bloody. I was near breaking my neck in coming
 62 sanglant. 245 se casser 15 cou en
 here. How so? My horse stumbled, and had like to have fallen
 185 cela? faire un faux pas, 245 — — tomber
 into a pit. I see it has hurt its mouth. I hope you have not
 fosse. 221 se faire mal 231 255 237 N.B.
 been hurt. Not much; I was more frightened than hurt. I
 se faire mal. Pas beaucoup; 239 N.B. peur de mal ||
 hope you will do us the favour to dine with us. At what time do
 255 grâce 168 82 heure
 you dine? We generally dine about four o'clock. I will avail myself of
 184 vers heures. profiter
 your invitation to enjoy the pleasure of your company a little longer.
 170 jouir 202 peu 41
 Have you any objection to take a short walk before dinner? No,
 ¶ N.B. 206 Oui,**
 none at all. Let us walk along this lane. Let us rather go into
 je le veux bien.** — — 263 le long de ruelle. — — plutôt
 that path. The late rains we have had have made the fields very
 sentier. dernier (s) 159 249 .
 pleasant. Yes, the country looks quite beautiful now. I do not
 agréable. , 253 tout à fait belle

* See note * page 180.

† See note * page 318.

‡ Use *Le* here instead of *votre* because *vous* sufficiently denotes whose time it is.

§ See note * page 339.

|| Turn; *I have had more fright than hurt.*

¶ See note || page 354.

** The word *objection* being changed in the question, you must also change the words of the answer.

recollect having ever seen it finer. We must not go much further.
 se rappeler 154 181 loin41.
 It is near our dinner time. We must walk towards home. Let us
 près de l' 25 heure. 181 263 vers la maison.
 make haste. Our people do not like to be (kept 145 waiting.) I see some-
 se dépêcher. 229 92 faire attendre.
 body coming 153 to meet us. Sir, the cloth is laid. The dinner is (on
 N.B. 273 , couvert mis.
 the table.) Come, ladies and gentlemen, (walk in.) Sit down at table.
 servi. Allons, mesdames , entrer. se mettre à
 Now, my pretty neighbour, what do you choose to 172 eat? Shall I help
 à présent, jolie voisine, souhaiter 258
 you to a little soup? It looks very good. I will thank you for two or
 à peu de soupe? 62 253 *
 three (spoonfuls) of it. And you, madam, what will you eat? A bit
 cuillerée en 54 , morceau
 of that fowl. What part do you like best? A little of the breast. Shall
 (bb) volaille. partie le mieux? estomac.
 I add some sauce (to 63 it?) A little, if you please, and a little of the
 ajouter y 54 , † ,
 cauliflower. You, sir, what shall I help you to? A bit of the sirloin.
 chou-fleur , 258 aloyau.
 With some gravy to it? Yes, a little, and a potato. Will you have
 jus? — — , pomme de terre.
 the goodness to pass the mustard (this way?) (Give me 56 leave) to
 bonté passer moutarde par ici? Permettre
 help you to a bit of this loin of veal. A very small bit. Do you like
 258 longue veau. petit
 fat or lean? A little of both. I will trouble you for a wing of that
 gras maigre? 122 peine † aile (bb)
 chicken. Shall I send you a little ham (with it?) No, no ham; I will
 poulet. envoyer jambon aussi 64? , pas ; †
 eat a little salad. It looks so nice. Pass the salad to that gentleman.
 peu 62 253 bon 29 (bb)
 (Here is) an excellent hare; I would advise you to taste it. I thank you;
 247 lièvre; conseiller goûter ;
 I will eat no hare. I will eat one half of this partridge. And I will eat
 † la moitié (m) †
 a bit of the pheasant. Let me 56 send you a little of this pie. No, no
 faisan. Permettre (kk) pâté. , pas
 more; I can not eat (any more). (Take away), and bring the dessert.
 davantage; † Desservir, 256 dessert.
 Now, what say you to a glass of wine? I will take a glass with you.
 , 83 de † 70 prendre
 Will you have red or white? White, if you please. And I will
 174 du rouge du blanc? , † (m) †
 drink a glass of red. Ladies and gentlemen, your good health. We
 , à — santé.

* I will thank you for, &c. turn; I beg you to give me two or three, &c.

† Turn; If it pleases you, because *Plaire* in this sense is always impersonal in french.

‡ I will trouble you for, &c. turn; Will you take the trouble to give me, &c.

§ See note * page 228.

|| More, Any more, at the end of a sentence, are expressed by *Davantage*.

thank you, sir. Come, gentlemen, help the ladies; help yourselves
 , Allons,* , 258 ; vous vous-mêmes
 and pass the bottle. How do you like this wine? It is very good indeed.
 185 268 62

Since you like it, I hope you will make free (with it). It is what
 Puisque , 221 boire librement en 54 N.B. 84

we intend to do. (Here is) very fine fruit too. Have these fruits
 avoir dessein 247 aussi. 238 134

grown in your garden? In the garden and in the houses. These
 venir 158 serre.

apricots are beautiful. What think you of the peaches and nectarines.
 abricot très beau. 83 brugnons?

They are the finest I have seen this year. Taste the pears and
 Ce (s) 159 233 Goûter

apples; they look very nice. These grapes are delicious. (Here is)
 ; 62 253 bon 29 délicieux. 247

a (pine apple) which is excellent. Permit me to help you to a slice
 ananât 258 tranche

(of it). I will thank you (for it,) for I am very fond of pine apples.
 en 54 être obligé 54 en 59, † †

Bring the sugar and some spoons. Come, gentlemen, (fill up) your
 * , remplir

glasses; I will give you a toast. Let us drink the health of all good
 ; † un toast. — — boire à santé

people of whatever country, colour, or religion they are. With all my
 229 177 230 couleur, De

heart. An everlasting peace between all men. What a pity that all
 cœur. éternelle 32 paix entre 20 dommage

men do not think so. They would spare themselves many afflictions.
 ainsi. épargner se 54 (e) chagrin.

We will drink this toast, to show you that we join with you in your
 see * p. 223. toast, m. 170 faire voir joindre †

wishes, but I hope you will excuse us from drinking any more. Since you
 souhaite, 221 excuser 154 † Puisque

will not drink, would you like to take an excursion on the water? We
 faire tour

have a fine river (close by) 183, with good boats and good boatmen. I should
 rivière tout près, N.B. bateau batelier.

like it (very much). And I too. Well, since you all like it, we will
 beaucoup. 52 aussi. Eh bien, ** ,

go. Which do you like best sailing 154 or rowing? I think 221
 76 80 le mieux aller à la voile, aller à la rame?

sailing is the most pleasant. They make such a noise with their oars.
 154 agréable. tant de bruit rame.

Boatman, what do you ask an hour for your boat? We generally
 Batelier, combien par heure 184

charge three shillings an hour. That is (too much). I will give you
 272 12 Ce trop. —

* When *Come* is used as it is here, to encourage, it is a kind of *interjection* and is then expressed by *Allons*.

† See note * page 318.

‡ See note † page 246.

§ See * p. 228.

|| We join with you in your wishes, turn; We join our wishes to yours.

¶ See not * p. 357.

** Put this adjective after the verb in french.

half a crown. That is too little I will not give you more. Well,
 un petit 38 écu. Ce peu. Eh bien,
 come, I will not cheapen with you. Where shall we go? I do not
 see * p. 358. marchandier Ou
 mind; (please yourself.) (It is all the same to us.) Are you fond
 s'en soucier; où vous voudrz. * Cela nous est égal. † ‡
 of bathing¹⁵⁴? Yes, very. The sea is not far off here. (It is) not
 à se baigner? , beaucoup. mer loin d'ici. 246
 above a mile and a half. If you wish to bathe, we will go⁷⁰. Can you
 plus de — demi. se baigner, †
 swim? I can swim a little, but I do not like to (go out of my depth.)
 nager? perdre fond.
 As for you, I know you can swim like a fish. Not quite; but
 Quant à , 221 comme poisson. Pas tout à fait;
 I can swim pretty well. It begins to be late. I (am afraid) the
 assez se faire tard. craindre 221
 ladies will (catch cold¹⁴⁶). We will (go back,) if you please. Yes,
 195 s'enrhumer. s'en retourner, vouloir.
 I think it is time. We had a very agreeable sail, had we
 221 il en⁷⁰ est 136 32 promenade en bateau, 282
 not? Very agreeable indeed. I will procure you that diversion as often
 procurer amusement 43
 as you will favour me with your company. We are (very much)
 43 accorder le plaisir de bien —
 obliged to you, sir; and we wish you a good night²³⁴. Good night,
 158 (o) 55, ; le N.B. ,
 ladies; I wish you a pleasant walk. Mr. M. you used to be very
 18; agréable 257 fort
 fond of music; do you ever (make use) of your violin now? I use
 † musique; jamais se servir violon 257
 it sometimes; very seldom. Since you do not use it, I will be obliged
 ; rarement. Puisque 257 ,
 to you, if you will let me have it, till²¹⁸ I have got one made. I
 (o) , prêter — , jusqu'à ce que 251
 do not think you will (be able¹⁴⁵) to use it; the strings are all broken.
 221 pouvoir 257 en⁵⁴; corde 267
 I will get them mended. I will get new ones put (to it.) Who
 250 raccommoder. 250 de neuves en⁵⁹ mettre y 54
 made it you? A (man of the name) of Fiddle. When you see¹⁴² him, I
 136 55 59 Un nommé — N.B. ,
 beg you will desire him to make me⁵⁴ one (like it.) (How much) did
 † 252 m'en⁷⁰ un semblable. Combien 136
 he charge you (for it?) He charged¹³⁶ me twenty guineas. He charged
 272 en 272 272
 you (too much.) He did not use me well. If I were in your place, I
 trop. — 136 257 ¶ à ,
 would get one made in Paris. You would get it better and cheaper.
 251 à avoir (E) p. 56 à meilleur marché.

* Not, *Plaisez-vous*, which would express quite a different idea.

† Not, *Il est le même à nous*, which is not a french expression.

‡ See note † page 246.

§ See note ** page 286.

¶ I beg you will desire him, turn; I beg you to desire him, &c.

¶ See note * page 266.

I suppose²²¹ you do not intend to¹⁶⁸ return home to night. Yes, I
²⁵⁴ avoir dessein ²⁶⁵ chez vous ²³⁵ ,
do⁷⁰. You will drink a cup of tea before you go. I
N.B. i.e. intend to return. * † s'en aller.
can not stay. Our people will be waiting for me. They will be anxious
rester. ²²⁹ ¹³⁵ ²⁰¹ ⁵⁴ inquiet
to hear from me. I long to see how they are. I have not heard from
²⁷⁵ see long p. 163. ²⁴¹ ²⁷⁵
them for these three days. The tea will be ready just now. Get the
† tout de suite. Apprêter
tea ready as fast as you can¹⁴². Come near the table. Shall I bring the
‡ ⁴³ ⁴³ N.B. ²⁷⁴ ²⁷⁴
table nearer to you? It will do very well where it is. Bring the
⁴¹ de ⁶² — est ⁶² ²⁵⁶
tea, and take²⁵⁶ these children out of the room. Is there no coffee?
, emmener hors ²⁴⁸
Yes; there is both²²² tea and coffee. Which will you have? I will
; ²⁴⁶ N.B. Duquel ¹⁷⁴ — ‖
drink a cup of coffee. Eat a little bread and butter. Is your coffee
* ¹³⁴
sweet enough? Yes, it is very pleasant. You will drink another cup?
sucré see † p. 300. , ⁶² agréable. * ;
will you not? No, no more, I thank you. Now I must go.
²⁸² , , pas davantage, A présent ¹⁸¹ see N.B. p. 122.
If you will come with me, I will take it kindly of you. Yes, I will⁷⁰.
¹⁴⁴ , ¶ ²⁷⁹ , **
Bring me my horse. Bring me my whip and spurs. (There is) your
²⁵⁶ ²⁵⁶ fouet éperons. ²⁴⁷
whip, and (here are) your spurs. They are not right. What is the
, ²⁴⁷ bien.
matter with them? You find fault with (every thing.) Can not you
²⁸¹ ²⁷⁸ ¹⁰⁷
do without spurs? No, I can not. I want to return as fast as I can¹⁴²,
²⁸⁰ , ⁷⁰ ²⁶⁰ ²⁶⁵ ⁴³ ⁴³ N.B.
to go and meet a friend of mine who is coming to spend (a few) days
¹⁷⁰ (nn) ²⁷³ ⁸⁷ ¹⁵⁵ ¹⁷² ²⁷¹ quelques
at²⁰⁸ our house. It will be too late; will it not? I am afraid it will⁷⁰.
N.B. ; ²³² †† N.B.
I never can (get ready) in time. In vain I tell these people to keep
s'apprêter à ²⁷⁷ dire à ²²⁹ tenir
always ready the things which I want, they will not do it. Whatever
, prêt ²⁹ dont ²⁶⁰ , vouloir ²⁷⁷
I may say or do, they will¹⁷⁴ have every thing their (own way.) They
, vouloir faire ¹⁰⁷ à leur tête..

* See note † page 288.

† Before may be expressed by *Avant de* with the following verb in the infinitive, or by *Avant que* with the subjunctive; but here the two verbs having the same nominative, Before should be expressed by *Avant de*. See note (nn).

‡ For these three days, may be expressed two ways; *je n'ai pas appris de leurs nouvelles depuis* ²⁰⁵ *trois jours*; or *Il y a* ²⁴⁶ *trois jours que je n'ai appris, &c.*

§ Ready is implied in the verb *Apprêter*.

|| See note * page 228.

¶ See note † page 260.

** Instead of repeating the verb here, you might say, *oui, je le veux bien*.

†† Instead of repeating *I am afraid it will be too late*; you may say; *je le crains, or je crains qu'oui*.

make me very unhappy. If I were¹⁴⁰ you, I would turn them
 249 * que de vous, mettre
 away. What will you have¹⁷⁴ one do? One can not do without
 à la porte. N.B. 90 faire? 90 280
 somebody, and it is very unpleasant to be always changing¹⁵⁵ people.
 95 , désagréable — changer de 229
 True; but I would not keep people who would not attend to my
 Cela est vrai; garder 259
 orders. Come; do not mind them. They are all alike.
 Allons; faire attention à 58 — † se ressembler
 Happy they who can do without them.
 Heureux 66 280 en.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON ALL THE RULES.

It having been represented to the author that the utility of this work might be increased by lengthening the exercise, he, in consequence, has added the following amusing little novel, which is full of the most essential rules, especially on the nouns, pronouns, and verbs.

Bathmendi, an Eastern Tale.

Under the reign of a king of Persia whose⁷⁵ name I have forgotten,
 † Perse N.B.
 a merchant of Balsora was ruined by bad speculations. He collected
 137 entreprise. recueillir
 the wreck of his fortune, and retired to the (remotest part) of the
 débris plur. , se retirer fond
 province of Kousistan. There he bought a small country house and
 Là 25
 a field which he cultivated very badly, because he was always think-
 labourer mal, 155
 ing of the time when he had something more pleasant to (attend to.)
 200 que 140 98 (cc) agréable 32 à l'occuper.
 Grief shortened the days of this merchant: feeling himself near his
 abrégé : 54 près de
 end, he called to him four sons that he had, and addressed them,
 , auprès de 58 140 , 53 parler leur
 (in these words); My dear children, I have no other property to leave
 ainsi , ô bien 169
 you but this house, and the knowledge of a secret which I was²⁴²
 198 connaissance ai 136 dû
 not to reveal to you till now. In the time of my opulence, I had
 ô 172 (o) que 213 opulence, 140
 for a friend the genie Alzim. He promised me to take care of you
 avoir
 when I should be no more, and to divide a treasure amongst you.
 190 || , partager ¶ 54
 This genie lives a few miles hence, in the great forest of Kom. Go
 à quelques d'ici,

* See note * page 266.

† Put this adjective *after* the verb in french.

‡ See note * page 182. ô Express *No, Not*, by *Ne* only, because *Que* which comes after the verb supplies the place of *Pas*.

|| *When I should be no more*, may be expressed by *après moi*.

¶ Leave out this preposition in french.

to him, ask him for that treasure, but (take care) not to believe . . .
 * 54 , † se garder 193
 Death did not allow him to finish. The four sons of the merchant,
 permettre lui 54 achever.
 after having bewailed and buried their father, went to the forest of Kom.
 154 pleurer enterrer ,
 They inquired for the residence of the genie Alzim. They had no
 s'informer de demeure
 trouble to find it. Alzim was known to the whole country: he re-
 peine 169 62 140 de 38 tout 230 ;
 ceived 139 kindly all those who came to see him, he listened to their com-
 accueillir avec bonté 172 , écouter —
 plaints, consoled them, lent them money, when they (were in want) (of
 plainte, 139 , 162 , avoir besoin en
 it); but these favors were on a condition; (they were) to follow blindly
 44 ; bienfait à ; il fallait 172
 the advice which he gave them: this was his whim; No one was ad-
 conseil — ; ce manie ; Nul 101
 mitted into his palace till he had taken an oath (of it). This oath did
 recevoir avant de (nn) avoir fait le serment en 55.
 not alarm the three eldest sons of the merchant; the fourth, whose (name
 effrayer aîné 32 ; , qui se nom-
 was) Tai, found this ceremony ridiculous. However he wished to
 mer , Cependant vouloir
 (go in) and receive the treasure: he then 184 swore like his brothers; but
 entrer : donc comme ;
 reflecting (on the) dangerous consequences of this indiscreet oath, (calling
 aux † , se rap-
 to mind) that his father, who was in the habit of visiting this palace,
 peler avoir — — coutume 154 ,
 had passed his life in committing blunders, he wished without being
 169 faire des sottises, 154
 a perjurer, to secure himself from all danger; and whilst they 90 were
 — , mettre à l'abri 54 de ; N.B.
 conducting them to the genie, he stopped his ears with scented
 conduire 155 vers , boucher odoriférante 32
 wax. (Having taken) this precaution, he prostrated himself before the
 Muni de , prosterner 54 206
 throne of Alzim. Alzim bid the four sons of his ancient friend to
 faire † ancien † —
 rise, embraced them, and ordered a large chest filled with daricks to
 relever † , faire † grand coffre de darique † —
 (be brought). Here, said he, is the treasure which I have designed for
 apporter † 247 , 247 destiner —
 you. I am going to divide it amongst you, and then I will tell each
 55 partager — 54 , ensuite dire à 103
 of you the road he must follow to be perfectly happy. Tai did not
 (s) devoir prendre 170

* Express to by the verb *trouver*. † See note || page 207.

† Put this adjective *before* the noun. See note (i) page 188.

‡ The two verbs *faire* and *relever* must come together, because *faire* here means *to cause*; he did not cause the four sons, but he *caused to rise*.

§ *Faire* and *apporter* must come together; see note ‡ above.

¶ Small pieces of gold.

hear what the genie said, but he observed him attentively, and saw
 in his eyes, and on his countenance an air of cunning and of malignity which gave him much uneasiness. However he received with gratitude his share of the treasure. Alzim, after having thus enriched them, assumed an affectionate tone and said to them; my dear children, your good or bad destiny depends upon your meeting sooner or later with a certain being called Bathmendi, of whom every body speaks, but whom very few people know. The wretched mortals seek him all (in the dark). moi I, who love you, will whisper to each of you where he will (be able) to find him. At these words, Alzim took aside Bekir the eldest of the four brothers. My son, said he to him, you are born with courage, and have (a great deal) of ability for war; the king of Persia has just sent an army against the Turks; join that army; it is in the camp of the Persians that you will find Bathmendi. Bekir thanked the genie, and (was quite impatient) to (set out) Alzim beckoned to the second son to (come near); it was Mesrou. You have sense, said he to him, some address and great aptness for lying; take the road to Ispahan; it is at court that you must look for Bathmendi. He then called the third brother who (was named) Sad-der: You, said he to him, were gifted with a lively and fertile imagination; You see objects not as they are, but as you wish them to be; You have often genius, and not always common sense; You will be a poet. Take the way to Agra; it is amongst the wits

* The action not being momentary, but having been continued, this verb should be in the *imperfect*.

† Put this adjective *before* the noun. ‡ See note * page 228.

§ *L'ainé* not *le plus aîné*, because *aîné* means *eldest*.

|| In *familiar tales* and in *familiar conversation*, the French generally use the *second person singular* instead of the *second person plural*.

¶ Put this verb in the *present* tense. The French often use the *present* instead of the *perfect* in narrations, to show the *suddenness* of the action, or to call the attention of the hearer or reader more particularly to it.

and the fine ladies of that city, that you will find Bathmendi. Taï
 advanced in his turn; and thanks to the wax²⁵ balls, he did not hear
 s'avancer à ; grâce boule,
 a word of what Alzim said to him. It has been known since that
 (o) 91 savoir
 he had advised him to turn dervish. The four brothers, after having
 lui⁵⁵ se faire derviche. 154
 thanked the beneficent genie, returned to their home. The three eldest
 bienfaisant , demeure.
 thought of nothing but Bathmendi. Taï unstopped his ears, heard them
 rêver à * 198 déboucher ,
 arranging their departure, and proposing to sell their small house to the
 154 , 154
 first (person that should offer,) (in order to) divide the amount (of it.)
 offrant , 170 partager prix en 54
 Taï asked to be the purchaser. He got²⁵⁰ the house and field valued,
 acquereur. faire † estimer †
 paid with his gold the share that came to each of his brothers, wished
 de part 74 revenir 103 ,
 them every prosperity, embraced them tenderly, and remained alone
 toutes sortes de , rester tout seul
 in the paternal house. It was then that he (set about) executing a project
 29 32 Ce 137 alors s'occuper de 154
 which had for a long while been the object of his thoughts. He was
 auquel il pensait depuis tems †
 (in love) with the young Amine, the daughter of a neighbouring farmer.
 amoureux de , 22 son voisin 32 laboureur.
 Amine was handsome and prudent. She had the management of her
 sage. soin
 father's house, and asked of God only two things; the first was that her
 25 ménage, à ; —
 father should¹⁴⁶ live long; the second that she might become the wife of
 149 long tems; — — — de † femme
 Taï. Her wishes were granted. Taï asked for her and obtained her hand.
 137 exaucer. 201
 The father of Amine came to live with his (son in law,) and taught
 demeurer chez gendre , apprendre
 him the art of making the earth yield all that it can give to those
 162 faire || à la rendre || ce que 62
 who cultivate it. The field doubled in value; and as he was laborious,
 62. de valeur; comme ,
 and his wife economical, each year increased their revenue. Amine
 économe, 102 augmenter
 had many children. Children who ruin the rich idle people of towns,
 137 † oisif 39 ,
 enrich the (husbandman.) At the end of twelve years, Taï, the
 laboureur. bout , 22

* Express *Nothing* by *Ne* only, because *que* which comes after, expresses *nothing* but.

† The two verbs *faire* and *estimer* must come together.

‡ Had been the object of his thoughts is all expressed by the verb *penser*.

§ Put this verb in the infinitive. || *Faire* and *rendre* must come together before *à la terre*; for he did not make the earth, but he made or caused to yield.

¶ See note § page 256.

father of ten pretty children, the husband of a good and virtuous
 33 , 22 époux 34
 wife, master of several slaves, and possessor of two flocks, was the
 , plusieurs ,
 happiest farmer in Kousistan. Meanwhile his three brothers were
 49 m. Cependant
 running after Bathmendi. Bekir had 149 arrived at the camp of the
 155 238
 Persians. He presented himself to the grand vizier, and asked to
 Perse. 54 vizir,
 serve in the corps that was the most exposed. His appearance, his
 92 figure,
 willingness pleased the vizier who admitted him into a troop of horse.
 bonne volonté 202 cavalerie
 A few days after, a bloody battle (was fought.) Bekir performed
 sanglant se donner. faire
 wonders, saved the life of his general, and took with his own hand
 prodige, à , de —
 the general of the enemy. The praises of Bekir resounded every where,
 celui * retentir † ,
 and the vizier (out of gratitude) raised his deliverer to the rank of a
 reconnaissant, élever libérateur grade —
 general officer. Alzim was right, said Bekir to himself; it is here
 32 239 , 139 — se 54; ce
 that fortune awaited me; every thing shews that I am going to meet
 attendre 138; 107 annoncer
 with Bathmendi. The glory of Bekir, and especially his preferment,
 201 , surtout élévation,
 excited the envy and the murmurs of all the satraps. Bekir unhappy
 †
 by his very success, lived alone, always on his guard, and exposed
 même ‡ , , ‡ ,
 every moment to receive an affront. He regretted the time when he
 à tout outrage. où
 was only a common soldier, and was waiting with impatience for the
 ‡ — simple , 201
 end of the war, when the Turks reinforced by fresh troops and led 157
 , quand 157 nouvelle ¶ guider
 by a new general, came and attacked the division which Bekir
 nouveau ¶ (nn) (ee)
 commanded. This was an opportunity which the satraps of the army
 Ce occasion
 (had long been waiting 155 for.) They used a hundred times more
 — attendaient 140 depuis long tems. employer 21
 skill to get their commander beaten, than they had showed in all their
 250** chef battre** en 70
 lives to (avoid being) beaten themselves. The brave Bekir forsaken,
 †† pour n'être pas , 158 eux-mêmes. abandonner,

* Instead of repeating the noun, the French would here use a *prounoun*.

† *Les louanges de Bekir retentirent partout* would be french; but, *Tout retentit des louanges de Bekir* would be better.

‡ Persian nobleman. ‡ Make this word *plural* in french. ¶ See note * p. 173.

¶ Put this adjective *before* the noun. ** *Faire* and *battre* must come together *before* *chef*.

†† This word must be *singular* in french, because it implies the life of each person *individually*, not of them collectively.

covered with wounds, overpowered by numbers, was taken by the
 200 , accabler sous le nombre, 137
 janissaries, and sent to Constantinople, where he was thrown into a
 janissaire, , jetter
 dungeon. Alas! exclaimed he, in his prison; I begin to think that
 cachot. Hélas! s'écrier 139 , ;
 Alzim has deceived me, for I can not expect to meet with Bathmendi
 espérer 201
 here 183. The war lasted fifteen years, and the satraps always prevented
 N.B. , 184 empêcher
 the exchange of Bekir. His prison was not opened (till peace was made.)
 * qu'à la paix.
 He ran immediately to Ispahan to seek the vizier his protector, whose
 aussitôt chercher , à qui
 life he had saved. (Three weeks elapsed) before he could speak to
 † Il fut trois semaines sans † — pouvoir (o)
 him. (At the) end of that time, he obtained an audience. Fifteen years
 54 Au bout , 233
 imprisonment alter a little the figure of a handsome young man. Bekir
 de prison changer
 (could hardly be said to be the same;) so the vizier did not know
 était à peine reconnaissable; aussi reconnaître
 him again. However, by dint of (calling to mind) the different epochs of
 — , à force se rappeler 154 †
 his glorious life, he recollected that Bekir had formerly done him a little
 † , se souvenir rendre 162
 service. Yes, yes, my friend, said he to him, I remember you; you
 , , (o) 54 , remettre ;
 are a brave man; but the state is much encumbered; a long war and
 † ; bien obéré; †
 great festivals have exhausted our finances; however come to me again
 fête épuiser ; revenir voir †
 I will try, I will see. . . . Ah! my lord, I have no bread, and for
 tâcher, Eh! , depuis
 this fortnight that I have been waiting for an opportunity to speak to
 — que, — — † 201 le moment 168
 your lordship, I should have perished with misery, but for a soldier of
 grandeur, 238 mourir de , 227
 the guard, my ancient companion, who has shared his pay with me.
 , vieux camarade,
 That is very well of that soldier, replied the vizier; it is truly noble
 Ce à , répondre ; cela vraiment
 and affecting; I will mention it to the king. Call upon me again;
 touchant; parler en 54 Revenir voir 54 † ;
 you know I (have a regard for) you. . . . In saying these words, he
 221 aimer 54 ,
 turned his back (upon him.) Bekir called again the (next day,) but he
 15 lui 54 revenir † lendemain,

* Express *Not* by *Ne* only, as *Que* which comes after supplies the place of *Pas*.

† Turn; to whom he had saved the life.

‡ This preposition governs the *infinitive* in french.

§ Put this adjective *before* the noun.

‖ The adverb *again* is expressed by the preposition *re* prefixed to the verb.

¶ He having been waiting till the moment he was speaking, the French would put the verb *wait* in the present, and leave out *have* and *been*.

(was denied admittance.) Overwhelmed with despair, he left the palace
trouva la porte fermée. Accabler 200 , sortir du
and the city, resolved never to enter it again. He threw himself at
de la , 190 rentrer y 54 jeter 54
the foot of a tree on the bank of the river Zenderou. There he
bord fleuve Là
reflected on the ingratitude of viziers, on all the misfortunes which he
à , à
had experienced, on those which still 184 threatened him, and (unable
140 éprouver, 159 à (bb) encore , pouvant
any 190 longer) to support these melancholy ideas, he rose to throw
ne plus 172 soutenir triste , se lever 170 précipiter
himself into the river; . . but he felt himself embraced by a beggar
54 , 54 * mendiant
who bathed his face with tears, and exclaimed sobbing; it 62 is my
188 visage 200 , 138 en sanglotant; N.B.
brother, it 62 is my brother Bekir! Bekir looks, and recognises Mes-
, N.B. , reconnaître
rou. Every man feels pleasure no doubt in meeting again with a
104 avoir sans doute 169 retrouver 201
brother he has not seen for a long time; but an unfortunate man
(s) depuis — ; 39
without resource, without a friend, who is going to (put an end to)
, † , 172 finir 39
his existence in despair, thinks he sees an angel from heaven, in
jours de croire (nn) , en
finding again a brother whom he loves. Such was the sentiment
retrouver — Ce 137
which Bekir and Mesrou felt at the same time. They mutually
éprouver à — fois. 184
pressed (each other) in their arms, they mingled their tears, and after
† se 54 , confondre † larme,
the first moments given to tenderness, they looked at (each other) with
157 , † 201 se 54
eyes full of surprise and affliction. Art thou then also unfortunate?
‡ — surpris affligé. Tu es donc
exclaimed Bekir. This, answered Mesrou, is the first moment of
s'écrier 247 , 247
happiness which I have enjoyed since we 136 parted 237. At these words,
dont se quitter.
the two unfortunate men embraced (each other) again; they leaned
39 † se 54 encore ; s'appuyert
on each other; and Mesrou seated near to Bekir, thus 184 began his
contre 121 ; assis près de , ainsi
history. You remember the fatal day when we went to Alzim's.
202 32 où 208
That perfidious genie told me I might find at court that Bathmendi
perfide † 221

* Put this verb in the *infinitive*.

† After the preposition *Sans*, the noun is generally used without an article, because the preposition and the noun are considered either as an *adjective* or as an *adverbial* expression.

‡ To show the *quickness* in which the action was done, the french would put this verb in the *present* tense.

§ Leave out this adjective, and make *surprise* and *affliction* into *adjectives*.

|| Put this adjective *before* the noun.

whom we wished (so much) to meet. I followed his pernicious advice,
 140 tant funeste conseil,
 and soon arrived at Ispahan. I became acquainted with a young female
 184 53 à faire connaissance une —39
 slave who belonged to the mistress of the first secretary of the grand
 140
 vizier. This slave conceived an affection for me, and introduced me to
 de l' 58 ,
 her mistress, who made me pass for her youngest brother. Soon the
 petit
 youngest brother was presented to the vizier, and a few days after, he
 137 , — quelques ,
 obtained an employment in the palace. The Sultana distinguished me,
 emploi Sultane
 and took me into an intimate friendship. From that moment, honours
 213 32 Dès ,
 and riches began to shower upon me. The monarch himself showed
 pleuvoir 58 témoigner
 some regard for me. He liked to converse with me, because I flattered
 affection — 54 140 causer 139
 him with address, and always advised him to do what he had a mind to
 , 219 53 conseiller 162 — — 84 140 24 envie 168
 do. This was the way to make him soon do what I should wish.
 — Ce 140 moyen 168 † lui 54 faire † vouloir.
 That failed not to happen. (At the) end of three years, I saw myself
 (bb) manquer 168 Au bout , 54
 at once prime minister, favourite of the king, (having in my power)
 à la fois , maître
 to appoint and to remove the viziers, deciding every thing by my
 de nommer déplacer , 107
 influence, and receiving every morning the great men of the empire,
 crédit, tous les matins 39 ,
 who came to wait (till I awoke) to obtain from me a smile of protection.
 139 mon réveil 170 de 58
 (In the) midst of my glory and of my fortune, I (was astonished) that
 Au s'étonner 140 —
 I did not meet with that Bathmendi I was seeking. (I feel no
 (nn) N.B. 201 (s) Rien ne me
 want of any kind), said I to myself; why (do I still want Bathmendi) ?
 manque , 139 — me 54 ; Bathmendi me manque-t-il ?
 This idea and the constraint (in which) I spent my life, poisoned all
 gêne où (v) 271 ,
 my pleasures. The passion of the king for a young Mingrelienne
 amour
 came to (fill up) my misfortune. The whole court cast their eyes to
 combler infortune. 33 tourner les 15 de
 that side, in hope that the mistress would (turn out) the minister. I
 , espoir chasser
 parried the blow by connecting myself with the Mingrelienne, and
 parer (hh) lier me 54 ,
 flattering the passion of the king : but that passion became so violent,
 204 :

* Make this word *plural* in french.

† Make do, *Faire faire*, must come together in french.

that the monarch, determined to marry his mistress, asked me for 201
 , décider à 261 , *
 my advice. I wavered for some days. The Sultan's mother, who
 avis. tergiverser — Sultane mère, †
 was afraid of losing her influence if her son should 144 marry, came
 crédit N.B. se marier,
 to declare to me that, if I did not break off that match, she would
 172 (o) , rompre — mariage,
 have me assassinated on the very 32 day of the ceremony. An hour after,
 250 — même
 the Mingrelienne came and assured me that, if I did not get her
 (nn) 54 , ‡ 250
 married to the king (the very next day), I should be strangled the day
 261 par dès le lendemain,
 after. My situation was embarrassing; I had to choose (between the)
 d'après position il fallait 172 du †
 dagger, 204 the rope or 204 flight. I chose 136 the last. I disguised my-
 , du cordon de la prendre dernier parti. 136 237 54
 self as you see, and have escaped from the palace with some diamonds
 , 237 s'échapper ||
 in my pockets, which will support me with you in some corner of
 , faire vivre quelque
 Indoustan, far from the Sultanas, the Mingreliennes and the court.
 , loin , 204 204
 After this recital, Bekir related his adventures to Mesrou. They both
 récit, 122 ¶
 agreed that they would have done just as well not 190 to have (ram-
 convenir tout aussi N.B. — cou-
 bled about) the world, as they had done, and that the wisest thing
 rir — , comme 140 , meilleur (s)
 they could do, was to return into Kousistan, to their brother Tai,
 50 , 140 de , auprès de
 where the diamonds of Mesrou would enable them to lead a sweet and
 mettre en état 168 mener 32
 easy 29 life. After this resolution, they (set out on their journey), and
 aisé , se mettre en route
 travelled for several days without meeting with any adventure. As they
 marcher 205 — — **
 were crossing the province of Farsistan, they arrived towards dusk at a
 155 traverser , vers le soir
 small village where they intended to spend the night. It was a holy
 compter 271 140 fête
 day. On entering the village, they saw several peasants' children
 25 En entrer dans †† , 25
 returning 153 from walking, attended by a kind of (school-master) badly
 138 N.B. promenade, conduit 157 espèce magister mal .

* See note || page 207.

† Mère being here considered as an *adjective*, must come after *Sultane*.

‡ See note * page 266.

† The preposition *between* is here expressed like *of*.

|| See note † page 183.

¶ Put this pronoun *after* the verb. ** All these words may be *left out* in french.

†† The French do not say *entrer un endroit*, to enter a place; they say *entrer dans un endroit*, to enter into a place.

clad, walking with his head down, and having the appearance of (being
vêtu, marcher — la 15 basse, air
absorbed in) (melancholy thoughts). The two brothers approached this
réver * tristement 274 †
school-master, looked at him attentively. . . What was their surprise ! it 62
— , † 201 82 † N.B.
was Sadder, it 62 was their brother Sadder whom they embraced.
† † , B.N. † †
What 83 ! my friend, said Bekir to him, is this (the way) in which ge-
Eh quoi ! , (o) , ce ainsi — que
nius is rewarded ? You see, replied Sadder, that it is treated much (in
92 , 92 à peu près
the same way as) valour is ; but philosophy finds (in it) abundant food
comme — ; y 54 un grand sujet
for reflection and that (is no small consolation). In saying these words,
de (bb) console beaucoup. En ,
he bid 202 all the children go (to their homes), took Bekir and Mesrou
ordonner à 168 208 , conduire
to his little cottage, dressed himself a little rice for their supper, and
cabane, apprêter (m) N.B. ,
after having 154 (asked them for) their histories, he told them his own
s'être 237 fait raconter , dire 162 85 —
in these words : The genie Alzim, whom I suspect much of delighting
en mot : aimer 154
in (other people's) afflictions, advised me to seek that (not to be found)
— autrui 25 mal ; introuvable
Bathmendi in the great city of Agra, amongst the wits and the
, beaux esprits
fine ladies of that city. I arrived at Agra ; and before I mixed
; avant de (nn) me repandre
with the world, I wished 137 to (make myself known) by some
dans , vouloir m'annoncer quelque
striking work. (At the) end of a month, my work appeared :
d'éclat 32 Au bout
it was a complete course of all human sciences, in a small volume
65 32 cours 32 , en
divided into chapters. Each chapter was a tale, and each tale taught
par 102 140
a science thoroughly 183. My book and I soon 184 became fashionable
parfaitement N.B. 127 bientôt à la mode.
I was invited to all the societies that pretended to have any sense ;
92 74 se piquer 140 un peu d'esprit ;
(there was no talk) but of me, and the favourite Sultana wrote to
On ne parlait que de 58 , 32 (o)
me with her own hand a note (badly spelled), to ask me to come
de — billet sans orthographe, 170 prier
to court. Well ! I said to myself, Alzim has not deceived me :
Courage ! (ee) 139 — me 54 , ;
my glory is (at its) height ; I will sustain it by surer 41 means
au comble ; soutenir 62 32

* Express the words *being absorbed in* by the verb *réver*.

† To express the *suddenness* of the action, the French would here use the *present* tense.

‡ Put this word in the *singular* in french.

than those of intrigue; I will please, and I shall find Bathmendi.
 I was (most agreeably) received in the palace of the grand Mogul: The
 favourite Sultana declared herself openly my protectress, presented
 me to the emperor, bespoke verses from me, gave me pensions, admitted me to her private suppers, and swore to me, a hundred times a day, a friendship (that would stand any test). I thought I was
 (on the) point of meeting with Bathmendi, when my protectress
 quarrelled with the vizier about the government of a province which
 the latter refused to the son of the confectioner of the favourite. The
 Sultana exasperated at this audacity, asked the emperor to dismiss the
 insolent minister; but the emperor liked his vizier, and refused the
 favourite. Then it (became necessary) to (set on foot) a regular
 intrigue to ruin the patronized vizier. I entered (into the) plot, and
 (was) desired to compose against the minister a cutting satire, and
 to spread it amongst the public. The vizier soon discovered that I was
 the author (of it). He went to the favourite, brought her the commission which he had refused (at first), an order for a hundred thousand
 daricks on the royal treasury, and only asked her (in return) to
 permit him to throw me into a dungeon. That is a trifle, answered
 the favourite, and I am very fortunate in (having it in my power) to do
 something that may be acceptable to you. I will send immediately for
 that wretch who has dared to insult you (in spite of) my express orders,
 and deliver him into your hands. Luckily for me a slave of the favourite
 who was present, came to relate their conversation to me; I had
 only time to escape. Since that time, I have (wandered all over) Indou-

* See note * page 173.

† See note * page 228.

‡ The preposition *For* after the verbs *Go* and *Send*, is not expressed by *Pour*, but by the verb *Chercher*.

§ See note * page 173.

stan, hardly¹⁸⁴ gaining my livelihood by writing novels, and making
 , à peine vie à ¹⁵⁴ romans, ²⁰⁴ ¹⁵⁴
 verses. (As long as) I had money, my works had been master-pieces ;
 Tant que avais eu , chef-d'œuvres ;
 as soon as I was in misery, (all that I wrote was nonsense). (At last) dis-
 sitôt que ¹³⁷ , je ne fis plus que des sottises. Enfin
 gusted with instructing the world, I have preferred to¹⁷² teach peasants
²⁰⁰ ¹⁵⁴ univers, mieux aimé apprendre à
 to read, and have²³⁷ turned school-master in this little village where I
 * ⁵³ se faire où
 live upon brown bread, and where I do not expect ever to see Bathmen-
²⁰⁰ bis ³² , espérer ¹⁸⁴
 di. (You may leave it if you like), said Mesrou to him, and (go back)
 Il ne tient qu'† à vous de le quitter, (o) ⁵⁴, ²⁰⁴ retourner
 with us into Kousistan, where some diamonds which I take with me,
 , † emporter — — ,
 assure us a sweet and easy³² life. He had not much difficulty to deter-
³² tranquille ¹³⁷ peine à
 mine Sadder. (The very next day) the three brothers (set out) from the
 Dès le lendemain sortir
 village before (daybreak), and took the road to Kousistan. They⁷⁰ were
 le jour, du en ¹⁴⁰
 on their last (day's journey), and (at no great) distance from the
 journée, près de arriver à
 small house of Tai. This idea consoled them ; but their hope was
¹⁴⁰ ; espoir ¹⁴⁰
 mingled with fear. Shall we find our brother ? they said : we left him
 mêler de (ee) : ¹³⁶
 very poor ; he will not have met with Bathmendi, since he has not
 ; ²⁰¹ ,
 (been able) to (go in search of) him. My dear friends, said Sadder to
 pu ¹⁷² chercher ⁵⁴ , (o)
 them, I have meditated a (good deal) on this Bathmendi of whom Alzim
 , réfléchir, — beaucoup ¹⁸³ à ⁷⁴
 has spoken to us. To (tell you the truth), I believe that the genie
 (o) à parler franchement,
 has (made game) of us. Bathmendi does not exist, and has never
²³⁷ se moquer ,
 existed ; for since my brother Bekir did not meet him, when he
 † ²¹⁷ ¹³⁶ ,
 commanded half of the persian³² army ; since Mesrou did not
 la moitié persanne ; ²¹⁷ ¹³⁶
 (hear his name mentioned), when he was the favourite of the great
 en ⁵⁵ entendre parler , lorsque
 king ; since I myself could not even guess what it was at a time
 ; ¹³⁶ même ⁸⁴ ce dans le
 when I was loaded (with the) favours of glory and fortune ; it⁶² is
 que combler des ²⁰⁴ ; N.B.
 clear that Bathmendi is an imaginary being, an illusion, a chimera after
³² être, ,

* Turn ; to teach to read to peasants.

† Il ne tient que is a very common expression, but it can not be expressed literally in english.

‡ See note † page 183.

‡ See note * page 318.

which all men run, because they like chimeras, and (rambling about).
 76 , à courir.
 He was going to prove that Bathmendi did not exist in this world, when
 172 habiter , 217
 a band of robbers rushed from behind the rocks which lined 140 the
 troupe sortir* border
 road, surrounded the three travellers, and ordered them 162 to strip.
 , entourer* , * leur se dépouiller.
 Bekir wished 137 to resist, but he was soon disarmed. After this cere-
 vouloir , 137
 mony which was the business of a moment, the captain of the robbers
 instant, chef
 wished them a good journey, and left them quite naked (in the) midst
 162 voyage, 189 29 au
 of the highway. This comes in support of my proposition, said
 grand chemin. à l'appui ,
 Sadder, looking at his brothers. Ah! the cowards! exclaimed Bekir
 , en 201 Ah! lâche 139
 in a rage; they have taken my sword from me! Oh! my diamonds!
 en — fureur; arracher — 55 Eh!
 my poor diamonds! replied Mesrou weeping. It was dark; the
 répondre en pleurant. faire nuit;
 three unfortunate men (made haste) to reach the house of their
 39 se hâter gagner
 brother Taï. They (at length) reached it, and the sight of that house
 enfin 184 arriver y 54, vue
 caused their tears to flow. They stopped at the door; they dared not
 faire † — couler.† ;
 knock; all their fears, all their doubts (were renewed). Whilst they
 ; , incertitude recommencer.
 were wavering thus, Bekir rolled a large stone, got upon it, and
 balancer , * gros 29 , monter * 64,
 finding a cleft in the window shutter, he looked and perceived in
 fente 25 contrevent, * *
 a neat, plainly furnished room, his brother Taï at table, (in the)
 32 , simplement meublé 32 à , au
 midst of ten children who were eating, laughing and chattering all
 155 , 155 babiller
 (at once). Taï had on his right his wife Amine who was feeding
 à la fois, 140 à 155 faire manger
 her youngest child, and on his left was a little (old man) with a
 dernier , à vieillard de
 sweet 29 and cheerful countenance, who was (pouring out) drink for
 32 gai 32 physionomie, verser à boire à
 Taï. At this sight Bekir rushed into the arms of his brothers, and
 se précipiter *
 knocked at the door with all his might. A servant came to open it,
 frapper * de forces. valet * 172 ,
 and screamed with fright, at seeing three men completely naked. Taï
 jeter * des cris de frayeur, en tout 29

* To show the *quickness* of the action, the French would here use the *present* tense; but the *perfect* may also be used.

† Turn; *caused* to flow their tears; the two verbs *faire* and *couler* must come together in french, for it did not *cause* their tears, but it *caused* to flow tears.

ran to the door. The strangers fall (on his¹⁵) neck, they⁹⁰ call
 * — On † lui saute au N.B. cou, N.B. *
 him brother; they⁹⁰ bathe him with tears. He was confused (at first),
 18 ; N.B. * 200 * troubler d'abord,
 but he soon recollects Bekir, Mesrou, Sadder. He presses them in his
 184 reconnaître , serrer
 arms, he can not embrace them sufficiently. All the children ran
 , suffire à leurs embrassements. accourir
 to see what it was. Amine also came, but she (drew back) with her
 172 84 il y avait. 184 , se retirer
 daughters at the sight of the three naked brothers. (The little old man
 aspect 32 Il n'y eut que
 was the only one) who did not quit the table. Taï gave clothes to his
 le petit vieillard
 brothers, presented them to his wife, and made them kiss his chil-
 162 (kk)
 dren. Alas! said Bekir affected at this sight; thy happy lot consoles
 Hélas! attendri spectacle; sort
 us for all that we have suffered. Since the moment (we parted,)
 200 ce que Depuis instant de notre séparation,
 our life has been only a series of misfortunes, and we have not
 enchainement infortune,
 even (had a glimpse) of that Bathmendi after which we have all
 seulement entrevu — 76
 been running. I readily believe it, said the little (old man) then¹⁸³
 — 155 bien 184 54, vieillard alors N.B.
 who remained (all this time) at table; I have not stirred hence. How!
 75 140 toujours ; bouger Comment!
 exclaimed Mesrou, you are... I am Bathmendi, replied the (old man;)
 s'écrier , reprendre
 it is quite natural that you should not know me, since you have never
 189 simple ‡ † , 217
 seen me; but ask of Taï, ask of the good Amine, and of all these little
 ; 200 , 200 , 204
 children, there is not one (of them) but knows my name. The three
 , 246 en 54 199 †
 brothers who could not (keep their eyes off) this little (old man), wished
 140 se laisser de considérer , vouloir
 to embrace him. Gently, said he to them; I do not like these great
 172 Doucement, (o) ;
 raptures. (People¹⁸¹ should) be friends before they (make so free.) If
 mouvements. Il N.B. faut être avant de (nn) se caresser.
 you wish that we should ever become so, be not (too much) (taken up)
 146 le 54, — trop s'occuper
 with me. In saying these words, he (got up), kissed every one of the
 200 , se lever, 105
 children, made a gentle bow to the three brothers, gave a smile to
 , petit salut , —
 Amine and to Taï, and went to wait for them in their bed²⁶ chamber.
 , 201 coucher 25

* See note * page 373.

† This noun would be expressed better in french by the *indefinite* pronoun *On*.

‡ This adjective requires the following verb in the subjunctive.

§ See note * page 127, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaître*.

Taï (sat again) at table with his brothers, and ordered beds to be got
 se remettre , faire * — — apprê-
 ready for them. Next day he showed them his fields, his flocks, and
 ter * — leur⁵⁴ Le lendemain 162 ,
 gave them a detail of all the pleasures (s) he enjoyed. Bekir would¹³⁷
 faire 162 dont 140 vouloir
 (work in the fields) (that very day); so he was the first that became
 labourer le jour même; aussi 137 74
 the friend of Bathmendi. Mesrou who had been prime minister¹⁴⁰, was
 head shepherd of the farm, and the poet (took upon himself) to go and
 premier , se charger 168 —
 sell in town, the corn, the wool, and the milk which was sent to market;
 à , , 92 139 ;
 his eloquence brought customers, and he was as useful as the others.
 attirer chaland, 140 43 43
 (At the) end of six months, Bathmendi (was pleased) with them, and
 Au bout , se plaire 137 58 ,
 their numerous³² and quiet days (glided on) gently (in the) bosom
 nombreux 32 couler 137 doucement au
 of happiness. It⁶² is perhaps unnecessary to say that BATHMENDI
 N.B. inutile de
 (in the Persian language) means HAPPINESS.
 en Persan signifier

The Advantages of a Good Education.

I consider a human soul without education like marble in the
 l'âme de l'homme
 quarry, which shows none of its inherent beauties, until the skill
 talent
 of the polisher fetches out the colours, makes the surface shine,
 marbrier en fasse sortir en
 and discovers every (ornamental cloud), spot, and vein, (that runs
 nuance
 through the body of it). Education, (after the same manner), when
 dont il est parsemé de même
 it works upon a noble mind, (draws out to view) every latent virtue
 opérer âme mettre au jour
 and perfection, which, without such helps, are never able (to make
 son
 their appearance.
 paraître.

If my reader will (give me leave) to change so soon the allusion
 vouloir me permettre de
 upon him, I shall (make use) of the same instance, to illustrate the
 — — se servir comparaison faire sentir
 force of education, which Aristotle has brought to explain his doc-
 employer
 trine of substantial forms, when he tells us that a statue lies hid in
 être

* Turn; ordered to get ready beds, &c. for he did not order the beds, but he ordered to get ready.

a block of marble, and the art of the statuary only clears away the
 que en fait qu'enlever
 superfluous matter, and removes the rubbish. The figure is in the
 écarter immondices.
 stone, and the sculptor only finds it. What sculpture is to a block
 n'a qu'a la trouver.
 of marble, education is to a human soul. The philosopher, the saint,
 or the hero; the wise, the good, or the great man; very often
 homme de bien
 lie hid, and concealed in a plebeian, which a proper education might
 être caché enfoui et
 have disinterred, and have brought to light. I am therefore
 le — le mettre au jour. prendre
 much delighted with reading the accounts of savage nations, and
 beaucoup de plaisir à histoire
 with contemplating those virtues which are wild and uncultivated; to
 grossier
 see courage exerting itself in fierceness, resolution in obstinacy,
 se manifester opiniâtreté
 wisdom in cunning, patience in sullenness and despair.
 ruse chagrin

Men's passions operate variously, and appear in different kinds of
 actions, according as they are more or less rectified and swayed by
 gouverner
 reason. When one hears of negroes, who upon the death of their
 à
 masters, or upon changing their service, hang themselves upon
 lorsqu'ils changent de condition à
 the next tree, as it frequently happens in our American plantations,
 premier
 who can forbear admiring their fidelity, though it expresses itself in so
 s'empêcher de se manifester
 dreadful a manner? What might not that savage greatness of soul,
 à quoi ne s'élèverait pas
 which appears in these poor wretches on many occasions, (be raised
 dans —
 to,) were it rightly cultivated? And what colour of excuse can there
 si bien — —
 be for the contempt with which we treat this part of our species;
 (that we should not) put them upon the common footing of humanity;
 pour ne point ranger dans classe des autres hommes;
 (that we should only set) an insignificant fine upon (the man) who mur-
 pour ne prononcer que amende contre celui
 ders them; nay, (that we should, as much as in us lies, cut them off
 et même pour leur enlever, autant qu'il est en nous
 from) the prospects of happiness in another world, as well as in this,
 perspective
 and denying them that which we (look upon) as the proper means for
 considérer à
 attaining it?
 parvenir y?

It is therefore an unspeakable blessing to be born in those parts of
 ineffable bonheur

the world where wisdom and knowledge flourish ; though it must be
 science
 confessed there are, even in these parts, several poor uninstructed
 nos contrées, ignorant
 persons, who are but little above those nations of which I (have been
 — bien peu viens de
 here) speaking ; as those who have had the advantages of a more
 liberal education, rise above one another by several different degrees
 of perfection. For, to return to our statue in the block of marble, we
 see it sometimes only begun to be chipped, sometimes rough-
 que on n'a que commencé à le dégrossir on l'a
 hewn, and but just sketched into a human figure ; sometimes we see
 ébauché on y a seulement esquissé
 the man appearing distinctly in all his limbs and features ; some-
 times we find the figure wrought up to great elegance ; but we
 — avec beaucoup de
 seldom meet with any to which the hand of a Phidias or a Praxite-
 une statue
 les could not give several (nice touches and finishings.)
 touches propres à l'embellir et à la rendre parfaite. SPECTATOR.

A COMPENDIUM

OF THE

PRINCIPAL RULES

*Contained in this Treatise.**

What are words commonly called 157 the *parts* of *speech*, of which
 82 appeler partie discours,
 the french language is composed ?
 32 langue composer 158 !
 (What is) a *noun* ?
 Qu'est-ce que (y) nom ?
 (How many) sorts of nouns do we 90 distinguish in grammar ?
 Combien N.B. distinguer en grammaire ?

* The learner must translate these questions into french, as he has done the foregoing exercises ; and he must also write in french an answer to every question, with an explanation of the rule, and two or three appropriate examples from his own imagination. This exercise would perhaps be useless to grown persons who have read the rules with attention, but I think it will be particularly useful to all young learners.

(How many) genders (are there) in french ?

246

How do we know the gender of the names of the beings without

185

N.B. connaître

nom

être

life, which are commonly called things ?

—

appeler

(How many) numbers (are there) ? — How do you make the plural

246

185

former

plurier

number of nouns ?

Has this rule any exceptions ? — What are they ?

134

82

62

(What is) an *article* ?

(y)

What are the words which are commonly called *article* in french ?

82

—

92

What agreement does the article require with the noun ?

accord

demander

What sign do we use, when the noun which follows the article

signe

employer,

is (in the) singular, and begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute ?

au

,

par

voyelle,

muette ?

When several nouns which require the article meet in the same

plusieurs

demander

se rencontrer

sentence, is it necessary to repeat the article before each noun ?

phrase,

102

Do the names of persons and of towns require the article ?

nom

demander

Do the names of countries require the article ?

134

pays

Has not this rule some exceptions ? — What are they ?

134

*

82

62

(Is there) not a small number of words which are never excepted,

246

i. e. which always require the article ? — Name them.

184

Nommer

What article do common names require, when they are used

82

commun

134

demander

— s'employer

in a general or in a particular sense ? †

particulier

sens

How is *of* expressed

185

—

s'exprimer (*ii*) N.B.

before a noun used in a general sense,

preceded by a noun used in a partitive sense ?

What article do common names require, when we use them

134

N.B. employer

in a partitive sense, *i. e.* to denote only a portion of the thing

à désigner

(spoken of ?)

dont on parle ? †

What sign do we put before a noun used in a partitive sense, when

signe

N.B.

partitif

it is attended by an adjective which must be placed before that noun ?

accompagné de

devoir — se placer

* See note † page 183.

† See note * page 49.

(Are not there) some adverbs in french which require the preposition *de*, when the words which represent them in english do not require any preposition ?——What are they ?

How is the numeral article *a, an* expressed ?

185 — (ii) N.B.

How are *a, an* expressed before nouns of measure, weight, number, and periods of time used in a collective sense ?

What are the words which are called demonstrative article ?

82 — 92 démonstratif

How do we make in french that local distinction which is made in english by means of the words *this, these ; that, those* ?

What are the words which we call possessive article ?

82 — N.B. possessif 32

Is not the possessive article *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their, sometimes* expressed by the definite article *le, la, les* ?

184 s'exprimer (ii) N.B.

Are not the possessive words *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their, sometimes* expressed by *au, à la, aux* ?

(ii) N.B.

Do not the French sometimes use *mon, ma, mes*, before a noun, when the corresponding signs are not used in english ?

In what instances are the signs called article (left out) in french ?

cas — 134 s'omettre

When two nouns govern each other, which of the two nouns is to be placed the first in french ?

243 se placer (ii) N.B. premier

By what preposition are these nouns united together ?

— 134 s'unir ensemble ?

How is *of* expressed before the proper names of countries ?

185 — (ii) N.B. nom

Do not the French sometimes use the name of a country, when the English use the adjective derived from that name ?

What is an *adjective* ?

(y) adjectif ?

What agreement does the adjective require with the noun ?

accord 134 demander

How is the feminine gender of an adjective formed ?

— se former (ii) N.B.

(Are there) any exceptions to this rule, and what are they ?

246 82 62

How is the plural number of adjectives formed ?

When an adjective qualifies two nouns, of what gender and number
qualifier , *
 must that adjective be ?
 devoir

Are adjectives placed in french before or after the noun ?
 — 134 se placer (ii) N.B.

Has not this rule some exceptions ?
 134 †

What place do the adjectives of number keep with the noun ?
 place 134 tenir

How are the adjectives of number expressed and where are they
 — s'exprimer, (ii) N.B. où —
 placed, when they are used to distinguish some personage ?
 se placer, — s'employer † personnage ?

How are the adjectives of measure and dimension *long, broad, high,*
 — 204 long, large, haut,
deep, &c. placed with the number in french ?
 profond, &c. se placer (ii) N.B.

Do not the French often use the substantive of dimension instead of
 134 184 substantif
 the adjective ?—Is the same verb used with the substantive of
 — 92
 dimension as with the adjective ?
 que

Can the adjective be separated from the noun by an article in french
 134
 as it 62 sometimes is in english ?
 comme 184 70

May 178 not the adjective be sometimes used as a substantive ?
 Pouvoir † 134 — (ii) N.B.

How is an adjective made comparative ?—How is it made
 92 comparatif ? 92
 superlative ?
 superlatif ?

When the comparison is made, not between two substantives,
 — se faire (ii) N.B. entre ,
 but between two parts of a sentence ; as, *the more difficult a thing is,*
 partie phrase ; ,
the more merit there is in doing it ; what difference (is there) in the
 ; 246
 arrangement of the words in french ?

Are the adverbial particles 134 which serve to form the comparative
 32 particule servir
 and superlative repeated in french ?
 se répéter (ii) N.B.

Do not some 96 of the comparative adjectives and adverbs require
 134 32 demander
 ne before the verb which follows them ?

How are *by* and *than* expressed after a comparative ?
 185 — (ii) N.B.

How is *in* expressed after a superlative ?
 185 — s'exprimer (ii) N.B.

* Repeat here *Of what* before number.

† See note † page 183.

‡ See note * page 125.

What mood does the superlative require, when it is followed by a
 82 mode demander, 62 de
 relative pronoun ?
 relatif

What is a *pronoun* ?
 (y) pronom ?

How many sorts of pronouns do we 90 distinguish ?
 N.B. distinguer ?

How do you express the pronouns *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they*,
 when they are the nominative of a verb ?
 nominatif

How do you express the same words *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they*,
 mêmes
 when they are joined 158 to another substantive for the nominative of
 joindre substantif
 the same verb, or when the verb is understood ?
 sous entendre ?

How do you express the pronouns *me, thee, us, you, him, her, it, them*,
 when they are the object of a verb ?
 objet

What place do the pronouns objects of the verb keep with the verb,
 place 134 tenir
 when the tense is simple ?
 tems simple ?

What place do these pronouns require when the tense is compounded
 134 demander composé
 of the auxiliary 32 verb *avoir* or *être*, and of a past 32 participle ?
 auxiliaire passé participle ?

Where are the pronouns objects of the verb placed, when the
 Où — se placer, (ii) N.B.
 verb commands, and how are *me* and *thee* expressed ?
 commander, 185 — (ii) N.B.

How are *me, thee, us, you, him, her, them* expressed, and where are
 185 — (ii) N.B.
 they placed, when they are governed by a preposition ?
 — (ii) N.B. régir par

Is not the preposition *à* in french, like the preposition *to* in english,
 134
 often implied in the pronoun ?—When is *à* 134 to be expressed ?
 renfermée 242 243 s'exprimer ?

When several pronouns of different persons are the object of the
 plusieurs
 same verb, what order do these pronouns keep with one another ?
 , ordre 134 tenir 121

As (there are) in french only two genders, the masculine and the
 Comme il n'y a que
 feminine, how is the english neuter 32 pronoun *it* expressed in french ?
 . — 32 neutre 134 (ii) N.B.

Explain the different uses of the pronoun *it*.
 Expliquer usages

May 178 *lui, leur*, be used for things ?
 Pouvoir* 134 s'employer

May *lui, elle, eux, elles* be used for things after a preposition ?

* 134 †

How are the pronouns *he, she, it, they* expressed before the verb *be*,
185 — 134 (ii) N.B. 206 ,
when that verb is followed by a substantive ?
200

How are the pronouns *he, she, they, him, her, them* expressed, when
— (ii) N.B.,
they do not relate to any noun (mentioned before,) but 53 refer
† se rapporter aucun dont on a fait 145 mention, 219 se rapporter
to the word person understood ?
sous entendre ?

Are not the pronouns *le, la, les, en, y* frequently used, when the
— 134 souvent 184 s'employer,
words which represent them are not used in english ?
représenter — (ii) N.B.

Do these pronouns agree with the words which they represent ?
s'accorder

How do you express the pronouns *who, whom, whose, that, which*,
when they relate to a noun (mentioned before) ?
se rapporter dont on a fait mention ?

What place does the relative keep with the noun to which it relates ?
place relatif tenir 76

Is not the relative pronoun sometimes understood in english, when
32 134 184
it can not (be left out) in french ?
s'omettre

How are *who, whom, whose* expressed, when they relate to the
— 134 † , (ii) N.B. se rapporter
word person understood ?

How are *whom* and *which* expressed, when they are governed by a
(ii) N.B. régir
preposition ?

How is *which* expressed after a preposition, when it relates
185 — s'exprimer (ii) N.B. , se rapporter
to the word *thing* ?

How is *which* expressed after a preposition, when it relates to a place ?
— (ii) N.B. lieu ?

How is *which* interrogative expressed ?
— interrogatif (ii) N.B.

Explain the different ways of expressing the pronoun *what*.
Expliquer manière 154

How do we express the possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers*,
N.B. possessif 32
ours, yours, theirs, when they relate to a noun (mentioned before) ?
dont on a fait mention ?

How are the possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, &c.*
— 32

* See note * page 125.

† These words in this sense may be considered as nouns.

‡ Express *Not* by *ne* only, because *aucun* that follows is a negative expression which takes the place of *pas*.

expressed, when they are used instead of the personal pronouns *me*,
N.B. — s'employer
thee, us, you, him, her, them ; as, *This book is mine ?*
 ; , *This book is mine ?*

How are the possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, &c.* ex-
 pressed, when they are joined by the preposition *of* to the noun to
(ii) N.B. of
 which they relate ; as, *A book of mine, &c. ?*
 ; , *A book of mine, &c. ?*

How are the demonstrative pronouns *this, that, these, those*, ex-
 demonstratif 32
 pressed ?—How is the distinction made between these words in
(ii) N.B. — 92 entre
 french ?

How are *this, that* expressed, when they relate to the word *thing*
(ii) N.B. se rapporter
 understood ?

Explain the different properties of *this, that, these, those*.
 propriété

How do we express the words *one, we, they, people*, when they do
N.B.
 not refer to any particular person ?
 se rapporter aucune en particulier personne ? ;

How are the indefinite expressions such as these ; *It is thought, It*
 — indéfini 32 134 telles que 88 ;
is said, expressed in french ?
(ii) N.B.

How are these other indefinite expressions *I have been told, I*
 — autre 32
was advised, &c. expressed in french ?
(ii) N.B.

What is a *verb* ?
(y) verbe ?

What agreement does the verb require with its nominative ?
 82 accord demander son nominatif ?

When two substantives of different persons are the nominative of
 substantif †
 the same verb, of what number and person must the verb be ?
 , 82 † devoir

Of what person is the verb, when it has *qui* for its nominative ?

Of what person must the verb be, when *qui* relates to two sub-
 devoir se rapporter
 stantives of different persons ?
 †

Of what number must the verb be, after the collective substantives
 collectif 32
la plupart, infinité, nombre, quantité, troupe, multitude ?

Of what number is the verb, after *le quart, le tiers, la moitié* ?

* See note (bb) page 234.

† See note * page 201.

‡ Of what must be repeated before person.

What is the place of the nominative with the verb, in an interrogative sentence, when the nominative is a personal pronoun ?
 82 place 32

What is the place of the nominative, in an interrogative sentence, when that nominative is a noun, or any other word but a personal pronoun ?
 tout autre que

When is the present of the indicative used ?
 — employer 92

When do we use the compound of the present ?
 N.B. composé 90

When do we make use of the perfect tense of the verb ?
 N.B. usage parfait — 90

Explain the different uses of the imperfect.
 Expliquer usage

When is the future used ?——Is not the present sometimes used for the future ?——Does not the french language require the future, in some instances (in which) the English use the present ?
 — futur 92 — 134 134 demander

How are *will, would* expressed after the conjunction *if* ?
 185 — s'exprimer if ?

Mention the different instances in which the subjunctive is used.
 Rapporteur cas 76 subjonctif — 92

When is the present of the subjunctive used ?
 — 92

When is the perfect of the subjunctive used ?
 92

Does the present participle agree with the words that attend it ?
 32 participe s'accorder accompagner

How is the english participle in *ing* expressed, after a preposition ?
 — 32 s'exprimer,

How is the english present participle expressed, when it is joined to the auxiliary verb *be* ?
 — (ii) N.B., be ?

Does the past participle agree with the noun to which it is joined ?
 32 134 76 joindre ?

When a past participle comes after the auxiliary verb *être, to be*, does it require any agreement, and with what word does it agree ?
 quelque accord, s'accorder

When a past participle comes after the auxiliary verb *avoir, to have*, does it require any agreement, and with what word does it agree ?

Does the past participle agree after *avoir*, when it is followed by another verb in the infinitive ?——Explain this rule.
 à Expliquer

How is *to*, the sign of the infinitive in english, expressed in french?
 — 134, 22 signe , (ii) N.B. *

(Are not there) some instances in which this preposition is left out
 246 † cas 76 — s'omettre
 in french?—Name them.
 Nommer

Is *will* 134 always the sign of the future, and *would* the sing of the
 conditional of the verb which follows it?
 conditionnel

How are *will have*, *would have* expressed? —Explain these words.
 — (ii) N.B.

How do we 90 express *should*; —*should have*, *ought to have*?
 N.B.

How do we 90 express *may*, *might*; —*could have*, *might have*?
 N.B.

How is *wish* expressed when it is followed by another verb
 135 — s'exprimer (ii) N.B. 200
 (in the) imperfect, or (in the) conditional?
 à l' imparfait, au conditionnel?

How is *must* expressed, and what mood does it govern?
 — (ii) N.B., mode régir

How must 181 we express *must have* in the sense of *being in need*?
 N.B. sens

What is an *adverb*?
 (y) adverbe?

What place do the adverbs keep with the verb?
 place 134 tenir

Which are the words that we 90 call negative adverbs?
 79 N.B. négatif 32

How are the negative adverbs placed with the verb?
 — se placer (ii) N.B.

How are they placed, when the verb is in the infinitive?
 — (ii) N.B. à

Are not *pas*, *point* sometimes left out?
 — 134 184 s'omettre (ii) N.B.

How are *no*, *not* expressed without a verb?
 — (ii) N.B.

How is *not* expressed with the verb *take care*, *prendre garde*?
 (ii) N.B.

(Are there) not in french some words which require *ne*, when
 246 † demander ,
 (there is) no negation in english?—Which are these words?
 246 79

How do we 90 express *but* in the sense of the adverb *only*?
 N.B. but only?

How is *but* expressed in the sense of a relative pronoun?
 — but (ii) N.B.

What is a *preposition*?
 (y) préposition?

Are the prepositions always expressed by the words which generally
 — 134 184

* See, pages 276, 277, 278, the different ways of expressing *to* before an infinitive, and peruse often the list of those verbs.

† See note † page 183.

correspond to one another in both languages ?——Mention the
 se correspondre 121 les deux Rapporteur
 words the most frequently used 157 with which the prepositions
 184 employer 76

differ* ?
 différer ?

Do not some verbs require a preposition in english, when the
 † demander
 corresponding 32 words do not require any in french ?——Name
 qui y correspondent (p) Nommer
 them.

(Are there) not (on the) contrary some verbs which require a pre-
 246 au contraire †
 position in french, when the corresponding 32 words do not require
 , qui y correspondent
 any in english ?——Name them.
 (p)

May the prepositions be placed in french, as they sometimes
 † 134 — se placer (ii) N.B. , 62 184
 are placed in english, either before or after the words which they
 — (ii) N.B. , 223 62
 govern ?
 régir ?

Are the prepositions repeated before all the words which they
 — 134 se répéter 62
 govern ?

Explain the following 32 prepositions ; *for.*——*before.*——*by.*
 Expliquer suivant 29

Explain *at, to, from* with verbs denoting being 154 at, going 154,
 qui désignent être à, aller ,
 or coming to, going or coming from a person's 25 house ?
 venir à, de — quelqu'un

Explain the different properties of *in, into.*——*in, before the dif-*
 propriété in, into. in,
 ferent parts of the day ; and *on* before the days of the week.
 partie ; on

What is a *conjunction* ?
 (y) conjonction ?

Which are the conjunctions that govern the indicative mood ?
 79 régir indicatif ?

Which are the conjunctions that govern the subjunctive ?
 79 74 subjonctif ?

When a conjunction governs several verbs, is it necessary to
 plusieurs , N.B. 168
 repeat it before each verb ?
 62 102

(Is there,) not something to be remarked about the conjunction *si, if* ?
 246 243 au sujet de

May not some conjunctions (be left out) in english, when the con-
 † † 134 s'omettre ,
 junctions which represent them can not (be left out) in french ?

* See, pages 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, a list of the words with which the prepositions differ, and peruse it often.

† See note † page 183.

‡ See note * page 125.

Explain the conjunctions *both*.——*either*, or.——*neither*, *nor*.

Explain the conjunctions *whether*.——*though*, *although*, *if even*.——

But for, *if it were not for*, *if it had not been for*, &c.

Explain the different ways of expressing the word *people*.

Expliquer manière 154

Explain the different meanings of the words *country*.——*time*.
signification

What difference between *an*, *année*;——*jour*, *journée*;——*matin*,
entre

matinée;——*soir*, *soirée*;——*nuit*, *soir*;——*midi*, *minuit*?

When is the auxiliary verb *have* expressed by the auxiliary *être*?

— 134 s'exprimer par

When is the auxiliary verb *be* expressed by the auxiliary *avoir*?

— (ii) N.B.

When is *be* expressed by *faire*?——When is *be* expressed by *se*
— 134

porter?——When is *be* expressed by *devoir*?

Is not the verb *be* sometimes left out?

— 134 184 s'omettre

How do we90 express *to be just*, *to have just*?

185 N.B.

How do we90 express *was near*, *were near*, *had like*?

N.B.

How do we90 express *there is*, *there are*; *it is far*, *it is long ago*;

N.B.

it is since; and *this*, *these*, (pointing out) a period of time?
désignant

How do we90 express *here is*, *here are*; *this is*, *these are*;——*there is*,

N.B.

there are; *that is*, *those are*, when they serve to (point out) an object?
169 désigner

Explain the different meanings of the word *let*.——*let know*.

signification

Explain the different meanings of the verb *make*.

Explain *to cause*, *to have*, *to get*.——*to cause to be done* or *made*; *to have* or *get done* or *made*; *to order*, *to bespeak*.

Explain the verbs *to ask*, *to desire*.——*to look*.

Explain the different meanings of the verbs *to suppose*.——*to hope*.

Explain the different meanings of the verbs *to take*.——*to bring*.

signification

——*to use*.——*to help*.——*to attend*.——*To want*.

Explain the verbs *to marry*.——*to ride*.——*to walk*.——*to come*.

——*to return*.——*to call*.

Explain the verbs *to break*.—*to like*.—*to keep*.—*to get*.—
to spend.—*to charge*.

How do we⁹⁰ express *to go to meet*.—*to bring near, to go near*,
185 N.B.
to come near.—*to hear*?

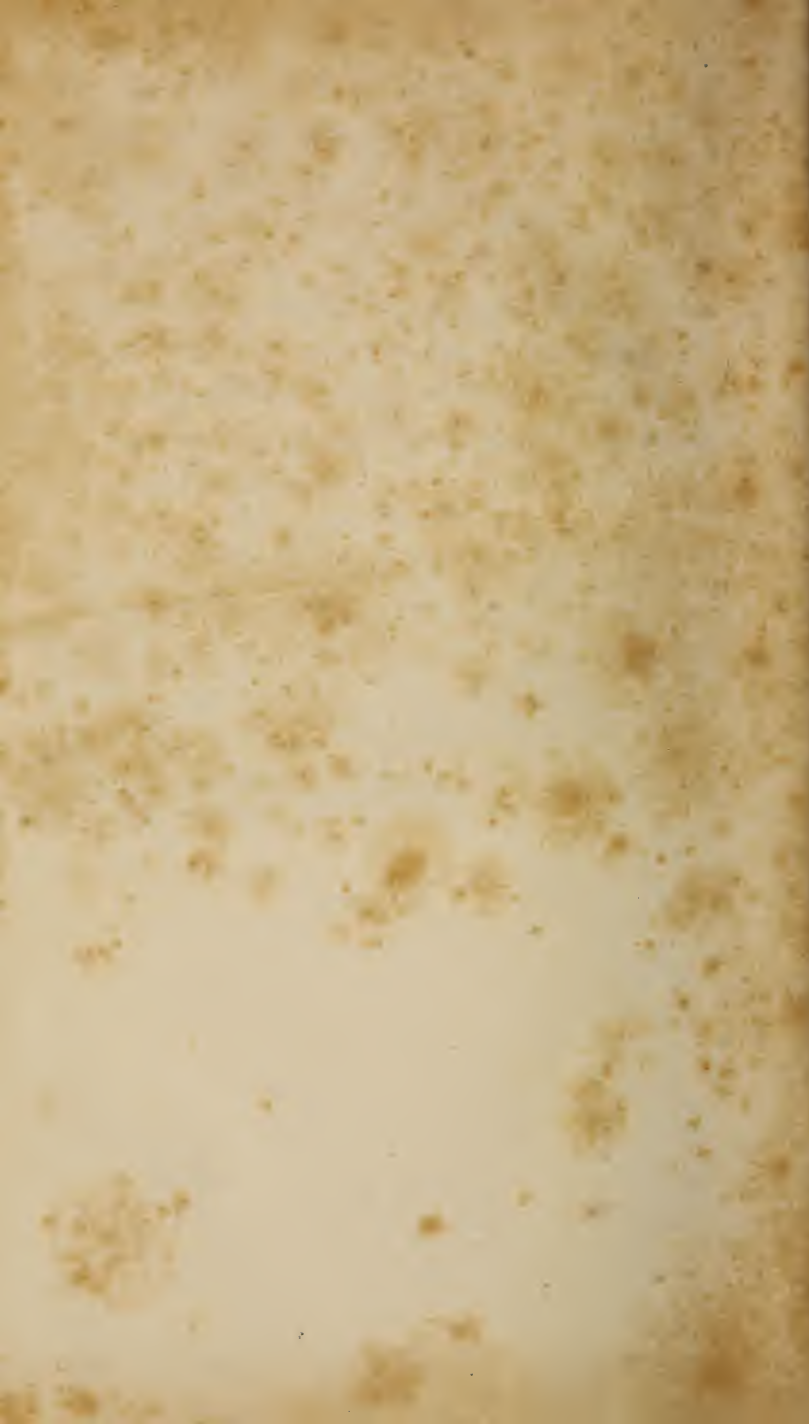
How do we⁹⁰ express *it is with*.—*whatever, in vain, to no purpose*.
N.B.
—*to find fault with*.—*to take it kindly*.—*to take it unkindly*?

How do we⁹⁰ express *to do without, to be easy without*.—*What is*
N.B.
the matter, what is it about, what is it.—*Is it, is it not; does it, does*
it not; have I, have I not?

☞ The learner having gone through the Syntax, and being able to answer the foregoing questions, with appropriate examples to each of them, there can be no doubt but he understands the rules well; he should now try to write something of his own composition in french, such as letters, dialogues, short histories, or anecdotes, either that he has read or heard, or from his own imagination. This he will perhaps find difficult at first; but if he will persevere in it for a few days, he will find it easier and more profitable than translating from a book; for unless he has read a great deal of french, he will be apt to commit many anglicisms, owing to the difference in the idiom of the two languages, i. e. he will put together a number of french words which separately have a meaning, but which, when put together, have hardly any meaning at all. His attention should be called entirely to recollect the french words which he has seen to express the same ideas, and even the english dictionary should be used as seldom as possible. If he finds himself deficient in some of the rules, he must write over again the recapitulatory exercise on those parts of speech which are not familiar to him, and there is little doubt that after a second attentive perusal, he will be sufficiently acquainted with them.

THE END.







LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 117 920 8

